

# **Security Reference Manual for the i.MX RT106x Processor**

Document Number: IMXRT106XSRM  
Rev. 0, 02/2020





## Contents

Section number	Title	Page
<b>Chapter 1 Security Overview</b>		
1.1	Non-claims.....	37
1.2	Chapter overview.....	38
1.3	Feature summary.....	38
1.4	High-Assurance Boot (HAB).....	40
1.4.1	HAB process flow.....	40
1.4.2	HAB feature summary.....	42
1.5	Secure Non-Volatile Storage (SNVS) module.....	42
1.5.1	SNVS architecture.....	43
1.6	Data Co-Processor (DCP).....	44
1.7	Standalone True Random Number Generator (TRNG).....	44
1.8	On-Chip OTP Controller (OCOTP_CTRL).....	44
1.9	Central Security Unit (CSU).....	45
1.10	System JTAG Controller (SJC).....	45
1.10.1	Scan protection.....	46
1.11	Bus Encryption Engine (BEE).....	46
<b>Chapter 2 Security System Integration</b>		
2.1	Master ID allocation.....	47
2.2	System-level SNVS connections.....	47
2.2.1	Clock monitor.....	47
2.2.2	System security violation alarm signals monitored by SNVS.....	47
2.3	Security access error.....	48
2.4	OCRAM TrustZone support.....	48
2.5	Watchdog mechanism.....	49
2.6	Security configuration.....	50
2.6.1	Field return for retest procedure.....	51

Section number	Title	Page
	<b>Chapter 3 System Boot</b>	
3.1	Chip-specific Boot Information.....	55
3.2	Overview.....	60
3.3	Boot modes.....	62
3.3.1	Boot mode pin settings.....	63
3.3.2	High-level boot sequence.....	63
3.3.3	Boot From Fuses mode (BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 00b).....	64
3.3.4	Serial Downloader (BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 01b).....	65
3.3.5	Internal Boot mode (BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 0b10).....	65
3.3.6	Boot security settings.....	66
3.4	Device configuration.....	67
3.4.1	Boot eFuse descriptions.....	67
3.4.2	GPIO boot overrides.....	68
3.4.3	Device Configuration Data (DCD).....	69
3.5	Device initialization.....	69
3.5.1	Internal ROM/RAM memory map.....	69
3.5.2	Boot block activation .....	70
3.5.3	Clocks at boot time.....	71
3.5.4	Enabling Caches.....	73
3.5.5	Exception handling.....	74
3.5.6	Interrupt handling during boot.....	74
3.5.7	Persistent bits.....	74
3.6	Boot devices.....	75
3.6.1	Serial NOR Flash Boot via FlexSPI.....	75
3.6.1.1	Serial NOR eFUSE Configuration.....	76
3.6.1.2	FlexSPI Serial NOR Flash Boot Operation.....	77
3.6.1.3	FlexSPI NOR boot flow chart.....	78
3.6.2	Encrypted XIP and Flash Access Protection.....	79

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
3.6.2.1	Encrypted XIP on Serial NOR via FlexSPI Interface.....	79
3.6.2.2	FlexSPI NOR Image layout.....	80
3.6.2.3	Key Info Block.....	81
3.6.2.4	Protection Region Descriptor Block (PRDB).....	82
3.6.2.5	Encrypted XIP Flow.....	83
3.6.2.6	Data and Key Endianness.....	84
3.6.3	Serial NAND Flash Boot over FlexSPI.....	85
3.6.3.1	Serial NAND eFUSE Configuration.....	85
3.6.3.2	FlexSPI NAND Flash Boot Flow and Boot Control Blocks (BCB).....	86
3.6.3.3	Firmware Configuration Block.....	90
3.6.3.4	Discovered Bad Blocks Table (DBBT).....	91
3.6.3.5	Bad block handling in ROM.....	92
3.6.4	Serial NOR and NAND configuration based on FlexSPI interface.....	92
3.6.4.1	FlexSPI Configuration Block .....	93
3.6.4.2	Serial NOR configuration block (512 bytes).....	97
3.6.4.3	Serial NAND configuration block (512 bytes).....	97
3.6.5	Parallel NOR flash Boot over SEMC.....	100
3.6.5.1	Parallel NOR eFuse Configuration.....	100
3.6.5.2	SEMC Parallel NOR Flash Boot Operation.....	101
3.6.6	Parallel NAND flash Boot over SEMC.....	101
3.6.6.1	Parallel NAND eFuse Configuration.....	102
3.6.6.2	Parallel NAND Flash Boot Control Blocks (BCB).....	104
3.6.6.3	Firmware Configuration Block (FCB).....	104
3.6.6.4	Discovered Bad Blocks Table (DBBT).....	106
3.6.6.5	Bad block handling in ROM.....	106
3.6.7	Parallel NOR and NAND configuration based on SEMC interface.....	107
3.6.7.1	SEMC Configuration Block.....	107
3.6.7.2	Parallel NOR Configuration Block (80 bytes).....	110
3.6.7.3	Parallel NAND Configuration Block (256 bytes).....	110

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
3.6.8	Expansion device.....	112
3.6.8.1	Expansion device eFUSE configuration.....	112
3.6.8.2	MMC and eMMC boot.....	115
3.6.8.3	SD, eSD, and SDXC.....	123
3.6.8.4	IOMUX configuration for SD/MMC.....	123
3.6.8.5	Redundant boot support for expansion device.....	124
3.6.9	Serial NOR/EEPROM through LP SPI.....	126
3.6.9.1	Serial NOR/EEPROM eFUSE configuration.....	126
3.7	Program image.....	127
3.7.1	Image Vector Table and Boot Data.....	127
3.7.1.1	Image vector table structure.....	128
3.7.1.2	Boot data structure.....	129
3.7.2	Device Configuration Data (DCD).....	129
3.7.2.1	Write data command.....	130
3.7.2.2	Check data command.....	132
3.7.2.3	NOP command.....	133
3.8	Plugin image.....	134
3.9	Serial Downloader.....	135
3.9.1	USB.....	137
3.9.1.1	USB configuration details.....	137
3.9.1.2	IOMUX configuration for USB.....	138
3.9.2	Serial Download Protocol (SDP).....	138
3.9.2.1	SDP commands.....	139
3.9.2.1.1	READ_REGISTER.....	139
3.9.2.1.2	WRITE_REGISTER.....	140
3.9.2.1.3	WRITE_FILE.....	140
3.9.2.1.4	ERROR_STATUS.....	142
3.9.2.1.5	DCD_WRITE.....	142
3.9.2.1.6	JUMP_ADDRESS.....	143

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
3.9.2.1.7	SET_BAUDRATE.....	144
3.10	Recovery devices.....	145
3.11	SD/MMC manufacture mode.....	145
3.12	High-Assurance Boot (HAB).....	146
3.12.1	HAB API vector table addresses.....	147
3.13	ROM APIs.....	147
3.13.1	Introduction.....	147
3.13.2	FlexSPI NOR APIs.....	149
3.13.3	Enter Bootloader API .....	157
3.13.4	Watchdog API .....	158
<b>Chapter 4 Fusemap</b>		
4.1	Boot Fusemap.....	159
4.2	Lock Fusemap.....	170
4.3	Fusemap Descriptions Table.....	171
<b>Chapter 5 Central Security Unit (CSU)</b>		
5.1	Overview.....	185
5.1.1	Features.....	185
5.2	Functional description.....	186
5.2.1	Peripheral access policy.....	186
5.2.2	Initialization policy.....	187
5.3	Programmable Registers.....	187
5.3.1	Config security level register (CSU_CSLn).....	188
5.3.2	HP0 register (CSU_HP0).....	192
5.3.3	Secure access register (CSU_SA).....	195
5.3.4	HPCONTROL0 register (CSU_HPCONTROL0).....	199
<b>Chapter 6 Bus Encryption/decryption Engine (BEE)</b>		
6.1	Chip-specific BEE information.....	203

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
6.2	Introduction.....	204
6.2.1	Interface and signal list.....	204
6.3	BEE u-architecture.....	207
6.3.1	BEE_CTRL.....	207
6.3.2	Command Validity Checker (CVC).....	207
6.3.3	Decryption Engine (DE).....	209
6.4	BEE registers.....	212
6.4.1	Control Register (BEE_CTRL).....	213
6.4.2	Offset region 0 Register (BEE_ADDR_OFFSET0).....	215
6.4.3	Offset region 1 Register (BEE_ADDR_OFFSET1).....	216
6.4.4	AES Key 0 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W0).....	216
6.4.5	AES Key 1 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W1).....	216
6.4.6	AES Key 2 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W2).....	217
6.4.7	AES Key 3 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W3).....	217
6.4.8	Status Register (BEE_STATUS).....	218
6.4.9	NONCE00 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W0).....	218
6.4.10	NONCE01 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W1).....	219
6.4.11	NONCE02 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W2).....	219
6.4.12	NONCE03 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W3).....	219
6.4.13	NONCE10 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W0).....	220
6.4.14	NONCE11 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W1).....	220
6.4.15	NONCE12 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W2).....	220
6.4.16	NONCE13 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W3).....	221
6.4.17	Region1 Top Address Register (BEE_REGION1_TOP).....	221
6.4.18	Region1 Bottom Address Register (BEE_REGION1_BOT).....	221
6.5	BEE program model.....	222

## Chapter 7 Data Co-Processor (DCP)

7.1	Overview.....	227
-----	---------------	-----

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
7.1.1	DCP limitations for software.....	229
7.2	Clocks.....	230
7.3	Operation.....	230
7.3.1	Memory copy, blit, and fill functionality.....	231
7.3.2	Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).....	231
7.3.2.1	Key storage.....	231
7.3.2.2	AES OTP key.....	232
7.3.2.3	Encryption modes.....	232
7.3.3	Hashing.....	234
7.3.4	One-Time Programmable (OTP) key.....	235
7.3.5	Managing DCP channel arbitration and performance.....	235
7.3.5.1	DCP arbitration.....	235
7.3.5.2	Channel-recovery timers.....	236
7.3.6	Programming channel operations.....	237
7.3.6.1	Virtual channels.....	237
7.3.6.2	Context switching.....	238
7.3.6.3	Working with semaphores.....	239
7.3.6.4	Work packet structure.....	240
7.3.6.4.1	Next command address field.....	240
7.3.6.4.2	Control0 field.....	241
7.3.6.4.3	Control1 field.....	243
7.3.6.4.4	Source buffer.....	243
7.3.6.4.5	Destination buffer.....	244
7.3.6.4.6	Buffer size field.....	244
7.3.6.4.7	Payload pointer.....	245
7.3.6.4.8	Status.....	245
7.3.6.4.9	Payload.....	246
7.3.7	Programming DCP functions.....	247
7.3.7.1	Basic memory copy programming example.....	247

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
	7.3.7.2 Basic hash operation programming example.....	248
	7.3.7.3 Basic cipher operation programming example.....	250
	7.3.7.4 Multi-buffer scatter/gather cipher and hash operation programming example.....	251
7.4	DCP memory map/register definition.....	254
7.4.1	DCP control register 0 (DCP_CTRL $n$ ).....	256
7.4.2	DCP status register (DCP_STAT $n$ ).....	258
7.4.3	DCP channel control register (DCP_CHANNELCTRL $n$ ).....	261
7.4.4	DCP capability 0 register (DCP_CAPABILITY0).....	262
7.4.5	DCP capability 1 register (DCP_CAPABILITY1).....	263
7.4.6	DCP context buffer pointer (DCP_CONTEXT).....	264
7.4.7	DCP key index (DCP_KEY).....	264
7.4.8	DCP key data (DCP_KEYDATA).....	265
7.4.9	DCP work packet 0 status register (DCP_PACKET0).....	266
7.4.10	DCP work packet 1 status register (DCP_PACKET1).....	267
7.4.11	DCP work packet 2 status register (DCP_PACKET2).....	270
7.4.12	DCP work packet 3 status register (DCP_PACKET3).....	271
7.4.13	DCP work packet 4 status register (DCP_PACKET4).....	271
7.4.14	DCP work packet 5 status register (DCP_PACKET5).....	272
7.4.15	DCP work packet 6 status register (DCP_PACKET6).....	272
7.4.16	DCP channel 0 command pointer address register (DCP_CH0CMDPTR).....	273
7.4.17	DCP channel 0 semaphore register (DCP_CH0SEMA).....	274
7.4.18	DCP channel 0 status register (DCP_CH0STAT $n$ ).....	275
7.4.19	DCP channel 0 options register (DCP_CH0OPTS $n$ ).....	277
7.4.20	DCP channel 1 command pointer address register (DCP_CH1CMDPTR).....	278
7.4.21	DCP channel 1 semaphore register (DCP_CH1SEMA).....	279
7.4.22	DCP channel 1 status register (DCP_CH1STAT $n$ ).....	280
7.4.23	DCP channel 1 options register (DCP_CH1OPTS $n$ ).....	282
7.4.24	DCP channel 2 command pointer address register (DCP_CH2CMDPTR).....	283
7.4.25	DCP channel 2 semaphore register (DCP_CH2SEMA).....	284

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
7.4.26	DCP channel 2 status register (DCP_CH2STAT $n$ ).....	285
7.4.27	DCP channel 2 options register (DCP_CH2OPTS $n$ ).....	287
7.4.28	DCP channel 3 command pointer address register (DCP_CH3CMDPTR).....	288
7.4.29	DCP channel 3 semaphore register (DCP_CH3SEMA).....	289
7.4.30	DCP channel 3 status register (DCP_CH3STAT $n$ ).....	290
7.4.31	DCP channel 3 options register (DCP_CH3OPTS $n$ ).....	292
7.4.32	DCP debug select register (DCP_DBGSELECT).....	292
7.4.33	DCP debug data register (DCP_DBGDATA).....	293
7.4.34	DCP page table register (DCP_PAGETABLE).....	293
7.4.35	DCP version register (DCP_VERSION).....	294

## Chapter 8 On-Chip OTP Controller (OCOTP\_CTRL)

8.1	Chip-specific OCOTP_CTRL information.....	295
8.2	Overview.....	295
8.2.1	Features.....	295
8.3	Clocks.....	296
8.4	Top-Level Symbol and Functional Overview.....	296
8.4.1	Operation.....	296
8.4.1.1	Shadow Register Reload.....	297
8.4.1.2	Fuse and Shadow Register Read.....	297
8.4.1.3	Fuse and Shadow Register Writes.....	298
8.4.1.4	Write Postamble.....	299
8.4.2	Fuse Shadow Memory Footprint.....	300
8.4.3	OTP Read/Write Timing Parameters.....	300
8.4.4	Behavior During Reset.....	301
8.4.5	Secure JTAG control.....	302
8.5	Fuse Map.....	302
8.6	OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition.....	302
8.6.1	OCOTP register descriptions.....	302

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.1	OCOTP memory map.....	302
8.6.1.2	OTP Controller Control and Status Register (CTRL).....	304
8.6.1.2.1	Offset.....	304
8.6.1.2.2	Function.....	305
8.6.1.2.3	Diagram.....	305
8.6.1.2.4	Fields.....	305
8.6.1.3	OTP Controller Timing Register (TIMING).....	306
8.6.1.3.1	Offset.....	306
8.6.1.3.2	Function.....	307
8.6.1.3.3	Diagram.....	307
8.6.1.3.4	Fields.....	307
8.6.1.4	OTP Controller Write Data Register (DATA).....	308
8.6.1.4.1	Offset.....	308
8.6.1.4.2	Function.....	308
8.6.1.4.3	Diagram.....	308
8.6.1.4.4	Fields.....	308
8.6.1.5	OTP Controller Write Data Register (READ_CTRL).....	308
8.6.1.5.1	Offset.....	308
8.6.1.5.2	Function.....	309
8.6.1.5.3	Diagram.....	309
8.6.1.5.4	Fields.....	309
8.6.1.6	OTP Controller Read Data Register (READ_FUSE_DATA).....	309
8.6.1.6.1	Offset.....	309
8.6.1.6.2	Function.....	310
8.6.1.6.3	Diagram.....	310
8.6.1.6.4	Fields.....	310
8.6.1.7	Sticky bit Register (SW_STICKY).....	310
8.6.1.7.1	Offset.....	310
8.6.1.7.2	Function.....	310

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.7.3	Diagram.....	311
8.6.1.7.4	Fields.....	311
8.6.1.8	Software Controllable Signals Register (SCS).....	312
8.6.1.8.1	Offset.....	312
8.6.1.8.2	Function.....	312
8.6.1.8.3	Diagram.....	312
8.6.1.8.4	Fields.....	312
8.6.1.9	OTP Controller Version Register (VERSION).....	313
8.6.1.9.1	Offset.....	313
8.6.1.9.2	Function.....	313
8.6.1.9.3	Diagram.....	313
8.6.1.9.4	Fields.....	313
8.6.1.10	OTP Controller Timing Register 2 (TIMING2).....	314
8.6.1.10.1	Offset.....	314
8.6.1.10.2	Function.....	314
8.6.1.10.3	Diagram.....	314
8.6.1.10.4	Fields.....	314
8.6.1.11	Value of OTP Bank0 Word0 (Lock controls) (LOCK).....	315
8.6.1.11.1	Offset.....	315
8.6.1.11.2	Function.....	315
8.6.1.11.3	Diagram.....	315
8.6.1.11.4	Fields.....	316
8.6.1.12	Value of OTP Bank0 Word1 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG0).....	318
8.6.1.12.1	Offset.....	318
8.6.1.12.2	Function.....	318
8.6.1.12.3	Diagram.....	318
8.6.1.12.4	Fields.....	318
8.6.1.13	Value of OTP Bank0 Word2 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG1).....	319
8.6.1.13.1	Offset.....	319

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.13.2	Function.....	319
8.6.1.13.3	Diagram.....	319
8.6.1.13.4	Fields.....	319
8.6.1.14	Value of OTP Bank0 Word3 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG2).....	320
8.6.1.14.1	Offset.....	320
8.6.1.14.2	Function.....	320
8.6.1.14.3	Diagram.....	320
8.6.1.14.4	Fields.....	320
8.6.1.15	Value of OTP Bank0 Word4 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG3).....	320
8.6.1.15.1	Offset.....	321
8.6.1.15.2	Function.....	321
8.6.1.15.3	Diagram.....	321
8.6.1.15.4	Fields.....	321
8.6.1.16	Value of OTP Bank0 Word5 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG4).....	321
8.6.1.16.1	Offset.....	321
8.6.1.16.2	Function.....	322
8.6.1.16.3	Diagram.....	322
8.6.1.16.4	Fields.....	322
8.6.1.17	Value of OTP Bank0 Word6 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG5).....	322
8.6.1.17.1	Offset.....	322
8.6.1.17.2	Function.....	323
8.6.1.17.3	Diagram.....	323
8.6.1.17.4	Fields.....	323
8.6.1.18	Value of OTP Bank0 Word7 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG6).....	323
8.6.1.18.1	Offset.....	323
8.6.1.18.2	Function.....	323
8.6.1.18.3	Diagram.....	324
8.6.1.18.4	Fields.....	324
8.6.1.19	Value of OTP Bank1 Word0 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM0).....	324

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.19.1	Offset.....	324
8.6.1.19.2	Function.....	324
8.6.1.19.3	Diagram.....	324
8.6.1.19.4	Fields.....	325
8.6.1.20	Value of OTP Bank1 Word1 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM1).....	325
8.6.1.20.1	Offset.....	325
8.6.1.20.2	Function.....	325
8.6.1.20.3	Diagram.....	325
8.6.1.20.4	Fields.....	326
8.6.1.21	Value of OTP Bank1 Word2 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM2).....	326
8.6.1.21.1	Offset.....	326
8.6.1.21.2	Function.....	326
8.6.1.21.3	Diagram.....	326
8.6.1.21.4	Fields.....	327
8.6.1.22	Value of OTP Bank1 Word3 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM3).....	327
8.6.1.22.1	Offset.....	327
8.6.1.22.2	Function.....	327
8.6.1.22.3	Diagram.....	327
8.6.1.22.4	Fields.....	328
8.6.1.23	Value of OTP Bank1 Word4 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM4).....	328
8.6.1.23.1	Offset.....	328
8.6.1.23.2	Function.....	328
8.6.1.23.3	Diagram.....	328
8.6.1.23.4	Fields.....	329
8.6.1.24	Value of OTP Bank1 Word5 (Analog Info.) (ANA0).....	329
8.6.1.24.1	Offset.....	329
8.6.1.24.2	Function.....	329
8.6.1.24.3	Diagram.....	329
8.6.1.24.4	Fields.....	330

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.25	Value of OTP Bank1 Word6 (Analog Info.) (ANA1).....	330
8.6.1.25.1	Offset.....	330
8.6.1.25.2	Function.....	330
8.6.1.25.3	Diagram.....	330
8.6.1.25.4	Fields.....	331
8.6.1.26	Value of OTP Bank1 Word7 (Analog Info.) (ANA2).....	331
8.6.1.26.1	Offset.....	331
8.6.1.26.2	Function.....	331
8.6.1.26.3	Diagram.....	331
8.6.1.26.4	Fields.....	332
8.6.1.27	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word0 (SRK Hash) (SRK0).....	332
8.6.1.27.1	Offset.....	332
8.6.1.27.2	Function.....	332
8.6.1.27.3	Diagram.....	332
8.6.1.27.4	Fields.....	333
8.6.1.28	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word1 (SRK Hash) (SRK1).....	333
8.6.1.28.1	Offset.....	333
8.6.1.28.2	Function.....	333
8.6.1.28.3	Diagram.....	333
8.6.1.28.4	Fields.....	334
8.6.1.29	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word2 (SRK Hash) (SRK2).....	334
8.6.1.29.1	Offset.....	334
8.6.1.29.2	Function.....	334
8.6.1.29.3	Diagram.....	334
8.6.1.29.4	Fields.....	335
8.6.1.30	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word3 (SRK Hash) (SRK3).....	335
8.6.1.30.1	Offset.....	335
8.6.1.30.2	Function.....	335
8.6.1.30.3	Diagram.....	335

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
	8.6.1.30.4 Fields.....	336
8.6.1.31	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word4 (SRK Hash) (SRK4).....	336
	8.6.1.31.1 Offset.....	336
	8.6.1.31.2 Function.....	336
	8.6.1.31.3 Diagram.....	336
	8.6.1.31.4 Fields.....	337
8.6.1.32	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word5 (SRK Hash) (SRK5).....	337
	8.6.1.32.1 Offset.....	337
	8.6.1.32.2 Function.....	337
	8.6.1.32.3 Diagram.....	337
	8.6.1.32.4 Fields.....	338
8.6.1.33	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word6 (SRK Hash) (SRK6).....	338
	8.6.1.33.1 Offset.....	338
	8.6.1.33.2 Function.....	338
	8.6.1.33.3 Diagram.....	338
	8.6.1.33.4 Fields.....	339
8.6.1.34	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word7 (SRK Hash) (SRK7).....	339
	8.6.1.34.1 Offset.....	339
	8.6.1.34.2 Function.....	339
	8.6.1.34.3 Diagram.....	339
	8.6.1.34.4 Fields.....	340
8.6.1.35	Value of OTP Bank4 Word0 (Secure JTAG Response Field) (SJC_RESP0).....	340
	8.6.1.35.1 Offset.....	340
	8.6.1.35.2 Function.....	340
	8.6.1.35.3 Diagram.....	340
	8.6.1.35.4 Fields.....	341
8.6.1.36	Value of OTP Bank4 Word1 (Secure JTAG Response Field) (SJC_RESP1).....	341
	8.6.1.36.1 Offset.....	341
	8.6.1.36.2 Function.....	341

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.36.3	Diagram.....	341
8.6.1.36.4	Fields.....	342
8.6.1.37	Value of OTP Bank4 Word2 (MAC Address) (MAC0).....	342
8.6.1.37.1	Offset.....	342
8.6.1.37.2	Function.....	342
8.6.1.37.3	Diagram.....	342
8.6.1.37.4	Fields.....	343
8.6.1.38	Value of OTP Bank4 Word3 (MAC Address) (MAC1).....	343
8.6.1.38.1	Offset.....	343
8.6.1.38.2	Function.....	343
8.6.1.38.3	Diagram.....	343
8.6.1.38.4	Fields.....	344
8.6.1.39	Value of OTP Bank4 Word4 (MAC2 Address) (MAC2).....	344
8.6.1.39.1	Offset.....	344
8.6.1.39.2	Function.....	344
8.6.1.39.3	Diagram.....	344
8.6.1.39.4	Fields.....	345
8.6.1.40	Value of OTP Bank4 Word6 (General Purpose Customer Defined Info) (GP1).....	345
8.6.1.40.1	Offset.....	345
8.6.1.40.2	Function.....	345
8.6.1.40.3	Diagram.....	345
8.6.1.40.4	Fields.....	346
8.6.1.41	Value of OTP Bank4 Word7 (General Purpose Customer Defined Info) (GP2).....	346
8.6.1.41.1	Offset.....	346
8.6.1.41.2	Function.....	346
8.6.1.41.3	Diagram.....	346
8.6.1.41.4	Fields.....	347
8.6.1.42	Value of OTP Bank5 Word0 (SW GP1) (SW_GP1).....	347
8.6.1.42.1	Offset.....	347

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.42.2	Function.....	347
8.6.1.42.3	Diagram.....	347
8.6.1.42.4	Fields.....	348
8.6.1.43	Value of OTP Bank5 Word1 (SW GP2) (SW_GP20).....	348
8.6.1.43.1	Offset.....	348
8.6.1.43.2	Function.....	348
8.6.1.43.3	Diagram.....	348
8.6.1.43.4	Fields.....	349
8.6.1.44	Value of OTP Bank5 Word2 (SW GP2) (SW_GP21).....	349
8.6.1.44.1	Offset.....	349
8.6.1.44.2	Function.....	349
8.6.1.44.3	Diagram.....	349
8.6.1.44.4	Fields.....	350
8.6.1.45	Value of OTP Bank5 Word3 (SW GP2) (SW_GP22).....	350
8.6.1.45.1	Offset.....	350
8.6.1.45.2	Function.....	350
8.6.1.45.3	Diagram.....	350
8.6.1.45.4	Fields.....	351
8.6.1.46	Value of OTP Bank5 Word4 (SW GP2) (SW_GP23).....	351
8.6.1.46.1	Offset.....	351
8.6.1.46.2	Function.....	351
8.6.1.46.3	Diagram.....	351
8.6.1.46.4	Fields.....	352
8.6.1.47	Value of OTP Bank5 Word5 (Misc Conf) (MISC_CONF0).....	352
8.6.1.47.1	Offset.....	352
8.6.1.47.2	Function.....	352
8.6.1.47.3	Diagram.....	352
8.6.1.47.4	Fields.....	353
8.6.1.48	Value of OTP Bank5 Word6 (Misc Conf) (MISC_CONF1).....	353

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.48.1	Offset.....	353
8.6.1.48.2	Function.....	353
8.6.1.48.3	Diagram.....	353
8.6.1.48.4	Fields.....	354
8.6.1.49	Value of OTP Bank5 Word7 (SRK Revoke) (SRK_REVOKE).....	354
8.6.1.49.1	Offset.....	354
8.6.1.49.2	Function.....	354
8.6.1.49.3	Diagram.....	354
8.6.1.49.4	Fields.....	355
8.6.1.50	Value of OTP Bank7 Word0 (GP3) (GP30).....	355
8.6.1.50.1	Offset.....	355
8.6.1.50.2	Function.....	355
8.6.1.50.3	Diagram.....	355
8.6.1.50.4	Fields.....	356
8.6.1.51	Value of OTP Bank7 Word1 (GP3) (GP31).....	356
8.6.1.51.1	Offset.....	356
8.6.1.51.2	Function.....	356
8.6.1.51.3	Diagram.....	356
8.6.1.51.4	Fields.....	357
8.6.1.52	Value of OTP Bank7 Word2 (GP3) (GP32).....	357
8.6.1.52.1	Offset.....	357
8.6.1.52.2	Function.....	357
8.6.1.52.3	Diagram.....	357
8.6.1.52.4	Fields.....	358
8.6.1.53	Value of OTP Bank7 Word3 (GP3) (GP33).....	358
8.6.1.53.1	Offset.....	358
8.6.1.53.2	Function.....	358
8.6.1.53.3	Diagram.....	358
8.6.1.53.4	Fields.....	359

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
8.6.1.54	Value of OTP Bank7 Word4 (GP4) (GP40).....	359
8.6.1.54.1	Offset.....	359
8.6.1.54.2	Function.....	359
8.6.1.54.3	Diagram.....	359
8.6.1.54.4	Fields.....	360
8.6.1.55	Value of OTP Bank7 Word5 (GP4) (GP41).....	360
8.6.1.55.1	Offset.....	360
8.6.1.55.2	Function.....	360
8.6.1.55.3	Diagram.....	360
8.6.1.55.4	Fields.....	361
8.6.1.56	Value of OTP Bank7 Word6 (GP4) (GP42).....	361
8.6.1.56.1	Offset.....	361
8.6.1.56.2	Function.....	361
8.6.1.56.3	Diagram.....	361
8.6.1.56.4	Fields.....	362
8.6.1.57	Value of OTP Bank7 Word7 (GP4) (GP43).....	362
8.6.1.57.1	Offset.....	362
8.6.1.57.2	Function.....	362
8.6.1.57.3	Diagram.....	362
8.6.1.57.4	Fields.....	363

## **Chapter 9** **True Random Number Generator (TRNG)**

9.1	Chip-specific TRNG information.....	365
9.2	Overview.....	365
9.2.1	Block Diagram.....	366
9.3	Functional Description.....	366
9.4	Register Interface Usage.....	367
9.5	Operation.....	367
9.5.1	Operation Programming Flow.....	368

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.5.2	Interrupt Programming Flow.....	369
9.5.3	Sample Size Adjustment Programming Flow.....	370
9.6	Other Applications.....	373
9.7	TRNG register descriptions.....	373
9.7.1	TRNG memory map.....	373
9.7.2	Miscellaneous Control Register (MCTL).....	375
9.7.2.1	Offset.....	375
9.7.2.2	Function.....	375
9.7.2.3	Diagram.....	375
9.7.2.4	Fields.....	376
9.7.3	Statistical Check Miscellaneous Register (SCMISC).....	377
9.7.3.1	Offset.....	377
9.7.3.2	Function.....	378
9.7.3.3	Diagram.....	378
9.7.3.4	Fields.....	378
9.7.4	Poker Range Register (PKRRNG).....	378
9.7.4.1	Offset.....	378
9.7.4.2	Function.....	379
9.7.4.3	Diagram.....	379
9.7.4.4	Fields.....	379
9.7.5	Poker Maximum Limit Register (PKRMAX).....	379
9.7.5.1	Offset.....	380
9.7.5.2	Function.....	380
9.7.5.3	Diagram.....	380
9.7.5.4	Fields.....	380
9.7.6	Poker Square Calculation Result Register (PKRSQ).....	381
9.7.6.1	Offset.....	381
9.7.6.2	Function.....	381
9.7.6.3	Diagram.....	381

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.6.4	Fields.....	381
9.7.7	Seed Control Register (SDCTL).....	382
9.7.7.1	Offset.....	382
9.7.7.2	Function.....	382
9.7.7.3	Diagram.....	382
9.7.7.4	Fields.....	383
9.7.8	Sparse Bit Limit Register (SBLIM).....	383
9.7.8.1	Offset.....	383
9.7.8.2	Function.....	383
9.7.8.3	Diagram.....	383
9.7.8.4	Fields.....	384
9.7.9	Total Samples Register (TOTSAM).....	384
9.7.9.1	Offset.....	384
9.7.9.2	Function.....	384
9.7.9.3	Diagram.....	385
9.7.9.4	Fields.....	385
9.7.10	Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register (FRQMIN).....	385
9.7.10.1	Offset.....	385
9.7.10.2	Function.....	386
9.7.10.3	Diagram.....	386
9.7.10.4	Fields.....	386
9.7.11	Frequency Count Register (FRQCNT).....	386
9.7.11.1	Offset.....	386
9.7.11.2	Function.....	387
9.7.11.3	Diagram.....	387
9.7.11.4	Fields.....	387
9.7.12	Frequency Count Maximum Limit Register (FRQMAX).....	387
9.7.12.1	Offset.....	387
9.7.12.2	Function.....	388

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.12.3	Diagram.....	388
9.7.12.4	Fields.....	388
9.7.13	Statistical Check Monobit Count Register (SCMC).....	389
9.7.13.1	Offset.....	389
9.7.13.2	Function.....	389
9.7.13.3	Diagram.....	389
9.7.13.4	Fields.....	389
9.7.14	Statistical Check Monobit Limit Register (SCML).....	390
9.7.14.1	Offset.....	390
9.7.14.2	Function.....	390
9.7.14.3	Diagram.....	390
9.7.14.4	Fields.....	390
9.7.15	Statistical Check Run Length 1 Count Register (SCR1C).....	391
9.7.15.1	Offset.....	391
9.7.15.2	Function.....	391
9.7.15.3	Diagram.....	391
9.7.15.4	Fields.....	392
9.7.16	Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit Register (SCR1L).....	392
9.7.16.1	Offset.....	392
9.7.16.2	Function.....	392
9.7.16.3	Diagram.....	393
9.7.16.4	Fields.....	393
9.7.17	Statistical Check Run Length 2 Count Register (SCR2C).....	394
9.7.17.1	Offset.....	394
9.7.17.2	Function.....	394
9.7.17.3	Diagram.....	394
9.7.17.4	Fields.....	395
9.7.18	Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit Register (SCR2L).....	395
9.7.18.1	Offset.....	395

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.18.2	Function.....	395
9.7.18.3	Diagram.....	396
9.7.18.4	Fields.....	396
9.7.19	Statistical Check Run Length 3 Count Register (SCR3C).....	397
9.7.19.1	Offset.....	397
9.7.19.2	Function.....	397
9.7.19.3	Diagram.....	397
9.7.19.4	Fields.....	397
9.7.20	Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit Register (SCR3L).....	398
9.7.20.1	Offset.....	398
9.7.20.2	Function.....	398
9.7.20.3	Diagram.....	398
9.7.20.4	Fields.....	399
9.7.21	Statistical Check Run Length 4 Count Register (SCR4C).....	399
9.7.21.1	Offset.....	399
9.7.21.2	Function.....	399
9.7.21.3	Diagram.....	400
9.7.21.4	Fields.....	400
9.7.22	Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit Register (SCR4L).....	400
9.7.22.1	Offset.....	400
9.7.22.2	Function.....	401
9.7.22.3	Diagram.....	401
9.7.22.4	Fields.....	401
9.7.23	Statistical Check Run Length 5 Count Register (SCR5C).....	402
9.7.23.1	Offset.....	402
9.7.23.2	Function.....	402
9.7.23.3	Diagram.....	402
9.7.23.4	Fields.....	403
9.7.24	Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit Register (SCR5L).....	403

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.24.1	Offset.....	403
9.7.24.2	Function.....	403
9.7.24.3	Diagram.....	404
9.7.24.4	Fields.....	404
9.7.25	Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Count Register (SCR6PC).....	405
9.7.25.1	Offset.....	405
9.7.25.2	Function.....	405
9.7.25.3	Diagram.....	405
9.7.25.4	Fields.....	405
9.7.26	Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit Register (SCR6PL).....	406
9.7.26.1	Offset.....	406
9.7.26.2	Function.....	406
9.7.26.3	Diagram.....	406
9.7.26.4	Fields.....	407
9.7.27	Status Register (STATUS).....	407
9.7.27.1	Offset.....	407
9.7.27.2	Function.....	407
9.7.27.3	Diagram.....	408
9.7.27.4	Fields.....	408
9.7.28	Entropy Read Register (ENT0 - ENT15).....	409
9.7.28.1	Offset.....	410
9.7.28.2	Function.....	410
9.7.28.3	Diagram.....	410
9.7.28.4	Fields.....	410
9.7.29	Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 Register (PKRCNT10).....	411
9.7.29.1	Offset.....	411
9.7.29.2	Function.....	411
9.7.29.3	Diagram.....	411
9.7.29.4	Fields.....	412

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.30	Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 Register (PKRCNT32).....	412
9.7.30.1	Offset.....	412
9.7.30.2	Function.....	412
9.7.30.3	Diagram.....	412
9.7.30.4	Fields.....	413
9.7.31	Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 Register (PKRCNT54).....	413
9.7.31.1	Offset.....	413
9.7.31.2	Function.....	413
9.7.31.3	Diagram.....	414
9.7.31.4	Fields.....	414
9.7.32	Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 Register (PKRCNT76).....	414
9.7.32.1	Offset.....	414
9.7.32.2	Function.....	415
9.7.32.3	Diagram.....	415
9.7.32.4	Fields.....	415
9.7.33	Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 Register (PKRCNT98).....	415
9.7.33.1	Offset.....	415
9.7.33.2	Function.....	416
9.7.33.3	Diagram.....	416
9.7.33.4	Fields.....	416
9.7.34	Statistical Check Poker Count B and A Register (PKRCNTBA).....	416
9.7.34.1	Offset.....	417
9.7.34.2	Function.....	417
9.7.34.3	Diagram.....	417
9.7.34.4	Fields.....	417
9.7.35	Statistical Check Poker Count D and C Register (PKRCNTDC).....	418
9.7.35.1	Offset.....	418
9.7.35.2	Function.....	418
9.7.35.3	Diagram.....	418

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.35.4	Fields.....	418
9.7.36	Statistical Check Poker Count F and E Register (PKRCNTFE).....	419
9.7.36.1	Offset.....	419
9.7.36.2	Function.....	419
9.7.36.3	Diagram.....	419
9.7.36.4	Fields.....	419
9.7.37	Security Configuration Register (SEC_CFG).....	420
9.7.37.1	Offset.....	420
9.7.37.2	Function.....	420
9.7.37.3	Diagram.....	420
9.7.37.4	Fields.....	421
9.7.38	Interrupt Control Register (INT_CTRL).....	421
9.7.38.1	Offset.....	421
9.7.38.2	Function.....	421
9.7.38.3	Diagram.....	421
9.7.38.4	Fields.....	422
9.7.39	Mask Register (INT_MASK).....	422
9.7.39.1	Offset.....	422
9.7.39.2	Function.....	423
9.7.39.3	Diagram.....	423
9.7.39.4	Fields.....	423
9.7.40	Interrupt Status Register (INT_STATUS).....	424
9.7.40.1	Offset.....	424
9.7.40.2	Function.....	424
9.7.40.3	Diagram.....	424
9.7.40.4	Fields.....	424
9.7.41	Version ID Register (MS) (VID1).....	425
9.7.41.1	Offset.....	425
9.7.41.2	Function.....	425

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
9.7.41.3	Diagram.....	425
9.7.41.4	Fields.....	426
9.7.42	Version ID Register (LS) (VID2).....	426
9.7.42.1	Offset.....	426
9.7.42.2	Function.....	426
9.7.42.3	Diagram.....	427
9.7.42.4	Fields.....	427

## **Chapter 10 Secure Non-Volatile Storage (SNVS)**

10.1	Chip-specific SNVS information.....	429
10.2	SNVS introduction.....	429
10.2.1	SNVS feature list.....	430
10.2.2	SNVS functional description.....	432
10.3	SNVS Structure.....	433
10.3.1	SNVS power domains.....	435
10.3.2	Digital Low-Voltage Detector (LVD).....	436
10.3.3	SNVS clock sources.....	437
10.4	Security violation policy.....	437
10.4.1	Security state machine.....	438
10.4.2	SNVS interrupts, alarms, and security violations.....	442
10.4.3	Configuring SNVS's response to a security event.....	442
10.4.4	SNVS_LP security event policy.....	443
10.4.5	High Assurance Counter.....	444
10.5	Runtime Procedures.....	445
10.5.1	Using SNVS Timer Facilities.....	445
10.5.1.1	SNVS_HP Real Time Counter.....	445
10.5.1.2	SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter (SRTC).....	446
10.5.1.3	RTC/SRTC control bits setting.....	447
10.5.1.4	Reading RTC and SRTC values.....	448

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
10.5.2	Using Other SNVS Registers.....	449
10.5.2.1	Using the General-Purpose Register.....	449
10.5.2.2	Using the Monotonic Counter (MC).....	449
10.6	Configuring Master Key checking and control.....	450
10.6.1	Error Code for the OTPMK.....	451
10.6.2	Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key.....	452
10.7	Reset and Initialization of SNVS.....	454
10.7.1	Checklist for Initialization of the SNVS HP.....	456
10.7.2	Checklist for Initialization of the SNVS LP.....	457
10.8	SNVS register descriptions.....	458
10.8.1	SNVS memory map.....	459
10.8.2	SNVS_HP Lock Register (HPLR).....	460
10.8.2.1	Offset.....	460
10.8.2.2	Diagram.....	461
10.8.2.3	Fields.....	461
10.8.3	SNVS_HP Command Register (HPCOMR).....	463
10.8.3.1	Offset.....	463
10.8.3.2	Diagram.....	463
10.8.3.3	Fields.....	464
10.8.4	SNVS_HP Control Register (HPCR).....	466
10.8.4.1	Offset.....	467
10.8.4.2	Diagram.....	467
10.8.4.3	Fields.....	467
10.8.5	SNVS_HP Security Interrupt Control Register (HPSICR).....	469
10.8.5.1	Offset.....	470
10.8.5.2	Diagram.....	470
10.8.5.3	Fields.....	470
10.8.6	SNVS_HP Security Violation Control Register (HPSVCR).....	471
10.8.6.1	Offset.....	471

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
10.8.6.2	Diagram.....	471
10.8.6.3	Fields.....	472
10.8.7	SNVS_HP Status Register (HPSR).....	473
10.8.7.1	Offset.....	473
10.8.7.2	Diagram.....	473
10.8.7.3	Fields.....	474
10.8.8	SNVS_HP Security Violation Status Register (HPSVSR).....	476
10.8.8.1	Offset.....	476
10.8.8.2	Diagram.....	476
10.8.8.3	Fields.....	477
10.8.9	SNVS_HP High Assurance Counter IV Register (HPHACIVR).....	478
10.8.9.1	Offset.....	478
10.8.9.2	Diagram.....	479
10.8.9.3	Fields.....	479
10.8.10	SNVS_HP High Assurance Counter Register (HPHACR).....	479
10.8.10.1	Offset.....	479
10.8.10.2	Diagram.....	480
10.8.10.3	Fields.....	480
10.8.11	SNVS_HP Real Time Counter MSB Register (HPRTCMR).....	480
10.8.11.1	Offset.....	480
10.8.11.2	Diagram.....	481
10.8.11.3	Fields.....	481
10.8.12	SNVS_HP Real Time Counter LSB Register (HPRTCLR).....	481
10.8.12.1	Offset.....	481
10.8.12.2	Diagram.....	482
10.8.12.3	Fields.....	482
10.8.13	SNVS_HP Time Alarm MSB Register (HPTAMR).....	482
10.8.13.1	Offset.....	482
10.8.13.2	Diagram.....	483

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
10.8.13.3	Fields.....	483
10.8.14	SNVS_HP Time Alarm LSB Register (HPTALR).....	483
10.8.14.1	Offset.....	483
10.8.14.2	Diagram.....	483
10.8.14.3	Fields.....	484
10.8.15	SNVS_LP Lock Register (LPLR).....	484
10.8.15.1	Offset.....	484
10.8.15.2	Diagram.....	484
10.8.15.3	Fields.....	485
10.8.16	SNVS_LP Control Register (LPCR).....	486
10.8.16.1	Offset.....	487
10.8.16.2	Diagram.....	487
10.8.16.3	Fields.....	487
10.8.17	SNVS_LP Master Key Control Register (LPMKCR).....	490
10.8.17.1	Offset.....	490
10.8.17.2	Diagram.....	490
10.8.17.3	Fields.....	490
10.8.18	SNVS_LP Security Violation Control Register (LPSVCR).....	492
10.8.18.1	Offset.....	492
10.8.18.2	Diagram.....	492
10.8.18.3	Fields.....	492
10.8.19	SNVS_LP Security Events Configuration Register (LPSECR).....	493
10.8.19.1	Offset.....	493
10.8.19.2	Diagram.....	494
10.8.19.3	Fields.....	494
10.8.20	SNVS_LP Status Register (LPSR).....	495
10.8.20.1	Offset.....	495
10.8.20.2	Diagram.....	496
10.8.20.3	Fields.....	496

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
10.8.21	SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter MSB Register (LPSRTCMR).....	498
10.8.21.1	Offset.....	498
10.8.21.2	Diagram.....	498
10.8.21.3	Fields.....	498
10.8.22	SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter LSB Register (LPSRTCLR).....	499
10.8.22.1	Offset.....	499
10.8.22.2	Diagram.....	499
10.8.22.3	Fields.....	499
10.8.23	SNVS_LP Time Alarm Register (LPTAR).....	500
10.8.23.1	Offset.....	500
10.8.23.2	Diagram.....	500
10.8.23.3	Fields.....	500
10.8.24	SNVS_LP Secure Monotonic Counter MSB Register (LPSMCMR).....	501
10.8.24.1	Offset.....	501
10.8.24.2	Diagram.....	501
10.8.24.3	Fields.....	501
10.8.25	SNVS_LP Secure Monotonic Counter LSB Register (LPSMCLR).....	502
10.8.25.1	Offset.....	502
10.8.25.2	Diagram.....	502
10.8.25.3	Fields.....	503
10.8.26	SNVS_LP Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register (LPLVDR).....	503
10.8.26.1	Offset.....	503
10.8.26.2	Diagram.....	504
10.8.26.3	Fields.....	504
10.8.27	SNVS_LP General Purpose Register 0 (legacy alias) (LPGPR0_legacy_alias).....	504
10.8.27.1	Offset.....	504
10.8.27.2	Diagram.....	504
10.8.27.3	Fields.....	505
10.8.28	SNVS_LP Zeroizable Master Key Register (LPZMKR0 - LPZMKR7).....	505

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
10.8.28.1	Offset.....	505
10.8.28.2	Diagram.....	506
10.8.28.3	Fields.....	506
10.8.29	SNVS_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 3 (LPGPR0_alias - LPGPR3_alias).....	506
10.8.29.1	Offset.....	506
10.8.29.2	Diagram.....	507
10.8.29.3	Fields.....	507
10.8.30	SNVS_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 7 (LPGPR0 - LPGPR7).....	507
10.8.30.1	Offset.....	508
10.8.30.2	Diagram.....	508
10.8.30.3	Fields.....	508
10.8.31	SNVS_HP Version ID Register 1 (HPVIDR1).....	508
10.8.31.1	Offset.....	509
10.8.31.2	Diagram.....	509
10.8.31.3	Fields.....	509
10.8.32	SNVS_HP Version ID Register 2 (HPVIDR2).....	509
10.8.32.1	Offset.....	510
10.8.32.2	Diagram.....	510
10.8.32.3	Fields.....	510

## **Chapter 11 System JTAG Controller (SJC)**

11.1	Chip-specific SJC information.....	511
11.2	Overview.....	511
11.2.1	Features.....	511
11.2.2	Modes of Operation.....	512
11.3	External Signals.....	513
11.3.1	External Signal Overview.....	514
11.3.2	TAP Controller.....	515
11.3.3	Accessing ExtraDebug Registers.....	517

<b>Section number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page</b>
11.4	Boundary Scan Register (BSR) .....	519
11.5	SoC JTAG Instruction Register (SJIR) .....	519
11.5.1	SJC ID_CODE Instruction (SJC IDCODE ).....	520
11.5.2	SAMPLE/PRELOAD Instruction .....	521
11.5.3	EXTEST Instruction.....	522
11.5.4	HIGHZ Instruction.....	522
11.5.5	BYPASS Instruction .....	523
11.5.6	ENABLE_ExtraDebug Instruction .....	523
11.5.7	ENTER_DEBUG instruction .....	523
11.5.8	EXTEST_PULSE instruction .....	524
11.5.9	EXTEST_TRAIN instruction.....	524
11.6	Security.....	524
11.6.1	JTAG Security Modes .....	525
11.6.1.1	Mode 1: No Debug - Maximum Security.....	525
11.6.1.2	Mode 2: Secure JTAG - High Security .....	526
11.6.1.2.1	Challenge/Response Mechanism in System JTAG Mode.....	526
11.6.1.3	Mode 3: JTAG Enabled - Low Security .....	527
11.6.2	Software Enabled JTAG.....	527
11.6.3	Kill Trace.....	528
11.6.4	SJC Disable Fuse .....	529
11.7	Functional Description.....	530
11.7.1	Static Core Debug.....	530
11.7.2	Reset Mechanism.....	530
11.8	Initialization/Application Information.....	531
11.9	SJC Memory Map/Register Definition.....	531
11.9.1	General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 1 (SJC_GPUSR1).....	533
11.9.2	General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 2 (SJC_GPUSR2).....	535
11.9.3	General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 3 (SJC_GPUSR3).....	536
11.9.4	General Purpose Secured Status Register (SJC_GPSSR).....	536

Section number	Title	Page
11.9.5	Debug Control Register (SJC_DCR).....	537
11.9.6	Security Status Register (SJC_SSR).....	539
11.9.7	General Purpose Clocks Control Register (SJC_GPCCR).....	542

# Chapter 1

## Security Overview

### 1.1 Non-claims

As system security requirements and the attack surface evolves, it is important for customers to understand the types of attacks (especially advanced physical attacks) which NXP does not claim to protect against, or strongly mitigate, so that appropriate mitigation can be taken by the customer at the system level if necessary.

- This i.MX RT SoC has built-in security event detection features. However, NXP does not guarantee against advanced tamper attempts, including operation of the device beyond the defined specification limits. NXP does not guarantee the protection against semi-invasive and invasive attacks.
- This i.MX RT SoC has several built-in features addressing side channel attacks, e.g. mechanisms to make Differential Power Analysis (DPA) more difficult. However, there is no claim to be completely resistant. The effectiveness of these features has not been independently evaluated. Therefore NXP does not guarantee that the result will meet specific customer requirements.
- This i.MX RT SoC's security trust architecture relies on the strength of cryptographic algorithms and digital signatures. If these are subsequently determined to have inherent flaws, then the impact for each flaw must be evaluated and, in this case, NXP does not guarantee the underlying trust architecture claims.
- This i.MX RT SoC has some built-in access control mechanisms to support the logical separation of executed code. However, NXP does not guarantee that the device completely ensures logical separation by itself. Any vulnerabilities identified in Trusted Execution Environments or Hypervisor software may impact this separation and data integrity, and may require additional mitigations.

NXP recommends customers to implement appropriate design and operating safeguards based on defined threat models, to minimize the security risks associated with their applications and products.

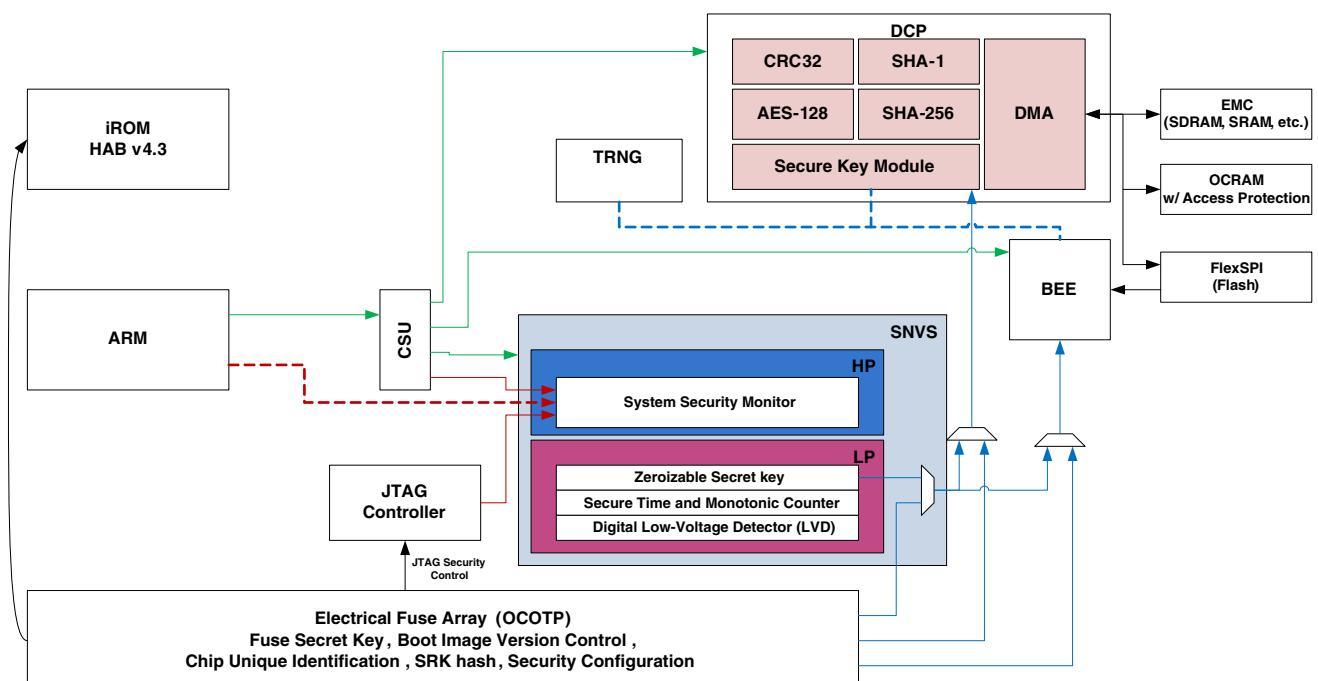
## 1.2 Chapter overview

This chapter provides an overview of the following chip security components, explaining the purpose and features of each of them.

- High Assurance Boot (HAB)
- Secure Non-Volatile Storage (SNVS) with the security monitor, key storage, and real-time clock
- Data co-processor (DCP) with cryptographic acceleration, with Cryptographic Hash Engine
- Hardware encryption and hash algorithm engine for AES128 and SHA-1/256
- True Random Number Generator (TRNG)
- On-chip One-Time Programmable Element Controller (OCOTP\_CTRL) with on-chip electrical fuse arrays
- Central Security Unit (CSU)
- System JTAG Controller (SJC) with secure debug
- Bus Encryption Engine (BEE) for on-the-fly FlexSPI(QSPI) Flash decryption

## 1.3 Feature summary

This figure shows a simplified diagram of the security subsystem:



**Figure 1-1. Security subsystem (simplified)**

All platforms built using this chip share a general need for security, though the specific security requirements vary greatly from platform to platform. For example, portable consumer devices need to protect a different type and cost of assets than automotive or industrial platforms. Each market must be protected against different kinds of attacks. The platform designers need an appropriate set of counter measures to meet the security needs of their specific platform.

To help the platform designers to meet the requirements of each market, the chip incorporates a range of security features. Most of these features provide protection against specific kinds of attack, and can be configured for different levels according to the required degree of protection. These features are designed to work together or independently. They can be also integrated with the appropriate software to create defensive layers. In addition, the chip includes a general-purpose accelerator that enhances the performance of selected industry-standard cryptographic algorithms.

The security features include:

- Secure High-Assurance Boot
  - Security library embedded in the immutable on-chip ROM
  - Authenticated boot, which protects against unauthorized software
    - Verification of the code signature during boot
    - RSA-1024/2048/3072/4096 keys anchored to the OTP fingerprint (SHA-256)
  - Encrypted boot which protects the software confidentiality
  - Runs every time the chip is reset
  - Image version control/image revocation (on-chip OTP-based)
- Secure storage
  - Off-chip storage protection using AES-128 and the chip's unique hardware-only key
- Hardware cryptographic accelerators
  - Symmetric: AES-128,
  - Hash message digest: SHA-1, SHA-256,
- Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG) to act as entropy generator
- On-chip secure real-time clock with autonomous power domain
- Secure debugging
  - Configurable protection against unauthorized JTAG manipulation
  - Three security levels + a complete JTAG disable
  - Support for JTAG port secure reopening for field return debugging
- Universal unique ID
- Electrical fuses (OTP Memory)
- Hardware bus encryption

## High-Assurance Boot (HAB)

- AES-128 encryption, supporting ECB and CTR modes
- Non-secured access filtering

## 1.4 High-Assurance Boot (HAB)

The HAB, which is the high-assurance boot feature in the system boot ROM, detects and prevents the execution of unauthorized software (malware) during the boot sequence.

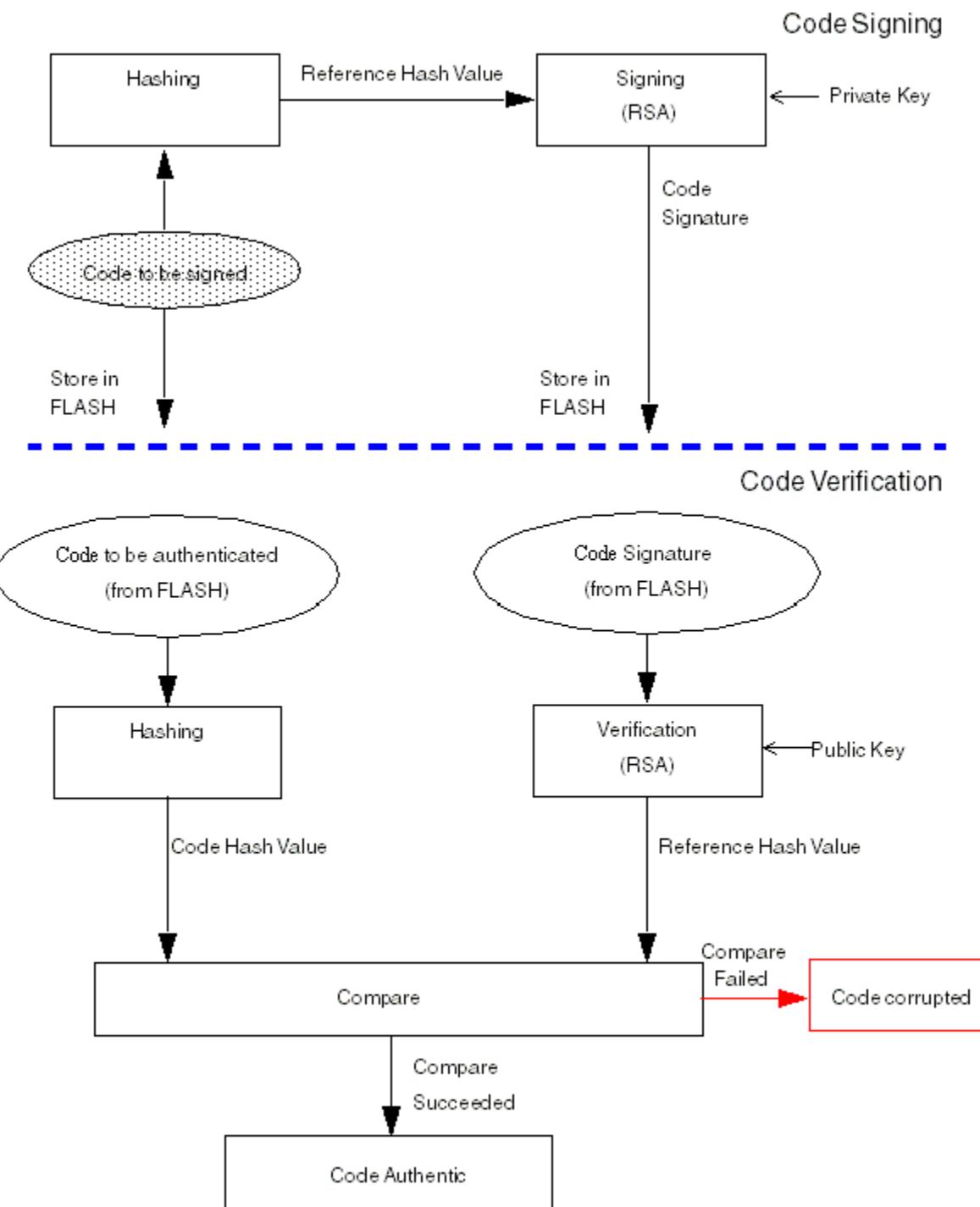
When the unauthorized software is permitted to gain control of the boot sequence, it can be used for a variety of goals, such as exposing stored secrets, circumventing access controls to sensitive data, services, or networks, or for re-purposing the platform. The unauthorized software can enter the platform during upgrades or re-provisioning, or when booting from the USB connections or removable devices.

The HAB protects against unauthorized software by:

- Using digital signatures to recognize the authentic software. This enables you to boot the device to a known initial state and run the software signed by the device manufacturer.
- Using code encryption to protect the confidential software during off-chip storage. When activated, the HAB decrypts the software loaded into the RAM before execution.

### 1.4.1 HAB process flow

The following figure shows the flow for creating and verifying digital signatures. The top half of this figure shows the signing process, which is performed off-chip. The bottom half shows the verification process performed on-chip during every system boot.



**Figure 1-2. Code signing and authentication processes**

The original software is programmed into the flash memory (or any other boot device) along with the signature. The HAB uses a public key to recover the reference hash value from the signature; it then compares the reference hash value to the current hash value

calculated from the software in the flash. If the contents of the flash are modified either intentionally or unintentionally, the two hash values do not match and the verification fails.

## **1.4.2 HAB feature summary**

The HAB features:

- Enforced internal boot via on-chip masked ROM
- Authentication of software loaded from any boot device (including the USB download)
- Authenticated decryption of software loaded from any boot device (including USB download) using the AES keys (128-bit)
- CMS PKCS#1 signature verification using the RSA public keys (from 1024-bit to 4096-bit), and the SHA-256 hash algorithm
- Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) support using X.509v3 certificates
- Root public key fingerprint in the manufacturer-programmable on-chip fuses
- Multiple root public keys with revocation by fuses
- Initialization of other security components
- Authenticated USB download fall-over on any security failure
- Open configuration for development purposes and non-secure platforms
- Closed configuration for shipping secure platforms

On the chip, the HAB is integrated with these security features:

- The HAB initializes the SNVS security monitor state machine. A successful secure boot with the HAB is required for the platform software to gain access to use the DCP master secret key selected by SNVS.
- The HAB reads the root public key fingerprint, revocation mask, and security configuration from the OCOTP\_CTRL.
- The HAB initializes the CSU.
- The HAB can use the DCP to accelerate hash calculations.

## **1.5 Secure Non-Volatile Storage (SNVS) module**

- Provides a non-volatile real-time clock maintained by a coin-cell battery during system power down for use in both the secure and non-secure platforms.
- Protects the secure real-time clock against rollback attacks in time-sensitive protocols such as DRM and PKI
- Deters replay attacks in time-independent protocols such as certificate or firmware revocations

- Handles security violation detection and reporting, to defend sensitive data and operations against compromise, both at run-time and during system power-down
- Controls the access to the OTP master secret key used by the DCP to protect confidential data in the off-chip storage
- Provides non-volatile highly protected storage for an alternative master secret key

### 1.5.1 SNVS architecture

The SNVS is partitioned into two sections: a low-power part (SNVS\_LP) and a high-power part (SNVS\_HP).

The SNVS\_LP block is in the always-powered-up domain. It is isolated from the rest of the logic by isolation cells which are library-instantiated cells that insure that the powered-up logic is not corrupted when the power goes down in the rest of the chip.

The SNVS\_LP has these functional units:

- Zeroizable Master Key
- Secure non-rollover real-time counter with alarm
- Non-rollover monotonic counter
- Digital Low-Voltage Detector (LVD)
- General-purpose register
- Control and status registers

The SNVS\_HP is in the chip power-supply domain. The SNVS\_HP provides an interface between the SNVS\_LP and the rest of the system. The access to the SNVS\_LP registers can be gained through the SNVS\_HP only when it is powered up according to the access permission policy.

The SNVS\_HP has these functional units:

- IP bus interface
- SNVS\_LP interface
- System Security Monitor (SSM)
- Zeroizable Master Key programming mechanism
- Master Key control block
- Non-secure real-time counter with alarm
- Control and status registers

## 1.6 Data Co-Processor (DCP)

For security purposes, the Data Co-Processor (DCP) provides hardware acceleration for the cryptographic algorithms. The features of DCP include:

- Encryption Algorithms: AES-128 (ECB and CBC modes)
- Hashing Algorithms: SHA-1 and SHA-256
- CRC-32
- Key selection from the SNVS, DCP internal key storage, or general memory
- Internal Memory for storing up to four AES-128 keys—when a key is written to a key slot it can be read only by the DCP AES-128 engine
- IP slave interface
- DMA

## 1.7 Standalone True Random Number Generator (TRNG)

The SA-TRNG is hardware accelerator module that generates a 512-bit entropy as needed by an entropy consuming module or by other post processing functions. A typical entropy consumer is a pseudo random number generator (PRNG) which can be implemented to achieve both true randomness and cryptographic strength random numbers using the SA-TRNG output as its entropy seed. The PRNG is not part of this module.

## 1.8 On-Chip OTP Controller (OCOTP\_CTRL)

The OCOTP\_CTRL provides the primary user-visible mechanism for interfacing with the on-chip fuses. These fuses' uses include:

- Unique chip identifiers
- Mask revision numbers
- Cryptographic keys
- Security configuration
- Boot characteristics
- Various control signals requiring permanent non-volatility

The OCOTP\_CTRL provides:

- Shadow cache of fuse values, loaded at reset, before the system boot
- Ability to read and override the fuse values in the shadow cache (does not affect the fuse element)

- Ability to read the fuses directly (ignoring the shadow cache)
- Ability to write (program) the fuses by software or JTAG
- Fuses and shadow cache bits enforce read-protect, override-protect, and write-protect
- Lock fuses for selected fuse fields
- Scan protection
- Volatile software-accessible signals which can be used for software control of hardware elements (not requiring non-volatility).

## 1.9 Central Security Unit (CSU)

Central Security Unit (CSU) sets access control policies between the bus masters and bus slaves, enabling the peripherals to be separated into distinct security domains. This protects against the indirect unauthorized access to data which occurs when the software programs a DMA bus master to access addresses that the software itself is prohibited from accessing directly. Configuring the DMA bus master privileges in the CSU consistently with the software privileges defends against such indirect unauthorized access.

The CSU provides:

- Configuration of peripheral access permissions for peripherals that are unable to control their own access permissions
- Configuration of bus master privileges for bus masters that are unable to control their own privileges
- Optional locking of the individual CSU settings until the next power-on reset

## 1.10 System JTAG Controller (SJC)

The JTAG port provides debug access to hardware blocks, including the Arm processor and the system bus. This enables program control and manipulation as well as visibility to the chip peripherals and memory.

The JTAG port must be accessible during initial platform development, manufacturing tests, and general troubleshooting. Given its capabilities, JTAG manipulation is a known attack vector for accessing sensitive data and gaining control over software execution. The System JTAG Controller (SJC) protects against the whole range of attacks based on unauthorized JTAG manipulation. It also provides a JTAG port that conforms to the IEEE 1149.1 and IEEE 1149.6 (AC) standards for BSR (boundary-scan) testing.

The SJC provides these security levels:

## Bus Encryption Engine (BEE)

- The JTAG Disabled-JTAG use is permanently blocked.
- The No-Debug-All security sensitive JTAG features are permanently blocked.
- The Secure JTAG-JTAG use is restricted (as in the No-Debug level) unless a secret-key challenge/response protocol is successfully executed.
- The JTAG Enabled-JTAG use is unrestricted.

The security levels are selected via the eFuse configuration.

### 1.10.1 Scan protection

The chip includes further scan protection logic for those SJC modes where the JTAG use is allowed. This ensures that the access to critical security values is protected as follows:

- The chip is reset when entering the scan mode.
- All modules are reset two clock cycles before receiving the scan-enable indication.
- The chip cannot exit the scan mode without a reset.
- The security modules (including SNVS, CSU, and OCOTP\_CTRL) have an additional scan-protection logic to protect the sensitive internal data and functionality.

See the "System JTAG Controller (SJC)" chapter in the Security Reference Manual for more information on the SJC.

## 1.11 Bus Encryption Engine (BEE)

The Bus Encryption Engine (BEE) is implemented as an on-the-fly decryption engine, which is used for decrypting cypher context of FlexSPI. The main features of the BEE are:

- Standard AXI interconnection
- On-the-fly AES-128 decryption, supporting ECB and CTR modes
- Aliased memory space support. Address remapping for up to two individual regions
- Independent AES Key management for those two individual regions
- Bus access pattern optimization with the aid of the local store and forward buffer
- Non-secured access filtering based on the security label of the access
- Illegal access check and filtering

See the "Bus Encryption Engine (BEE)" chapter in the Security Reference Manual for more information on BEE.

# Chapter 2

## Security System Integration

### 2.1 Master ID allocation

The master IDs are used in setting up the TrustZone Address Space Controller (TZASC) and in profiling. This table summarizes the master IDs for all system master modules:

**Table 2-1. Master IDs**

Module	Master ID
Core Platform	000b
eDMA	001b
DCP	010b
All others	011b

### 2.2 System-level SNVS connections

#### 2.2.1 Clock monitor

The system provides an automatic detection of the external SRTC clock state and provides an alternative internal clock source when a failure is detected. When the external clock detection fails, the system automatically switches to an internally generated clock from a ring oscillator on the processor. When the clock on the RTC\_xtali appears again, the system switches back to the external clock.

#### 2.2.2 System security violation alarm signals monitored by SNVS

The SNVS supports several system security violation alarm inputs, as shown in the following table. This allocation is related to the HPSVCR and LPSVCR SNVS registers.

**Table 2-2. SNVS system security violation alarm input signals**

SNVS registers			Source	Description
HPSVSR register bit field	HPSVCR register bit field	LPSVCR register bit field		
SEC_VIO0	SV_CFG0	SV_EN0	(Reserved)	—
SEC_VIO1	SV_CFG1	SV_EN1	SJC	JTAG active
SEC_VIO2	SV_CFG2	SV_EN2	WDOG2	Watchdog 2 reset
SEC_VIO3	SV_CFG3	SV_EN3	(Reserved)	—
SEC_VIO4	SV_CFG4	SV_EN4	(Reserved)	—
SEC_VIO5	SV_CFG5	SV_EN5	IOMUX	GPIO_EMCS_19

## 2.3 Security access error

The system slave modules can be configured to return a bus-access error when a security-violating access is detected, using the SEC\_ERR\_RESP bit (GPR10[2] register):

- When set, the slave modules return a bus-error indication on a non-proper security level access.
- When cleared, the operation does not proceed on a non-proper security level access, but the slave modules do not indicate an error.

The bit is set by default, enabling the error indications. The SEC\_RRR\_RESP itself can be locked, preventing further modifications by the LOCK\_SEC\_ERR\_RESP bit (GPR10[18]) to assure the system security integrity.

For more information, see the general registers in the chip reference manual.

## 2.4 OCRAM TrustZone support

The OCRAM supports TrustZone and non-TrustZone accesses to the internal on-chip RAM. There is an option to configure a TrustZone-only access region.

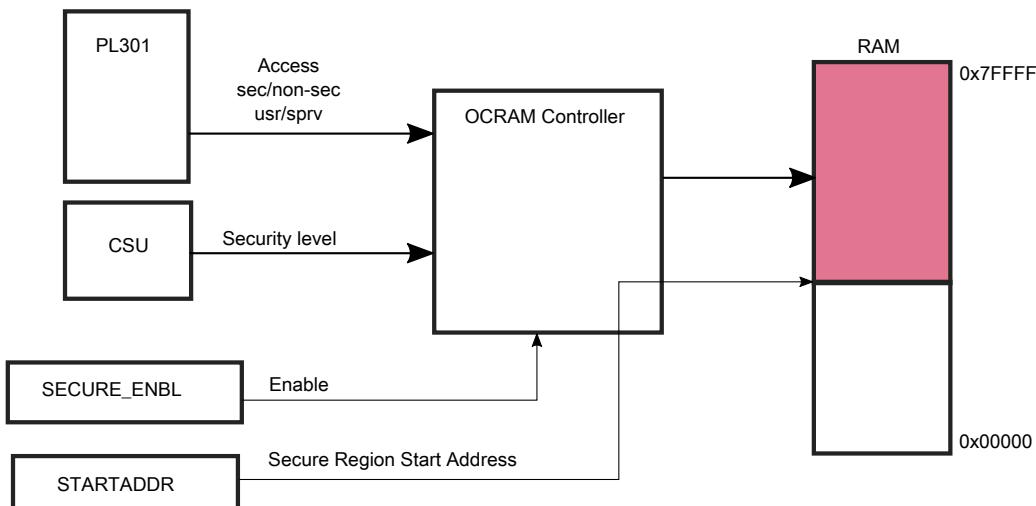
When the OCRAM\_TZSECURE\_REGION[SECURE\_ENBL] bit in the OCRAM module is set, the STARTADDR and ENDADDR bit fields in this register establish the region of OCRAM that can only be accessed (both read and write) in accordance with the execution mode policy defined in the "Execution Mode Access Policy" section of the CSU chapter. If this bit is cleared, the entire OCRAM can be accessed in either the secure or non-secure modes. The secure-region addresses and the SECURE\_ENBL are programmed through the IOMUXC and should be modified when no transactions are occurring on the OCRAM bus.

The TrustZone bits are described in the "Programmable Registers" section of the chip reference manual.

### NOTE

The ENDADDR bit field is not configurable. Its value is the last address of the OCRAM space. The STARTADDR granularity is 4 KB.

This figure shows the OCRAM schematic connectivity:



**Figure 2-1. OCRAM schematic connectivity**

## 2.5 Watchdog mechanism

The chip has two WDOG modules: WDOG1 and WDOG2 (TZ). Both modules are disabled by default after the reset. The WDOG1 is configured during the boot. The WDOG2 is dedicated for the Secure-World purposes and is only activated by the TrustZone software (if required).

The WDOG module operates as follows:

- If servicing does not take place, the timer times out and asserts the internal system reset signal (`wdog_rst_B`) which goes to the SRC (System Reset Controller).
- The interrupt can be generated before the timer actually times out.
- The `wdog_rst_B` signal can be activated by software.
- There is a power-down counter that is enabled out of any reset. This counter has a fixed time-out period of 16 seconds after which it asserts the `WDOG_B` signal.

This figure describes the WDOG1 and WDOG2 connectivity at the system level.

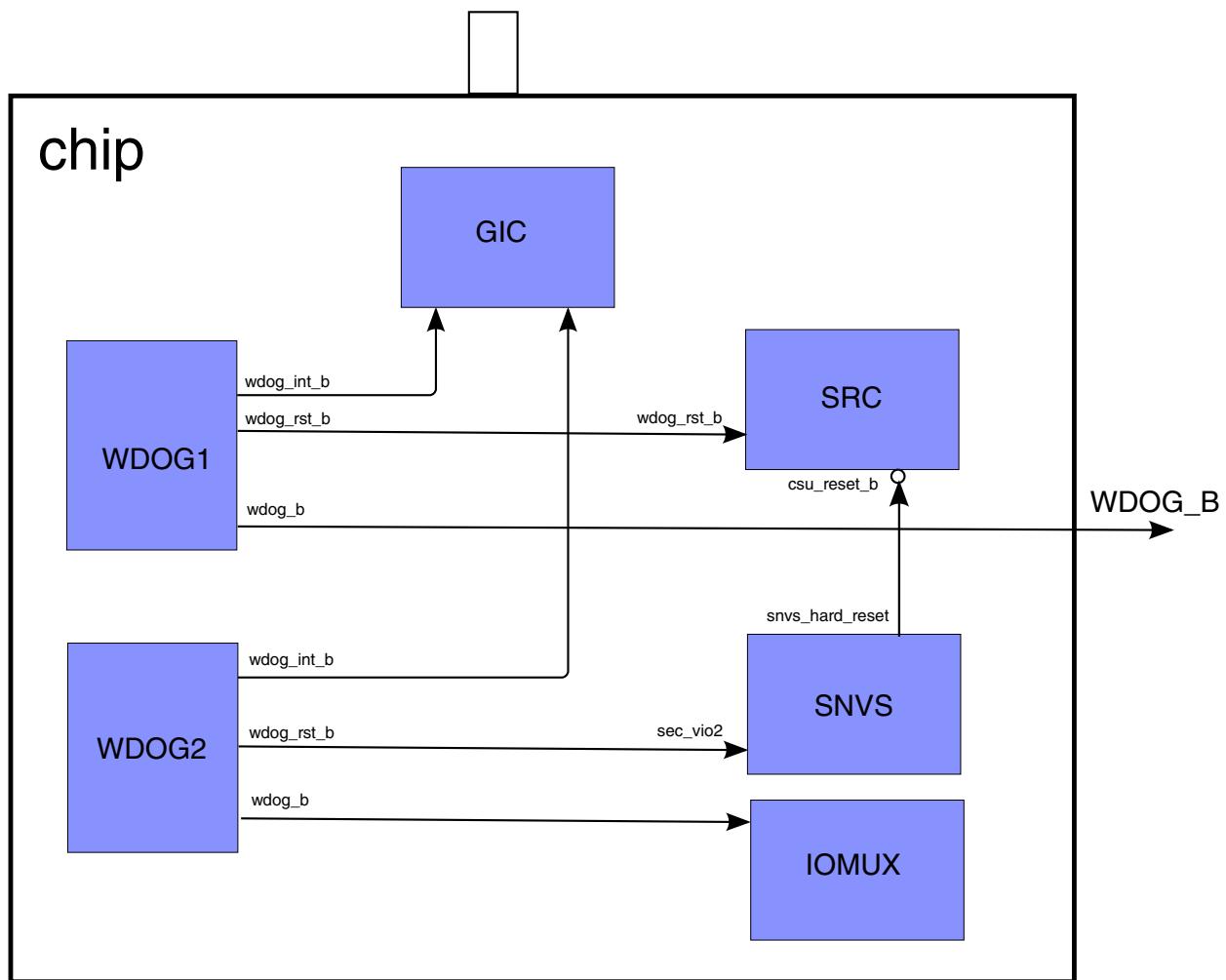


Figure 2-2. WDOG1 and WDOG2 alarms and interrupts connectivity

## 2.6 Security configuration

The following figure illustrates the typical device security-configuration lifecycle which starts from the IC fabrication and continues with the OEM development and assembly through to the final product in the end user's hands. It also shows the option for field-return debugging and re-testing at either the OEM or NXP facilities. Note that the field-return configuration is required for NXP to run test patterns even on non-secure products (open configuration).

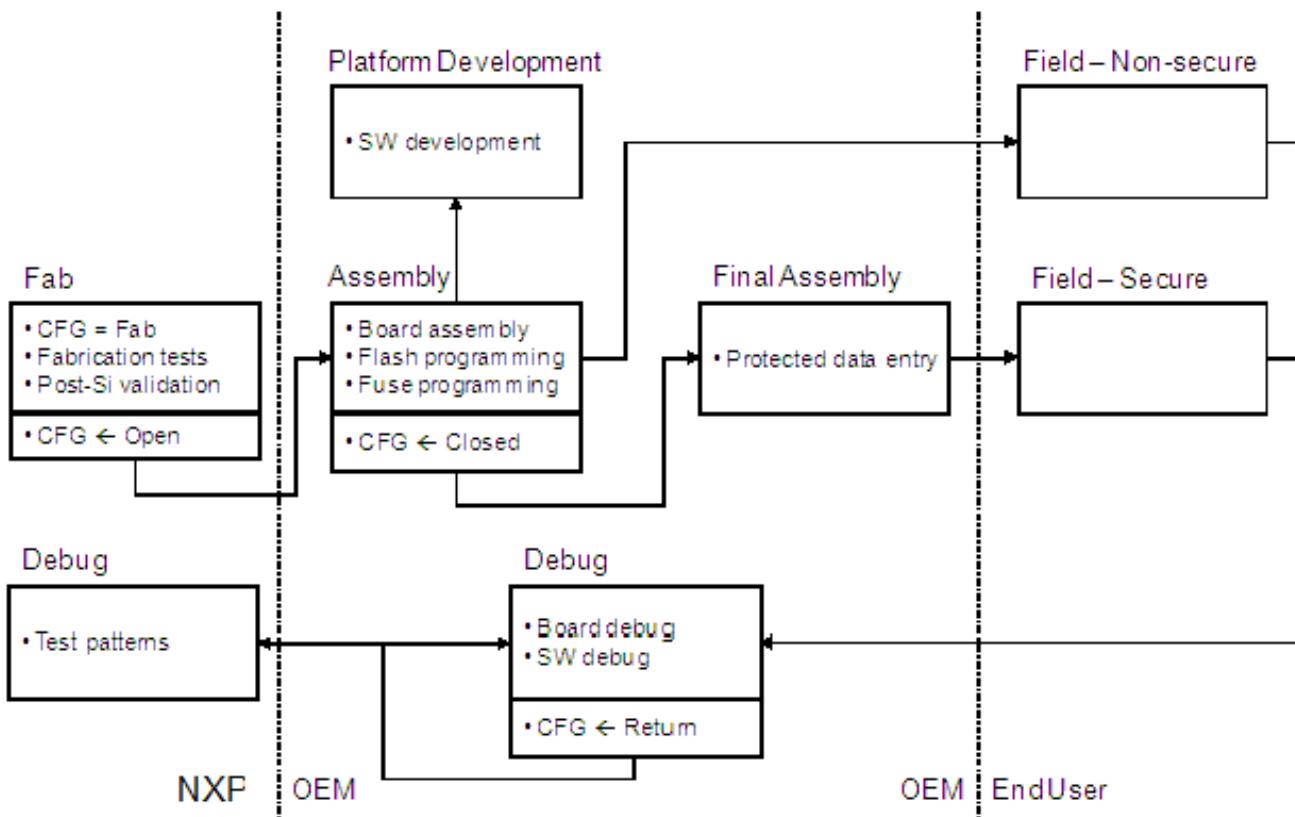


Figure 2-3. Device security configuration life cycle

## 2.6.1 Field return for retest procedure

Manufacturers can enable the debugging restrictions designed to protect the device keys and other sensitive data on the devices shipped to the end users. These debugging restrictions include these measures:

- Disabling JTAG (using JTAG\_SMODE+KTE, or SJC\_DISABLE fuses).
- Preventing the execution of unauthorized bootloader software (using the SEC\_CONFIG[1] fuse).

Naturally, these debugging restrictions also constrain the legitimate debugging of the field-return devices with suspected faults. The chip includes a field-return configuration to enable the legitimate debugging, including the possibility for NXP to run the test modes on returned parts. The field-return configuration:

- Enables JTAG (overriding JTAG\_SMODE+KTE and SJC\_DISABLE fuses).
- Enables the execution of unsigned bootloader software as in the open configuration (overriding the SEC\_CONFIG[1] fuse).

## Security configuration

To protect the sensitive data already provisioned, the field-return configuration permanently disables the access to the device keys (including access from the DCP modules<sup>1</sup>).

The entry to the field-return configuration is strictly controlled to deter inadvertent, unauthorized, or widespread use.

- The FIELD\_RETURN fuse is protected by the FIELD\_RETURN\_LOCK sticky bit in the OCOTP\_CTRL fuse controller.
- Before leaving the boot ROM, the FIELD\_RETURN\_LOCK bit is set by default, so that the FIELD\_RETURN fuse cannot be burned.
- Setting the FIELD\_RETURN\_LOCK bit can be avoided by including the unlock command in the CSF or DCD (open configuration only) which provides:
  - The CSF and bootloader software pass signature verification (Closed configuration).
  - The unlock command arguments match the value in the UNIQUE\_ID fuses on the device.

### NOTE

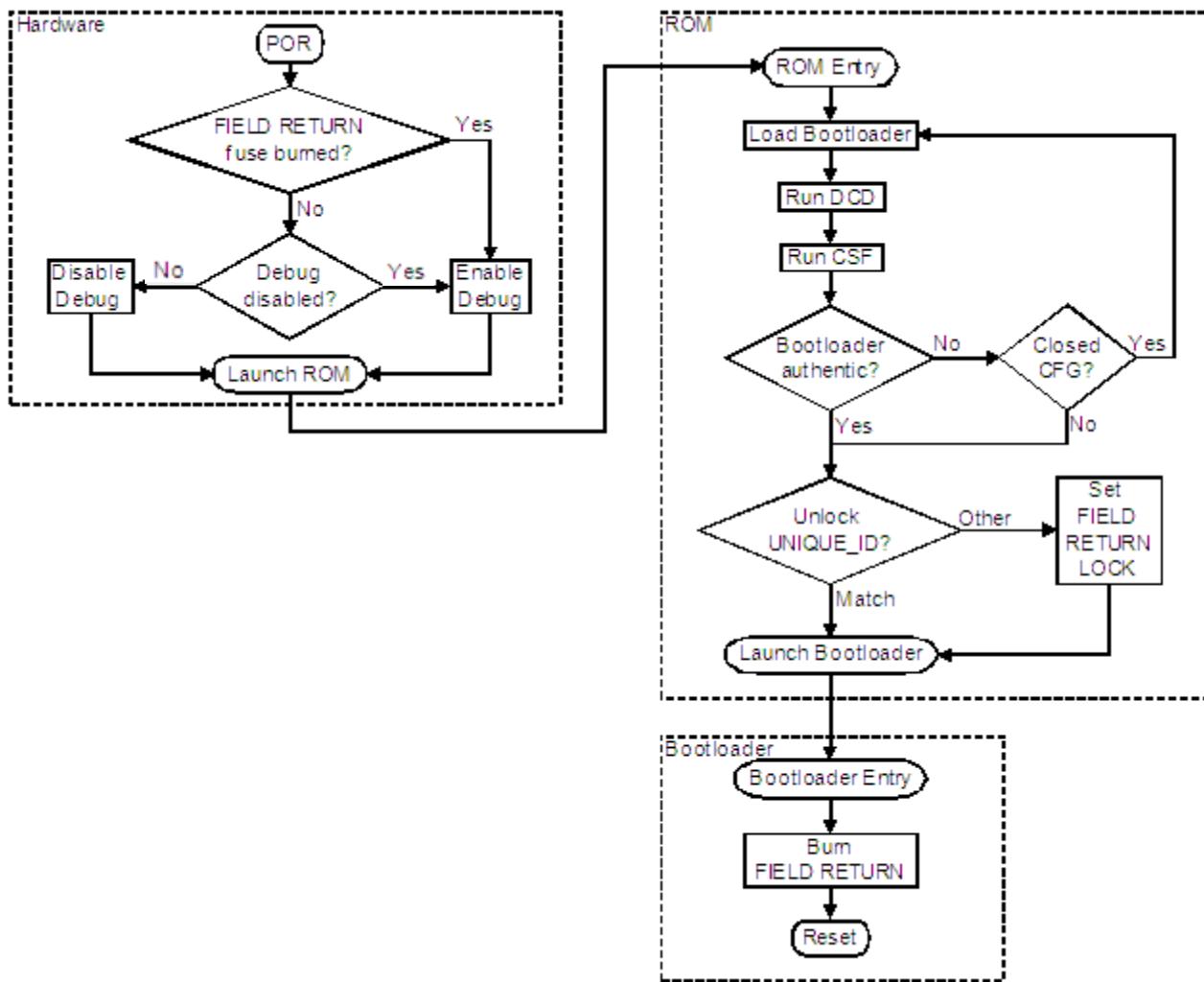
OCOTP\_CTRL fuse controller clocks should be enabled for the FIELD\_RETURN functionality.

The typical mass-production bootloader on the shipped devices has no unlock command, so the entry to the field-return configuration requires booting to a special bootloader which is customized for a single device. For the closed devices, a special bootloader must be signed for that single device, so that it cannot be used to unlock other devices even if it leaks to the end users.

The boot flow to activate the field-return configuration is shown in this figure:

---

1. It disables DCP access to keys through the SNVS module. DCP access to SW-GP2 is not affected.

**Figure 2-4. HAB FIELD\_RETURN flowchart**

When the FIELD\_RETURN fuse is burned, the part is nearly returned to its open configuration after the next POR, including:

- Enabling the JTAG (overriding blocking by other means).
- Enabling the unsigned images to execute, as in the open configuration.
- Block access to the sensitive keys provided by the OCOTP\_CTRL or SNVS to the DCP.
- Note that the field-return configuration is required for NXP to run the test patterns even on non-secure products (open configuration).



# Chapter 3

## System Boot

### 3.1 Chip-specific Boot Information

This device has various peripherals supported by the ROM bootloader.

**Table 3-1. ROM Bootloader Peripheral PinMux**

Peripheral	Instance	Port (IO function)	PAD	Mode	Use
LPUART	1	LPUART1_TX	GPIO_AD_B0_12	ALT2	Can be used for serial downloader mode. Refer to <a href="#">Serial Downloader</a> for more information.
		LPUART1_RX	GPIO_AD_B0_13	ALT2	
LPSPI	1	LPSPI1_SCK	GPIO_SD_B0_00	ALT4	Serial NOR/EEPROM connected to one of the LPSPI ports can be used as a recovery device. Refer to <a href="#">Recovery devices</a> for more information.  <b>Note:</b> recovery device boot is disabled by default. Fuses must be blown to enable and configure this option.
		LPSPI1_SDO	GPIO_SD_B0_02	ALT4	
		LPSPI1_SDI	GPIO_SD_B0_03	ALT4	
		LPSPI1_PCS0	GPIO_SD_B0_01	ALT4	
	2	LPSPI2_SCK	GPIO_SD_B1_07	ALT4	
		LPSPI2_SDO	GPIO_SD_B1_08	ALT4	
		LPSPI2_SDI	GPIO_SD_B1_09	ALT4	
		LPSPI2_PCS0	GPIO_SD_B1_06	ALT4	
	3	LPSPI3_SCK	GPIO_AD_B0_00	ALT7	
		LPSPI3_SDO	GPIO_AD_B0_01	ALT7	
		LPSPI3_SDI	GPIO_AD_B0_02	ALT7	
		LPSPI3_PCS0	GPIO_AD_B0_03	ALT7	
	4	LPSPI4_SCK	GPIO_B0_03	ALT3	
		LPSPI4_SDO	GPIO_B0_02	ALT3	
		LPSPI4_SDI	GPIO_B0_01	ALT3	
		LPSPI4_PCS0	GPIO_B0_00	ALT3	
SEMC NAND	N/A	SEMC_DATA00	GPIO_EMC_00	ALT0	Parallel NAND flash connected to the SEMC is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Parallel NAND flash Boot over SEMC</a> for more information.
		SEMC_DATA01	GPIO_EMC_01	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA02	GPIO_EMC_02	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA03	GPIO_EMC_03	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA04	GPIO_EMC_04	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA05	GPIO_EMC_05	ALT0	

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-1. ROM Bootloader Peripheral PinMux (continued)**

Peripheral	Instance	Port (IO function)	PAD	Mode	Use
		SEMC_DATA06	GPIO_EMC_06	ALT0	<b>Note:</b> By default SEMC_CSX0 is used as the chip select. Other chip selects can be used, but fuses must be blown to select these configurations (GPIO overrides cannot be used to configure this option).
		SEMC_DATA07	GPIO_EMC_07	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA08	GPIO_EMC_30	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA09	GPIO_EMC_31	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA10	GPIO_EMC_32	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA11	GPIO_EMC_33	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA12	GPIO_EMC_34	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA13	GPIO_EMC_35	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA14	GPIO_EMC_36	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA15	GPIO_EMC_37	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR09	GPIO_EMC_18	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR11	GPIO_EMC_19	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR12	GPIO_EMC_20	ALT0	
		SEMC_BA1	GPIO_EMC_22	ALT0	
		SEMC_RDY	GPIO_EMC_40	ALT0	
		SEMC_CSX0	GPIO_EMC_41	ALT0	
		SEMC_CSX1	GPIO_B0_00	ALT6	
		SEMC_CSX2	GPIO_B0_01	ALT6	
		SEMC_CSX3	GPIO_B0_02	ALT6	
		SEMC_ADDR08	GPIO_EMC_17	ALT0	
SEMC NOR	N/A	SEMC_DATA00	GPIO_EMC_00	ALT0	Parallel NOR flash connected to the SEMC is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Parallel NOR flash Boot over SEMC</a> for more information.  <b>Note:</b> By default SEMC_CSX0 is used as the chip select. Other chip selects can be used, but fuses must be blown to select these configurations (GPIO overrides cannot be used to configure this option).
		SEMC_DATA01	GPIO_EMC_01	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA02	GPIO_EMC_02	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA03	GPIO_EMC_03	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA04	GPIO_EMC_04	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA05	GPIO_EMC_05	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA06	GPIO_EMC_06	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA07	GPIO_EMC_07	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA08	GPIO_EMC_30	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA09	GPIO_EMC_31	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA10	GPIO_EMC_32	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA11	GPIO_EMC_33	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA12	GPIO_EMC_34	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA13	GPIO_EMC_35	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA14	GPIO_EMC_36	ALT0	
		SEMC_DATA15	GPIO_EMC_37	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR00	GPIO_EMC_09	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR01	GPIO_EMC_10	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR02	GPIO_EMC_11	ALT0	

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-1. ROM Bootloader Peripheral PinMux (continued)**

Peripheral	Instance	Port (IO function)	PAD	Mode	Use
		SEMC_ADDR03	GPIO_EMC_12	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR04	GPIO_EMC_13	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR05	GPIO_EMC_14	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR06	GPIO_EMC_15	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR07	GPIO_EMC_16	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR11	GPIO_EMC_19	ALT0	
		SEMC_ADDR12	GPIO_EMC_20	ALT0	
		SEMC_BA0	GPIO_EMC_21	ALT0	
		SEMC_BA1	GPIO_EMC_22	ALT0	
		SEMC_CSX0	GPIO_EMC_41	ALT0	
		SEMC_CSX1	GPIO_B0_00	ALT6	
		SEMC_CSX2	GPIO_B0_01	ALT6	
		SEMC_CSX3	GPIO_B0_02	ALT6	
		SEMC_ADDR08	GPIO_EMC_17	ALT0	
SD	1	USDHC1_CD_B	GPIO_SD_B1_12	ALT6	eMMC/MMC or SD/eSD connected to one of the USDHC ports is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Expansion device</a> for more information on USDHC boot.
		USDHC1_VSELECT	GPIO_B1_14	ALT6	
		USDHC1_RESET_B	GPIO_B1_15	ALT6	
		USDHC1_CMD	GPIO_SD_B0_00	ALT0	
		USDHC1_CLK	GPIO_SD_B0_01	ALT0	
		USDHC1_DATA0	GPIO_SD_B0_02	ALT0	
		USDHC1_DATA1	GPIO_SD_B0_03	ALT0	
		USDHC1_DATA2	GPIO_SD_B0_04	ALT0	
		USDHC1_DATA3	GPIO_SD_B0_05	ALT0	
		USDHC2_RESET_B	GPIO_SD_B1_06	ALT0	
FlexSPI NOR Flash - QSPI	2	USDHC2_CMD	GPIO_SD_B1_05	ALT0	QSPI memory attached to FlexSPI is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Serial NOR Flash Boot via FlexSPI</a> for more information. The ROM will read the 512-byte FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters
		USDHC2_CLK	GPIO_SD_B1_04	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA0	GPIO_SD_B1_03	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA1	GPIO_SD_B1_02	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA2	GPIO_SD_B1_01	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA3	GPIO_SD_B1_00	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA4	GPIO_SD_B1_08	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA5	GPIO_SD_B1_09	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA6	GPIO_SD_B1_10	ALT0	
		USDHC2_DATA7	GPIO_SD_B1_11	ALT0	
FlexSPI NOR Flash - QSPI	1	FLEXSPI_B_DATA3	GPIO_SD_B1_00	ALT1	QSPI memory attached to FlexSPI is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Serial NOR Flash Boot via FlexSPI</a> for more information. The ROM will read the 512-byte FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters
		FLEXSPI_B_DATA2	GPIO_SD_B1_01	ALT1	
		FLEXSPI_B_DATA1	GPIO_SD_B1_02	ALT1	
		FLEXSPI_B_DATA0	GPIO_SD_B1_03	ALT1	
		FLEXSPI_B_SCLK	GPIO_SD_B1_01	ALT1	

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-1. ROM Bootloader Peripheral PinMux (continued)**

Peripheral	Instance	Port (IO function)	PAD	Mode	Use
FlexSPI NOR - QSPI - 2nd Option	1	<i>FLEXSPI_B_DQS</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_05	ALT4	described in <a href="#">FlexSPI Serial NOR Flash Boot Operation</a> using the non-italicized pins.  <b>Note:</b> ROM can configure the italicized signals based on the FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters provided.
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_SS0_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_04	ALT4	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_SS1_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_01	ALT6	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DQS</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_05	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SS0_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_06	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SS1_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_00	ALT6	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SCLK</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_07	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA0</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_08	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA1</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_09	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA2</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_10	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA3</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_11	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SS0_B</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_15	ALT0	
FlexSPI NOR Flash - Octal	1	<i>FLEXSPI_A_SCLK</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_14	ALT0	QSPI memory attached to FlexSPI is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Serial NOR Flash Boot via FlexSPI</a> for more information. The ROM will read the 512-byte FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters described in <a href="#">FlexSPI Serial NOR Flash Boot Operation</a> using the non-italicized pins.  <b>Note:</b> These pins are a secondary pinout option for FlexSPI serial NOR flash boot.
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DQS</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_09	ALT0	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA0</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_13	ALT0	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA1</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_12	ALT0	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA2</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_11	ALT0	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA3</i>	GPIO_AD_B1_10	ALT0	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_DATA3</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_00	ALT1	Octal serial NOR flash memory attached to FlexSPI is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Serial NOR Flash Boot via FlexSPI</a> for more information. The ROM will read the 512-byte FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters described in <a href="#">FlexSPI Serial NOR Flash Boot Operation</a> using the non-italicized pins. For 8-bit wide memories the <i>FLEXSPI_B_DATA[3:0]</i> pins are combined with the <i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA[3:0]</i> lines to get the full 8-bit port.  <b>Note:</b> ROM can configure the italicized signals based on the FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters provided.
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_DATA2</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_01	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_DATA1</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_02	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_DATA0</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_03	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_SCLK</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_01	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_DQS</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_05	ALT4	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_SS0_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_04	ALT4	
		<i>FLEXSPI_B_SS1_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_01	ALT6	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DQS</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_05	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SS0_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_06	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SS1_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B0_00	ALT6	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SCLK</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_07	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA0</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_08	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA1</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_09	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA2</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_10	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_DATA3</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_11	ALT1	
FlexSPI NAND Flash	1	<i>FLEXSPI_A_DQS</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_05	ALT1	Serial NAND memory attached to FlexSPI is a primary boot option. Refer to <a href="#">Serial NAND Flash Boot over FlexSPI</a> for more information.
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SS0_B</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_06	ALT1	
		<i>FLEXSPI_A_SCLK</i>	GPIO_SD_B1_07	ALT1	

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-1. ROM Bootloader Peripheral PinMux (continued)**

Peripheral	Instance	Port (IO function)	PAD	Mode	Use
		FLEXSPI_A_DATA0	GPIO_SD_B1_08	ALT1	
		FLEXSPI_A_DATA1	GPIO_SD_B1_09	ALT1	
		FLEXSPI_A_DATA2	GPIO_SD_B1_10	ALT1	
		FLEXSPI_A_DATA3	GPIO_SD_B1_11	ALT1	
FlexSPI RESET		GPIO1_IO29	GPIO_AD_B1_13	ALT5	

This device configures the clock to the following state during boot.

**Table 3-2. ROM Clock Setting**

Register	Setting
CCM_CACRR	0x00000001
CCM_CBCDR	0x000A8200 (core clock = 396MHz, default boot frequency)
CCM_CSCDR1	0x06490B03
CCM_CBCMR	0x75AE8104
CCM_CSCMR1	0x67930001
CCM_ANALOG_PLL_ARM	0x80002042
CCM_ANALOG_PLL_SYS	0x80002001
CCM_ANALOG_PLL_USB1	0x80003040

### NOTE

1. The boot ROM enables MPU protection under HAB-closed mode, to prevent execution of any other supported memory regions than the ROM region, during boot code execution.

This feature puts restrictions on the SW debug on the RT106x chip. The debug tool needs to disable the MPU first, before executing the code on the device under HAB-closed mode.

2. The boot ROM enables LUART1 and USB1 interrupts in serial downloader mode, and it disables these interrupts before jumping to user applications. However, if the boot ROM execution is interrupted by the debug tool, it cannot disable these interrupts; the user application needs to disable these interrupts in the startup codes.

3. The boot ROM configures the PIT channel 0 and channel 1 registers but does not restore them before jumping to boot image. The user application needs to re-configure the PIT channels explicitly instead of relying on the default register values.
4. The PFD\_480\_PFD1 is selected as the FLEXSPI clock source. The user application needs to take special care on adjusting the PFD\_480\_PFD1 setting in the XiP boot case because the clock update impacts the FLEXSPI timing.

### **NOTE**

ROM does not support boot from FLEXSPI\_B port directly. ROM always seeks a valid Flash Configuration Block from the FLEXSPI\_A port and then re-configures the FLEXSPI controller using the valid parameters in the block read-out. This reconfiguration can include, but is not limited to, FLEXSPI\_B port support.

## **3.2 Overview**

The boot process begins at any Reset where the hardware reset logic forces the Arm core to begin execution starting from the on-chip boot ROM.

The boot ROM code uses the state of the internal register BOOT\_MODE[1:0] as well as the state of various eFuses and/or GPIO settings to determine the boot flow behavior of the device.

The main features of the ROM include:

- Support for booting from various boot devices
- Serial downloader support (USB OTG and UART)
- Device Configuration Data (DCD) and plugin
- Digital signature and encryption based High-Assurance Boot (HAB)
- Wake-up from the low-power modes
- Encrypted execute-in-place (XIP) on Serial NOR via FlexSPI interface powered by Bus Encryption Engine (BEE) and Data Co-Processor (DCP) controller

The boot ROM supports boot device as below:

- Serial NOR Flash via FlexSPI
- Serial NAND Flash via FlexSPI
- Parallel NOR Flash via SEMC
- RAWNAND Flash via SEMC

- SD/MMC
- SPI NOR/EEPROM via LPSPI

The boot ROM uses the state of the BOOT\_MODE and eFuses to determine the boot device. For development purposes, the eFuses used to determine the boot device may be overridden using the GPIO pin inputs.

The boot ROM code also allows the downloading of programs to be run on the device. An example is a provisioning program that can make further use of the serial connection to provide a boot device with a new image. Typically, the provisioning program is downloaded to the internal RAM and allows to program the boot devices, such as the FlexSPI NOR flash. The ROM serial downloader uses a high-speed USB in a non-stream mode connection.

The boot ROM allows waking up from the low-power modes. On reset, the ROM checks the power gating status register. When waking from the low-power mode, the core skips loading an image from the boot device and jumps to the address saved in PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0.

The Device Configuration Data (DCD) feature allows the boot ROM code to obtain the SOC configuration data from an external program image residing on the boot device. As an example, the DCD can be used to program the SDRAM controller for optimal settings, improving the boot performance. The DCD is restricted to the memory areas and peripheral addresses that are considered essential for the boot purposes (see [Write data command](#)).

A key feature of the boot ROM is the ability to perform a secure boot, also known as a High-Assurance Boot (HAB). This is supported by the HAB security library which is a subcomponent of the ROM code. The HAB uses a combination of hardware and software together with the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) protocol to protect the system from executing unauthorized programs. Before the HAB allows the user image to execute, the image must be signed. The signing process is done during the image build process by the private key holder and the signatures are then included as a part of the final program image. If configured to do so, the ROM verifies the signatures using the public keys included in the program image. In addition to supporting the digital signature verification to authenticate the program images, the encrypted boot is also supported. The encrypted boot can be used to prevent the cloning of the program image directly off the boot device. A secure boot with HAB can be performed on all boot devices supported on the chip in addition to the serial downloader. The HAB library in the boot ROM also provides the API functions, allowing the additional boot chain components (bootloaders) to extend the secure boot chain. The out-of-fab setting for the SEC\_CONFIG is the open configuration, in which the ROM/HAB performs the image authentication, but all authentication errors are ignored and the image is still allowed to execute.

This device supports fast wakeup from Suspend low-power mode using either IOMUXC\_GPR\_GPR16[CM7\_INIT\_VTOR] or SRC\_GPR1[PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0]. When either of these mechanisms are used, most or all of the ROM is bypassed during the wakeup including code authentication (HAB). The effect on system security of not re-authenticating on Suspend wakeup should be considered, when deciding if these features are used in a system with security requirements. If either of the fast wakeup mechanisms are used, then other measures might be required to ensure code is not altered while in low-power mode.

If Suspend fast wakeup is used in a secure system:

- Sensitive data should be actively erased and/or wrapped with a key before Suspend entry.
- Periodic re-authentication and/or integrity checking of the application when not in a low-power mode is recommended.
- Actively write/verify that the correct information is stored in both CM7\_INIT\_VTOR and PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 as part of the Suspend mode entry sequence (limit the window of time when an attacker or error could load incorrect information into either field).

In order to disable fast wakeup and help ensure that code is authenticated on a Suspend wakeup:

1. Actively write or verify that CM7\_INIT\_VTOR is configured for the default value as part of the Suspend mode entry sequence.

#### **NOTE**

CM7\_INIT\_VTOR takes precedence over PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0. So if PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 is being used, it is important to make sure that CM7\_INIT\_VTOR is configured for the default value.

2. Blow the FORCE\_COLD\_BOOT fuse to prevent use of the PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 field.

### **3.3 Boot modes**

During reset, the chip checks the power gating controller status register.

During boot, the core's behavior is defined by the boot mode pin settings, as described in [Boot mode pin settings](#). When waking up from the low-power boot mode, the core skips the clock settings. The boot ROM checks that the PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 (see [Persistent bits](#)) is a pointer to a valid address space (OCRAM). If the

PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 is a pointer to a valid range, it starts the execution using the entry point from the PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 register. If the PERSISTENT\_ENTRY0 is a pointer to an invalid range, the core performs the system reset.

### 3.3.1 Boot mode pin settings

The device has four boot modes (one is reserved for NXP use). The boot mode is selected based on the binary value stored in the internal BOOT\_MODE register.

The BOOT\_MODE is initialized by sampling the BOOT\_MODE0 and BOOT\_MODE1 inputs on the rising edge of the POR\_B. After these inputs are sampled, their subsequent state does not affect the contents of the BOOT\_MODE internal register. The state of the internal BOOT\_MODE register may be read from the BMOD[1:0] field of the SRC Boot Mode Register (SRC\_SBMR2). The available boot modes are: Boot From Fuses, serial boot via USB, and Internal Boot. See this table for settings:

**Table 3-3. Boot MODE pin settings**

BOOT_MODE[1:0]	Boot Type
00	Boot From Fuses
01	Serial Downloader
10	Internal Boot
11	Reserved

### 3.3.2 High-level boot sequence

The figure found here show the high-level boot ROM code flow.

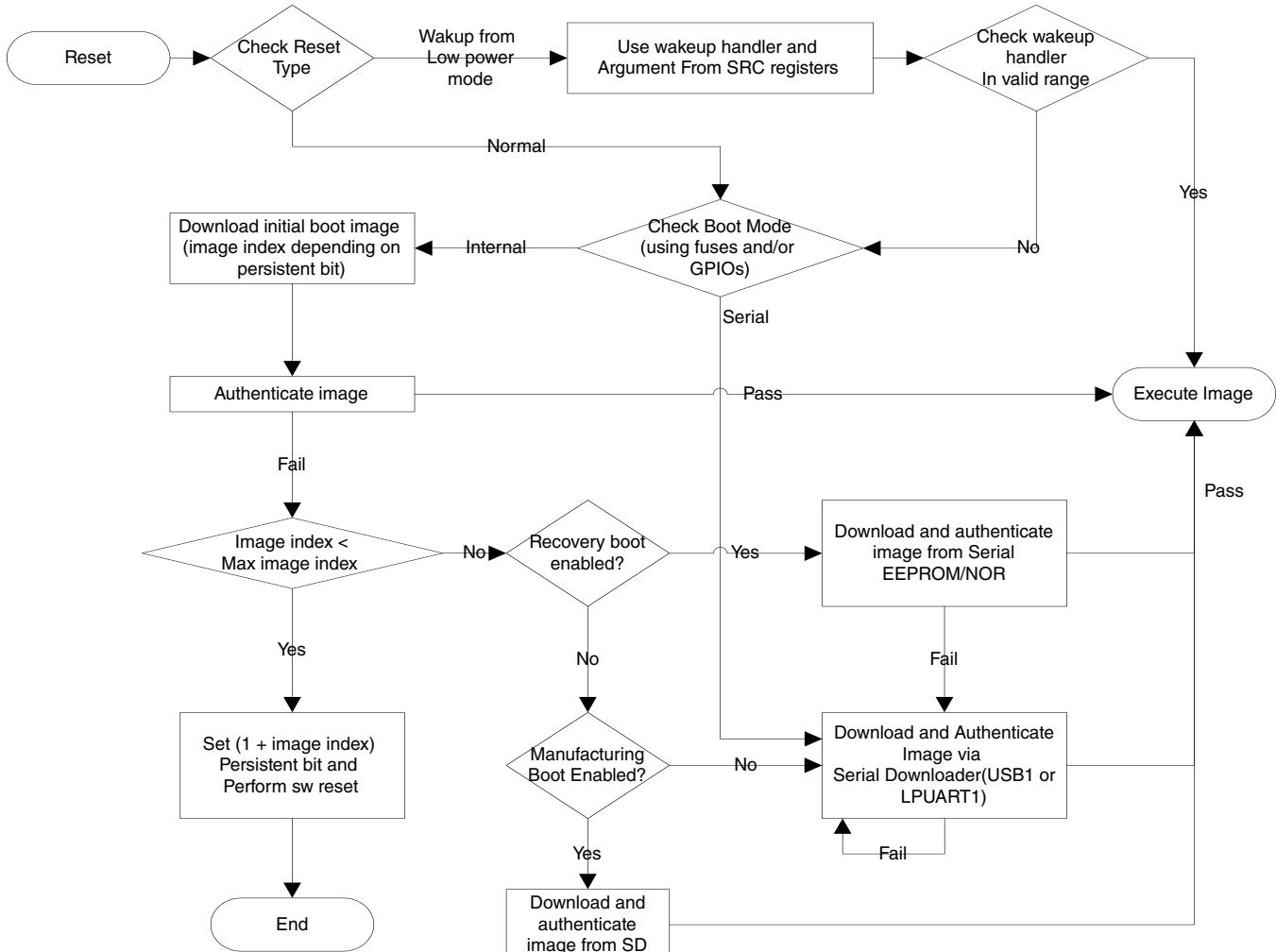


Figure 3-1. Boot flow

### 3.3.3 Boot From Fuses mode (BOOT\_MODE[1:0] = 00b)

A value of 00b in the BOOT\_MODE[1:0] register selects the Boot From Fuses mode.

This mode is similar to the Internal Boot mode described in [Internal Boot mode \(BOOT\\_MODE\[1:0\] = 0b10\)](#) with one difference. In this mode, the GPIO boot override pins are ignored. The boot ROM code uses the boot eFuse settings only. This mode also supports a secure boot using HAB.

If set to Boot From Fuses, the boot flow is controlled by the BT\_FUSE\_SEL eFuse value. If BT\_FUSE\_SEL = 0, indicating that the boot device (for example, flash) was not programmed yet, the boot flow jumps directly to the Serial Downloader. If BT\_FUSE\_SEL = 1, the normal boot flow is followed, where the ROM attempts to boot from the selected boot device.

The first time a board is used, the default eFuses may be configured incorrectly for the hardware on the platform. In such case, the Boot ROM code may try to boot from a device that does not exist. This may cause an electrical/logic violation on some pads. Using the Boot From Fuses mode addresses this problem.

Setting the BT\_FUSE\_SEL=0 forces the ROM code to jump directly to the Serial Downloader. This allows a bootloader to be downloaded which can then provision the boot device with a program image and blow the BT\_FUSE\_SEL and the other boot configuration eFuses. After the reset, the boot ROM code determines that the BT\_FUSE\_SEL is blown (BT\_FUSE\_SEL = 1) and the ROM code performs an internal boot according to the new eFUSE settings. This allows the user to set BOOT\_MODE[1:0]=00b on a production device and burn the fuses on the same device (by forcing the entry to the Serial Downloader), without changing the value of the BOOT\_MODE[1:0] or the pullups/pulldowns on the BOOT\_MODE pins.

### 3.3.4 Serial Downloader (BOOT\_MODE[1:0] = 01b)

The Serial Downloader provides a means to download a Program Image to the chip over USB or UART serial connection. In this mode, typically a host PC can communicate to the ROM bootloader using serial download protocol. Serial downloader and the protocol are discussed in [Serial Downloader](#).

### 3.3.5 Internal Boot mode (BOOT\_MODE[1:0] = 0b10)

A value of 0b10 in the BOOT\_MODE[1:0] register selects the Internal Boot mode. In this mode, the processor continues to execute the boot code from the internal boot ROM.

The boot code performs the hardware initialization, loads the program image from the chosen boot device, performs the image validation using the HAB library (see [Boot security settings](#)), and then jumps to an address derived from the program image. If an error occurs during the internal boot, the boot code jumps to the Serial Downloader (see [Serial Downloader \(BOOT\\_MODE\[1:0\] = 01b\)](#)). A secure boot using the HAB is possible in all the three boot modes.

When set to the Internal Boot, the boot flow may be controlled by a combination of eFuse settings with an option of overriding the fuse settings using the General Purpose I/O (GPIO) pins. The GPIO Boot Select FUSE (BT\_FUSE\_SEL) determines whether the ROM uses the GPIO pins for a selected number of configuration parameters or eFuses in this mode.

- If BT\_FUSE\_SEL = 1, all boot options are controlled by the eFuses described in [Boot eFuse descriptions](#).
- If BT\_FUSE\_SEL = 0, the specific boot configuration parameters may be set using the GPIO pins rather than eFuses. The fuses that can be overridden when in this mode are indicated in the GPIO column of [Boot eFuse descriptions](#). [GPIO boot overrides](#) provides the details of the GPIO pins.

The use of the GPIO overrides is intended for development since these pads are used for other purposes in the deployed products. NXP recommends controlling the boot configuration by the eFuses in the deployed products and reserving the use of the GPIO mode for the development and testing purposes only.

### 3.3.6 Boot security settings

The internal boot modes use one of three security configurations.

- Closed: This level is intended for use with shipping-secure products. All HAB functions are executed and the security hardware is initialized (the Security Controller or SNVS enters the Secure state), the DCD is processed if present, and the program image is authenticated by the HAB before its execution. All detected errors are logged, and the boot flow is aborted with the control being passed to the serial downloader. At this level, the execution does not leave the internal ROM unless the target executable image is authenticated.
- Open: This level is intended for use in non-secure products or during the development phases of a secure product. All HAB functions are executed as for a closed device. The security hardware is initialized (except for the SNVS which is left in the Non-Secure state), the DCD is processed if present, and the program image is authenticated by the HAB before its execution. All detected errors are logged, but have no influence on the boot flow which continues as if the errors did not occur. This configuration is useful for a secure product development because the program image runs even if the authentication data is missing or incorrect, and the error log can be examined to determine the cause of the authentication failure.
- Field Return: This level is intended for the parts returned from the shipped products.

## 3.4 Device configuration

This section describes the external inputs that control the behavior of the Boot ROM code.

This includes the boot device selection (FlexSPI NOR, FlexSPI NAND, Parallel NOR, SD, MMC, and so on), boot device configuration (SD bus width, speed, and so on), and other. In general, the source for this configuration comes from the eFuses embedded inside the chip. However, certain configuration parameters can be sourced from the GPIO pins, allowing further flexibility during the development process.

### 3.4.1 Boot eFuse descriptions

This table is a comprehensive list of the configuration parameters that the ROM uses.

**Table 3-4. Boot eFuse descriptions**

Fuse	Config uratio n	Definition	GPIO <sup>1</sup>	Shipped value	Settings <sup>2</sup>
BT_FUSE_SEL	OEM	In the Internal Boot mode BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 10, the BT_FUSE_SEL fuse determines whether the boot settings indicated by a Yes in the GPIO column are controlled by the GPIO pins or the eFuse settings in the On-Chip OTP Controller (OCOTP).  In the Boot From Fuse mode BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 00, the BT_FUSE_SEL fuse indicates whether the bit configuration eFuses are programmed.	NA	0	If BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 0b10: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 - The bits of the SBMR are overridden by the GPIO pins.</li><li>• 1 - The specific bits of the SBMR are controlled by the eFuse settings.</li></ul> If BOOT_MODE[1:0] = 0b00 <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0—The BOOT configuration eFuses are not programmed yet. The boot flow jumps to the serial downloader.</li><li>• 1—The BOOT configuration eFuses are programmed. The regular boot flow is performed.</li></ul>
SEC_CONFIG[1:0]	SEC_C ONFIG[ 0] - NXP  SEC_C ONFIG[ 1] - OEM	Security Configuration, as defined in <a href="#">Boot security settings</a>	NA	01	00—Reserved 01—Open (allows any program image, even if the authentication fails) 1x—Closed (The program image executes only if authenticated)
FIELD_RETURN	OEM	Enables the NXP reserved modes.			0—The NXP reserved modes are disabled. 1—The NXP reserved modes are enabled.

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-4. Boot eFuse descriptions (continued)**

Fuse	Configuratio n	Definition	GPIO <sup>1</sup>	Shipped value	Settings <sup>2</sup>
SRK_HASH[255:0]	OEM	256-bit hash value of the super root key (SRK_HASH)	NA	0	Settings vary—used by HAB
UNIQUE_ID[63:0]	NXP	Device Unique ID, 64-bit UID	NA	Unique ID	Settings vary—used by HAB
BOOT_CFG1[7:0]	OEM	Boot configuration 1	Yes	0	Specific to the selected boot mode
BOOT_CFG2[2:0]	OEM	Boot configuration 2	Yes	0	Specific to the selected boot mode
LPB_BOOT	OEM	Low-Power Boot	No	0	
WDOG_ENABLE	OEM	Watchdog reset counter enable	No	0	0—The watchdog reset counter is disabled during the serial downloader. 1—The watchdog reset counter is enabled during the serial downloader.
PAD_SETTINGS	OEM	Override values for the SD/MMC and NAND boot modes	No	0	Override these IO PAD settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PAD_SETTINGS[0]—Slew Rate</li><li>• PAD_SETTINGS[3:1]—Drive Strength</li><li>• PAD_SETTINGS[5:4]—Speed Settings</li></ul>

1. This setting can be overridden by the GPIO settings when the BT\_FUSE\_SEL fuse is intact. See [GPIO Boot Overrides](#) for the corresponding GPIO pin.
2. 0 = intact fuse and 1= blown fuse

### 3.4.2 GPIO boot overrides

This table provides a list of the GPIO boot overrides:

**Table 3-5. GPIO Boot Overrides**

Package Pin	Direction on reset	eFuse
GPIO_AD_B0_04/BOOT_MODE0	Input	Boot Mode selection
GPIO_AD_B0_05/BOOT_MODE1	Input	
GPIO_B0_04	Input	BOOT_CFG1[0]
GPIO_B0_05	Input	BOOT_CFG1[1]
GPIO_B0_06	Input	BOOT_CFG1[2]
GPIO_B0_07	Input	BOOT_CFG1[3]
GPIO_B0_08	Input	BOOT_CFG1[4]
GPIO_B0_09	Input	BOOT_CFG1[5]

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-5. GPIO Boot Overrides (continued)**

Package Pin	Direction on reset	eFuse
GPIO_B0_10	Input	BOOT_CFG1[6]
GPIO_B0_11	Input	BOOT_CFG1[7]
GPIO_B0_12	Input	BOOT_CFG2[0]
GPIO_B0_13	Input	BOOT_CFG2[1]
GPIO_B0_14	Input	BOOT_CFG2[2]
GPIO_B0_15	Input	BOOT_CFG2[3]

**NOTE**

Refer to the Fusemap chapter for more information on fuses mapped to the GPIO pins.

The input pins provided are sampled at boot, and can be used to override the corresponding eFuse values, depending on the setting of the BT\_FUSE\_SEL fuse.

### 3.4.3 Device Configuration Data (DCD)

The DCD is the configuration information contained in the program image (external to the ROM) that the ROM interprets to configure various on-chip peripherals. See [Device Configuration Data \(DCD\)](#) for more details on DCD.

## 3.5 Device initialization

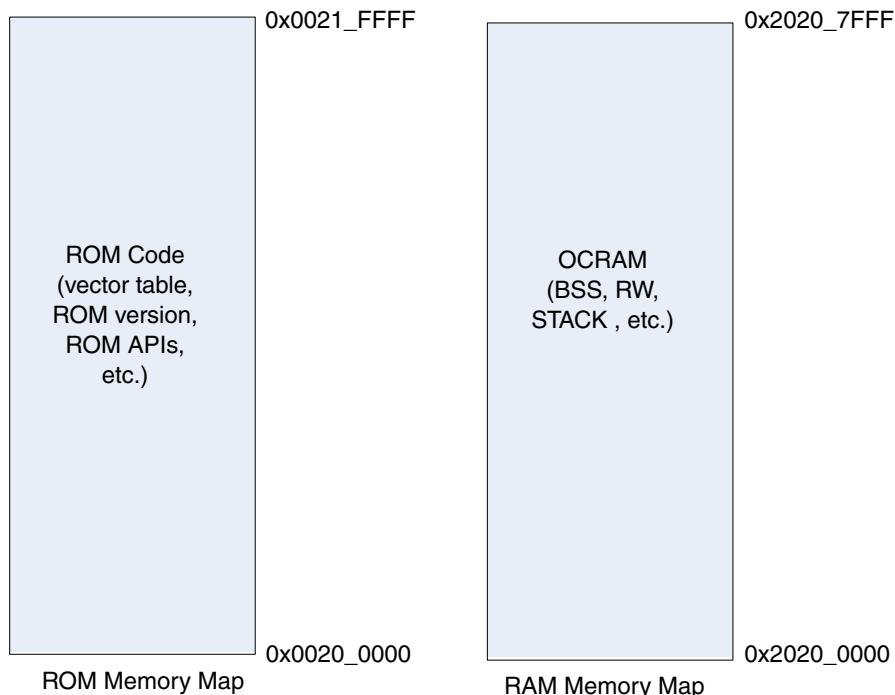
This section describes the details of the ROM and provides the initialization details.

This includes details on:

- The ROM memory map
- The RAM memory map
- On-chip blocks that the ROM must use or change the POR register default values
- Clock initialization
- Enabling the L1 I/D cache
- Exception handling and interrupt handling

### 3.5.1 Internal ROM/RAM memory map

These figures show the internal ROM and RAM memory map:

**Figure 3-2. Internal ROM and RAM memory map****NOTE**

The entire OCARAM region can be used freely after the boot.

### 3.5.2 Boot block activation

The boot ROM affects a number of different hardware blocks which are activated and play a vital role in the boot flow.

The ROM configures and uses the following blocks (listed in an alphabetical order) during the boot process. Note that the blocks actually used depend on the boot mode and the boot device selection:

Block	Description
CCM	Clock Control Module
FlexSPI	Flexible SPI Interface which supports serial NOR, Serial NAND and serial RAM devices
OCOTP	On Chip One Time Programmable Controller containing the eFuses
IOMUXC	I/O Multiplexer Control which allows the GPIO use to override the eFuse boot settings
IOMUX GPR	I/O Multiplexer control General Purpose Registers
LPSPI	Low Power SPI interface which supports serial NOR/EEPROM devices
SEMC	Smart External Memory Controller which supports parallel NOR and RAWNAND (SLC) devices

*Table continues on the next page...*

Block	Description
SNVS	Secure Non-Volatile Storage
SRC	System Reset Controller
USB	Used for Serial download of a boot device provisioning program
uSDHC	Ultra-Secure Digital Host Controller
WDOG 1	WatchDog Timer
TRNG	True Random Number Generator
PIT	Periodic Interrupt Timer

### 3.5.3 Clocks at boot time

The table below shows the various clocks and their sources used by the ROM.

**Table 3-6. Normal Frequency Clock Configurations**

BOOT_FREQ(0x460[2])	LPB_BOOT(0x470[22:21])	Core Clock Frequency(MHz)
0	0	396
	1	198
	2	99
	3	49.5
1	0	528
	1	264
	2	132
	3	66

Following reset, the Arm core has access to all peripherals. The ROM code will disable the clocks associated with the following Clock Gate Enables. See the [CCM Chapter's System Clocks section](#) for information about the CCM output clocks' system-level connectivity.

**Table 3-7. List of Disabled Clock Gate Enables**

Clock Name
CCM_CCGR0(CG6)
CCM_CCGR0(CG7)
CCM_CCGR0(CG8)
CCM_CCGR0(CG9)
CCM_CCGR0(CG10)
CCM_CCGR0(CG12)
CCM_CCGR0(CG13)
CCM_CCGR0(CG14)

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-7. List of Disabled Clock Gate Enables (continued)**

Clock Name
CCM_CCGR1(CG0)
CCM_CCGR1(CG1)
CCM_CCGR1(CG2)
CCM_CCGR1(CG3)
CCM_CCGR1(CG4)
CCM_CCGR1(CG5)
CCM_CCGR1(CG6)
CCM_CCGR1(CG8)
CCM_CCGR1(CG12)
CCM_CCGR2(CG1)
CCM_CCGR2(CG3)
CCM_CCGR2(CG4)
CCM_CCGR2(CG5)
CCM_CCGR2(CG14)
CCM_CCGR2(CG15)
CCM_CCGR3(CG0)
CCM_CCGR3(CG1)
CCM_CCGR3(CG3)
CCM_CCGR3(CG5)
CCM_CCGR3(CG10)
CCM_CCGR3(CG11)
CCM_CCGR3(CG12)
CCM_CCGR3(CG13)
CCM_CCGR4(CG8)
CCM_CCGR4(CG9)
CCM_CCGR4(CG10)
CCM_CCGR4(CG11)
CCM_CCGR4(CG12)
CCM_CCGR4(CG13)
CCM_CCGR4(CG14)
CCM_CCGR4(CG15)
CCM_CCGR5(CG1)
CCM_CCGR5(CG3)
CCM_CCGR5(CG4)
CCM_CCGR5(CG7)
CCM_CCGR5(CG9)
CCM_CCGR5(CG10)
CCM_CCGR5(CG11)
CCM_CCGR5(CG12)

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-7. List of Disabled Clock Gate Enables (continued)**

Clock Name
CCM_CCGR5(CG13)
CCM_CCGR6(CG0)
CCM_CCGR6(CG1)
CCM_CCGR6(CG2)
CCM_CCGR6(CG5)
CCM_CCGR6(CG6)
CCM_CCGR6(CG7)
CCM_CCGR6(CG8)
CCM_CCGR6(CG12)
CCM_CCGR6(CG13)
CCM_CCGR6(CG14)
CCM_CCGR6(CG15)

The boot ROM configures critical clock-related registers as follows, boot at 396 MHz by default:

CCM_ANALOG_PLL_ARM	0x80002402
CCM_ANALOG_PLL_SYS	0x80002001
CCM_ANALOG_PLL_USB1	0x80003040
CCM_ANALOG_PFD_528	0x18131818
CCM_ANALOG_PFD_480	0x0F1A2323
CCM_CACRR	0x00000001
CCM_CBCDR	0x000A8200
CCM_CSCDR1	0x06490B0C
CCM_CBCMR	0x35AE8304
CCM_CSCMR1	0x67830001

### 3.5.4 Enabling Caches

The boot ROM includes a feature that enables the caches to improve the boot speed.

L1 instruction cache is enabled at the start of image download. And, the L1 data cache is enabled at the start of image authentication.

By default, the L1-ICache and DCache are enabled by ROM. However, there are fuse bits that can be programmed for ROM not to enable the L1 I/DCache at boot.

The Cache features are controlled by the BT\_ICACHE\_DISABLE fuse and BT\_DCACHE\_DISABLE fuses. By default, both fuses are not blown meaning the ROM uses the L1-ICache and L1-DCache of the Arm core. This improves the performance of the HAB signature verification software.

### 3.5.5 Exception handling

The exception vectors (interrupt vectors/vector table) are located at the start of ROM. During the boot phase, CPU loads the SP and PC from exception vectors and then boot to ROM.

After booting, the program image can relocate the vectors as required.

### 3.5.6 Interrupt handling during boot

No special interrupt-handling routines are required during the boot process. The interrupts are disabled during the boot ROM execution and may be enabled in a later boot stage.

### 3.5.7 Persistent bits

Some modes of the boot ROM require the registers that keep their values after a warm reset. The SRC General-Purpose registers are used for this purpose.

See this table for persistent bits list and description:

**Table 3-8. Persistent bits**

Bit name	Bit location	Description
PERSIST_SECONDARY_BOOT	SRC_GPR10[30]	This bit identifies which image must be used—primary and secondary. Used only for eMMC/SD/FlexSPI NOR boot.
PERSISTENT_ENTRY0[31:0]	SRC_GPR1[31:0]	Holds the entry function for the CPU0 to wake up from the low-power mode.
PERSISTENT_ARG0[31:0]	SRC_GPR2[31:0]	Holds the argument of entry function for the CPU0 to wake up from the low-power mode.
PERSIST_REDUNDANT_BOOT	SRC_GPR10[27:26]	This field identifies which image must be used - 0/1/2/3. Used for both SPI NAND and SLC raw NAND devices.

## 3.6 Boot devices

The chip supports the following boot flash devices:

- Serial NOR flash via FlexSPI Interface
- Serial NAND Flash via FlexSPI Interface
- Parallel NOR flash with the Smart External Memory Controller (SEMC), located on CS0, 16-bit bus width.
- NAND Flash with SEMC interface, located on CS0, 8-bit/16-bit bus width.
- SD/MMC/eSD/SDXC/eMMC4.4 via uSDHC interface, supporting high capacity cards
- Serial NOR/EEPROM boot via LPSPI

The selection of the external boot device type is controlled by the BOOT\_CFG1[7:4] eFUSES. See this table for more details:

**Table 3-9. Boot device selection**

BOOT_CFG1[7:4]	Boot device
0000b	Serial NOR boot via FlexSPI
01xxb	SD Boot via uSDHC
10xxb	eMMC/MMC boot via uSDHC
001xb	SLC NAND boot via SEMC
0001b	Parallel NOR boot via SEMC
11xxb	Serial NAND boot via FlexSPI

### NOTE

A user can use the LPSPI to boot from Serial NOR/EEPROM. Booting from Serial NOR/EEPROM via an LPSPI port is not intended as the primary device, but as a recovery boot device if the primary boot device fails.

In order to enable a recovery boot device, EEPROM\_RECOVERY\_EN fuse must be set to 1, and other fuses listed in [Serial NOR/EEPROM eFUSE configuration](#) must be properly set.

### 3.6.1 Serial NOR Flash Boot via FlexSPI

### 3.6.1.1 Serial NOR eFUSE Configuration

Table 3-10. Fuse definition for Serial NOR over FlexSPI

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
BOOT_CFG1[0]	OEM	xSPI FLASH Auto Probe	Yes	0	0 – Disabled 1 – Enabled
BOOT_CFG1[1]	OEM	Encrypted XIP	Yes	0	0 – Disabled 1 – Enabled
BOOT_CFG1[3:2]	OEM	xSPI FLASH Auto Probe Type	Yes	0	0 – QuadSPI NOR 1 – MXIC Octal 2 – Micron Octal 3 – Adesto Octal
BOOT_CFG1[7:4]	OEM	Boot device selection	Yes	0	0 – Serial NOR device is selected as boot device
BOOT_CFG2[2:0]	OEM	Flash Type	Yes	0	000b–Device supports 3B (0x03 + 24-bit Address) read by default (command: 0x03, SPI mode) 001b–Device supports 4B (0x13 + 24-bit Address) read by default (command: 0x13, SPI mode) 010b–HyperFlash 1V8 (HyperBus Protocol) 011b–HyperFlash 3V3 (HyperBus protocol) 100b–MXIC Octal DDR (command: 0xEE,0x11, OPI mode) 101b–Micron Octal DDR (command: 0xFD, OPI mode) 110b–Reserved 111b–QSPI device supports 3B read by default (on secondary pinmux option) (command: 0x03, SPI mode)
0x6E0[3:1] (BOOT_CONFIG_MISC)	OEM	xSPI FLASH Frequency	No	0	0 – 100MHz 1 – 120MHz 2 – 133MHz 3 – 166MHz 5 – 80MHz 6 – 60MHz Others – Reserved
0x6E0[5:4] (BOOT_CONFIG_MISC)	OEM	Hold time before access the Flash device	No	0	0 – 500us 1 – 1ms 2 – 3ms

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-10. Fuse definition for Serial NOR over FlexSPI (continued)**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
					3 – 10ms
0x6E0[11:8] (BOOT_CONFIG_MISC)	OEM	xSPI FLASH Dummy Cycle	No	0	0 – Dummy cycles is auto-probed Others – Actual dummy cycles for Read command
0x6E0[15:12] (BOOT_CONFIG_MISC)	OEM	xSPI FLASH image size	No	0	0 – Image size equals to Secondary Image offset 1 – 1MB 2 – 2MB ... – ... 12 – 12MB 13 – 256KB 14 – 512KB 15 – 768KB
0x6E0[23:16] (BOOT_CONFIG_MISC)	OEM	xSPI FLASH_SEC_IMAGE_OF_FSET	No	0	Offset = 256KB × fuse value

### NOTE

If the xSPI FLASH Auto Probe feature is enabled, the following is the logic how this feature works with other fuse combinations:

- Flash Type - If Flash type is 0, the "xSPI FLASH Auto Probe Type" takes effect for the Flash type selection. If Flash Type is greater than 1, the "Flash Type" Fuse is used for Flash type selection, ROM will issue specific command to probe the presence of Serial NOR FLASH.
- xSPI FLASH Frequency - This field is used for specifying the Flash working frequency.

### 3.6.1.2 FlexSPI Serial NOR Flash Boot Operation

The Boot ROM attempts to boot from Serial NOR flash if the BOOT\_CFG1 [7:4] fuses are programmed to 0b'0000 as shown in the Serial NOR eFUSE Configuration table, then the ROM will initialize FlexSPI interface. FlexSPI interface initialization is a two-step process.

1. The ROM expects the 512-byte FlexSPI NOR configuration parameters (as explained in the next section) to be present at offset 0 in Serial NOR flash attached to

FLEXSPI\_A\_SS0\_B. The ROM can probe the presence of Serial NOR Flash and generate these configuration parameters accordingly via the combination of Fuses in the table above, or reads these configuration parameters using the read command specified by BOOT\_CFG2[2:0] with serial clock operating at 30 MHz.

2. ROM configures FlexSPI interface with the parameters provided in configuration block read from Serial NOR flash and starts the boot procedure. Refer to [Table 3-24](#) for details regarding FlexSPI configuration parameters and to the FlexSPI NOR boot flow chart for detailed boot flow chart of FlexSPI NOR.

Both booting an XIP and non XIP image are supported from Serial NOR Flash. For XIP boot, the image has to be built for FlexSPI address space; and for non XIP, the image can be built to execute from internal RAM.

### **NOTE**

A non-XIP image's execute address space should NOT be overlapped with the reserved OCRAM region described in the section "Internal ROM/RAM memory map". And it is also highly recommended to avoid using address space near 0x00000000, typically up to 0x00000003.

### 3.6.1.3 FlexSPI NOR boot flow chart

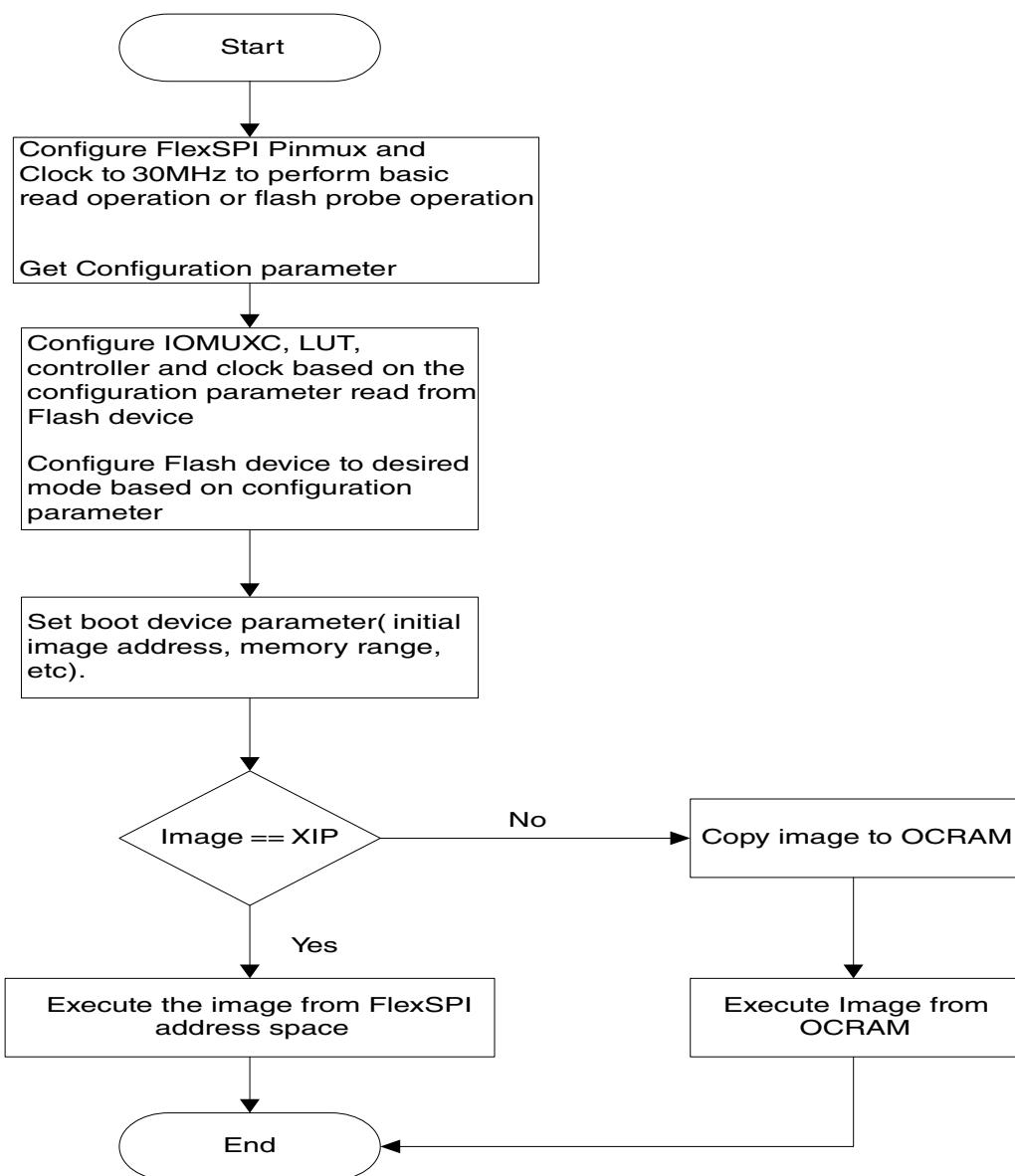


Figure 3-3. FlexSPI NOR boot flow

## 3.6.2 Encrypted XIP and Flash Access Protection

### 3.6.2.1 Encrypted XIP on Serial NOR via FlexSPI Interface

The ROM supports eXecute In Place (XIP) on the Serial NOR flash device directly with On-the-fly decryption feature (using AES-CTR-128 or AES-ECB-128) powered by BEE controller.

The BootROM supports two separate encrypted regions using two separate AES Keys. Before doing Encrypted XIP, the BootROM needs to set the BEE controller correctly, the configurable parameters are organized as Protection Region Descriptor Block (PRDB), the entire PRDB is encrypted using AES-CBC-128 mode with the AES KEY and IV in a Key Info Block (KIB). The KIB is encrypted as Encrypted KIB (EKIB) using the AES key provisioned in eFUSE (SW\_GP2) or derived from OTPMK. The BootROM decrypts KIB using AES ECB-128 mode, up to 2 EKIBs are supported, EKIB0 is located at offset 0x400 and KIB1 is located at offset 0x800. After getting KIB, the BootROM uses the AES key and IV in the KIB to decrypt PRDB from Encrypted PRDB(EPRDB), up 2 EPRDBs are supported, EPRDB0 is located at offset 0x480 and EPRDB1 is located at 0x880, both are encrypted using AES-CBC-128 mode.

**Table 3-11. eFUSE Configuration for Encrypted XIP**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
BOOT_CFG1 [1] 0x450[1]	OEM	Encrypted XIP Enable	Yes	0	0 - Encrypted XIP is bypassed 1 - Encrypted XIP is enabled
BEE_KEY0_SEL 0x460[13:12]	OEM	AES Key selection for BEE_KEY0	No	0	0 - From register 1 - Reserved 2 - From OTPMK [255:128] 3 - FROM SW-GP2
BEE_KEY1_SEL 0x460[15:14]	OEM	AES Key Selection for BEE_KEY1	No	0	0 - From register 1 - Reserved 2 - From OTPMK [255:128] 3 - FROM SW-GP2

#### NOTE

- All above FUSES are valid only if the BEE controller is present in this SoC.
- AES Key selection from register is NOT supported by ROM.

### 3.6.2.2 FlexSPI NOR Image layout

The FlexSPI NOR image layout is as shown in the table [Table 3-12](#). Both EPRDB0 and EPRDB1 are optional, and they are required only if corresponding eFUSE bits are enabled.

PRDB1 takes precedence over PRDB0, this design is for the use case that the Independent Design House(IDH) uses this block to protect their intellectual property before shipping products to end customers.

**Table 3-12. Boot Image Layout**

Offset	Description
0x0000 - 0x01FF	FlexSPI Serial NOR Configuration Block
0x0200 - 0x03FF	Reserved
0x0400 - 0x041F	Encrypted Key Info Block 0 (EKIB0)
0x0420 - 0x047F	Reserved
0x0480 - 0x057F	Encrypted Protection Region Descriptor Block 0(EPRDB0)
0x0580 - 0x07FF	Reserved
0x0800 - 0x081F	Encrypted Key Info Block 1(EKIB1) Only the first 32bytes are used, the remaining bytes are reserved for future use.
0x0820 - 0x087F	Reserved
0x0880 - 0x097F	Encrypted Protection Region Descriptor Block 1 (EPRDB1)
0x0980 - 0x0FFF	Reserved
0x1000 - Flash end	Boot image (IVT, DCD, Application, Execute-only library, etc.)

### 3.6.2.3 Key Info Block

Key Info Block consist of 128-bit AES Key and 128-bit Initial Vector.

**Table 3-13. Key Info Block**

Offset	Field	Description
0x00 - 0x0F	AES-128 KEY	128-bit AES KEY used for EPRDB encryption and decryption
0x10 - 0x1F	Initial Vector	128-bit Initial Vector used for EPRDB encryption and decryption

#### NOTE

- KIB1 is encrypted to EKIB1 using BEE\_KEY1 provisioned in eFUSE
- KIB0 is encrypted to EKIB0 using BEE\_KEY0 provisioned in eFUSE

### 3.6.2.4 Protection Region Descriptor Block (PRDB)

PRDB is a 128-byte crypto block using AES-ECB mode and the AES Key provisioned in eFUSE. The plaintext of PRDB is shown in the table below.

**Table 3-14. PRDB**

Offset	Field	Description
0x000 - 0x003	tagl	Must equal to 0x5F474154 (ASCII: "TAG_")
0x004 - 0x007	tagh	Must equal to 0x52444845 (ASCII: "EHDR")
0x008 - 0x00b	version	[31:24] 'V' [23:16] Major version [15:08] Minor version [07:00] Bug fix  Must equal to 0x56010000 for i.MX RT Family
0x00C - 0x00F	fac_region_count	Flash Access Controlled (FAC) Region within this encrypted region.  Valid value: 1-3
0x010-0x04F	encrypt_region_info	Information for encrypted region, see <a href="#">Table 3-15</a>
0x050-0x0CF	fac_regions	PRDB supports up to 4 Flash access controlled regions.  The first 3 regions are available for application use, the last one is Reserved.  For FAC regions definitions, see <a href="#">Table 3-16</a>
0xD0-0xFF	Reserved	Reserved for future use

**Table 3-15. Information for encrypted region**

Offset	Field	Description
0x00 - 0x03	start	Absolute start address of encrypted region, must be 4KB aligned
0x04 - 0x07	end	Absolute end address of encrypted region, must be 4KB aligned
0x08 - 0x0b	mode	AES encryption mode 0 - AES-ECB (128) 1 - AES-CTR (128), it is the recommend mode for Encrypted XIP
0x0C - 0x0F	lock_option	Region Lock options 0 - All regions are unlocked 1 - All FAC regions that belong to BEE Region1 are locked 2 - All RAC regions that belong to BEE Region0 are locked

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-15. Information for encrypted region (continued)**

		3 - Both BEE regions are locked, All FAC regions defined in PRDB are locked.
0x10 - 0x1F	counter	AES-CTR Counter, Valid only if mode is 1  Only the upper 96bits are configurable, the lower 32bit must be 0.  Note:  During encryption and decryption, the nonce/is as show in <a href="#">Table 3-16</a> ("FAC Regions" table).
0x20-0x3F	Reserved	Reserved for future use.

**Table 3-16. FAC Regions**

Offset	Field	Description
0x00-0x03	start	Absolute start region of FAC protection region, must be 1KB aligned
0x04-0x07	end	Absolute end region of FAC protected region, must be 1KB aligned
0x08-0x0B	mode	Protected mode.  Supported options: 0/1.  0 - Flash Access is not restricted 1 - M7 Debug is disabled Others – Unpredictable behavior
0x0C-0x1F	Reserved	Reserved for future use

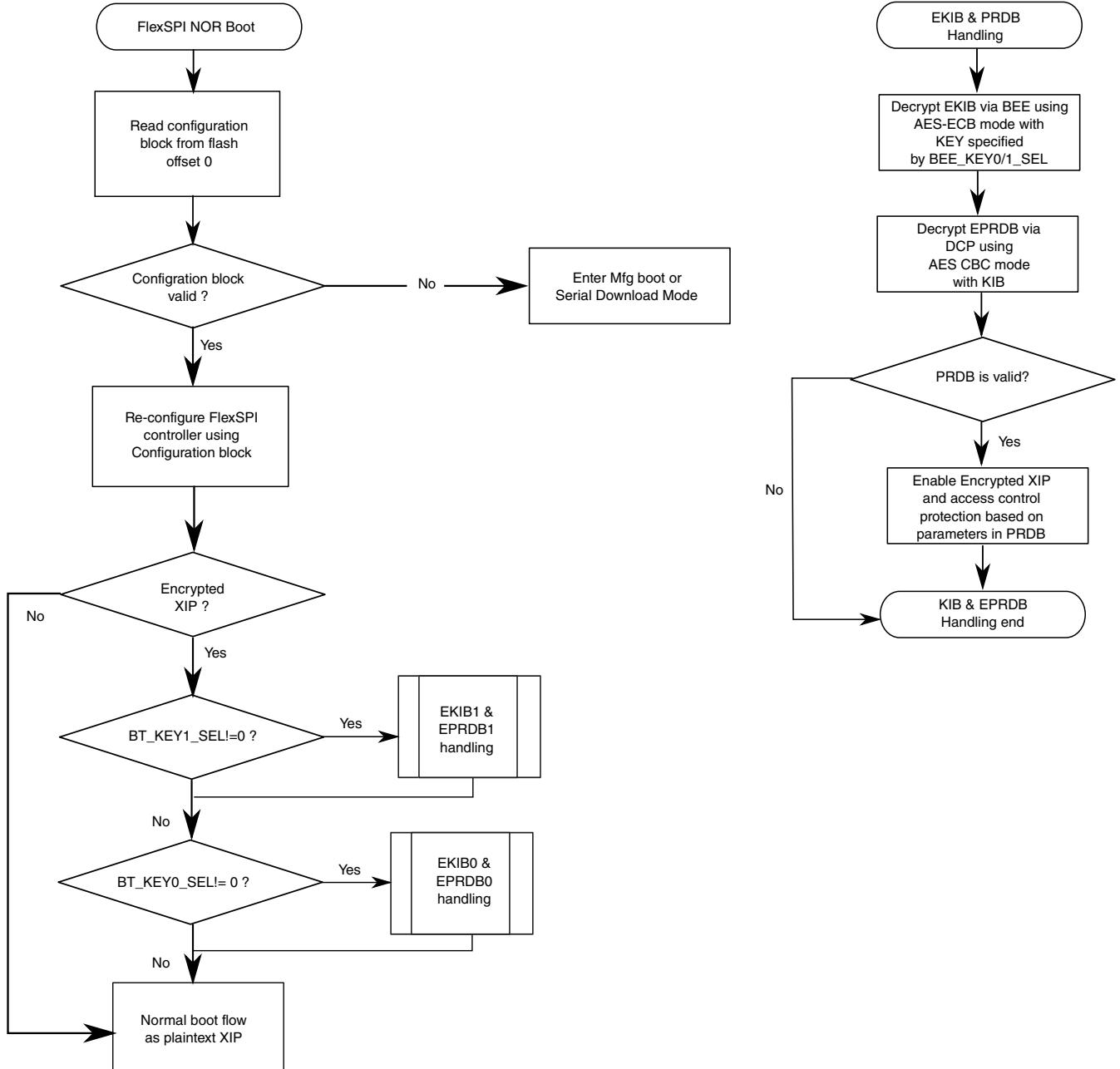
127:32	31:28	27:0
Counter [127:32]	0	FAC Region Start [31:4]

**NOTE**

- PRDB0 is encrypted using AES\_KEY and IV in EKIB0, while the encrypted region defined in PRDB0 is encrypted by the key source specified in BEE\_KEY0\_SEL.
- PRDB1 is encrypted using AES\_KEY and IV in EKIB1, while the encrypted region defined in PRDB1 is encrypted by the key source specified in BEE\_KEY1\_SEL.

### 3.6.2.5 Encrypted XIP Flow

The encrypted XIP flow is shown in the diagram below:



**Figure 3-4. Encrypted XIP Flow**

### 3.6.2.6 Data and Key Endianness

SoCs belongs to i.MX RT family only support little-endian mode, to program correct AES key and generate correct encrypted boot image, Endian conversion must be taken into consideration.

- The AES key for BEE must be programmed using big-endian mode, for example, if the AES KEY is {0x00, 0x11, 0x22, 0x33, 0x44, 0x55, 0x66, 0x77, 0x88, 0x99, 0xaa, 0xbb, 0xcc, 0xdd, 0xee, 0xff}, it should be programmed in eFUSE following this order: 0xccddeeef, 0x8899aabb, 0x44556677, 0x00112233.
- The data to be encrypted are little-endian ordered by default, so, no swap operations are needed.
- The nonce/counter must be swapped before performing encryption using AES-CTR-128 mode. For example, if the counter in PRDB is {0x06000100, 0x44332211, 0x88776655, 0xccbb99}, the actual CTR for encryption is {0xcc, 0xbb, 0xaa, 0x99, 0x88, 0x77, 0x66, 0x55, 0x44, 0x33, 0x22, 0x11, 0x06, 0x00, 0x01, 0x00}.

### 3.6.3 Serial NAND Flash Boot over FlexSPI

The boot ROM supports a number of Serial NAND Flash devices from different vendors. The Embedded Error Correction and Control (ECC) module in SPI NAND devices are used to detect and correct the errors.

#### 3.6.3.1 Serial NAND eFUSE Configuration

The boot ROM determines the configuration of external Serial NAND flash by parameters, either provided by eFUSE, or sampled on GPIO pins during boot. See below table for parameters details.

**Table 3-17. Fuse definition for Serial NAND over FlexSPI**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
BOOT_CFG1[1:0]	OEM	Search Stride for FCB and DBBT Search strides in terms of page	Yes	0	0 - 64 1 - 128 2 - 256 3 - 32
BOOT_CFG1[3:2]	OEM	Hold Time before access to Serial NAND	Yes	0	0 - Hold time determined by Read Status command 1 - 500us 2 - 1ms 3 - 3ms
BOOT_CFG1[4]	OEM	Column address width	Yes	0	0 - 12 bits 1 - 13 bits

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-17. Fuse definition for Serial NAND over FlexSPI (continued)**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
BOOT_CFG1[5]	OEM	Default safe communication frequency	Yes	0	0 – High Speed (50MHz) 1 – Low Speed (30MHz)
BOOT_CFG1[7:6]	OEM	Primary boot device selection	Yes	0	00 – Serial NOR 11 – Serial NAND
BOOT_CFG2[0]	OEM	Boot Search Count of FCB and DBBT	Yes	0	0 - 1 1 - 2
BOOT_CFG2[2:1]	OEM	CS de-asserted interval between two commands	Yes	0	0 – 100ns 1 – 200ns 2 – 400ns 3 – 50ns
0x6E0[7]	OEM	SPI NAND BOOT - Override Busy Offset	No	0	0 – Use default busy bit offset 0 1 – Override default busy bit offset using Busy bit offset
0x6E0[3:0]	OEM	SPI NAND BOOT - Busy Bit offset	No	0	
0x6E0[13:8]	OEM	SPI NAND Boot - Page Read Time (in terms of micro seconds)	No	0	
0x6E0[23:16]	OEM	Page Read Command	No	0	Available only if it is not 0
0x6F0[31:24]	OEM	Cache Read command	No	0	Available only if it is not 0

**NOTE**

BOOT\_CFGx sampled on GPIO pins depends on BT\_FUSE\_SEL setting.

### 3.6.3.2 FlexSPI NAND Flash Boot Flow and Boot Control Blocks (BCB)

There are two BCB data structures:

- FCB
- DDBT

As part of the NAND media initialization, the ROM driver uses safe NAND timings to search for a Firmware Configuration Block (FCB) that contains the optimum NAND timings, page address of Discovered Bad Block Table (DBBT) Search Area and start page address of primary and secondary firmware.

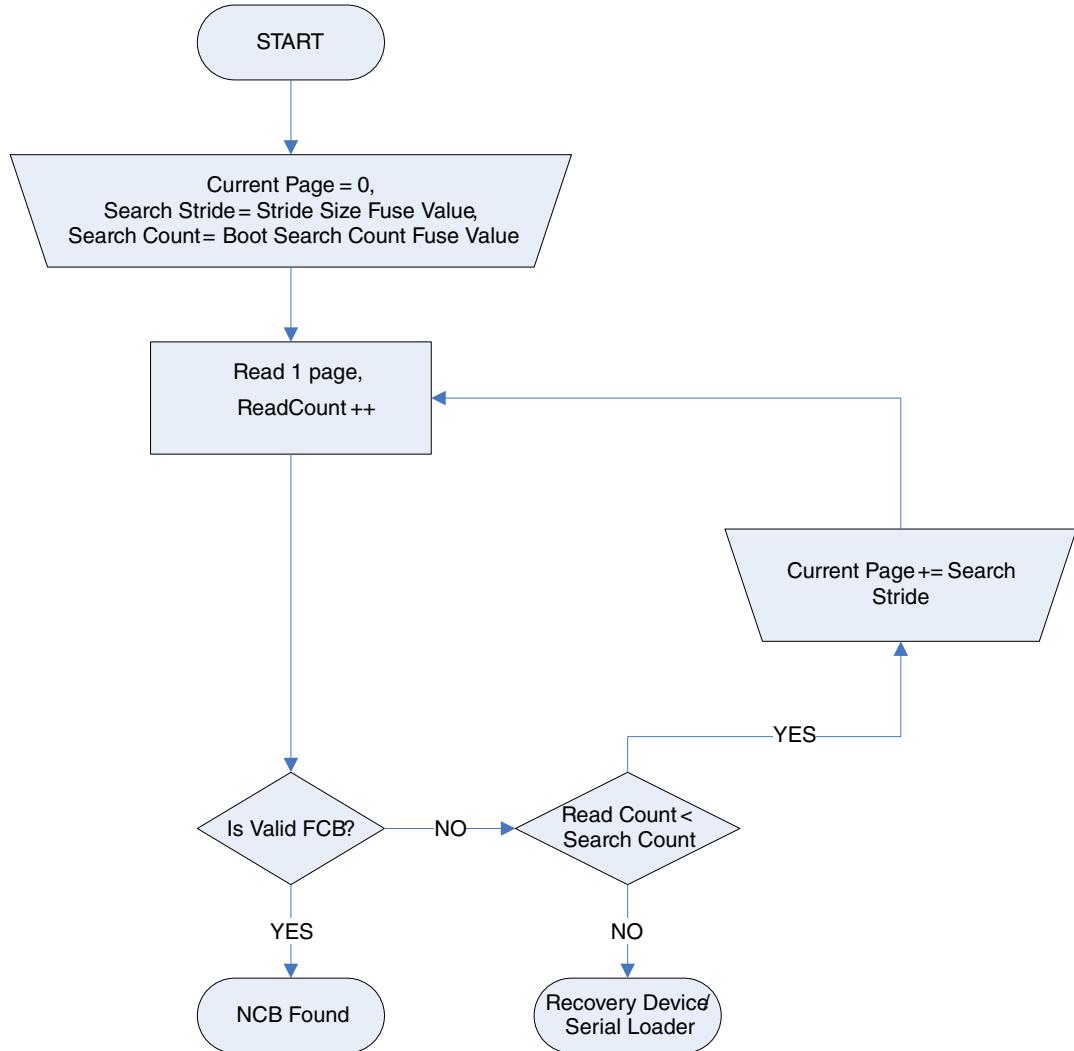
The built-in HW ECC in Serial NAND device is used during data read, the FCB data structure is protected using CRC checksum. Driver reads raw 2048 bytes of first sector and runs through CRC check that determines whether FCB data is valid or not.

If the FCB is found, the optimum NAND timings are loaded for further reads. If the ECC fails, or the fingerprints do not match, the Block Search state machine increments page number to Search Stride number of pages to read for the next BCB until SearchCount pages have been read.

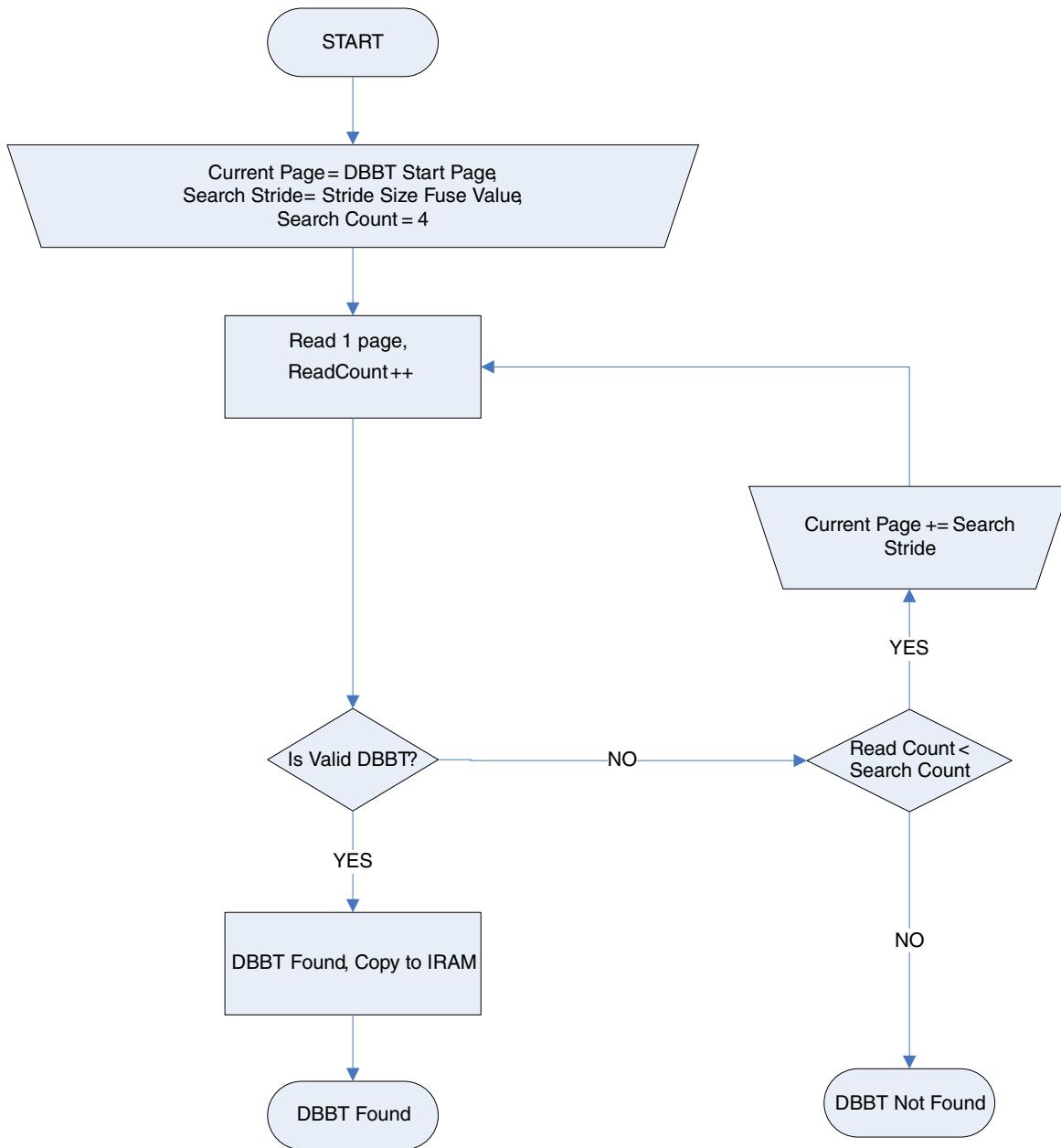
If search fails to find a valid FCB, the NAND driver responds with an error and the boot ROM enters into serial download mode.

The FCB contains the page address of DBBT Search Area, and the page address for primary and secondary boot images. DDBT is searched in DDBT Search Area just like how FCB is searched. After the FCB is read, the DDBT is loaded, and the primary or secondary boot image is loaded using starting page address from FCB.

[Figure 3-5](#) shows the state diagram of FCB search.

**Figure 3-5. FCB Search Flow**

After FCB is found, the boot ROM searches for the Discovered Bad Blocks Table (DBBT). If DBBTSearchStartPage is 0 in the FCB, then ROM assumes that there are no bad blocks in the NAND device boot area. See [Figure 3-6](#) for the DDBT search flow.

**Figure 3-6. DBBT Search Flow**

The BCB search and load function also monitors the ECC correction threshold and sets the PERSIST\_BLOCK\_REWRITE persistent bit if the threshold exceeds the maximum ECC correction ability.

If during primary image read there is a page with a number of errors higher than ECC can correct, the boot ROM will turn on PERSIST\_SECONDARY\_BOOT bit and perform SW reset (After SW reset, secondary image is used).

If during secondary image read there is a page with number of errors higher than ECC can correct, the boot ROM goes to serial loader.

### 3.6.3.3 Firmware Configuration Block

The FCB is at the first page in the first good block. The FCB should be present at each search stride of the search area.

The search area contains copies of the FCB at each stride distance, in case the first Serial NAND block becomes corrupted, the ROM will find its copy in the next Serial NAND block. The search area should span over at least two Serial NAND blocks. The location information for DBBT search area and images are all specified in the FCB. The following table shows the Flash Control Block Structure.

**Table 3-18. Flash Control Block Structure**

Name	Offset	Size Bytes	Description									
crcChecksum	0x000	4	Cheksum									
fingerprint	0x004	4	0x4E46_4342 ASCII: "NFCB"									
version	0x008	4	0x0000_0001									
DBBTSearchStartPage	0x00C	4	Start Page address for bad block table search area									
searchStride	0x010	2	Search stride for DBBT and FCB search. Not used by ROM Max value is 8.									
searchCount	0x012	2	Copies of DBBT and FCB. Not used by ROM, max value is 8.									
firmwareCopies	0x014	4	Firmware copies Valid range 1-4.									
Reserved	0x018	40	Reserved for future use Must be set to 0.									
firmwareInfoTable	0x40	64	This table consists of (up to 8 entries): <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Size</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>StartPage</td><td>4</td><td>Start page of this firmware</td></tr> <tr> <td>pageCount</td><td>4</td><td>Pages in this firmware</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Field	Size	Description	StartPage	4	Start page of this firmware	pageCount	4	Pages in this firmware
Field	Size	Description										
StartPage	4	Start page of this firmware										
pageCount	4	Pages in this firmware										

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-18. Flash Control Block Structure  
(continued)**

Name	Offset	Size Bytes	Description
			<b>NOTE:</b> The StartPage must be the first page of a NAND block.
Reserved	0x080	128	Reserved Must be set to 0
spiNandConfigBlock	0x100	512	Serial NAND configuration block over FlexSPI
Reserved	0x300	256	Must be set to 0

**NOTE**

1. The “crcChecksum” is calculated with an MPEG2 variant of CRC-32. See [Table 3-19](#) for more details.
2. The “crcChecksum” calculation starts from fingerprint to the end of FCB, 1020 bytes in total.
3. The “spiNandConfigBlock” is FlexSPI NAND configuration block which consists of common FlexSPI memory configuration block and Serial NAND specified configuration parameters.

**Table 3-19. CRC-32 variant algorithm**

Property	Description
Width	32 bits
Polynomial	0x04C11DB7
Init Value	0xFFFFFFFF
Reflect in	False
Reflect Out	False
XOR Out	0x00000000

**3.6.3.4 Discovered Bad Blocks Table (DBBT)****Table 3-20. DBBT Structure**

Name	Offset	Size in Bytes	Description
crcChecksum	0x000	4	Checksum
Fingerprint	0x004	4	32-bit word with a value of 0x4442_4254, in ASCII “DBBT”

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-20. DBBT Structure (continued)**

Name	Offset	Size in Bytes	Description
Version	0x008	4	32-bit version number, this version of DBBT is 0x00000001
-	0x00C	4	Reserved
badBlockNumber	0x010	4	Number of bad blocks
Reserved	0x014	12	Must be filled with 0x00s
Bad Block entries	0x020	1024 (256*4)	Each bad block entry is a 32-bit value specifying the number of a found bad block. The number of valid bad block entries is specified by the badBlockNumber field, where valid bad block entries are stored sequentially starting at the beginning of the bad block entries segment. Unused bad block entries (those beyond the badBlockNumber) should be filled with 0xFFs.

**NOTE**

1. Maximum badBlockNumber is 256.
2. The "crcChecksum" is calculated with the same algorithm as the one in FCB, from Fingerprint to the end of DBBT, 1052 bytes in total.

### 3.6.3.5 Bad block handling in ROM

During the firmware boot, at the block boundary, the Bad Block table is searched for a match to the next block.

If no match is found, the next block can be loaded. If a match is found, the block must be skipped and the next block checked.

### 3.6.4 Serial NOR and NAND configuration based on FlexSPI interface

The ROM SW supports Serial NOR and Serial NAND based on FlexSPI module, using a 448-bytes common FlexSPI configuration block and several specified parameters for Serial NOR and Serial NAND respectively. See the following sections for more details.

### 3.6.4.1 FlexSPI Configuration Block

FlexSPI Configuration block consists of parameters regarding specific Flash devices including read command sequence, quad mode enablement sequence (optional), etc.

**Table 3-21. FlexSPI Configuration block**

Name	Offset	Size(bytes)	Description
Tag	0x000	4	0x42464346, ascii: 'FCFB'
Version	0x004	4	0x56010000 / 0x56010100 [07:00] bugfix = 0 [15:08] minor [23:16] major = 1 [31:24] ascii 'V'
-	0x008	4	Reserved
readSampleClkSrc	0x00C	1	0 – internal loopback 1 – loopback from DQS pad 3 – Flash provided DQS
csHoldTime	0x00D	1	Serial Flash CS Hold Time Recommend default value is 0x03
csSetupTime	0x00E	1	Serial Flash CS setup time Recommended default value is 0x03
columnAdressWidth	0x00F	1	3 – For HyperFlash 12/13 – For Serial NAND, see datasheet to find correct value 0 – Other devices
deviceModeCfgEnable	0x010	1	Device Mode Configuration Enable feature 0 – Disabled 1 – Enabled
-	0x011	1	Reserved
waitTimeCfgCommands	0x013	2	Wait time for all configuration commands, unit 100us. Available for device that support v1.1.0 FlexSPI configuration block. If it is greater than 0, ROM will wait waitTimeCfgCommands * 100us for all device memory configuration commands instead of using read status to wait until these commands complete.
deviceModeSeq	0x014	4	Sequence parameter for device mode configuration Bit[7:0] - number of LUT sequences for Device mode configuration command Bit[15:8] - starting LUT index of Device mode configuration command Bit[31:16] - must be 0
deviceModeArg	0x018	4	Device Mode argument, effective only when deviceModeCfgEnable = 1
configCmdEnable	0x01C	1	Config Command Enable feature

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-21. FlexSPI Configuration block (continued)**

Name	Offset	Size(bytes)	Description
			0 – Disabled 1 – Enabled
-	0x01D	3	Reserved
configCmdSeqs	0x020	12	Sequences for Config Command, allow 3 separate configuration command sequences.
-	0x02C	4	Reserved
cfgCmdArgs	0x030	12	Arguments for each separate configuration command sequence.
-	0x03C	4	Reserved
controllerMiscOption	0x040	4	Bit0 – differential clock enable Bit1 – CK2 enable, must set to 0 in this silicon Bit2 – ParallelModeEnable, must set to 0 for this silicon Bit3 – wordAddressableEnable Bit4 – Safe Configuration Frequency enable set to 1 for the devices that support DDR Read instructions Bit5 – Pad Setting Override Enable Bit6 – DDR Mode Enable, set to 1 for device supports DDR read command
deviceType	0x044	1	1 – Serial NOR 2 – Serial NAND
sflashPadType	0x045	1	1 – Single pad 2 – Dual pads 4 – Quad pads 8 – Octal pads
serialClkFreq	0x046	1	Chip specific value, for this silicon 1 – 30 MHz 2 – 50 MHz 3 – 60 MHz 4 – 75 MHz 5 – 80 MHz 6 – 100 MHz 7 – 120 MHz 8 – 133 MHz 9 – 166 MHz Other value: 30 MHz
lutCustomSeqEnable	0x047	1	0 – Use pre-defined LUT sequence index and number 1 - Use LUT sequence parameters provided in this block
-	0x048	8	Reserved
sflashA1Size	0x050	4	For SPI NOR, need to fill with actual size

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-21. FlexSPI Configuration block (continued)**

Name	Offset	Size(bytes)	Description
			For SPI NAND, need to fill with actual size * 2
sflashA2Size	0x054	4	The same as above
sflashB1Size	0x058	4	The same as above
sflashB2Size	0x05C	4	The same as above
csPadSettingOverride	0x060	4	Set to 0 if it is not supported
sclkPadSettingOverride	0x064	4	Set to 0 if it is not supported
dataPadSettingOverride	0x068	4	Set to 0 if it is not supported
dqsPadSettingOverride	0x06C	4	Set to 0 if it is not supported
timeoutInMs	0x070	0	Maximum wait time during read busy status 0 – Disabled timeout checking feature Other value – Timeout if the wait time exceeds this value.
commandInterval	0x074	4	Unit: ns Currently, it is used for SPI NAND only at high frequency
dataValidTime	0x078	4	Time from clock edge to data valid edge, unit ns. This field is used when the FlexSPI Root clock is less than 100 MHz and the read sample clock source is device provided DQS signal without CK2 support. [31:16] data valid time for DLLB in terms of 0.1 ns [15:0] data valid time for DLLA in terms of 0.1 ns
busyOffset	0x07C	2	busy bit offset, valid range :0-31
busyBitPolarity	0x07E	2	0 – busy bit is 1 if device is busy 1 – busy bit is 0 if device is busy
lookupTable	0x080	256	Lookup table
lutCustomSeq	0x180	48	Customized LUT sequence, see below table for details.
	0x1B0	16	Reserved for future use

**Note:**

1. To customize the LUT sequence for some specific device, users need to enable “lutCustomSeqEnable” and fill in corresponding “lutCustomSeq” field specified by command index below.
2. For Serial (SPI) NOR, the pre-defined LUT index is as follows:

**Table 3-22. LUT sequence definition for Serial NOR**

Command Index	Name	Index in lookup table	Description
0	Read	0	Read command Sequence
1	ReadStatus	1	Read Status command
2	WriteEnable	3	Write Enable command sequence

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-22. LUT sequence definition for Serial NOR  
(continued)**

Command Index	Name	Index in lookup table	Description
3	EraseSector	5	Erase Sector Command
4	PageProgram	9	Page Program Command
5	ChipErase	11	Full Chip Erase
6	Dummy	15	Dummy Command as needed
7-12	Reserved	2,4,6,7,8,10,12,13,14	All reserved indexes can be freely used for other purpose
13	NOR_CMD_LUT_SE Q_IDX_READ_SFDP	13	Read SFDP sequence in lookupTable id stored in config block
14	NOR_CMD_LUT_SE Q_IDX_RESTORE_N OCMD	14	Restore 0-4-4/0-8-8 mode sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

3. For Serial (SPI) NAND, the pre-defined LUT index is as follows:

**Table 3-23. LUT sequence definition for Serial NAND**

Command Index	Name	Index in lookup table	Description
0	ReadFromCache	0	Read from cache
1	ReadStatus	1	Read Status
2	WriteEnable	3	Write Enable
3	BlockErase	5	Erase block
4	ProgramLoad	9	Program Load
5	ReadPage	11	Read page to cache
6	ReadEccStatus	13	Read ECC Status
7	ProgramExecute	14	Program Execute
8	ReadFromCacheOdd	4	Read from Cache while page in odd plane
9	ProgramLoadOdd	10	Program Load for pages within odd blocks
	Reserved	2,6,7,8,12,15	All reserved indexes can be freely used for other purposes

**NOTE**

1. All the pre-defined LUT indexes are only applicable to boot stage. User application can use the whole 16 LUT entries freely based on their requirement.
2. The FlexSPI NOR ROM APIs occupy LUT index 0-5. User application should **NOT** use these LUT indexes if the ROM API is called in their application frequently.

**3.6.4.2 Serial NOR configuration block (512 bytes)****Table 3-24. Serial NOR configuration block**

Name	Offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
memCfg	0	448	The common memory configuration block, see FlexSPI configuration block for more details
pageSize	0x1C0	4	Page size in terms of bytes, not used by ROM
sectorSize	0x1C4	4	Sector size in terms of bytes, not used by ROM
ipCmdSerialClkFreq	0x1C8	4	Chip specific value, not used by ROM 0 – No change, keep current serial clock unchanged 1 – 30 MHz 2 – 50 MHz 3 – 60 MHz 4 – 75 MHz 5 – 80 MHz 6 – 100 MHz 7 – 120 MHz 8 – 133 MHz 9 – 166 MHz
Reserved	0x1CC	52	Reserved for future use

### 3.6.4.3 Serial NAND configuration block (512 bytes)

Table 3-25. Serial NAND configuration block

Name	Offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
memCfg	0	448	The common memory configuration block, see FlexSPI configuration block for more details
pageDataSize	0x1C0	4	Page size in terms of bytes, usually, it is 2048 or 4096
pageTotalSize	0x1C4	4	It equals to $2^{\wedge}$ width of column address
pagesPerBlock	0x1C8	4	Pages in one block
bypassReadStatus	0x1CC	1	0 – Read Status Register 1 – Bypass Read status register
bypassEccRead	0x1CD	1	0 – Perform ECC read 1 – Bypass ECC read
hasMultiPlanes	0x1CE	1	0 – Only 1 plane 1 – Has two planes
skippOddBlocks	0x1CF	1	0 – Read Odd blocks 1 – Skip Odd blocks
eccCheckCustomEnable	0x1D0	1	0 – Use the common ECC check command and ECC related masks 1 - Use ECC check related masks provided in this configuration block
ipCmdSerialClkFreq	0x1D1	1	Chip specific value, not used by ROM 0 – No change, keep current serial clock unchanged 1 – 30 MHz 2 – 50 MHz 3 – 60 MHz 4 – 75 MHz 5 – 80 MHz 6 – 100 MHz 7 – 120 MHz 8 – 133 MHz 9 – 166 MHz
readPageTimeUs	0x1D2	2	Wait time during page read, this field will take effect on if the bypassReadStatus is set to 1.

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-25. Serial NAND configuration block (continued)**

Name	Offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
			<b>NOTE:</b> Only applicable to ROM.
eccStatusMask	0x1D4	4	ECC Status Mask
eccFailureMask	0x1D8	4	ECC Check Failure mask
blocksPerDevice	0x1DC	4	Blocks in a Serial NAND
Reserved	0x1ED	32	Reserved for future use

Below is an example of Serial NAND configuration block for Winbond W25N01GVZEIG:

```
const flexspi_nand_config_t kSerialNandCfgBlk =
{
    .memConfig =
    {
        .tag = FLEXSPI_CFG_BLK_TAG,
        .version = FLEXSPI_CFG_BLK_VERSION,
        .readSampleClkSrc = kFlexSPIReadSampleClk_LoopbackInternally,
        .dataHoldTime = 3,
        .dataSetupTime = 3,
        .columnAddressWidth = 12,
        .deviceModeCfgEnable = 1,
        .deviceModeSeq = { 1, 2 },
        .deviceType = kFlexSpiDeviceType_SerialNAND,
        .sflashPadType = kSerialFlash_4Pads,
        .serialClkFreq = kFlexSpiSerialClk_50MHz,
        .lutCustomSeqEnable = 0,
        .sflashA1Size = 128 * 1024 * 1024U * 2, // Flash size = 2 * actual data size
(exclude spare space)
        .lookupTable =
        {
            // Read cache 4 I/O
            [4 * NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READ] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0xEB,
CADDR_SDR, FLEXSPI_4PAD, 0x10),
            [4 * NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READ + 1] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(DUMMY_SDR, FLEXSPI_4PAD,
0x04, READ_SDR, FLEXSPI_4PAD, 0x80),
            // Clear Status1 flag
            [4 * 2] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x1F, CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,
0xA0),
            [4 * 2 + 1] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x00, STOP, FLEXSPI_1PAD,
0x00),
            // Read Page
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READPAGE] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,
0x13, RADDR_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x18),
            // Read Status
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READSTATUS] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,
0x0F, CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0xC0),
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READSTATUS + 1] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(READ_SDR,
FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x01, STOP, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0),
            // Write Enable
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_WRITEENABLE] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,
0x06, STOP, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0),
            // Page Program Load 4x
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_PROGRAMLOAD] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,
0x32, CADDR_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x10),
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_PROGRAMLOAD + 1] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(WRITE_SDR,
FLEXSPI_4PAD, 0x40, STOP, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0),
            // Page Program Execute
            [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_PROGRAMEXECUTE] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR,
```

## Boot devices

```
FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x10, RADDR_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x18),  
    // Erase Sector  
    [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_ERASEBLOCK] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,  
0xD8, RADDR_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x18),  
    // Read ECC status  
    [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READECCSTAT] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD,  
0x0F, CMD_SDR, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0xC0),  
    [4 * NAND_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READECCSTAT + 1] = FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(READ_SDR,  
FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0x01, STOP, FLEXSPI_1PAD, 0),  
},  
,  
.pageDataSize = 2048,  
.pageTotalSize = 4096,  
.pagesPerBlock = 64,  
};
```

## 3.6.5 Parallel NOR flash Boot over SEMC

The Smart External Memory Controller (SEMC) works in an asynchronous mode, and supports Muxed Address/Data scheme.

### 3.6.5.1 Parallel NOR eFuse Configuration

The boot ROM determines the configuration of external Parallel NOR flash by parameters, either provided by eFuse, or sampled on GPIO pins during boot. See below table for parameters details.

**Table 3-26. Fuse definition for Parallel NOR over SEMC**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
BOOT_CFG [7:4]	OEM	Primary boot device selection	Yes	0000	0001 – Parallel NOR
BOOT_CFG [2:0]	OEM	SEMC Clock frequency	Yes	000	000 – 33MHz 001 – 66MHz 010 – 108MHz 011 – 133MHz 1xx – 166MHz
BOOT_CFG [8]	OEM	AC timing parameter configuration	Yes	0	0 – Default configuration 1 – Configured by Fuse
BOOT_CFG [9]	OEM	Data port size	Yes	0	0 – 16 bits 1 – 8 bits
BOOT_CFG [10]	OEM	DQS pin pad enablement	Yes	0	0 – Disabled 1 – Enabled
0x6E0[2:0]	OEM	PCS pin selection	No	000	000 – CSX0 001 – CSX1 010 – CSX2

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-26. Fuse definition for Parallel NOR over SEMC (continued)**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
					011 – CSX3 1xx – A8
0x6E0[5:3]	OEM	Address port size	No	000	0xx – <= 24 bits 100 – 25 bits 101 – 26 bits 110 – 27 bits 111 – 28 bits
0x6E0[6]	OEM	ADV pin polarity	No	0	0 – Low active 1 – High active
0x6E0[7]	OEM	RDY pin polarity	No	0	0 – High active 1 – Low active
0x6E0[9:8]	OEM	AC timing parameter - CES	No	00	Value = (CES*5 + 1) cycle
0x6E0[11:10]	OEM	AC timing parameter - CEH	No	00	Value = (CEH*5 + 1) cycle
0x6E0[13:12]	OEM	AC timing parameter - CEITV	No	00	Value = (CEITV*5 + 1) cycle
0x6E0[15:14]	OEM	AC timing parameter - TA	No	00	Value = (TA*5 + 1) cycle
0x6E0[19:16]	OEM	AC timing parameter - AS	No	0000	Value = (AS + 1) cycle
0x6E0[23:20]	OEM	AC timing parameter - AH	No	0000	Value = (AH + 1) cycle
0x6E0[27:24]	OEM	AC timing parameter - REL	No	0000	Value = (REL + 1) cycle
0x6E0[31:28]	OEM	AC timing parameter - REH	No	0000	Value = (REH + 1) cycle

### 3.6.5.2 SEMC Parallel NOR Flash Boot Operation

The Boot ROM attempts to boot from Parallel NOR flash if the BOOT\_CFG [7:4] fuses are programmed to 0b'0000 as shown in the Parallel NOR eFuse Configuration table. ROM supports booting from both XIP and non-XIP images from Parallel NOR Flash. For XIP boot, the image has to be built for SEMC address space and for non XIP the image can be built to execute from Internal RAM.

## 3.6.6 Parallel NAND flash Boot over SEMC

The boot ROM supports a number of Parallel SLC NAND flash devices from different vendors. Both the Error Correction and Control (ECC) module in NAND device and software ECC algorithm (SECDED) in boot ROM can be used to detect the errors, based on the fuse settings.

### 3.6.6.1 Parallel NAND eFuse Configuration

The boot ROM determines the configuration of external Parallel NAND flash by parameters, either provided by eFuse, or sampled on GPIO pins, during boot. See below table for parameters details:

**Table 3-27. Fuse definition for Parallel NAND over SEMC**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
BOOT_CFG [0]	OEM	Boot Search count of FCB and DBBT	Yes	0 1 – 2	0 - 1 1 – 2
BOOT_CFG [4:1]	OEM	Search stride for FCB and DBBT in terms of pages	Yes	0000 Others – 2 ^ BOOT_SEARCH_STRIDE	0000 – 64 Others – 2 ^ BOOT_SEARCH_STRIDE
BOOT_CFG [7:5]	OEM	Primary boot device selection	Yes	000	001 – Parallel NAND
BOOT_CFG [8]	OEM	NAND ONFI compliant	Yes	0 1 – Non-ONFI	0 – ONFI 1.0 1 – Non-ONFI
BOOT_CFG [9]	OEM	ECC selection	Yes	0  <b>NOTE:</b> For “ECC selection” option, it can only be set as Device ECC When NAND device has built-in ECC module and the ECC module is enabled by default.	0 – Software ECC (SECDED) 1 – Device ECC  <b>NOTE:</b> For “ECC selection” option, it can only be set as Device ECC When NAND device has built-in ECC module and the ECC module is enabled by default.
BOOT_CFG [10]	OEM	DQS pin pad enablement	Yes	0 1 – Enabled	0 – Disabled 1 – Enabled
0x6E0[2:0]	OEM	PCS pin selection	No	000 001 – CSX1 010 – CSX2 011 – CSX3 1xx – A8	000 – CSX0 001 – CSX1 010 – CSX2 011 – CSX3 1xx – A8
0x6E0[4]	OEM	EDO mode	No	0	0 – Disabled

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-27. Fuse definition for Parallel NAND over SEMC (continued)**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
					1 – Enabled
0x6E0[5]	OEM	RDY pin polarity	No	0	0 – High active 1 – Low active
0x6E0[6]	OEM	Ready check type	No	0	0 – R/B# pin 1 – Status Register
0x6E0[10:8]	OEM	Row Column address mode	No	000	Applicable only for Non-ONFI device  00x – 5 bytes (CA2+RA3) 010 – 4 bytes (CA2+RA2) 011 – 3 bytes (CA2+RA1) 10x – 4 bytes (CA1+RA3) 110 – 3 bytes (CA1+RA2) 111 – 2 bytes (CA1+RA1)
0x6E0[13:11]	OEM	Column address width	No	000	Applicable only for Non-ONFI device  000 – 12 bits 001 – 09 bits 010 – 10 bits 011 – 11 bits 100 – 13 bits 101 – 14 bits 110 – 15 bits 111 – 16 bits
0x6E0[14]	OEM	Status command type	No	0	Applicable only for Non-ONFI device  0 – Common (0x70) 1 – Enhanced (0x78)
0x6E0[18:16]	OEM	Pages in block	No	000	Applicable only for Non-ONFI device  000 – 128 pages 001 – 8 pages 010 – 16 pages 011 – 32 pages 100 – 64 pages 101 – 256 pages 110 – 512 pages 111 – 1024 pages
0x6E0[24]	OEM	Device ECC initial status	No	0	Applicable only for ONFI 1.0 device

**Table 3-27. Fuse definition for Parallel NAND over SEMC**

Fuse	Config	Definitions	GPIO	Shipped Value	Settings
					0 – Enabled 1 – Disabled

### 3.6.6.2 Parallel NAND Flash Boot Control Blocks (BCB)

There are two BCB data structures:

- Firmware Configuration Block (FCB)
- Discovered Bad Blocks Table (DBBT)

As part of the Parallel NAND media initialization, the ROM driver uses proper Parallel NAND parameters specified by FUSE to search for an FCB that contains the complete Parallel NAND parameters, page address of DDBT Search Area and Image info, including image copies, start page address and image size in terms of pages for each image.

FCB data structure is protected using Embedded ECC module in Parallel NAND devices or software ECC in ROM. The ROM driver reads 2048 bytes of first sector and checks the ECC check status to determine whether FCB data is valid or not.

If the FCB is found, the complete NAND parameters (Parallel NAND configuration block) are loaded for further reads, if the ECC fails, or the fingerprint does not match, or the CRC checksum does not match, the Block Search state machine increments page number to Search Stride number of pages to read for the next FCB until Search Count pages have been read.

If search fails to find a valid FCB, the Parallel NAND driver responds with an error and the boot ROM enters into Recovery boot mode (Secondary boot, if it is enabled, or Serial download mode).

The FCB contains the page address of DDBT Search Area, and the info for images. DDBT is searched in DDBT Search area just like how FCB is searched. After the FCB is read, the DDBT is loaded, then the boot image is loaded using starting page address from FCB.

### 3.6.6.3 Firmware Configuration Block (FCB)

The FCB is at the first page in the first good block. The FCB should be present at each search stride of the search area.

The search area contains copies of the FCB at each stride distance, in case the first Serial NAND block becomes corrupted, the ROM will find its copy in the next Parallel NAND block. The search area should span over at least two Parallel NAND blocks. The location information for DBBT search area and images are all specified in the FCB. Below Table shows the FCB Structure.

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
bcbHeader	0x000	12	See <a href="#">Table 3-28</a> for details
DBBTSearchAreaStartPage	0x00c	4	Start Page address for bad block table search area
searchStride	0x010	2	Search stride for DBBT and FCB search. Not used by ROM Max value is 8.
searchCount	0x012	2	Copies of DBBT and FCB. Not used by ROM, max value is 8.
firmwareCopies	0x014	4	Firmware copies Valid range 1-4.
-	0x018	40	Reserved
firmwareTable	0x040	64	For details see <a href="#">Table 3-29</a>
-	0x080	128	Reserved
nandConfig	0x100	256	Parallel NAND configuration block over SEMC
-	0x200	512	Reserved

**Table 3-28. Header Description**

Field	Size	Description
crcChecksum	4	Checksum
fingerprint	4	0x4E46_4342 ASCII: "NFCB"
version	4	0x0000_0001

**Table 3-29. Table Descriptions**

Field	Size	Description
startPage	4	Start page of this firmware
pagesInFirmware	4	Pages in this firmware

**NOTE**

- The “crcChecksum” is calculated with an MPEG2 variant of CRC-32.

- The “crcChecksum” calculation starts from fingerprint to the end of FCB, 1020 bytes in total.
- The “nandConfig” is SEMC NAND configuration block which consists of common SEMC memory configuration block and Parallel NAND specified configuration parameters. See [Parallel NAND eFuse Configuration](#) for more details.

### 3.6.6.4 Discovered Bad Blocks Table (DBBT)

Table 3-30. DBBT Structure

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
bcbHeader	0x000	12	See <a href="#">Table 3-31</a> for details
-	0x00C	4	Reserved
badBlockNumber	0x010	4	Number of bad blocks
-	0x014	12	Reserved
badBlockTable	0x020	1024 (256*4)	Each bad block entry is a 32-bit value specifying the number of a found bad block. The number of valid bad block entries is specified by the badBlockNumber field, where valid bad block entries are stored sequentially starting at the beginning of the bad block entries segment. Unused bad block entries (those beyond the badBlockNumber) should be filled with 0xFFs.

Table 3-31. Header Description

Field	Size	Description
crcChecksum	4	Checksum
fingerprint	4	0x4442_4254 ASCII: “DBBT”
version	4	0x0000_0001

### NOTE

- Maximum bad block number is 256.
- The "crcChecksum" is calculated with the same algorithm as the one in FCB, from Fingerprint to the end of DBBT, 1052 bytes in total.

### 3.6.6.5 Bad block handling in ROM

During firmware boot, at the block boundary, the Bad Block table is searched for a match to the next block.

If no match is found, the next block can be loaded. If a match is found, the block must be skipped and the next block is checked.

### 3.6.7 Parallel NOR and NAND configuration based on SEMC interface

The ROM SW supports Parallel NOR and Parallel NAND based on SEMC module, using an 80-bytes common SEMC configuration block and several specified parameters for Parallel NOR and Parallel NAND respectively. See below sections for more details.

#### 3.6.7.1 SEMC Configuration Block

SEMC Configuration block consists of all parameters related to specific Flash devices.

**Table 3-32. SEMC control block structure**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
tag	0x000	4	0x434D4553, ascii:"SEMC"
version	0x004	4	0x00010000 [07:00] bugfix = 0 [15:08] minor = 0 [31:16] major = 1
deviceMemType	0x008	1	0 – NOR Flash 1 – NAND Flash
accessCommandType	0x009	1	0 – IPG bus command 1 – AXI32 command
-	0x00A	2	Reserved
asyncClkFreq	0x00C	1	0 – 33MHz 1 – 40MHz 2 – 50MHz 3 – 66MHz 4 – 108MHz 5 – 133MHz 6 – 166MHz
busTimeoutCycles	0x00D	1	0 – 255 * 1024 cycles n – n * 1024 cycles

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-32. SEMC control block structure (continued)**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
commandExecutionTimeoutCycles	0x00E	1	0 – 256 * 1024 cycles n – n * 1024 cycles
readStrobeMode	0x00F	1	0 – Dummy read strobe loopbacked internally 1 – Dummy read strobe loopbacked from DQS pad
norMemConfig	0x010	64	See detail in Table SEMC NOR control block structure
nandMemConfig	0x010	64	See detail in Table SEMC NAND control block structure

**Table 3-33. SEMC NOR control block structure**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
comMemBaseAddress	0x00	4	SoC level Base Address for NAND AXI and IPG command
comMemSizeInByte	0x04	4	SoC level Memory size for NAND AXI and IPG command
-	0x08	8	Reserved
addressMode	0x10	1	0 – Address/Data MUX mode 1 – Advanced Address/Data MUX mode 2 – Address/Data non-MUX mode
addressPortWidth	0x11	1	Address Port bit number
dataPortWidth	0x12	1	Data Port bit number
columnAddressWidth	0x13	1	Column Address bit width
burstLengthInBytes	0x14	1	Burst Length
	0x15	3	Reserved
cePortOutputSelection	0x18	1	0 – CSX0 1 – CSX1 2 – CSX2 3 – CSX3 4 – A8
rdyPortPolarity	0x19	1	0 – Low active 1 – High active
advPortPolarity	0x1A	1	0 – Low active 1 – High active
-	0x1B	13	Reserved
ceSetupTime	0x28	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
ceMinHoldTime	0x29	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-33. SEMC NOR control block structure (continued)**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
ceMinIntervalTime	0x2A	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
addressSetupTime	0x2B	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
addressHoldTime	0x2C	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
asyncWeLowTime	0x2D	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
asyncWeHighTime	0x2E	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
asyncOeLowTime	0x2F	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
asyncOeHighTime	0x30	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
asyncTurnaroundTime	0x31	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
asyncAddressToDataHoldTime	0x32	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
syncDataSetupTime	0x33	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
syncDataHoldTime	0x34	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
syncLatencyCount	0x35	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
syncReadCycleTime	0x36	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
-	0x37	9	Reserved

**Table 3-34. SEMC NAND control block structure**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
axiMemBaseAddress	0x00	4	SoC level Base Address for NAND AXI command
axiMemSizeInByte	0x04	4	SoC level Memory size for NAND AXI command
ipgMemBaseAddress	0x08	4	SoC level Base Address for NAND IPG command
ipgMemSizeInByte	0x0c	4	SoC level Memory size for NAND IPG command
edoMode	0x10	1	0 - EDO mode disabled 1 - EDO mode enabled
ioPortWidth	0x11	1	IO Port bit number
arrayAddressOption	0x12	1	0 – 5 bytes (CA2+RA3) 1 – 4 bytes (CA1+RA3) 2 – 4 bytes (CA2+RA2) 3 – 3 bytes (CA1+RA2) 4 – 3 bytes (CA2+RA1) 7 – 2 bytes (CA1+RA1)
columnAddressWidth	0x13	1	Column address bit number
burstLengthInBytes	0x14	1	Burst Length
-	0x15	11	Reserved
cePortOutputSelection	0x20	1	0 – CSX0

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-34. SEMC NAND control block structure (continued)**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
			1 – CSX1 2 – CSX2 3 – CSX3 4 – A8
rdyPortPolarity	0x21	1	0 – Low active 1 – High active
-	0x22	14	Reserved
ceSetupTime	0x30	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
ceMinHoldTime	0x31	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
ceMinIntervalTime	0x32	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
weLowTime	0x33	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
weHighTime	0x34	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
reLowTime	0x35	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
reHighTime	0x36	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
weHighToReLowTime	0x37	1	value[5:0] + 1 cycles
reHighToWeLowTime	0x38	1	value[5:0] + 1 cycles
aleToDataStartTime	0x39	1	value[5:0] + 1 cycles
readyToReLowTime	0x3a	1	value[5:0] + 1 cycles
weHighToBusyTime	0x3b	1	value[5:0] + 1 cycles
asyncTurnaroundTime	0x3c	1	value[3:0] + 1 cycles
-	0x3d	3	Reserved

### 3.6.7.2 Parallel NOR Configuration Block (80 bytes)

**Table 3-35. Parallel NOR control block structure**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
memConfig	0x000	80	See SEMC control block structure for more details

### 3.6.7.3 Parallel NAND Configuration Block (256 bytes)

**Table 3-36. Parallel NAND control block structure**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
memConfig	0x000	80	See SEMC control block structure for more details
vendorType	0x050	1	0 – Micron

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-36. Parallel NAND control block structure (continued)**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
			1 – Spansion 2 – Samsung 3 – Winbond 4 – Hynix 5 – Toshiba 6 – Macronix
cellTechnology	0x051	1	0 – SLC 1 – MLC
onfiVersion	0x052	1	0 – Non-ONFI 1 – ONFI 1.0 2 – ONFI 2.0 3 – ONFI 3.0 4 – ONFI 4.0
acTimingTableIndex	0x053	1	0 – User Defined 1 – ONFI 1.0 Mode0 10MHz 2 – ONFI 1.0 Mode1 20MHz 3 – ONFI 1.0 Mode2 28MHz 4 – ONFI 1.0 Mode3 33MHz 5 – ONFI 1.0 Mode4 40MHz 6 – ONFI 1.0 Mode5 50MHz 7 – Auto Detection
enableEccCheck	0x054	1	0 – Enabled 1 – Disabled
eccCheckType	0x055	1	0 – Software ECC 1 – Device ECC
deviceEccStatus	0x056	1	0 – Enabled 1 – Disabled
swEccAlgorithm	0x057	1	0 – SEC Hamming Code
swEccBlockBytes	0x058	4	Software ECC block bytes (256, 512)
readyCheckOption	0x05c	1	0 – Via Status Register 1 – Via R/B# signal
statusCommandType	0x05d	1	0 – Common (0x70) 1 – Enhanced (0x78)
readyCheckTimeoutInMs	0x05e	2	Ready Check timeout
readyCheckIntervalInUs	0x060	2	Ready Check interval
-	0x062	62	Reserved
bytesInPageDataArea	0x0a0	4	Page Main data size

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 3-36. Parallel NAND control block structure (continued)**

Name	offset	Size (Bytes)	Description
bytesInPageSpareArea	0x0a4	4	Page Spare data size
pagesInBlock	0x0a8	4	Page number in one block
blocksInPlane	0x0ac	4	Block number in one plane
planesInDevice	0x0b0	4	Plane number in Device
-	0x0b4	76	Reserved

## 3.6.8 Expansion device

The ROM supports booting from the MMC/eMMC and SD/eSD compliant devices.

### 3.6.8.1 Expansion device eFUSE configuration

The SD/MMC/eSD/eMMC/SDXC boot can be performed using the USDHC ports. The port can be configured based on either the setting of the BOOT\_CFG1[1] (Port Select) fuse or its corresponding GPIO overrides.

All USDHC ports support the fast boot. See this table for details:

**Table 3-37. USDHC eFuse Descriptions**

Fuse	Config	Definition	GPIO	Shipped value	Settings
0x450[0]	OEM	Fast boot support	Yes	0	MMC 0 - Normal boot 1 - Fast boot
0x450[1]	OEM	USDHC port selection	Yes	0	0 - USDHC-1 1 - USDHC-2
0x450[2]	OEM	SD loopback clock source sel (for SDR50 and SDR104 only)	Yes	0	0 - through the SD pad 1 - direct
0x450[3]	OEM	SD power cycle enable	Yes	0	0 - No power cycle 1 - Power cycle enabled via the SD_RST pad
0x450[5:4]	OEM	SD/MMC speed mode, and eMMC acknowledge enabled selection	Yes	00	MMC 0x - Normal speed mode 1x - High-speed mode x0 - eMMC fast boot acknowledge disable

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-37. USDHC eFuse Descriptions (continued)**

					x1 - eMMC fast boot acknowledge enable SD 00 - Normal/SDR12 01 - High/SDR25 10 - SDR50 11 - SDR104
0x450[7:6]	OEM	Boot device selection	Yes	00	01 - SD/eSD/SDXC boot from the USDHC interface 10 - MMC/eMMC boot from the USDHC interface
0x450[8]	OEM	USDHC1 voltage selection	Yes	0	0 - 3.3 V 1 - 1.8 V
0x450[10:9]	OEM	SD MMC bus width selection	Yes	00	SD x0 - 1-bit x1 - 4-bit MMC 00 - 4-bit 01 - 8-bit 10 - 4-bit DDR (MMC 4.4) 11 - 8-bit DDR (MMC 4.4)
0x470[14]	OEM	eMMC4.4 pre-idle enabled selection	Yes	0	0 - Issue pre-idle command 1 - Do not issue
0x470[6]	OEM	USDHC1 reset polarity selection	Yes	0	0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high
0x460[29]	OEM	Power stable cycle selection	Yes	0	0 - 5 ms 1 - 2.5 ms
0x460[31:30]	OEM	Power cycle selection	Yes	00	00 - 20 ms 01 - 10 ms 10 - 5 ms 11 - 2.5 ms
0x460[24]	OEM	SD/MMC DLL enable selection	Yes	0	0 - Disable DLL for SD/eMMC 1 - Enable DLL for SD/Emmc
0x470[7]	OEM	DLL override selection	Yes	0	0 - No override 1 - DLL override mode for SD/eMMC (Override by MMC_DLL_DLY, 0x470[19:16])
0X6D0[31:30]	OEM	SD calibration step	Yes	00	SD 00 - 1 delay cell 01 - 2 delay cells 10 - 4 delay cells

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-37. USDHC eFuse Descriptions (continued)**

					11 - 4 delay cells
0x470[0]	OEM	SD/MMC pad settings override selection	Yes	0	0 - No override 1 - Override (override by PAD_SETTINGS, 0x6d0[5:0])
0x470[3]	OEM	Disable SDMMC Manufacture mode	Yes	0	0 - Enable 1 - Disable
0x470[5]	OEM	USDHC2 voltage selection	Yes	0	0 - 3.3 V 1 - 1.8 V
0x470[8]	OEM	USDHC_IOMUX_SRE_ENABLE	Yes	0	0 - Disable 1 - Enable
0x470[9]	OEM	USDHC_IOMUX_SION_BIT_ENABLE	Yes	0	0 - Disable 1 - Enable
0x470[11]	OEM	ENABLE_EMMC_22K_PULLUP	Yes	0	MMC 0 - 47K pullup 1 - 22K pullup
0x470[12]	OEM	USDHC_PAD_PULL_DOWN	Yes	0	SD 0 - no action 1 - pull down
0x470[13]	OEM	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	Yes	0	0 - No override 1 - Override HYS bit with 1
0x470[15]	OEM	USDHC2 reset polarity selection	Yes	0	0 - Reset active-low 1 - Reset active-high
0x470[30:24]	OEM	MMC_DLL_DLY	Yes	0000000	Override number
0x6d0[5:0]	OEM	PAD_SETTINGS	Yes	000000	Override number

The boot code supports these standards:

- MMCv4.4 or less
- eMMCv4.4 or less
- SDv2.0 or less
- eSDv2.10 rev-0.9, with or without FAST\_BOOT
- SDXCv3.0

The MMC/SD/eSD/SDXC/eMMC can be connected to any of the USDHC blocks and can be booted by copying 4 KB of data from the MMC/SD/eSD/eMMC device to the internal RAM. After checking the Image Vector Table header value (0xD1) from program image, the ROM code performs a DCD check. After a successful DCD extraction, the ROM code extracts from the Boot Data Structure the destination pointer and length of image to be copied to the RAM device from where the code execution occurs.

The maximum image size to load into the SD/MMC boot is 32 MB. This is due to a limited number of uSDHC ADMA Buffer Descriptors allocated by the ROM.

### NOTE

The initial 4 KB of the program image must contain the IVT, DCD, and the Boot Data structures.

**Table 3-38. SD/MMC frequencies**

	SD	MMC	MMC (DDR mode)
Identification (KHz)	347.22		
Normal-speed mode (MHz)	25	20	25
High-speed mode (MHz)	50	40	50
UHSI SDR50 (MHz)	100		
UHSI SDR104 (MHz)	200		

### NOTE

The boot ROM code reads the application image length and the application destination pointer from the image.

### 3.6.8.2 MMC and eMMC boot

This table provides the MMC and eMMC boot details.

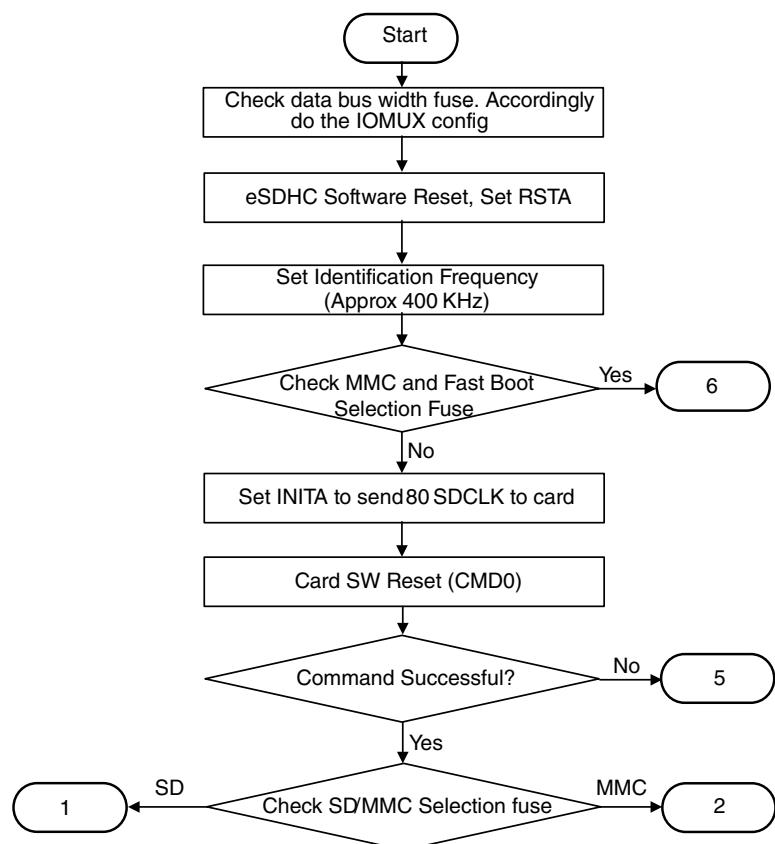
**Table 3-39. MMC and eMMC boot details**

Normal boot mode	<p>During the initialization (normal boot mode), the MMC frequency is set to 347.22 KHz. When the MMC card enters the identification portion of the initialization, the voltage validation is performed, and the ROM boot code checks the high-voltage settings and the card capacity. The ROM boot code supports both the high-capacity and low-capacity MMC/eMMC cards. After the initialization phase is complete, the ROM boot code switches to a higher frequency (20 MHz in the normal boot mode or 40 MHz in the high-speed mode). The eMMC is also interfaced via the USDHC and follows the same flow as the MMC.</p> <p>The boot partition can be selected for an MMC4.x card after the card initialization is complete. The ROM code reads the BOOT_PARTITION_ENABLE field in the Ext_CSD[179] to get the boot partition to be set. If there is no boot partition mentioned in the BOOT_PARTITION_ENABLE field or the user partition was mentioned, the ROM boots from the user partition.</p>
eMMC4.3 or eMMC4.4 device supporting special boot mode	If using an eMMC4.3 or eMMC4.4 device that supports the special boot mode, it can be initiated by pulling the CMD line low. If the BOOT ACK is enabled, the eMMC4.3/eMMC4.4 device sends the BOOT ACK via the DATA lines and the

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-39. MMC and eMMC boot details (continued)**

	ROM can read the BOOT ACK [S010E] to identify the eMMC4.3/eMMC4.4 device. The eMMC4.3/eMMC4.4 device with the "boot mode" feature can only be supported via the ESDHCV3-3 and with or without the BOOT ACK. If the BOOT ACK is enabled, the ROM waits 50 ms to get the BOOT ACK and if the BOOT ACK is received by the ROM. If BOOT ACK is disabled ROM waits 1 second for data. If the BOOT ACK or data was received, the eMMC4.3/eMMC4.4 is booted in the "boot mode", otherwise the eMMC4.3/eMMC4.4 boots as a normal MMC card from the selected boot partition. This boot mode can be selected by the BOOT_CFG1[4] (fast boot) fuse. The BOOT ACK is selected by the BOOT_CFG2[1].
eMMC4.4 device	If using the eMMC4.4 device, the Double Data Rate (DDR) mode can be used. This mode can be selected by the BOOT_CFG2[7:5] (bus width) fuse.

**Figure 3-7. Expansion device boot flow (1 of 6)**

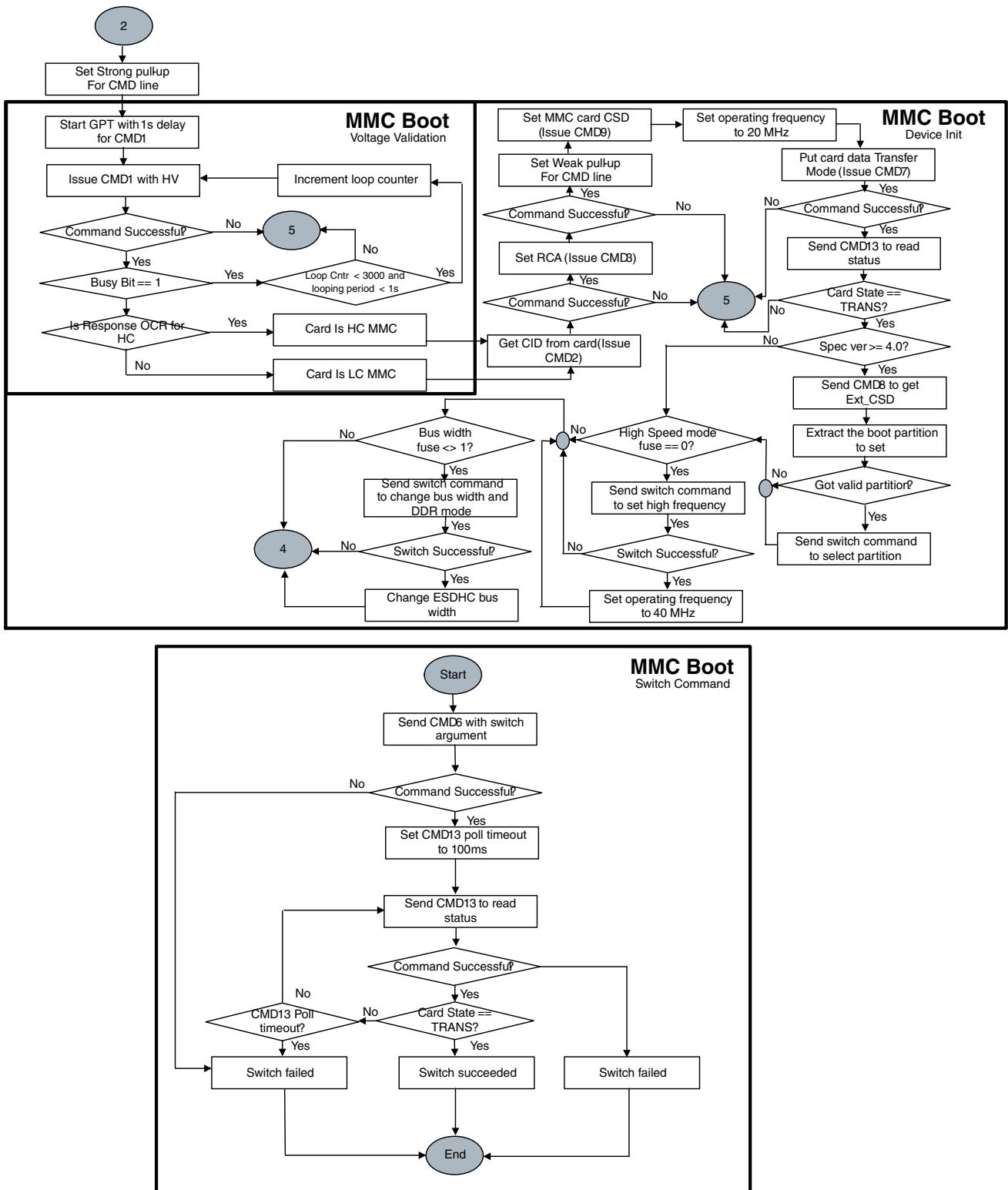


Figure 3-8. Expansion device (MMC) boot flow (2 of 6)

## Boot devices

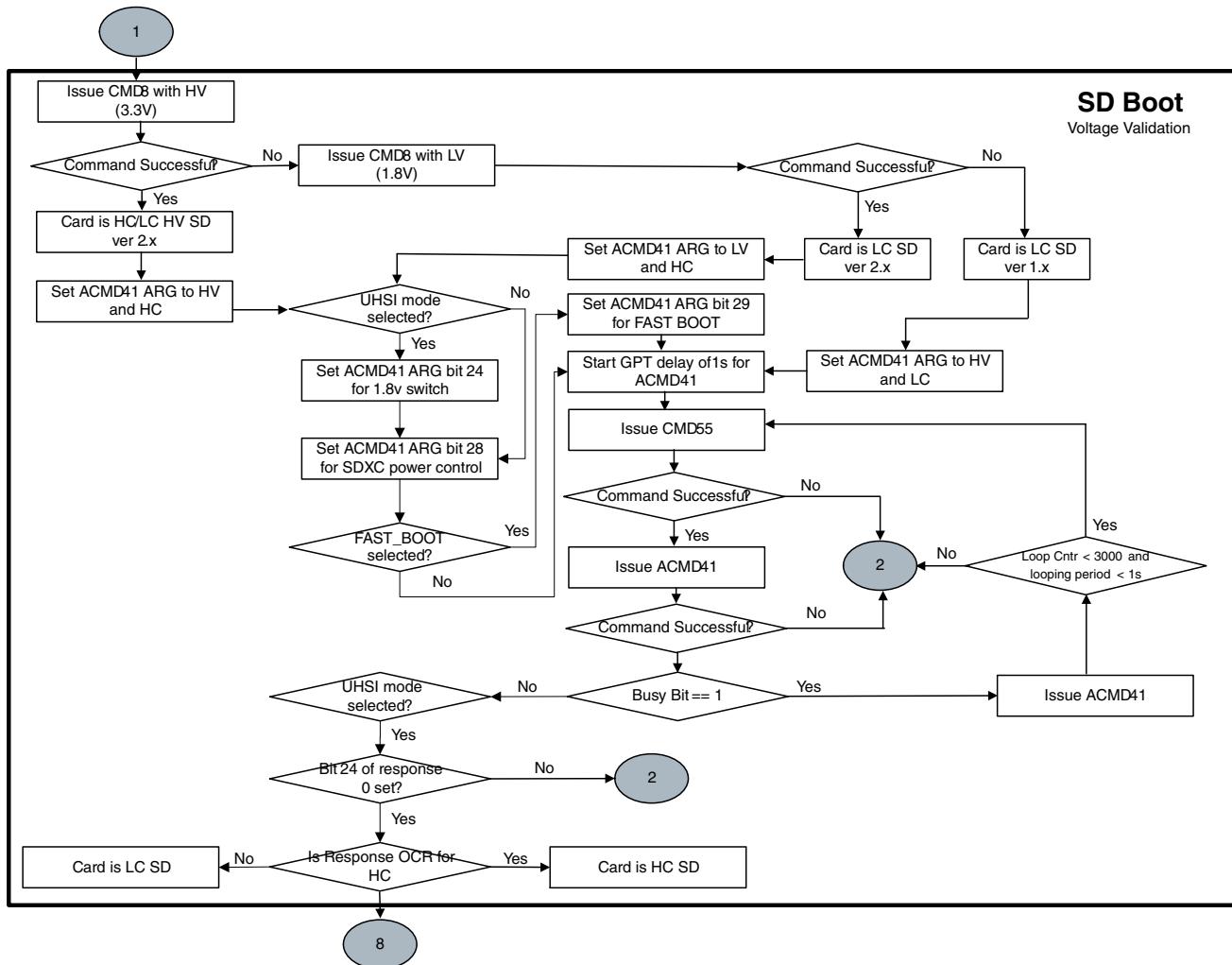


Figure 3-9. Expansion device (SD/eSD/SDXC) boot flow (3 of 6) part 1

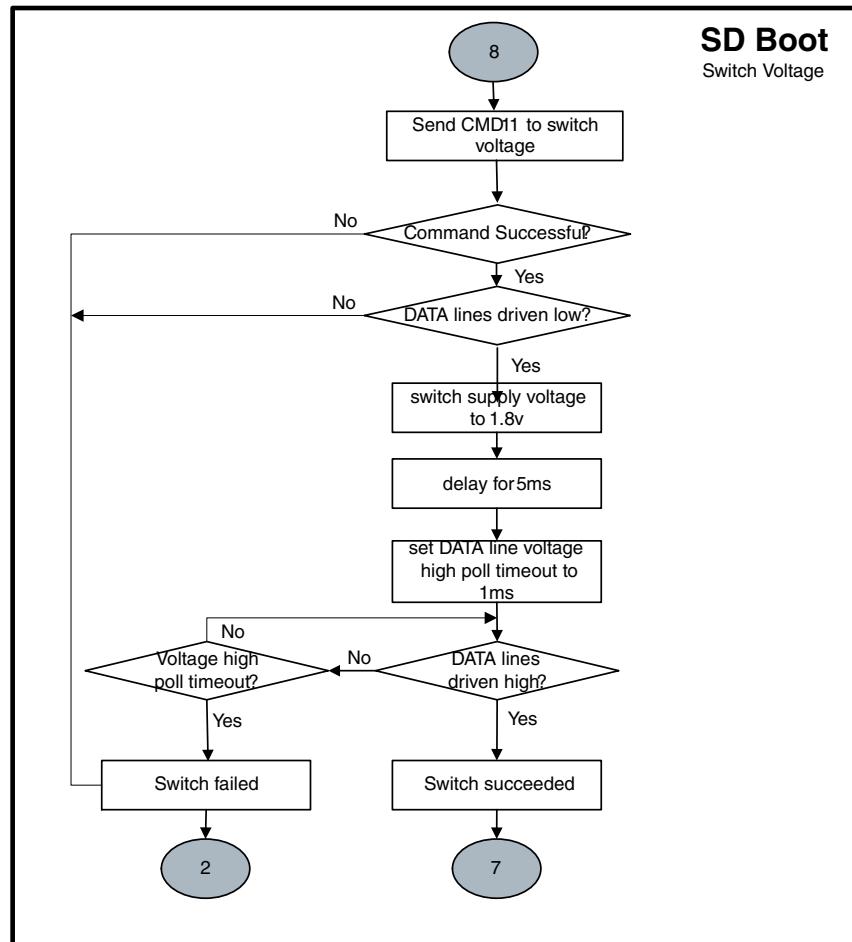
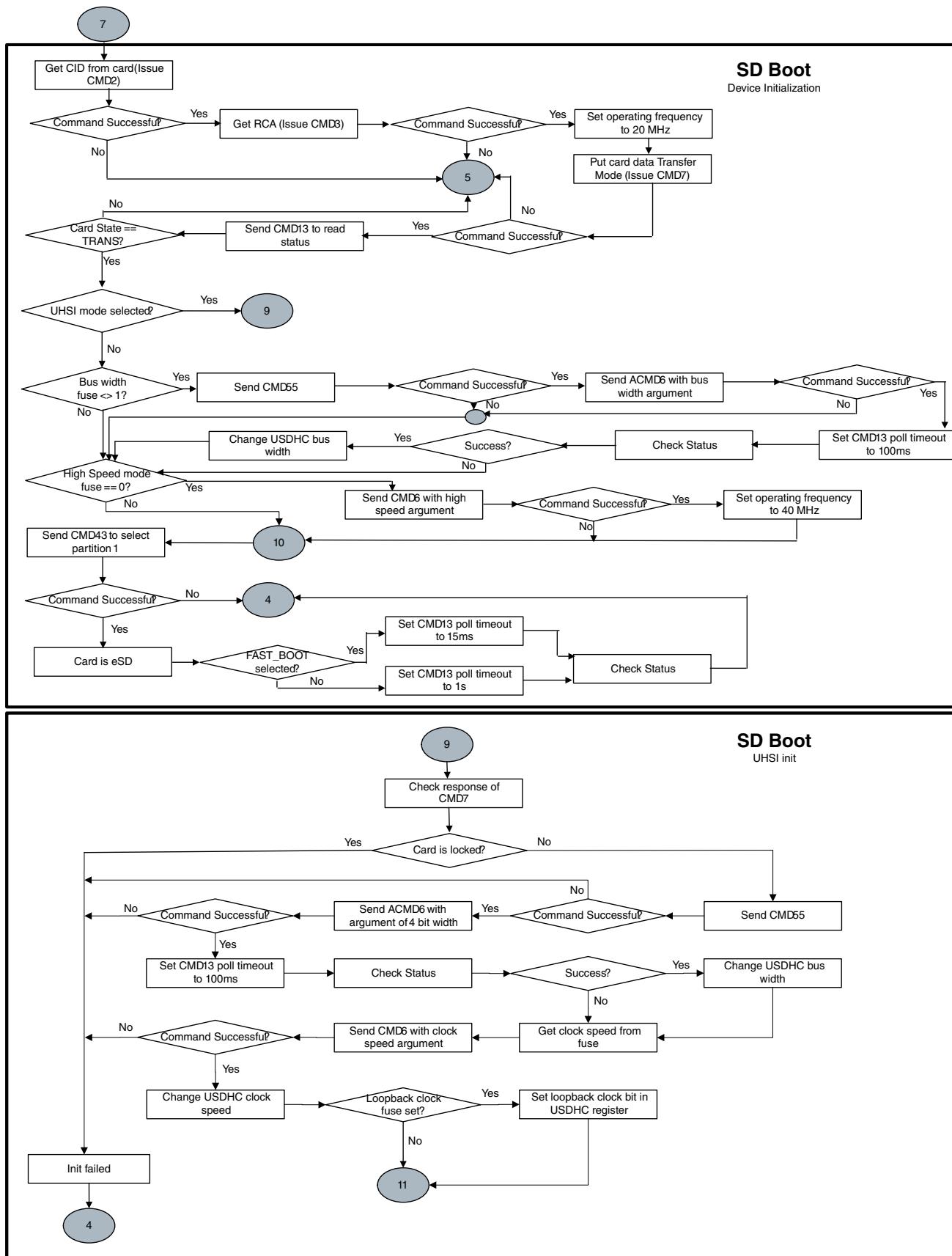


Figure 3-10. Expansion device (SD/eSD/SDXC) boot flow (3 of 6) part 2

## Boot devices



**Figure 3-11. Expansion device (MMCSD/eSD/SDXC) boot flow (4 of 6)**  
Security Reference Manual for the i.MX RT106x Processor, Rev. 0, 02/2020

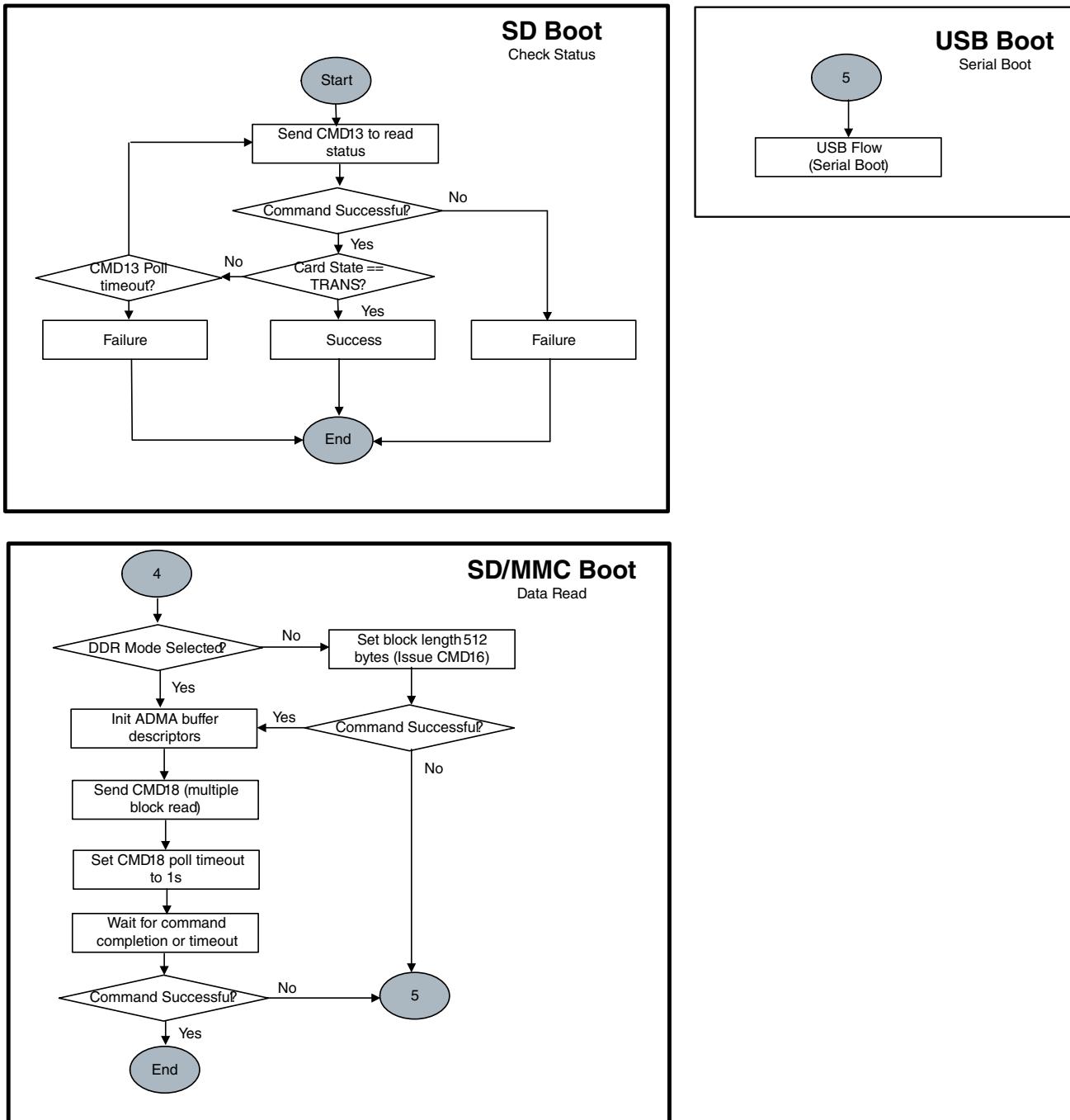
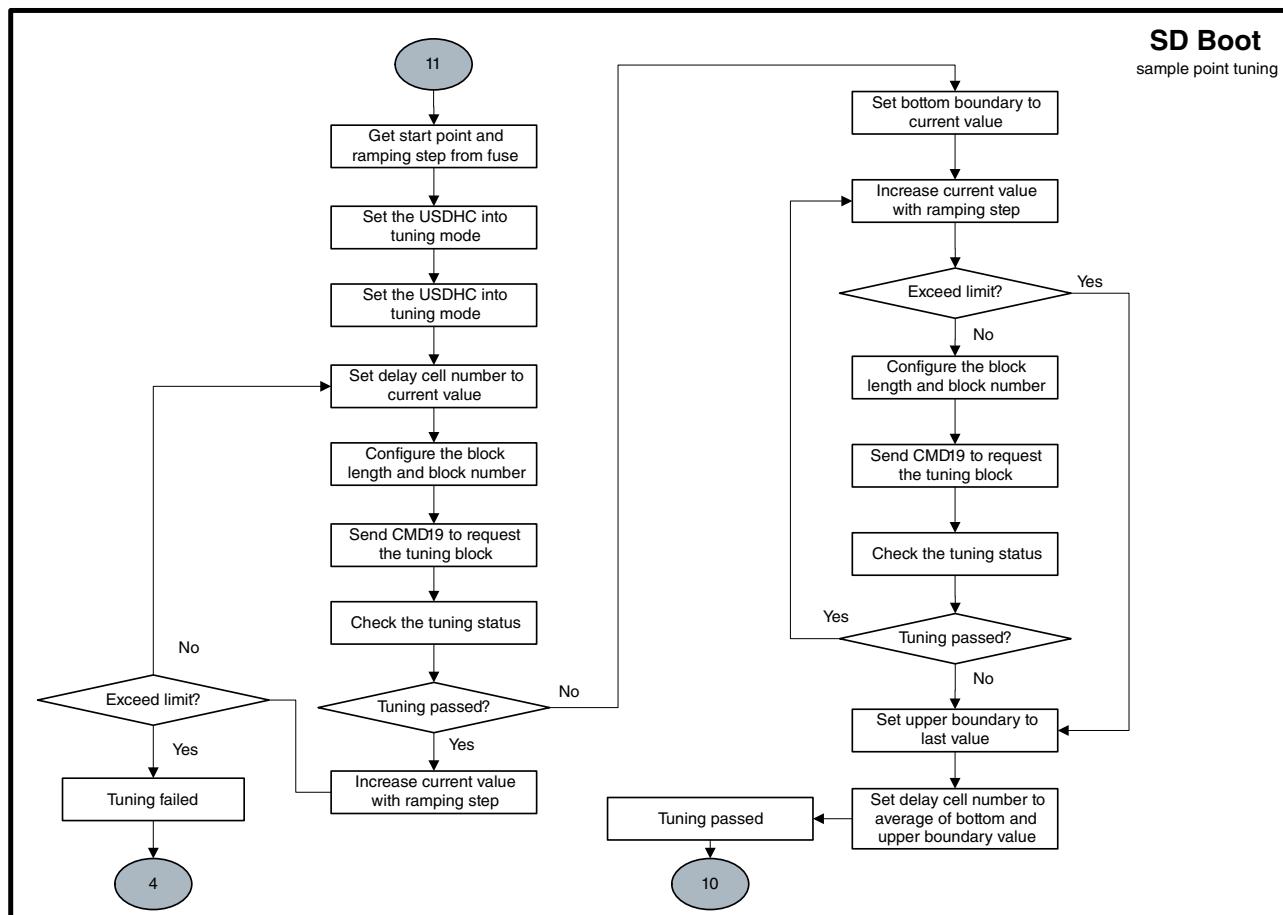
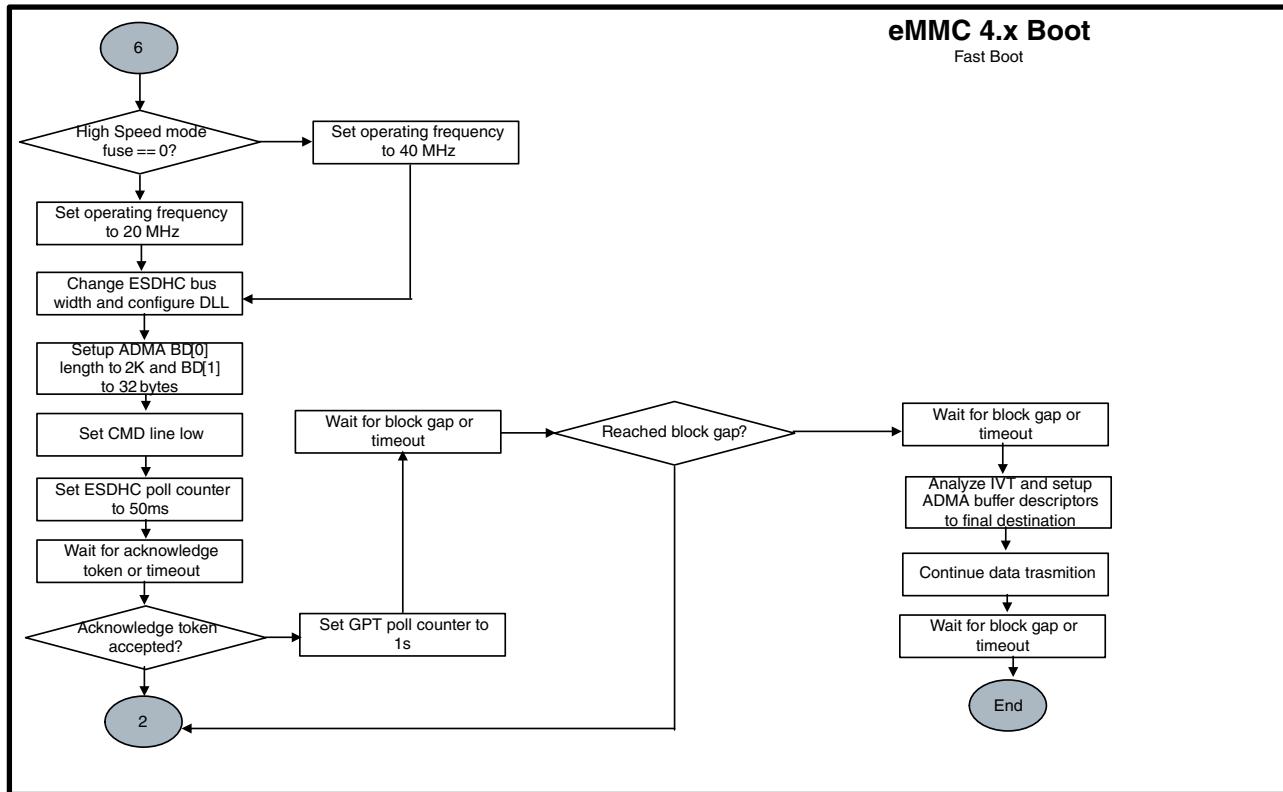


Figure 3-12. Expansion device (SD/eSD) boot flow (5 of 6)

## Boot devices



**Figure 3-13. Expansion device boot flow (6 of 6)**  
Security Reference Manual for the i.MX RT106x Processor, Rev. 0, 02/2020

### 3.6.8.3 SD, eSD, and SDXC

After the normal boot mode initialization begins, the SD/eSD/SDXC frequency is set to 347.22 kHz. During the identification phase, the SD/eSD/SDXC card voltage validation is performed. During the voltage validation, the boot code first checks with the high-voltage settings; if that fails, it checks with the low-voltage settings.

The capacity of the card is also checked. The boot code supports the high-capacity and low-capacity SD/eSD/SDXC cards after the voltage validation card initialization is done.

During the card initialization, the ROM boot code attempts to set the boot partition for all SD, eSD, and SDXC devices. If this fails, the boot code assumes that the card is a normal SD or SDXC card. If it does not fail, the boot code assumes it is an eSD card. After the initialization phase is over, the boot code switches to a higher frequency (25 MHz in the normal-speed mode or 50 MHz in the high-speed mode). The ROM also supports the FAST\_BOOT mode booting from the eSD card. This mode can be selected by the BOOT\_CFG1[0] (Fast Boot).

For the UHSI cards, the clock speed fuses can be set to SDR50 or SDR104 on USDHC1, USDHC2 ports. This enables the voltage switch process to set the signaling voltage to 1.8 V during the voltage validation. The bus width is fixed at a 4-bit width and a sampling point tuning process is needed to calibrate the number of the delay cells. If the SD Loopback Clock eFuse is set, the feedback clock comes directly from the loopback SD clock, instead of the card clock (by default). The SD clock speed can be selected by the BOOT\_CFG1[5:4], and the SD Loopback Clock is selected by the BOOT\_CFG1[2].

The UHSI calibration start value (MMC\_DLL\_DL\_Y[6:0]) and the step value SD\_CALIBRATION\_STEP[1:0] can be set to optimize the sample point tuning process.

If the SD Power Cycle Enable eFuse is 1, the ROM sets the SD\_RST pad low, waits for 5 ms, and then sets the SD\_RST pad high. If the SD\_RST pad is connected to the SD power supply enable logic on board, it enables the power cycle of the SD card. This may be crucial in case the SD logic is in the 1.8 V states and must be reset to the 3.3 V states.

The SDR50 and SDR104 boots are not supported on the USDHC1 and USDHC2 ports because there are no reset signals for those ports when connected in the IOMUX.

### 3.6.8.4 IOMUX configuration for SD/MMC

Table 3-40. IOMUX configuration for SD/MMC

Signal	USDHC1	USDHC2
CLK	GPIO_SD_B0_01.alt0	GPIO_SD_B1_04.alt0
CMD	GPIO_SD_B0_00.alt0	GPIO_SD_B1_05.alt0
DATA0	GPIO_SD_B0_02.alt0	GPIO_SD_B1_03.alt0
DATA1	GPIO_SD_B0_03.alt0	GPIO_SD_B1_02.alt0
DATA2	GPIO_SD_B0_04.alt0	GPIO_SD_B1_01.alt0
DATA3	GPIO_SD_B0_05.alt0	GPIO_SD_B1_00.alt0
DATA4	—	GPIO_SD_B1_08.alt0
DATA5	—	GPIO_SD_B1_09.alt0
DATA6	—	GPIO_SD_B1_10.alt0
DATA7	—	GPIO_SD_B1_11.alt0
VSELECT	GPIO_B1_14.alt6	GPIO_EMC_38.alt6
RESET_B	GPIO_B1_15.alt6	GPIO_SD_B1_06.alt0
CD_B	GPIO_B1_12.alt6	—

### 3.6.8.5 Redundant boot support for expansion device

The ROM supports the redundant boot for an expansion device. The primary or secondary image is selected, depending on the PERSIST\_SECONDARY\_BOOT setting. (see [Table 3-8](#)).

If the PERSIST\_SECONDARY\_BOOT is 0, the boot ROM uses address 0x0 for the primary image.

If the PERSIST\_SECONDARY\_BOOT is 1, the boot ROM reads the secondary image table from address 0x200 on the boot media and uses the address specified in the table.

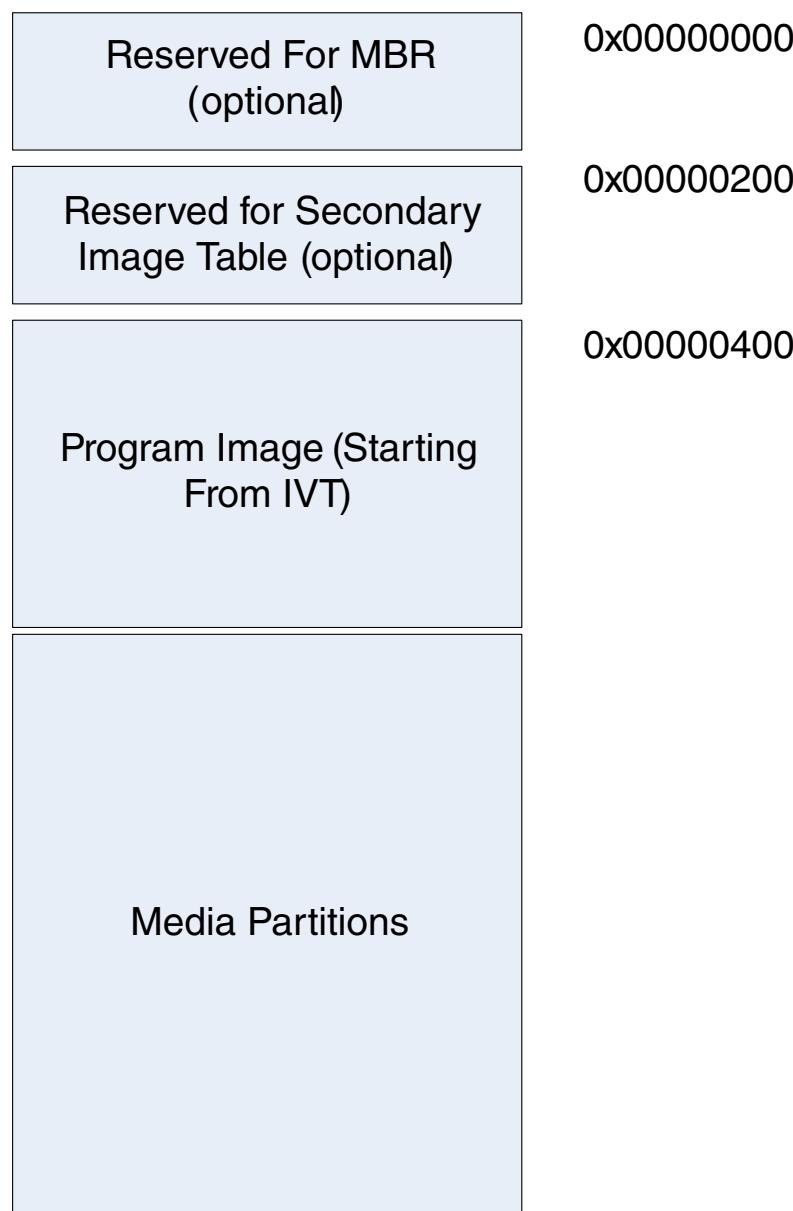
Table 3-41. Secondary image table format

Reserved (chipNum)
Reserved (driveType)
tag
firstSectorNumber
Reserved (sectorCount)

Where:

- The tag is used as an indication of the valid secondary image table. It must be 0x00112233.
- The firstSectorNumber is the first 512-byte sector number of the secondary image.

For the secondary image support, the primary image must reserve the space for the secondary image table. See this figure for the typical structures layout on an expansion device.



**Figure 3-14. Expansion device structures layout**

For the Closed mode, if there are failures during primary image authentication, the boot ROM turns on the PERSIST\_SECONDARY\_BOOT bit (see [Table 3-8](#)) and performs the software reset. (After the software reset, the secondary image is used.)

### 3.6.9 Serial NOR/EEPROM through LPSPI

The chip supports booting from serial memory devices, such as EEPROM and serial flash, using the LPSPI.

These ports are available for serial boot: LPSPI interfaces.

#### 3.6.9.1 Serial NOR/EEPROM eFUSE configuration

The boot ROM code determines the type of device using the following parameters, provided by the eFUSE settings, during boot.

**Table 3-42. Serial NOR/EEPROM boot eFUSE descriptions**

Fuse	Config	Definition	GPIO	Shipped value	Settings
EEPROM_RECOVE RY_EN(0x6D0[24])	OEM	EEPROM recovery enable	No	0	0 - Disabled 1 - Enabled
LPSPI_PORT_SEL(0 x6D0[26:25])	OEM	Port select	No	00	00 - LPSPI1 01 - LPSPI2 10 - LPSPI3 (if applicable in the device) 11 - LPSPI4 (if applicable in the device)
LPSPI_ADDR(0x6D0[ 27])	OEM	SPI addressing (SPI only)	No	0	0 - 3B (24-bit) 1 - 2B (16-bit)
LPSPI_SPEED (0x6D0[29:28])	OEM	LPSPI Speed select	No	00	00 - 20 MHz 01 - 10 MHz 10 - 5 MHz 11 - 2 MHz

The LPSPI<sub>n</sub> block can be used as a boot device using the LPSPI interface for the serial ROM boot. The SPI interface is configured to operate at speed specified by LPSPI\_SPED\_SEL fuse field.

The boot ROM copies 4 KB of data from the serial ROM device to the internal RAM. After checking the Image Vector Table header value (0xD1) from the program image, the ROM code performs a DCD check. After a successful DCD extraction, the ROM code extracts the destination pointer and length of image from the Boot Data Structure to be copied to the RAM device from where the code execution occurs.

**NOTE**

The Initial 4 KB of program image must contain the IVT, DCD, and the Boot Data Structures.

## 3.7 Program image

This section describes the data structures that are required to be included in the user's program image. The program image consists of:

- Image vector table—a list of pointers located at a fixed address that the ROM examines to determine where the other components of the program image are located.
- Boot data—a table that indicates the program image location, program image size in bytes, and the plugin flag.
- Device configuration data—IC configuration data.
- User code and data.

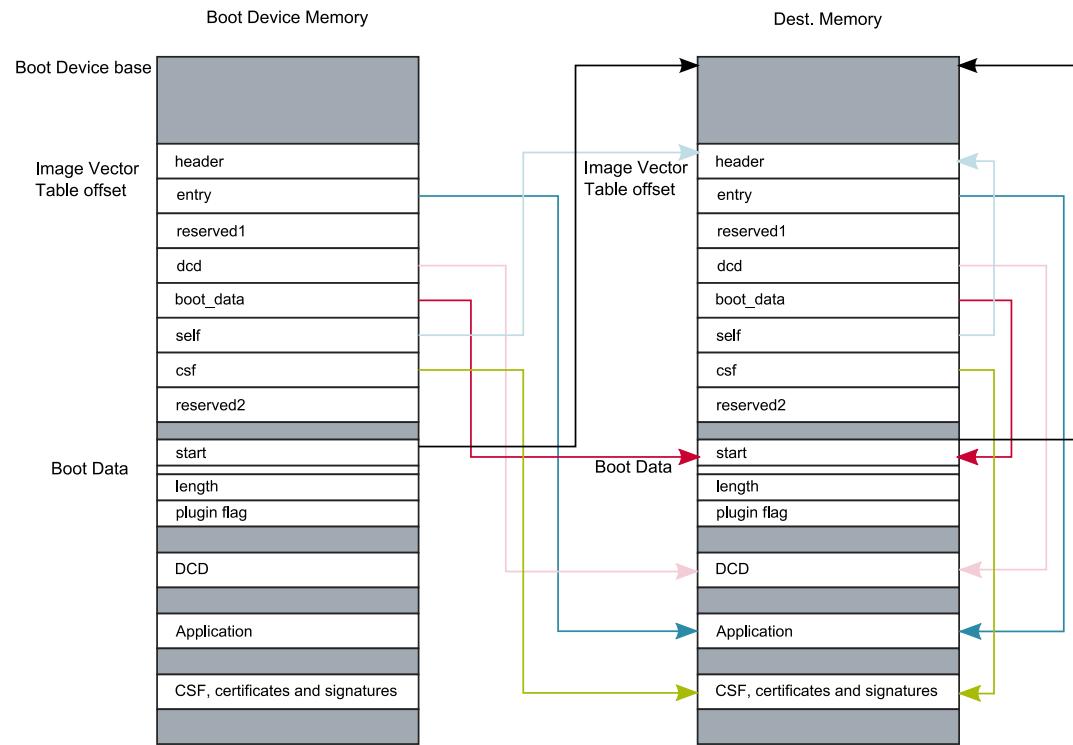
### 3.7.1 Image Vector Table and Boot Data

The Image Vector Table (IVT) is the data structure that the ROM reads from the boot device supplying the program image containing the required data components to perform a successful boot.

The IVT includes the program image entry point, a pointer to Device Configuration Data (DCD) and other pointers used by the ROM during the boot process. The ROM locates the IVT at a fixed address that is determined by the boot device connected to the Chip. The IVT offset from the base address for each boot device type is defined in the table below. The location of the IVT is the only fixed requirement by the ROM. The remainder or the image memory map is flexible and is determined by the contents of the IVT.

**Table 3-43. Image Vector Table Offset and Initial Load Region Size**

Boot Device Type	Image Vector Table Offset
FlexSPI NOR/SEMC NOR	4 Kbyte = 0x1000 bytes
SD/MMC/eSD/eMMC/SDXC	1 Kbyte = 0x400 bytes
SPI NOR/EEPROM/SEMC NAND/ FlexSPI NAND	1 Kbyte = 0x400 bytes

**Figure 3-15. Image Vector Table**

### 3.7.1.1 Image vector table structure

The IVT has the following format where each entry is a 32-bit word:

**Table 3-44. IVT format**

header
entry: Absolute address of the first instruction to execute from the image
reserved1: Reserved and should be zero
dcd: Absolute address of the image DCD. The DCD is optional so this field may be set to NULL if no DCD is required. See <a href="#">Device Configuration Data (DCD)</a> for further details on the DCD.
boot data: Absolute address of the boot data
self: Absolute address of the IVT. Used internally by the ROM
csf: Absolute address of the Command Sequence File (CSF) used by the HAB library. See <a href="#">High-Assurance Boot (HAB)</a> for details on the secure boot using HAB. This field must be set to NULL if a CSF is not provided in the image
reserved2: Reserved and should be zero

**NOTE**

The DCD is not supported in the BootROM, in this device. It must be set to 0x00.

Figure 3-16 shows the IVT header format:

Tag	Length	Version
-----	--------	---------

**Figure 3-16. IVT header format**

where:

Tag: A single byte field set to 0xD1  
 Length: a two byte field in big endian format containing the overall length of the IVT, in bytes, including the header. (the length is fixed and must have a value of 32 bytes)  
 Version: A single byte field set to 0x40 or 0x41

### 3.7.1.2 Boot data structure

The boot data must follow the format defined in the table found here, each entry is a 32-bit word.

**Table 3-45. Boot data format**

start	Absolute address of the image
length	Size of the program image
plugin	Plugin flag (see <a href="#">Plugin image</a> )

### 3.7.2 Device Configuration Data (DCD)

Upon reset, the chip uses the default register values for all peripherals in the system. However, these settings typically are not ideal for achieving the optimal system performance and there are even some peripherals that must be configured before they can be used.

The DCD is a configuration information contained in the program image (external to the ROM) that the ROM interprets to configure various peripherals on the chip.

## Program image

For example, some components (such as SDRAM) require some sequence of register programming as a part of the configuration before it is ready to be used. The DCD feature can be used to program the SEMC register to the optimal settings.

The ROM determines the location of the DCD table based on the information located in the Image Vector Table (IVT). See [Image Vector Table and Boot Data](#) for more details. The DCD table shown below is a big-endian byte array of the allowable DCD commands. The maximum size of the DCD is limited to 1768 B.

Header
[CMD]
[CMD]
...

**Figure 3-17. DCD data format**

The DCD header is 4 B with the following format:

Tag	Length	Version
-----	--------	---------

**Figure 3-18. DCD header format**

where:

Tag: A single-byte field set to 0xD2  
Length: a two-byte field in the big-endian format containing the overall length of the DCD (in bytes) including the header  
Version: A single-byte field set to 0x41

### 3.7.2.1 Write data command

The write data command is used to write a list of given 1-, 2- or 4-byte values (or bitmasks) to a corresponding list of target addresses.

The Value/Mask fields are always 32-bits. If the parameter field specifies a smaller size, then the extra bytes must be zero.

The format of the write data command (in a big-endian byte array) is shown in this table:

**Table 3-46. Write data command format**

Tag	Length	Parameter
	Address	
	Value/Mask	
	[Address]	
	[Value/Mask]	
	...	
	[Address]	
	[Value/Mask]	

where:

Tag: a single-byte field set to 0xCC

Length: a two-byte field in a big-endian format, containing the length of the Write Data Command (in bytes) including the header

Address: the target address to which the data must be written

Value/Mask: the data value (or bitmask) to be written to the preceding address

The parameter field is a single byte divided into the bitfields, as follows:

**Table 3-47. Write data command parameter field**

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
flags						bytes	

where

bytes: the width of the target locations in bytes (either 1, 2, or 4)

flags: control flags for the command behavior

Data Mask = bit 3: if set, only specific bits may be overwritten at the target address (otherwise all bits may be overwritten)

Data Set = bit 4: if set, the bits at the target address are overwritten with this flag (otherwise it is ignored)

One or more target address and value/bitmask pairs can be specified. The same bytes' and flags' parameters apply to all locations in the command.

When successful, this command writes to each target address in accordance with the flags as follows:

**Table 3-48. Interpretation of write data command flags**

"Mask"	"Set"	Action	Interpretation
0	0	*address = val_msk	Write value
0	1	*address = val_msk	Write value
1	0	*address &= ~val_msk	Clear bitmask
1	1	*address  = val_msk	Set bitmask

**NOTE**

If any of the target addresses does not have the same alignment as the data width indicated in the parameter field, none of the values are written.

If any of the values are larger or any of the bitmasks are wider than permitted by the data width indicated in the parameter field, none of the values are written.

If any of the target addresses do not lie within the allowed region, none of the values are written. The list of allowable blocks and target addresses for the chip are provided below.

**Table 3-49. Valid DCD address ranges**

Address range	Start address	Last address
IOMUX Control SNVS GPR(IOMUXC_SNVS_GPR) registers	0x400A_4000	0x400A_7FFF
IOMUX Control SNVS (IOMUXC_SNVS) registers	0x400A_8000	0x400A_BFFF
IOMUX Control GPR(IOMUXC_GPR) registers	0x400A_C000	0x400A_FFFF
CCM Analog (ANATOP) registers	0x400D_8000	0x400D_BFFF
CCM registers	0x400F_C000	0x400F_FFFF
SEMC registers	0x402F_0000	0x402F_3FFF

### 3.7.2.2 Check data command

The check data command is used to test for a given 1-, 2-, or 4-byte bitmasks from a source address.

The check data command is a big-endian byte array with the format shown in this table:

**Table 3-50. Check data command format**

Tag	Length	Parameter
	Address	
	Mask	
	[Count]	

where:

Tag: a single-byte field set to 0xCF

Length: a two-byte field in the big-endian format containing the length of the check data command (in bytes) including the header

Address: the source address to test

Mask: the bit mask to test

Count: an optional poll count; If the count is not specified, this command polls indefinitely until the exit condition is met. If count = 0, this command behaves as for the NOP.

The parameter field is a single byte divided into bitfields, as follows:

**Table 3-51. Check data command parameter field**

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
flags					bytes		

where

bytes: the width of target locations in bytes (either 1, 2, or 4)

flags: control flags for the command behavior

Data Mask = bit 3: if set, only the specific bits may be overwritten at a target address (otherwise all bits may be overwritten)

Data Set = bit 4: if set, the bits at the target address are overwritten with this flag (otherwise it is ignored)

This command polls the source address until either the exit condition is satisfied, or the poll count is reached. The exit condition is determined by the flags as follows:

**Table 3-52. Interpretation of check data command flags**

"Mask"	"Set"	Action	Interpretation
0	0	(*address & mask) == 0	All bits clear
0	1	(*address & mask) == mask	All bits set
1	0	(*address & mask)!= mask	Any bit clear
1	1	(*address & mask)!= 0	Any bit set

### NOTE

If the source address does not have the same alignment as the data width indicated in the parameter field, the value is not read.

If the bitmask is wider than permitted by the data width indicated in the parameter field, the value is not read.

### 3.7.2.3 NOP command

This command has no effect.

The format of the NOP command is a big-endian four-byte array, as shown in this table:

**Table 3-53. NOP command format**

Tag	Length	Undefined
-----	--------	-----------

## Plugin image

where:

Tag: a single-byte field set to 0xC0  
Length: a two-byte field in big endian containing the length of the NOP command in bytes (fixed to a value of 4)  
Undefined: this byte is ignored and can be set to any value.

## 3.8 Plugin image

The ROM supports a limited number of boot devices. When using other devices as a boot source (for example, Ethernet or USB), the supported boot device must be used (typically serial flash) as a firmware to provide the missing boot drivers. Additionally, the plugin can be customized to support boot drivers, which is more flexible when performing the device initialization, such as condition judging, delay assertion, or to apply custom settings to the boot device and memory system.

In addition to the standard images, the chip also supports plugin images. The plugin images return the execution to the ROM whereas the standard image does not.

The boot ROM detects the image type using the plugin flag of the boot data structure (see [Boot data structure](#)). If the plugin flag is 1, then the ROM uses the image as a plugin function. The function must initialize the boot device and copy the program image to the final location. At the end, the plugin function must return with the program image parameters. (See [High-level boot sequence](#) for details about the boot flow).

The boot ROM authenticates the plugin image before running the plugin function and then authenticates the program image.

The plugin function must follow the API described below:

```
typedef BOOLEAN (*plugin_download_f)(void **start, size_t *bytes, UINT32 *ivt_offset);
```

ARGUMENTS PASSED:

- start - the image load address on exit.
- bytes - the image size on exit.
- ivt\_offset - the offset (in bytes) of the IVT from the image start address on exit.

RETURN VALUE:

- 1 - success
- 0 - failure

## 3.9 Serial Downloader

The Serial Downloader provides a means to download a program image to the chip over the USB and UART serial connection.

In this mode, the ROM programs the WDOG1 for a time-out specified by the fuse WDOG Time-out Select (See the Fusemap chapter for details) if the WDOG\_ENABLE eFuse is 1 and continuously polls for the USB and UART connection. If no activity is found on the USB OTG1 and UART and the watchdog timer expires, the Arm core is reset.

### NOTE

After the downloaded image is loaded, it is responsible for managing the watchdog resets properly.

This figure shows the USB and UART boot flow:

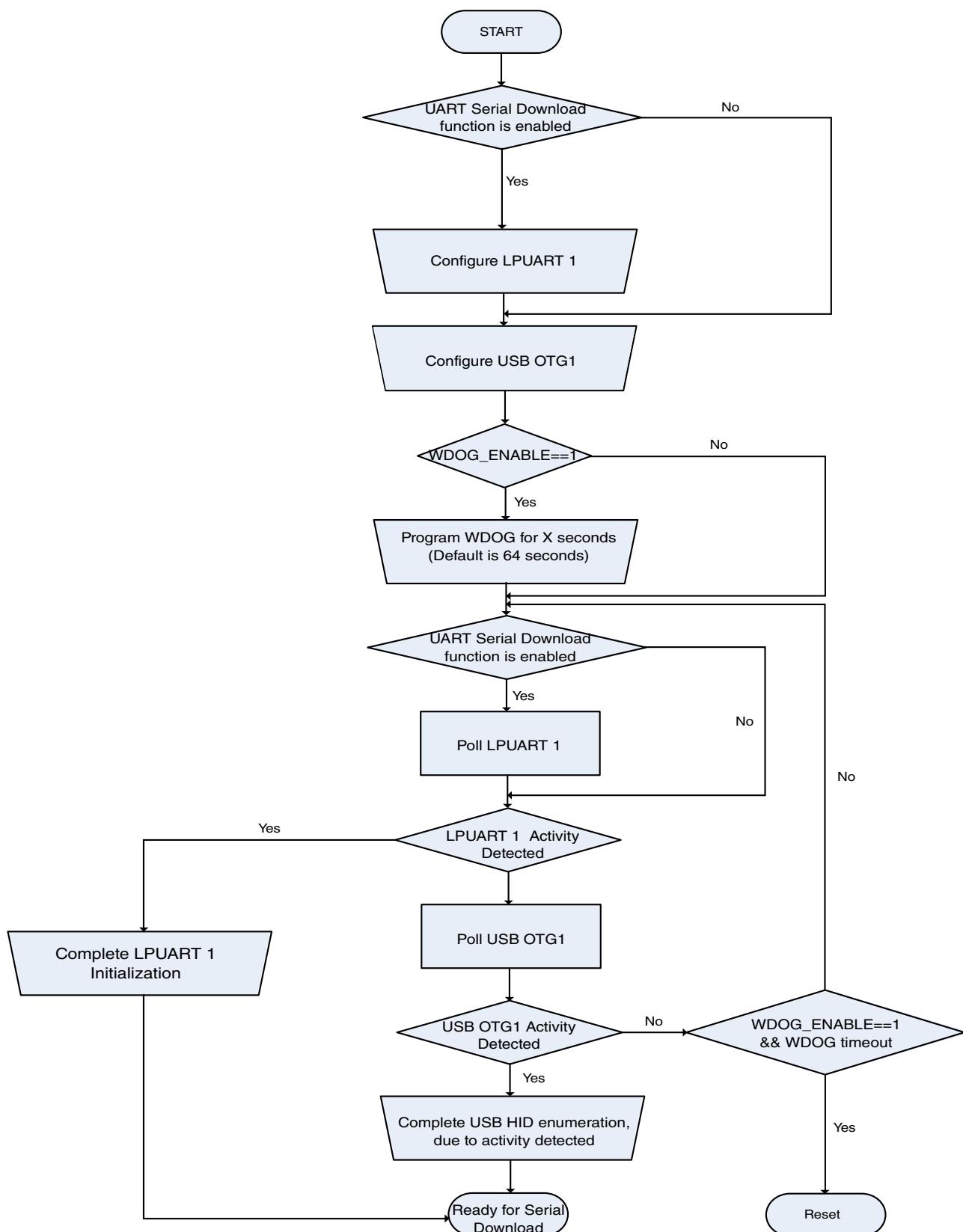


Figure 3-19. Serial Downloader boot flow

### 3.9.1 USB

The USB support is composed of the USB1 (USB OTG1 core controller, compliant with the USB 2.0 specification) and the USBPHY (HS USB transceiver).

The ROM supports the USB1 port for boot purposes. The other USB ports on the chip are not supported for boot purposes.

The USB Driver is implemented as a USB HID class. A collection of four HID reports are used to implement the SDP protocol for data transfers, as described in [Table 3-54](#).

**Table 3-54. USB HID reports**

Report ID (first byte)	Transfer endpoint	Direction	Length	Description
1	control OUT	Host to device	17 B	SDP command from the host to the device.
2	control OUT	Host to device	Up to 1025 B	Data associated with the report 1 SDP command.
3	interrupt	Device to host	5 B	HAB security configuration. The device sends 0x12343412 in the closed mode and 0x56787856 in the open mode.
4	interrupt	Device to host	Up to 65 B	Data in response to the SDP command in report 1.

#### 3.9.1.1 USB configuration details

The USB OTG function device driver supports a high speed (HS for UTMI) non-stream mode with a maximal packet size of 512 B and a low-level USB OTG function.

The VID/PID and strings for the USB device driver are listed in the following table.

**Table 3-55. VID/PID and strings for USB device driver**

Descriptor	Value
VID	0x1FC9 (NXP vendor ID)
PID <sup>1</sup>	0x0135
String Descriptor1 (manufacturer)	NXP Semiconductors
String Descriptor2 (product)	S Blank

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-55. VID/PID and strings for USB device driver (continued)**

Descriptor	Value
String Descriptor4	NXP Flash
String Descriptor5	NXP Flash

1. Allocation based on the BPN (Before Part Number)

### 3.9.1.2 IOMUX configuration for USB

The interface signals of the UTMI PHY are not configured in the IOMUX. The UTMI PHY interface uses the dedicated contacts on the IC. See the chip data sheet for details.

### 3.9.2 Serial Download Protocol (SDP)

The 16-byte SDP command from the host to device is sent using the HID report 1. This table describes the 16-byte SDP command data structure:

**Table 3-56. 16-byte SDP command data structure**

BYTE offset	Size	Name	Description
0	2	COMMAND TYPE	<p>These commands are supported for the ROM:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x0101 READ_REGISTER</li> <li>• 0x0202 WRITE_REGISTER</li> <li>• 0x0404 WRITE_FILE</li> <li>• 0x0505 ERROR_STATUS</li> <li>• 0xA0A DCD_WRITE</li> <li>• 0xB0B JUMP_ADDRESS</li> <li>• 0xD0D SET_BAUDRATE (only applicable to UART)</li> </ul>
2	4	ADDRESS	<p>Only relevant for these commands: READ_REGISTER, WRITE_REGISTER, WRITE_FILE, DCD_WRITE, and JUMP_ADDRESS.</p> <p>For the READ_REGISTER and WRITE_REGISTER commands, this field is the address to a register. For the WRITE_FILE and JUMP_ADDRESS commands, this field is an address to the internal or external memory address.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For SET_BAUDRATE command, this word is the baudrate value in big-endian format.</p>
6	1	FORMAT	Format of access, 0x8 for an 8-bit access, 0x10 for a 16-bit access, and 0x20 for a 32-bit access. Only relevant for the READ_REGISTER and WRITE_REGISTER commands.

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-56. 16-byte SDP command data structure (continued)**

BYTE offset	Size	Name	Description
7	4	DATA COUNT	Size of the data to read or write in bytes. Only relevant for the WRITE_FILE, READ_REGISTER, WRITE_REGISTER, and DCD_WRITE commands. For the WRITE_FILE and DCD_WRITE commands, the DATA COUNT is in the byte units.
11	4	DATA	The value to write. Only relevant for the WRITE_REGISTER command.
15	1	RESERVED	Reserved

### 3.9.2.1 SDP commands

The SDP commands are described in the following sections.

#### 3.9.2.1.1 READ\_REGISTER

The transaction for the READ\_REGISTER command consists of these reports: Report1 for the command, Report3 for the security configuration, and Report4 for the response or the register value.

The register to read is specified in the ADDRESS field of the SDP command. The first device sends Report3 with the security configuration followed by the Report4 with the bytes read at a given address. If the count is greater than 64, multiple reports with the report id 4 are sent until the entire data requested by the host is sent. The STATUS is either 0x12343412 for the closed parts and 0x56787856 for the open or field return parts.

Report1, Command, Host to Device:

1	Valid values for the READ_REGISTER COMMAND, ADDRESS, FORMAT, DATA_COUNT
---	---

ID 16-byte SDP command

Report3, Response, Device to Host:

3	Four bytes indicating the security configuration
---	--

ID 4 bytes status

Report4, Response, Device to Host: first response report

4	Register value
---	----------------

ID 4 bytes of data containing the register value. If the number of bytes requested is less than 4, the remaining bytes must be ignored by the host.

Multiple reports of the report id 4 are sent until the entire requested data is sent.

Report4, Response, Device to Host: last response report

4	Register value
---	----------------

ID 64 bytes of data containing the register value. If the number of bytes requested is less than 64, the remaining bytes must be ignored by the host.

### **3.9.2.1.2 WRITE\_REGISTER**

The transaction for the WRITE\_REGISTER command consists of these reports: Report1 for the command, Report3 for the security configuration and Report4 for the write status.

The host sends Report1 with the WRITE\_REGISTER command. The register to write is specified in the ADDRESS field of the SDP command of Report1, with the FORMAT field set to the data type (number of bits to write, either 8, 16, or 32) and the value to write in the DATA field of the SDP command. The device writes the DATA to the register address and returns the WRITE\_COMPLETE code using Report4 and the security configuration using Report3 to complete the transaction.

Report1, Command, Host to Device:

1	Valid values for WRITE_REGISTER COMMAND, ADDRESS, FORMAT, DATA_COUNT and DATA
---	---

ID 16-byte SDP command

Report3, Response, Device to Host:

3	4 bytes indicating the security configuration
---	---

ID 4 bytes status

Report4, Response, Device to Host:

4	WRITE_COMPLETE (0x128A8A12) status
---	------------------------------------

ID 64 bytes data with the first 4 bytes to indicate that the write is completed with code 0x128A8A12. On failure, the device reports the HAB error status.

### 3.9.2.1.3 WRITE\_FILE

The transaction for the WRITE\_FILE command consists of these reports: Report1 for the command phase, Report2 for the data phase, Report3 for the HAB mode, and Report4 to indicate that the data are received in full.

The size of each Report2 is limited to 1024 bytes (limitation of the USB HID protocol). Hence, multiple Report2 packets are sent by the host in the data phase until the entire data is transferred to the device. When the entire data (DATA\_COUNT bytes) is received, the device sends Report3 with the HAB mode and Report4 with 0x88888888, indicating that the file download completed.

Report1, Host to Device:

1	Valid values for WRITE_FILE COMMAND, ADDRESS, DATA_COUNT
---	--

ID 16-byte SDP command

=====Optional Begin=====

Host sends the ERROR\_STATUS command to query if the HAB rejected the address

===== Optional End=====

Report2, Host to Device:

2	File data
---	-----------

ID Max 1024 bytes data per report

Report2, Host to Device:

2	File data
---	-----------

ID Max 1024 bytes data per report

Report3, Device to Host:

3	4 bytes indicating security configuration
---	---

ID 4 bytes status

Report4, Response, Device to Host:

4	COMPLETE (0x88888888) status
---	------------------------------

ID 64 bytes data with the first four bytes to indicate that the file download completed with code 0x88888888. On failure, the device reports the HAB error status.

### 3.9.2.1.4 ERROR\_STATUS

The transaction for the SDP command ERROR\_STATUS consists of three reports.

Report1 is used by the host to send the command; the device sends global error status in four bytes of Report4 after returning the security configuration in Report3. When the device receives the ERROR\_STATUS command, it returns the global error status that is updated for each command. This command is useful to find out whether the last command resulted in a device error or succeeded.

Report1, Command, Host to Device:

1	ERROR_STATUS COMMAND
---	----------------------

ID 16-byte SDP Command

Report3, Response, Device to Host:

3	Four bytes indicating the security configuration
---	--

ID 4 bytes status

Report4, Response, Device to Host:

4	Four bytes Error status
---	-------------------------

ID first 4 bytes status in 64 bytes Report4

### 3.9.2.1.5 DCD\_WRITE

The SDP command DCD\_WRITE is used by the host to send multiple register writes in one shot. This command is provided to speed up the process of programming the register writes (such as to configure an external RAM device).

The command goes with Report1 from the host with COMMAND TYPE set to DCD\_WRITE, ADDRESS which is used as a temporary location of the DCD data, and DATA\_COUNT to the number of bytes sent in the data out phase. In the data phase, the

host sends the data for a number of registers using Report2. The device completes the transaction with Report3 indicating the security configuration and Report4 with the WRITE\_COMPLETE code 0x128A8A12.

Report1, Command, Host to Device:

1	DCD_WRITE COMMAND, ADDRESS, DATA_COUNT
---	--

ID 16-byte SDP Command

Report2, Data, Host to Device:

2	DCD binary data
---	-----------------

ID Max 1024 bytes per report

Report3, Response, Device to Host:

3	Four bytes indicating the security configuration
---	--

ID 4 bytes status

Report4, Response, Device to Host:

4	WRITE_COMPLETE (0x128A8A12) status
---	------------------------------------

ID 64 bytes report with the first four bytes to indicate that the write completed with the code 0x128A8A12. On failure, the device reports the HAB error status.

See [Device Configuration Data \(DCD\)](#) for the DCD format description.

### 3.9.2.1.6 JUMP\_ADDRESS

The SDP command JUMP\_ADDRESS is the last command that the host can send to the device. After this command, the device jumps to the address specified in the ADDRESS field of the SDP command and starts to execute.

This command usually follows after the WRITE\_FILE command. The command is sent by the host in the command-phase of the transaction using Report1. There is no data phase for this command, but the device sends the status Report3 to complete the transaction. If the authentication fails, it also sends Report4 with the HAB error status.

Report1, Command, Host to Device:

## Serial Downloader

1	JUMP_ADDRESS COMMAND, ADDRESS
---	-------------------------------

ID 16-byte SDP Command

Report3, Response, Device to Host:

3	Four bytes indicating the security configuration
---	--

ID 4 bytes status

This report is sent by the device only in case of an error jumping to the given address, or if the device reports error in Report4, Response, Device to Host:

4	Four bytes HAB error status
---	-----------------------------

ID 4 bytes status, 64 bytes report length

### 3.9.2.1.7 SET\_BAUDRATE

The SDP command SET\_BAUDRATE is used by the host to configure the UART baudrate on the device side. The default baudrate is 115200.

The transaction for SET\_BAUDRATE command consists of 2 stages.

Stage 1, Command, Host to Device:

Byte 0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4	Byte 5	Byte 6 to 15
0x0d	0xd0	baudrate [31:24]	baudrate [23:16]	baudrate [15:8]	baudrate [7:0]	All 0x00

Stage 2, Response, Device to Host:

Byte 0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3
0x09	0xd0	0x0d	0x90

After receiving the Response, the host needs to wait about 100 µs until the device is ready for accepting a new command using the specified baudrate.

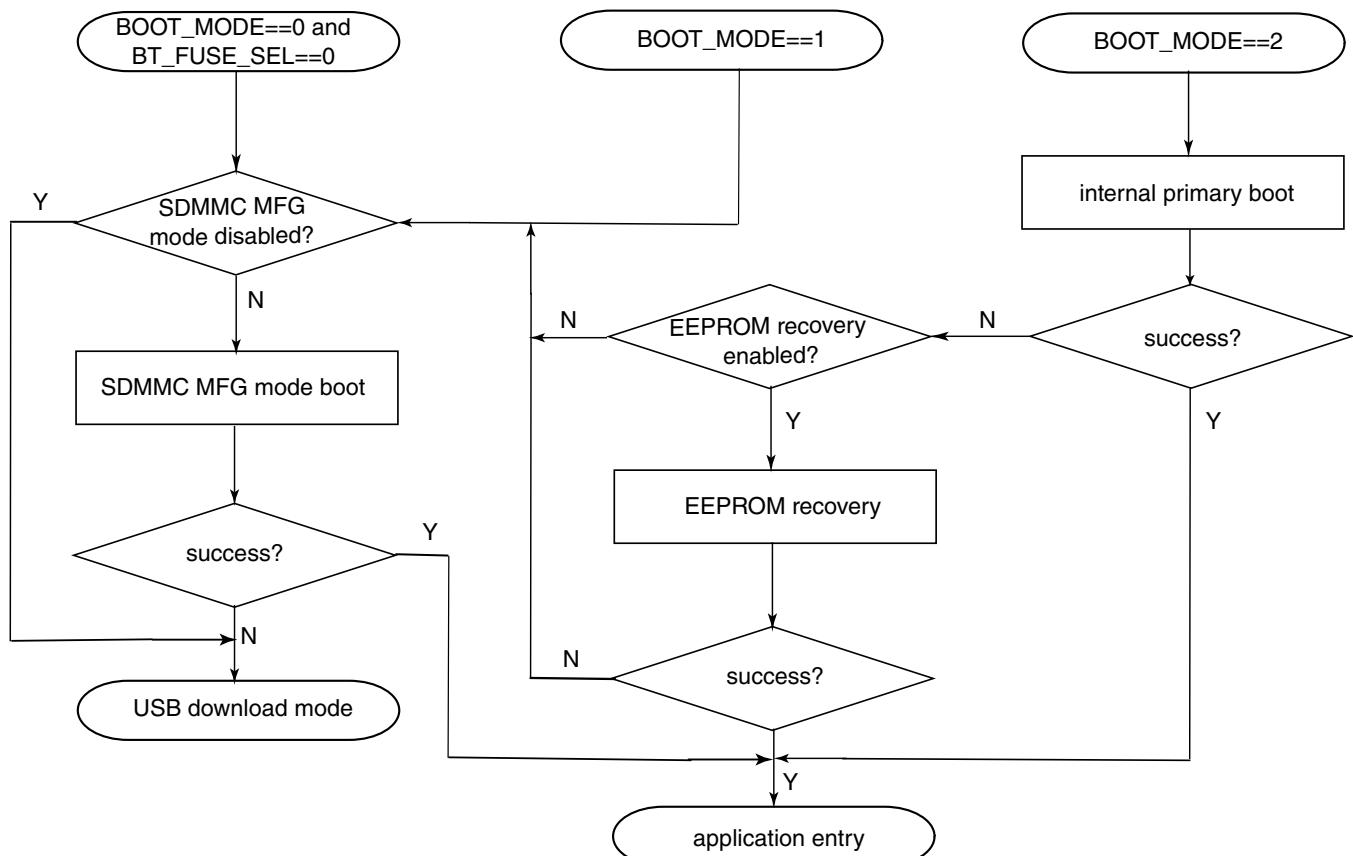
### 3.10 Recovery devices

The chip supports recovery devices. If the primary boot device fails, the boot ROM tries to boot from the recovery device using one of the LPSPI ports.

To enable the recovery device, the EEPROM\_RECOVERY\_EN fuse must be set. Additionally, the serial EEPROM fuses must be set as described in [Serial NOR/EEPROM through LPSPI](#).

### 3.11 SD/MMC manufacture mode

When the internal boot and recover boot (if enabled) failed, the boot goes to the SD/MMC manufacture mode before the serial download mode. In the manufacture mode, one bit bus width is used despite of the fuse setting.

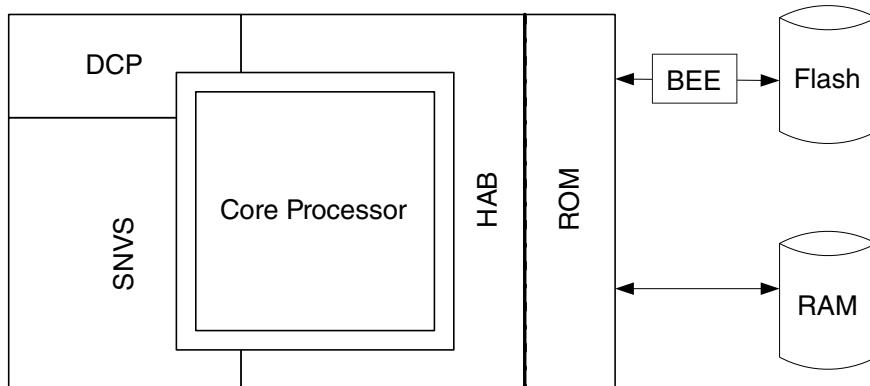


**Figure 3-20. SD/MMC manufacture boot flow**

## 3.12 High-Assurance Boot (HAB)

The High Assurance Boot (HAB) component of the ROM protects against the potential threat of attackers modifying the areas of code or data in the programmable memory to make it behave in an incorrect manner. The HAB also prevents the attempts to gain access to features which must not be available.

The integration of the HAB feature with the ROM code ensures that the chip does not enter an operational state if the existing hardware security blocks detected a condition that may be a security threat or if the areas of memory deemed to be important were modified. The HAB uses the RSA digital signatures to enforce these policies.



**Figure 3-21. Secure boot components**

The figure above illustrates the components used during a secure boot using HAB. The HAB interfaces with the SNVS to make sure that the system security state is as expected. The HAB also uses the hardware block to accelerate the SHA-256 message digest operations performed during the signature verifications. The HAB also includes a software implementation of SHA-256 for cases where a hardware accelerator cannot be used. The RSA key sizes supported are 1024, 2048, 3072 and 4096 bits. The RSA signature verification operations are performed by a software implementation contained in the HAB library. The main features supported by the HAB are:

- X.509 public key certificate support
- CMS signature format support

**NOTE**

NXP provides the reference Code Signing Tool (CST) for key generation and code signing for use with the HAB library. The CST can be found by searching for "IMX\_CST\_TOOL" at <http://www.nxp.com>.

**NOTE**

For further details on using the secure boot feature using HAB, contact your local NXP representative.

### **3.12.1 HAB API vector table addresses**

For devices that perform a secure boot, the HAB library may be called by the boot stages that execute after the ROM code.

The HAB API vector table for this device is at address 0x0020\_0300.

**NOTE**

For additional information on the secure boot including the HAB API, contact your local NXP representative.

## **3.13 ROM APIs**

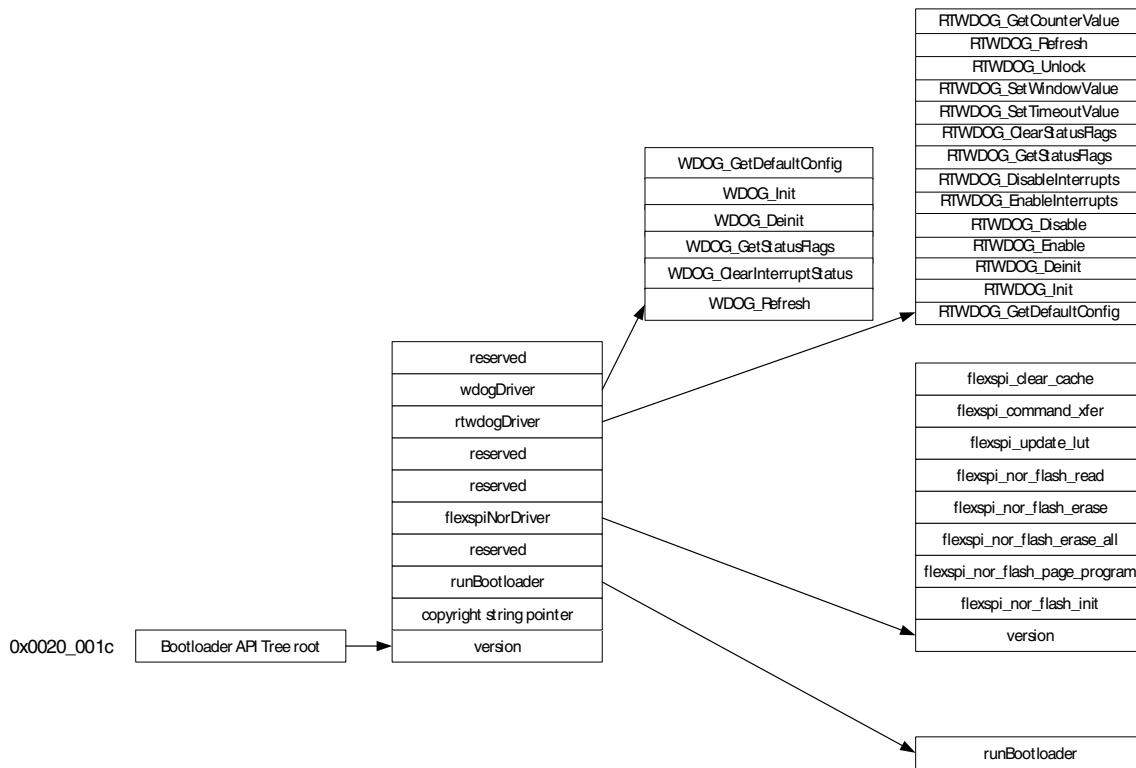
### **3.13.1 Introduction**

The ROM bootloader provides a set of ROM APIs to simplify In-Application Programming (IAP) and WDOG operation.

The ROM bootloader supports the following APIs:

- runBootloader API
- FlexSPI NOR Flash Driver API
- RTWDOG Driver API
- WDOG Driver API

The ROM API root pointer is located at address 0x0020001c. See the following figure for details of the ROM API layout.



**Figure 3-22. ROM API Structure**

The ROM API structure definitions are as below:

## 1. RTWDOG driver API structure

```

typedef struct
{
    void (*RTWDOG_GetDefaultConfig) (rtwdog_config_t *config);
    void (*RTWDOG_Init) (RTWDOG_Type *base, const rtwdog_config_t *config);
    void (*RTWDOG_Deinit) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
    void (*RTWDOG_Enable) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
    void (*RTWDOG_Disable) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
    void (*RTWDOG_EnableInterrupts) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t mask);
    void (*RTWDOG_DisableInterrupts) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t mask);
    uint32_t (*RTWDOG_GetStatusFlags) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
    void (*RTWDOG_ClearStatusFlags) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t mask);
    void (*RTWDOG_SetTimeoutValue) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint16_t timeoutCount);
    void (*RTWDOG_SetWindowValue) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint16_t windowValue);
    void (*RTWDOG_Unlock) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
    void (*RTWDOG_Refresh) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
    uint16_t (*RTWDOG_GetCounterValue) (RTWDOG_Type *base);
} rtwdog_driver_interface_t;

```

## 2. WDOG driver API structure

```
typedef struct
{
    void (*WDOG_GetDefaultConfig) (wdog_config_t *config);
    void (*WDOG_Init) (WDOG_Type *base, const wdog_config_t *config);
    void (*WDOG_Deinit) (WDOG_Type *base);
    void (*WDOG_Enable) (WDOG_Type *base);
    void (*WDOG_Disable) (WDOG_Type *base);
    void (*WDOG_EnableInterrupts) (WDOG_Type *base, uint16_t mask);
    uint16_t (*WDOG_GetStatusFlags) (WDOG_Type *base);
```

```

void (*WDOG_ClearInterruptStatus) (WDOG_Type *base, uint16_t mask);
void (*WDOG_SetTimeoutValue) (WDOG_Type *base, uint16_t timeoutCount);
void (*WDOG_SetInterruptTimeoutValue) (WDOG_Type *base, uint16_t timeoutCount);
void (*WDOG_DisablePowerDownEnable) (WDOG_Type *base);
void (*WDOG_Refresh) (WDOG_Type *base);
} wdog_driver_interface_t;

```

### 3. Bootloader API Entry Structure

```

typedef struct
{
    const uint32_t version;                                //!<< Bootloader version
    number
    const char *copyright;                                //!<< Bootloader Copyright
    void (*runBootloader)(void *arg);                      //!<< Function to start the
    bootloader executing
    const uint32_t *reserved0;                            //!<< Reserved
    const flexspi_nor_driver_interface_t *flexSpiNorDriver; //!< FlexSPI NOR Flash API
    const uint32_t *reserved1;                            //!<< Reserved
    const rtwdog_driver_interface_t *rtwdogDriver;
    const wdog_driver_interface_t *wdogDriver;
    const uint32_t *reserved2;
} bootloader_api_entry_t;
#define g_bootloaderTree ((bootloader_api_entry_t*)(0x0020001c))

```

### 4. FlexSPI NOR Driver API structure

```

typedef struct
{
    uint32_t version;
    status_t (*init)(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config);
    status_t (*program)(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config, uint32_t
dst_addr, const uint32_t *src);
    status_t (*erase_all)(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config);
    status_t (*erase)(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config, uint32_t start,
uint32_t lengthInBytes);
    status_t (*read)(
        uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config, uint32_t *dst, uint32_t addr,
        uint32_t lengthInBytes);
    void (*clear_cache)(uint32_t instance);
    status_t (*xfer)(uint32_t instance, flexspi_xfer_t *xfer);
    status_t (*update_lut)(uint32_t instance, uint32_t seqIndex, const uint32_t
*lutBase, uint32_t seqNumber);
    status_t (*get_config)(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config,
serial_nor_config_option_t *option);
} flexspi_nor_driver_interface_t;

```

## 3.13.2 FlexSPI NOR APIs

The ROM bootloader provides a set of Serial NOR FLASH API to simplify the external FLASH enablement on RT1060 chip. The version of the FlexSPI NOR API in RT1060 ROM bootloader is version 1.5.0.

- See the API structure shown in section "FlexSPI NOR Driver API structure"
- See the possible status codes listed in section "Status codes for the FlexSPI NOR API"
- See the flexspi\_nor\_config\_t defined in table "Serial NOR configuration block"

***FlexSPI NOR prototypes***

## 1. flexspi\_nor\_flash\_init

Initialize the Serial NOR device via FLEXSPI

```
status_t flexspi_nor_flash_init(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->init(instance, config);
}
```

See example code in section "FLASH API example on RT1060-EVK board".

## 2. flexspi\_nor\_flash\_page\_program

Program data to specified Flash address

```
status_t flexspi_nor_flash_page_program(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t
*config, uint32_t dstAddr, const uint32_t *src)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->program(instance, config, dstAddr, src);
}
```

See example code in section "FLASH API example on RT1060-EVK board".

## 3. flexspi\_nor\_flash\_erase\_all

Erase the whole Flash array via FLEXSPI

```
status_t flexspi_nor_flash_erase_all(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->erase_all(instance, config);
}
```

Example code:

```
flexspi_nor_flash_erase_all(0, config);
```

## 4. flexspi\_nor\_get\_config

Get the Flash configuration block via the serial\_nor\_config\_option\_t block, see section "serial\_nor\_config\_t definition".

```
status_t flexspi_nor_get_config(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config,
serial_nor_config_option_t *option)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->get_config(instance, config, option);
}
```

See example code in section "FLASH API example on RT1060-EVK board".

## 5. flexspi\_nor\_flash\_erase

Erase specified Flash region, the minimum erase unit is one sector.

```
status_t flexspi_nor_flash_erase(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config,
uint32_t start, uint32_t length)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->erase(instance, config, start, length);
}
```

See example code in section "FLASH API example on RT1060-EVK board".

## 6. flexspi\_nor\_flash\_read

## Read the FLASH via FLEXSPI using IP read command

```
status_t flexspi_nor_flash_read(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config,
uint32_t *dst, uint32_t start, uint32_t bytes)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->read(instance, config, dst, start,
bytes);
}
```

Example code:

```
uint32_t pageBuffer[256/sizeof(uint32_t)];
flexspi_nor_flash_read(0, config, pageBuffer, 0, sizeof(pageBuffer));
```

## 7. flexspi\_update\_lut

Update the specified LUT entries

```
status_t flexspi_update_lut(uint32_t instance, uint32_t seqIndex, const uint32_t
*lutBase, uint32_t numberofSeq)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->update_lut(instance, seqIndex, lutBase,
numberofSeq);
}
```

Example code:

```
uint32_t chipEraseLUT[4] = {0x0460, 0, 0, 0};
flexspi_update_lut(0, 1, chipEraseLUT, 1);
```

## 8. flexspi\_command\_xfer

Execute LUT sequence specified by xfer

```
status_t flexspi_command_xfer(uint32_t instance, flexspi_xfer_t *xfer)
{
    return g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->xfer(instance, xfer);
}
```

**flexspi\_xfer\_t** definition is as below:

```
//@brief FlexSPI Transfer Context
typedef struct _FlexSpiXfer
{
    flexspi_operation_t operation; //!< FlexSPI operation
    uint32_t baseAddress; //!< FlexSPI operation base address
    uint32_t seqId; //!< Sequence Id
    uint32_t seqNum; //!< Sequence Number
    bool isParallelModeEnable; //!< Is a parallel transfer
    uint32_t *txBuffer; //!< Tx buffer
    uint32_t txSize; //!< Tx size in bytes
    uint32_t *rxBuffer; //!< Rx buffer
    uint32_t rxSize; //!< Rx size in bytes
} flexspi_xfer_t;
```

**flexspi\_operation\_t** definition is as below:

```
typedef enum _FlexSPIOperationType
{
    kFlexSpiOperation_Command, //!< FlexSPI operation: Only command, both TX and
    //! RX buffer are ignored.
    kFlexSpiOperation_Config, //!< FlexSPI operation: Configure device mode, the
    //! TX FIFO size is fixed in LUT.
    kFlexSpiOperation_Write, //!< FlexSPI operation: Write, only TX buffer is
    //! effective
    kFlexSpiOperation_Read, //!< FlexSPI operation: Read, only Rx Buffer is
```

```

    //! effective.
    kFlexSpiOperation_End = kFlexSpiOperation_Read,
} flexspi_operation_t;

```

Example code, assuming the LUT index 1 is the Flash WriteEnable command.

```

flexspi_xfer_t flashXfer =
{
    kFlexSpiOperation_Command, 0, 1, 1, false, NULL, 0, NULL, 0
};
flexspi_command_xfer(0, &flashXfer);

```

## 9. flexspi\_clear\_cache

Clear the AHB buffer in FLEXSPI module.

```

void flexspi_clear_cache(uint32_t instance)
{
    g_bootloaderTree->flexSpiNorDriver->clear_cache(instance);
}

```

Example code:

```
flexspi_clear_cache(0);
```

## 10. serial\_nor\_config\_t definition

serial\_nor\_config\_t is defined as below.

```

typedef struct _serial_nor_config_option
{
    union
    {
        struct
        {
            uint32_t max_freq : 4;           //!< Maximum supported Frequency
            uint32_t misc_mode : 4;         //!< miscellaneous mode
            uint32_t quad_mode_setting : 4; //!< Quad mode setting
            uint32_t cmd_pads : 4;          //!< Command pads
            uint32_t query_pads : 4;        //!< SFDP read pads
            uint32_t device_type : 4;       //!< Device type
            uint32_t option_size : 4;        //!< Option size, in terms of uint32_t,
size = (option_size + 1) * 4
            uint32_t tag : 4;              //!< Tag, must be 0x0E
        } B;
        uint32_t U;
    } option0;

    union
    {
        struct
        {
            uint32_t dummy_cycles : 8;      //!< Dummy cycles before read
            uint32_t reserved0 : 8;         //!< Reserved for future use
            uint32_t pinmux_group : 4;      //!< The pinmux group selection
            uint32_t reserved1 : 8;         //!< Reserved for future use
            uint32_t flash_connection : 4;  //!< Flash connection option: 0 - Single
Flash connected to port A
        } B;
        uint32_t U;
    } option1;
} serial_nor_config_option_t;

```

Detailed information of serial\_nor\_config\_option\_t structure is shown in the following table.

**Table 3-57. serial\_nor\_config\_option\_t definition**

Offset	Field	Description
0	Option0	See option0 definition for more details
4	Option1	Optional, effective only if the Option Size field in Option0 is non-zero See option1 definition for more details.

**Table 3-58. Option0 definition**

Field	Bits	Description
tag	31:28	The tag of the config option, fixed to 0x0C
option_size	27:24	Size in bytes = (Option Size + 1) × 4 It is 0 if only option0 is required
device_type	23:20	Device Detection Type 0 - Read SFDP for SDR commands 1 - Read SFDP for DDR Read commands 2 - HyperFLASH 1V8 3 - HyperFLASH 3V 4 - Macronix Octal DDR 6 - Micron Octal DDR 8 - Adesto EcoXiP DDR
query_pad	19:16	Data pads during Query command (read SFDP or read MID) 0 - 1 2 - 4 3 – 8
cmd_pad	15:12	Data pads during Flash access command 0 - 1 2 - 4 3 – 8
quad_mode_setting	11:8	Quad Mode Enable Setting 0 - Not configure 1 - Set bit 6 in Status Register 1 2 - Set bit 1 in Status Register 2 3 - Set bit 7 in Status Register 2

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-58. Option0 definition  
(continued)**

		4 - Set bit 1 in Status Register 2 via 0x31 command  <b>NOTE:</b> This field will be effective only if device is compliant with JESD216 only (9 longword SDPF table).
misc_mode	7:4	Miscellaneous Mode  0 - Not enabled  1 - Enable 0-4-4 mode for High Random Read performance  3 - Data Order Swapped mode (for MXIC OctaFlash only)  <b>NOTE:</b> Experimental feature, do not use in products, keep it as 0.
max_freq	3:0	Max Flash Operation speed  0 - Don't change FlexSPI clock setting  Others - See System Boot chapter for more details.  <b>NOTE:</b> The field has a restriction that the FlexSPI clock source must be PLL480_PFD0, keep it as 0 and manually configure the FLEXSPI clock if another clock source is selected in user application.

**Table 3-59. Option1 definition**

Field	Bits	Description
flash_connectio n	31:28	Flash connection selection  0 - Only Port A
reserved	27:20	Reserved
pin_group	19:16	PinMux group  0 - Primary pin group  1 - Secondary pin group
reserved	15:8	Reserved for future use
dummy_cycles	7:0	Dummy cycles for read command  0 - Use detected dummy cycle  Others - dummy cycles provided in flash data sheet

**NOTE**

- a. These APIs only support 1 single FLASH device connected to PORTA and FLEXSPIA\_SS0.
- b. Parallel mode is **NOT** supported.

- c. The APIs always use 30 MHz clock for the programming option. Users need to change the "ipcmSerialClkFreq" field in flexspi\_nor\_config\_t field after flexspi\_nor\_get\_config option if a higher programming speed is expected.
- d. User application needs to set "max\_freq" to 0 and manually configure the FLEXSPI clock prior to calling the flexspi\_nor\_get\_config API, if the expected FLEXSPI clock source is not the default clock source configured by the ROM bootloader.
- e. The pad drive strength is configured to "R0/6" (See IOMUXC chapter for more details). Users can change the "dataPadOverride" and "sclkPadOverride" setting in flexspi\_nor\_config\_t structure after calling flexspi\_nor\_get\_config if it is necessary.

## 11. Status codes for the FlexSPI NOR API

The following table lists all the error and status codes for the FlexSPI NOR API.

**Table 3-60. Status and error codes for the FlexSPI NOR API**

Status	Code	Description
kStatus_Success	0	Operation succeeded without error
kStatus_Fail	1	Operation failed with a generic error
kStatus_InvalidArgument	4	The requested argument is invalid
kStatus_Timeout	5	A timeout occurred
kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeout	7000	The command timed out
kStatus_FLEXSPI_InvalidSequence	7001	Invalid LUT sequence
kStatus_FLEXSPI_DeviceTimeout	7002	The busy time exceeded provided timeout value
kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_ProgramFail	20100	Program Command failed
kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_EraseSectorFail	20101	Erase sector command failed
kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_EraseAllFail	20102	Erase All command failed
kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_WaitTimeout	20103	The wait time exceeded provided timeout value
kStatus_FlexSPINOR_NotSupported	20104	The operation is not supported
kStatus_FlexSPINOR_WriteAlignmentError	20105	Write address is unaligned to page size
kStatus_FlexSPINOR_CommandFailure	20106	Command failed
kStatus_FlexSPINOR_SFDP_NotFound	20107	SFDP table was not found, used for flexspi_nor_flash_get_config API
kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_Flash_NotFound	20109	Cannot detect a FLASH device

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 3-60. Status and error codes for the FlexSPI NOR API  
(continued)**

kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_DTRRead_Dum myProbeFailed	20110	The dummy cycle for DDR/DTR read cannot be probed.
---	-------	--

### **Typical options for the Serial NOR devices in the market**

The following list provides typical options for the serial NOR flash devices in the market.

- QuadSPI NOR - Quad SDR Read: option0 = 0xc0000008 (133MHz)
- QuadSPI NOR - Quad DDR Read: option0 = 0xc0100003 (60MHz)
- HyperFLASH 1V8: option0 = 0xc0233009 (166MHz)
- HyperFLASH 3V0: option0 = 0xc0333006 (100MHz)
- MXIC OPI DDR (OPI DDR enabled by default): option=0xc0433008(133MHz)
- Micron Octal DDR: option0=0xc0600006 (100MHz)
- Micron OPI DDR: option0=0xc0603008 (133MHz), SPI->OPI DDR
- Micron OPI DDR (DDR read enabled by default): option0 = 0xc0633008 (133MHz)
- Adesto OPI DDR: option0=0xc0803008(133MHz)

### **FLASH API example on RT1060-EVK board**

The following is a typical use case of the FlexSPI NOR API.

```

flexspi_nor_config_t config;
serial_nor_config_option_t option;
status_t status;
uint32_t address = 0x40000; // 256KB
uint32_t sector_size = 0x1000; // 4KB
uint32_t page_buffer[256/ sizeof(uint32_t)];
uint32_t instance = 0;

option.option0.U = 0xC0000008; // QuadSPI NOR, Frequency: 133MHz

status = flexspi_nor_get_config(instance, &config, &option);
if (status != kStatus_Success)
{
    return status;
}

status = flexspi_nor_flash_init(instance, &config);
if (status != kStatus_Success)
{
    return status;
}

status = flexspi_nor_flash_erase(instance, &config, address , sector_size); // Erase 1
sector
if (status != kStatus_Success)
{
    return status;
}

// Fill data into the page_buffer;
for (uint32_t i=0; i<sizeof(page_buffer)/sizeof(page_buffer[0]); i++)
{
    page_buffer[i] = (i << 24) | (i << 16) | (i << 8) | i;
}
// Program data to destination
status = flexspi_nor_flash_page_program(instance, &config, address, page_buffer); // program
1 page

```

```

if (status != kStatus_Success)
{
    return status;
}

// Do cache maintenance here if the D-Cache is enabled
// Use memory mapped access to verify whether data are programmed into Flash correctly
uint32_t mem_address = 0x6000_0000 + address;
if (0 == memcmp((void*)mem_address, page_buffer, sizeof(page_buffer)))
{
// Success
}
else
{   // Report error
}

```

### 3.13.3 Enter Bootloader API

The ROM bootloader provides an API for the user application to boot from a new updated application safely after In-Application Programming (IAP) or re-enter serial downloader mode for image update. See more details in the next section.

#### *API prototype*

```

void runBootloader(void* arg)
{
    g_bootloaderTree-> runBootloader(arg);
}

```

#### *ARG definition*

Field	Offset	Description
Tag	[31:24]	Fixed value: 0xEB (Enter Boot)
boot mode	[23:20]	0 - Determined by BMODE in SMBR2 or other Fuse combinations 1 - Serial downloader
Serial downloader media	[19:16]	0 - Auto detection 1 - USB 2 - UART
Reserved	[15:04]	
Boot image selection	[03: 00]	0 - Image 0 (Primary image) 1 - Image 1 (Redundant image, with primary image bypassed) 2 - Image 2 3 - Image 3 <b>NOTE:</b> It takes effect only if the boot mode is 0.

#### *Typical use cases*

1. Enter Serial downloader mode and select USB as the communication peripheral.

```

uint32_t arg = 0xeb100000;
runBootloader (&arg);

```

2. Select Image1 (Redundant image) as the boot image after reliable update in user application.

```
uint32_t arg = 0xeb000001;  
runBootloader (&arg);
```

### 3.13.4 Watchdog API

The Watchdog API definition is identical to the SDK driver, see the SDK driver for more details.

# Chapter 4

## Fusemap

### 4.1 Boot Fusemap

This section describes the various modes and the selection of the required boot devices.

A separate map is given for each and every boot device. The device select is specified by the BOOT\_CFG1[7:4] fuses.

**Table 4-1. Boot device select**

Boot Device	BOOT_CFG1[7]	BOOT_CFG1[6]	BOOT_CFG1[5]	BOOT_CFG1[4]
FlexSPI1 (Serial NOR)	0	0	0	0
SD	0	1	x	x
MMC/eMMC	1	0	x	x
SEMC (NAND)	0	0	1	x
SEMC (NOR)	0	0	0	1
FlexSPI1 (Serial NAND)	1	1	x	x

### NOTE

The fuses marked as “Reserved” are reserved for NXP internal (and future) use only. Customers **must not** attempt to burn these, because the IC behavior may be unpredictable. The reserved fuses can be read as either '0' or '1'.

**Table 4-2. FlexSPI (Serial NOR) boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x450[7:0] (BOOT_CFG1)	0	0	0	0	xSPI FLASH Auto Probe Type 00 - QuadSPI NOR 01 - MXIC Octal 10 - Micron Octal	EncryptedXI P 0 - Disabled 1 - Enabled	xSPI FLASH Auto Probe 0 - Disabled 1 - Enabled	

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 4-2. FlexSPI (Serial NOR) boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
					11 - Adesto Octal			
0x450[15:8] (BOOT_CFG2)	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	FLASH TYPE:		
						000 - Device supports 3B read by default		
						001 - Device supports 4B read by default		
						010 - HyperFlash 1V8		
						011 - HyperFlash 3V3		
						100 - MXIC Octal DDR		
						101 - Micron Octal DDR		
						111 - QSPI device supports 3B read by default (on secondary pinmux option)		
0x450[23:16] (BOOT_CFG3)					Reserved			
0x450[31:24] (BOOT_CFG4)					Reserved			
0x460[7:0]	Reserved	FORCE_C OLD_BOO T(SBMR)	BT_FUSE_ SEL	Reserved	BOOT_FRE Q (ARM/ BSU) 0 - 396/132 MHz 1 - 528/132 MHz	SEC_CONF IG[1]	Reserved	
0x460[15:8]	BEE_KEY1_SEL	BEE_KEY0_SEL			Reserved (SDR config)			
0x460[23:16]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	WDOG_EN ABLE '0' - Disabled '1' - Enabled	SJC_DISAB LE	DAP_SJC_ SWD_SEL	SDP_READ_ DISABLE	SDP_DISA BLE	FORCE_IN TERNAL_B OOT	
0x460[31:24]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELE CTION: '00' - 20ms '01' - 10ms '10' - 5ms '11' - 2.5ms	PWR_STAB LE_CYCLE _SELECTIO N: '0' - 5ms '1' - 2.5ms	Reserved	JTAG_HEO	KTE	NAND_ECC _DISABLE 0 - NAND ECC is enabled 0 - NAND ECC is disabled	DLL_ENAB LE 0 - Disable DLL for SD/ eMMC 1 - Enable DLL for SD/ Emmc	
0x470[7:0]	DLL Override: 0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/ eMMC	SD1_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT: 0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTIO N 0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V	UART Serial Download Disable: '0' - Not Disable '1' - Disable	Disable SDMMC Manufactur e mode: 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	BT_MPUD ISABLE 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	Override SD Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-2. FlexSPI (Serial NOR) boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC							
0x470[15:8]	SD2_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT:  0 - Reset active low  1 - Reset active high	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	USDHC_PA D_PULL_D OWN:  0 - no action  1 - pull down	ENABLE_E MMC_22K_ PULLUP:  0 - 47K pullup  1 - 22K pullup	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	USDHC_IO MUX_SION _BIT_ENAB LE:  0 - Disable  1 - Enable	USDHC IOMUX SRE Enable:  0 - Disable  1 - Enable
0x470[23:16]	Reserved	LPB_BOOT: (Core / Bus)  '00' - LPB Disable  '01' - 1 GPIO (def freq)  '10' - Div by 2  '11' - Div by 4		Reserved	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0]  00000 - gpio1.IO00  00001 - gpio1.IO01  ...  11111 - gpio1.IO31  Note: Please refer to the Reference Manual for pins which gpio1.IOxx will be muxed to by default			
0x470[31:24]	Override NAND Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)	MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]: Delay target for SD/eMMC DLL, it is applied to slave mode target delay or override mode target delay depends on DLL Override fuse bit value.  DELAY_CELL_NUM (FlexSPI NOR):  "000" - DLL Override feature is disabled  "001-111" - DLL Override feature is enabled  See OVRDVAL in FLEXSPI chapter in the Reference Manual for more details						

**Table 4-3. SD boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x450[7:0] (BOOT_CFG1)	0	1	SD/SDXC Speed:  00 - Normal/SDR12  01 - High/SDR25  10 - SDR50  11 - SDR104		SD Power Cycle Enable:  '0' - No power cycle  '1' - Enabled via USDHC_RS T pad	SD Loop back Clock Source Select: (for SDR50 and SDR104 only)  '0' - through SD pad  '1' - direct	Port Select:  0 - eSDHC1  1 - eSDHC2	Fast Boot:  0 - Regular  1 - Fast Boot
0x450[15:8] (BOOT_CFG2)	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Bus Width:  0 - 1-bit  1 - 4-bit	SD1 Voltage Selection:  0 - 3.3V  1 - 1.8V
0x450[23:16]	Reserved							

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-3. SD boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
(BOOT_CFG3)								
0x450[31:24]					Reserved			
(BOOT_CFG4)								
0x460[7:0]	Reserved	FORCE_C OLD_BOO T(SBMR)	BT_FUSE_ SEL	Reserved	BOOT_FRE Q (ARM/ BSU) 0 - 396/132 MHz 1 - 528/132 MHz	SEC_CONF IG[1]	Reserved	
0x460[15:8]	BEE_KEY1_SEL	BEE_KEY0_SEL			Reserved (SDR config)			
0x460[23:16]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	WDOG_EN ABLE '0' - Disabled '1' - Enabled	SJC_DISAB LE	DAP_SJC_ SWD_SEL	SDP_READ _DISABLE	SDP_DISA BLE	FORCE_IN TERNAL_B OOT	
0x460[31:24]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELE CTION: '00' - 20ms '01' - 10ms '10' - 5ms '11' - 2.5ms	PWR_STAB LE_CYCLE _SELECTIO N: '0' - 5ms '1' - 2.5ms	Reserved	JTAG_HEO	KTE	NAND_ECC _DISABLE 0 - NAND ECC is enabled 0 - NAND ECC is disabled	DLL_ENAB LE 0 - Disable DLL for SD/ eMMC 1 - Enable DLL for SD/ Emmc	
0x470[7:0]	DLL Override: 0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/ eMMC 1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC	SD1_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT: 0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTIO N	UART Serial Download Disable: 0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V	Disable SDMMC Manufactur e mode: '0' - Not Disable '1' - Disable	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	L1 D-Cache DISABLE: 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	Override Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)
0x470[15:8]	SD2_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT: 0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	USDHC_PA D_PULL_D OWN: 0 - no action 1 - pull down	ENABLE_E MMC_22K_ PULLUP: 0 - 47K pullup 1 - 22K pullup	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	USDHC_IO MUX_SION _BIT_ENAB LE: 0 - Disable 1 - Enable	USDHC IOMUX SRE Enable: 0 - Disable 1 - Enable
0x470[23:16]	USDHC_C MD_OE_PR E_EN (SD/MMC debug)	LPB_BOOT: (Core / Bus) '00' - Div by 1 '01' - Div by 2 '10' - Div by 4	Reserved		Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0] 00000 - gpio1.IO00 00001 - gpio1.IO01 ...			

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-3. SD boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		'11' - Div by 8			11111 - gpio1.IO31			
0x470[31:24]	Override NAND Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)	<p>MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]: Delay target for SD/eMMC DLL, it is applied to slave mode target delay or override mode target delay depends on DLL Override fuse bit value.</p> <p>DELAY_CELL_NUM (FlexSPI NOR): "000" - DLL Override feature is disabled "001-111" - DLL Override feature is enabled, See OVRDVAL in FLEXSPI chapter in RM for more details</p>						

**Table 4-4. MMC/eMMC boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0x450[7:0] (BOOT_CFG1)	1	0	SD/MMC Speed: 0 - Normal 1 - High	Fast Boot Acknowledg e Enable: 0 - Boot Ack Disabled 1 - Boot Ack Enabled	SD Power Cycle Enable: '0' - No power cycle '1' - Enabled via USDHC_RS T pad	SD Loop back Clock Source Select: (for SDR50 and SDR104 only) '0' - through SD pad '1' - direct	Port Select: 0 - eSDHC1 1 - eSDHC2	Fast Boot: 0 - Regular 1 - Fast Boot		
0x450[15:8] (BOOT_CFG2)	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Bus Width: 01 - 4-bit 01 - 8-bit 10 - 4-bit DDR(MMC 4.4) 11 - 8-bit DDR(MMC 4.4)		SD1 Voltage Selection: 0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V		
0x450[23:16] (BOOT_CFG3)	Reserved									
0x450[31:24] (BOOT_CFG4)	Reserved									
0x460[7:0]	Reserved		FORCE_C OLD_BOO T(SBMR)	BT_FUSE_SEL	Reserved	BOOT_FRE Q (ARM/ BSU) 0 - 396/132 MHz 1 - 528/132 MHz	SEC_CONF IG[1]	Reserved		
0x460[15:8]	BEE_KEY1_SEL		BEE_KEY0_SEL		Reserved (SDR config)					

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-4. MMC/eMMC boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x460[23:16]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	WDOG_EN ABLE '0' - Disabled '1' - Enabled	SJC_DISAB LE	DAP_SJC_ SWD_SEL	SDP_READ _DISABLE	SDP_DISA BLE	FORCE_IN TERNAL_B OOT	
0x460[31:24]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELE CTION:  '00' - 20ms '01' - 10ms '10' - 5ms '11' - 2.5ms	PWR_STAB LE_CYCLE _SELECTIO N:  '0' - 5ms '1' - 2.5ms	Reserved	JTAG_HEO	KTE	NAND_ECC _DISABLE  0 - NAND ECC is enabled  0 - NAND ECC is disabled	DLL_ENAB LE  0 - Disable DLL for SD/ eMMC  1 - Enable DLL for SD/ Emmc	
0x470[7:0]	DLL Override:  0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/ eMMC  1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC	SD1_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT:  0 - Reset active low  1 - Reset active high	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTIO N  0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V	UART Serial Download Disable:  '0' - Not Disable  '1' - Disable	Disable SDMMC Manufactur e mode:  0 - Enable 1 - Disable	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	L1 D-Cache DISABLE:  0 - Enable 1 - Disable	Override Pad Settings  (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)
0x470[15:8]	SD2_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT:  0 - Reset active low  1 - Reset active high	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	USDHC_PA D_PULL_D OWN:  0 - no action  1 - pull down	ENABLE_E MMC_22K_ PULLUP:  0 - 47K pullup  1 - 22K pullup	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	USDHC_IO MUX_SION _BIT_ENAB LE:  0 - Disable 1 - Enable	USDHC IOMUX SRE Enable:  0 - Disable 1 - Enable
0x470[23:16]	USDHC_C MD_OE_PR E_EN (SD/MMC debug)	LPB_BOOT: (Core / Bus)  '00' - Div by 1 '01' - Div by 2 '10' - Div by 4 '11' - Div by 8	Reserved	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0] 00000 - gpio1.IO00 00001 - gpio1.IO01 ... 11111 - gpio1.IO31 <p>Note: Please refer RM for pins which gpio1.IOxx will be muxed to by default</p>				
0x470[31:24]	Override NAND Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)	MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]: Delay target for SD/eMMC DLL, it is applied to slave mode target delay or override mode target delay depends on DLL Override fuse bit value. DELAY_CELL_NUM (FlexSPI NOR): "000" - DLL Override feature is disabled "001-111" - DLL Override feature is enabled, See OVRDVAL in FLEXSPI chapter in RM for more details						

**Table 4-5. SEMC (NAND) boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x450[7:0] (BOOT_CFG1)	0	0	1	BOOT_SEARCH_STRIDE Search stride for FCB and DBBT Search strides in terms of page 0000 - 64 Other value - 2^(BOOT_SEACH_STRIDE)				BOOT_SEA RCH_COU NT 0 - 1 1 - 2
0x450[15:8] (BOOT_CFG2)	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	DQS disable: 0 - disabled 1 - enabled	ECC_ALG_ SEL Disable: 0 - SW ECC selected 1 - Device ECC selected	ONFI compliant: 0 - Yes, ONFI 1 - No, spec
0x450[23:16] (BOOT_CFG3)	Reserved							
0x450[31:24] (BOOT_CFG4)	Reserved							
0x460[7:0]	Reserved	FORCE_C OLD_BOO T(SBMR)	BT_FUSE_ SEL	Reserved	BOOT_FRE Q (ARM/ BSU) 0 - 396/132 MHz 1 - 528/132 MHz	SEC_CONF IG[1]	Reserved	Reserved
0x460[15:8]	BEE_KEY1_SEL		BEE_KEY0_SEL		Reserved (SDR config)			
0x460[23:16]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	WDOG_EN ABLE '0' - Disabled '1' - Enabled	SJC_DISAB LE	DAP_SJC_ SWD_SEL	SDP_READ _DISABLE	SDP_DISA BLE	FORCE_IN TERNAL_B OOT	
0x460[31:24]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELE CTION: '00' - 20ms '01' - 10ms '10' - 5ms '11' - 2.5ms	PWR_STAB LE_CYCLE _SELECTIO N: '0' - 5ms '1' - 2.5ms	Reserved	JTAG_HEO	KTE	NAND_ECC _DISABLE 0 - NAND ECC is enabled 0 - NAND ECC is disabled	DLL_ENAB LE 0 - Disable DLL for SD/ eMMC 1 - Enable DLL for SD/ Emmc	
0x470[7:0]	DLL Override: 0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/ eMMC	SD1_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT: 0 - Reset active low	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTIO N 0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V	UART Serial Download Disable: '0' - Not Disable	Disable SDMMC Manufactur e mode: 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	L1 D-Cache DISABLE: 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	Override Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-5. SEMC (NAND) boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC	1 - Reset active high		'1' - Disable				
0x470[15:8]	SD2_RST_POLARITY_SELECT: 0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	USDHC_PA_D_PULL_D OWN: 0 - no action 1 - pull down	ENABLE_E MMC_22K_PULLUP: 0 - 47K pullup 1 - 22K pullup	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	USDHC_IO_MUX_SION_BIT_ENAB LE: 0 - Disable 1 - Enable	USDHC_IOMUX_SRE Enable: 0 - Disable 1 - Enable
0x470[23:16]	USDHC_C MD_OE_PR E_EN (SD/MMC debug)	LPB_BOOT: (Core / Bus) '00' - Div by 1 '01' - Div by 2 '10' - Div by 4 '11' - Div by 8	Reserved	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0] 00000 - gpio1.IO00 00001 - gpio1.IO01 ... 11111 - gpio1.IO31 Note: Please refer RM for pins which gpio1.IOxx will be muxed to by default				
0x470[31:24]	Override NAND Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTINGS value)	MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]: Delay target for SD/eMMC DLL, it is applied to slave mode target delay or override mode target delay depends on DLL Override fuse bit value. DELAY_CELL_NUM (FlexSPI NOR): "000" - DLL Override feature is disabled "001-111" - DLL Override feature is enabled, See OVRDVAL in FLEXSPI chapter in RM for more details						

**Table 4-6. SEMC (NOR) boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x450[7:0] (BOOT_CFG1)	0	0	0	1	Reserved	Clock Freq: 000 - 33MHz 001 - 66MHz 010 - 108MHz 011 - 133MHz 1xx - 166MHz		
0x450[15:8] (BOOT_CFG2)	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	DQS Disable: 0 - disabled 1 - enabled	Data Port Size: 0 - 16 bit 1 - 8 bit	AC Timing 0 - Default 1 - Fuse (0x6E0)
0x450[23:16] (BOOT_CFG3)	Reserved							

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-6. SEMC (NOR) boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x450[31:24] (BOOT_CFG4)	Reserved							
0x460[7:0]	Reserved	FORCE_C OLD_BOO T(SBMR)	BT_FUSE_ SEL	Reserved	BOOT_FRE Q (ARM/ BSU)  0 - 396/132 MHz  1 - 528/132 MHz	SEC_CONF IG[1]	Reserved	
0x460[15:8]	BEE_KEY1_SEL	BEE_KEY0_SEL		Reserved (SDR config)				
0x460[23:16]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	WDOG_EN ABLE  '0' - Disabled  '1' - Enabled	SJC_DISAB LE	DAP_SJC_ SWD_SEL	SDP_READ_ DISABLE	SDP_DISA BLE	FORCE_IN TERNAL_B OOT	
0x460[31:24]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELE CTION:  '00' - 20ms  '01' - 10ms  '10' - 5ms  '11' - 2.5ms	PWR_STAB LE_CYCLE _SELECTIO N:  '0' - 5ms  '1' - 2.5ms	Reserved	JTAG_HEO	KTE	NAND_ECC _DISABLE  0 - NAND ECC is enabled  0 - NAND ECC is disabled	DLL_ENAB LE  0 - Disable DLL for SD/ eMMC  1 - Enable DLL for SD/ Emmc	
0x470[7:0]	DLL Override:  0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/ eMMC  1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC	SD1_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT:  0 - Reset active low  1 - Reset active high	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTIO N  0 - 3.3V  1 - 1.8V	UART Serial Download Disable:  '0' - Not Disable  '1' - Disable	Disable SDMMC Manufactur e mode:  0 - Enable  1 - Disable	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	L1 D-Cache DISABLE:  0 - Enable  1 - Disable	Override Pad Settings  (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)
0x470[15:8]	SD2_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT:  0 - Reset active low  1 - Reset active high	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	USDHC_PA D_PULL_D OWN:  0 - no action  1 - pull down	ENABLE_E MMC_22K_ PULLUP:  0 - 47K pullup  1 - 22K pullup	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	USDHC_IO MUX_SION _BIT_ENAB LE:  0 - Disable  1 - Enable	USDHC IOMUX SRE Enable:  0 - Disable  1 - Enable
0x470[23:16]	USDHC_C MD_OE_PR E_EN (SD/MMC debug)	LPB_BOOT: (Core / Bus)		Reserved	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0]			
		'00' - Div by 1			00000 - gpio1.IO00			
		'01' - Div by 2			00001 - gpio1.IO01			
		'10' - Div by 4			...			
		'11' - Div by 8			11111 - gpio1.IO31			

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-6. SEMC (NOR) boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
					Note: Please refer RM for pins which gpio1.IOxx will be muxed to by default			
0x470[31:24]	Override NAND Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTING_NGS value)	MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]: Delay target for SD/eMMC DLL, it is applied to slave mode target delay or override mode target delay depends on DLL Override fuse bit value.  DELAY_CELL_NUM (FlexSPI NOR): "000" - DLL Override feature is disabled "001-111" - DLL Override feature is enabled, See OVRDVAL in FLEXSPI chapter in RM for more details						

**Table 4-7. FlexSPI1 (Serial NAND) boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x450[7:0] (BOOT_CFG1)	1	1	SAFE FREQ: (Default safe communication frequency) 0 – High Speed (50MHz) 1 – Low Speed (30MHz)	COL_ADDR_ESS_WIDTH: H: 0 – 12bits 1 – 13bits	SPI NAND HOLD TIME: 00 - 0us 01 - 500us 10 - 1ms 11 - 3ms	BOOT_SEARCH_STRIDE: Search stride for FCB and DBBT (in terms of page) 0 - 64 1 - 128 2 - 256 3 - 32		
0x450[15:8] (BOOT_CFG2)	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	CS_INTERVAL: CS deasserted interval between two commands 0 – 100ns 1 – 200ns 2 – 400ns 3 – 50ns	BOOT_SEA_RCH_COU_NT: 0 - 1 1 - 2	
0x450[23:16] (BOOT_CFG3)					Reserved			
0x450[31:24] (BOOT_CFG4)					Reserved			
0x460[7:0]	Reserved	FORCE_COLD_BOOT(SBMR)	BT_FUSE_SEL	Reserved	BOOT_FRE_Q (ARM/BSU) 0 - 396/132 MHz 1 - 528/132 MHz	SEC_CONFIG[1]	Reserved	

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-7. FlexSPI1 (Serial NAND) boot fusemap (continued)**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0x460[15:8]	BEE_KEY1_SEL		BEE_KEY0_SEL		Reserved (SDR config)				
0x460[23:16]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	WDOG_EN ABLE '0' - Disabled '1' - Enabled	SJC_DISAB LE	DAP_SJC_ SWD_SEL	SDP_READ_ DISABLE	SDP_DISA BLE	FORCE_IN TERNAL_B OOT		
0x460[31:24]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELE CTION: '00' - 20ms '01' - 10ms '10' - 5ms '11' - 2.5ms	PWR_STAB LE_CYCLE _SELECTIO N: '0' - 5ms '1' - 2.5ms	Reserved	JTAG_HEO	KTE	NAND_ECC _DISABLE 0 - NAND ECC is enabled 0 - NAND ECC is disabled	DLL_ENAB LE 0 - Disable DLL for SD/ eMMC 1 - Enable DLL for SD/ Emmc		
0x470[7:0]	DLL Override: 0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/ eMMC 1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC	SD1_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT: 0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTIO N 0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V	UART Serial Download Disable: '0' - Not Disable '1' - Disable	Disable SDMMC Manufactur e mode: 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	L1 D-Cache DISABLE: 0 - Enable 1 - Disable	Override Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)	
0x470[15:8]	SD2_RST_ POLARITY_ SELECT: 0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	USDHC_PA D_PULL_D OWN: 0 - no action 1 - pull down	ENABLE_E MMC_22K_ PULLUP: 0 - 47K pullup 1 - 22K pullup	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	USDHC_IO MUX_SION _BIT_ENAB LE: 0 - Disable 1 - Enable	USDHC IOMUX SRE Enable: 0 - Disable 1 - Enable	
0x470[23:16]	USDHC_C MD_OE_PR E_EN (SD/MMC debug)	LPB_BOOT: (Core / Bus) '00' - Div by 1 '01' - Div by 2 '10' - Div by 4 '11' - Div by 8		Reserved	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0]  00000 - gpio1.IO00 00001 - gpio1.IO01 ... 11111 - gpio1.IO31				
0x470[31:24]	Override NAND Pad Settings (using PAD_SETTI NGS value)	MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]:  Delay target for SD/eMMC DLL, it is applied to slave mode target delay or override mode target delay depends on DLL Override fuse bit value.  DELAY_CELL_NUM (FlexSPI NOR): "000" - DLL Override feature is disabled "001-111" - DLL Override feature is enabled,							

**Table 4-7. FlexSPI1 (Serial NAND) boot fusemap**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
See OVRDVAL in FLEXSPI chapter in RM for more details								

## 4.2 Lock Fusemap

**Table 4-8. Lock fuses**

Address	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0x400[7:0]	GP4_RLOCK '1' - RP	SJC_RESP_LOCK 0- Unlock '1' - WP,OP,RP	Reserved		BOOT_CFG_LOCK 00- Unlock '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP	TESTER_LOCK 00 -Unlock '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP		
0x400[15:8]	Reserved		GP2_LOCK 00- Unlock '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP		GP1_LOCK 00- Unlock '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP	MAC_ADDR_LOCK 00- Unlock '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP		
0x400[23:16]	SW_GP2_RLOCK '1' - RP of SW_GP2 fuses	MISC_CON_F_LOCK '1' - WP + OP	SW_GP2_LOCK '1' - WP + OP of SW_GP2 fuses	Reserved		ANALOG_LOCK 00- Unlock '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP	Reserved	SW_GP1_LOCK 0- Unlock '1' - WP + OP of SW_GP1 fuses
0x400[31:24]	FIELD_RETURNS: '1' - Field Returned part '0' - functional part	Reserved	Reserved		GP3_LOCK '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP	GP4_LOCK '1x' - OP 'x1' - WP		

### NOTE

Do NOT program *Reserved* bits.

## 4.3 Fusemap Descriptions Table

This section describes the chip fusemap descriptions.

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x400[1:0]	TESTER_LOCK	2	Perform lock on Tester programed fuses.	00 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[3:2]	BOOT_CFG_LOCK	2	Perform lock on BOOT related fuses.	00 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[5:4]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[6]	SJC_RESP_LOCK	1	SJC response lock	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) 1 - Lock (The controlled field can't be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register)	N/A
0x400[7]	GP4_RLOCK	1	GP4 read lock	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read in the corresponded IIM register) 1 - Lock (The controlled field can't be read in the corresponded IIM register)	N/A
0x400[9:8]	MAC_ADDR_LOCK	2	Lock MAC_ADDR fuses.	00 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only)	

*Table continues on the next page...*

Fusemap Descriptions Table

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
				1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	
0x400[11:10]	GP1_LOCK	2	Lock for General Purpose fuse register #1 (GP1)	00 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[13:12]	GP2_LOCK	2	Lock for General Purpose fuse register #2 (GP2)	00 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[14]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[15]	Reserved	1			Reserved
0x400[16]	SW_GP1_LOCK	1	Lock for SW_GP1 fuse.	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) 1 - Lock (The controlled field can't be sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register)	N/A
0x400[17]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[19:18]	ANALOG_LOCK	2	Lock for analog related fuse.	00 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[20]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[21]	SW_GP2_LOCK	1	WP and OP Lock for SW_GP2 fuse.	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) 1 - Lock (The	N/A

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
				controlled field can't be sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register)	
0x400[22]	MISC_CONF_LOCK	1			N/A
0x400[23]	SW_GP2_RLOCK	1	RP Lock for SW_GP2 fuse.	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read in the corresponded IIM register) 1 - Lock (The controlled field can't be read in the corresponded IIM register)	N/A
0x400[24]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[25]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[25:24]	GP4_LOCK	2	Lock for GP4 fuse	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[27:26]	GP3_LOCK	2	Lock for GP3 fuse	0 - Unlock (The controlled field can be read, sensed, burned or overridden in the corresponded IIM register) x1 - Write Lock (The controlled field can be read or sensed only) 1x - Operation Lock (The controlled field can't be overridden)	N/A
0x400[29:28]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[30]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x400[31]	FIELD_RETURN	1	Configure device for field return testing. Fuse burning is protected by CSF command, with proper parameter passed. Write / OP protected by FIELD_RETURN_LOCK bit in control register.	0' - Device is in functional / secure mode. '1' - Device is open for 'field-return' testing.	N/A
0x420 - 0x410	SJC_CHALL/UNIQUE_ID[63:0])	64	SJC CHALLENGE / Unique ID		N/A
0x430[7:0]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[15:8]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[19:16]	SI_REV[3:0]	4	Silicon Revision number		TESTER_LOCK
0x430[20]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

Fusemap Descriptions Table

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x430[21]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[22]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[23]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[24]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[25]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[26]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[27]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[28]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[29]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[30]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x430[31]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[0]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[1]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[2]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[3]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[4]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[5]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[6]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[7]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[8]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[9]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[10]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[11]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[12]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[13]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[14]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[15]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[17:16]	SPEED_GRADIN G[1:0]	2	Burned by tester program, for indicating IC core speed	FRAL[0:1] MHz P/N Code 00 Reserved Reserved 01 500 05 10 600 06 11 Reserved Reserved	TESTER_L OCK
0x440[19:18]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[20]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[21]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[23:22]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[24]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[25]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x440[26]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[27]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[28]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[29]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[30]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x440[31]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x450[7:0]	BOOT_CFG1	8	BOOT configuration register #1, Usage varies, depending on selected boot device.	0x0000 - FlexSPI (NOR) boot 0x01xx - SD boot 0x10xx - MMC/eMMC boot 0x0001 - SEMC (NAND) boot 0x001x - SEMC (NOR) boot 0x10xx - FlexSPI (serial NAND) boot Others - Reserved Refer to Fuse Map for details.	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x450[15:8]	BOOT_CFG2	8	BOOT configuration register #2, Usage varies, depending on selected boot device.	See fuse-map tab for details.	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x450[23:16]	BOOT_CFG3	8	BOOT configuration register #3	See fuse-map tab for details.	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x450[31:24]	BOOT_CFG4	8	BOOT configuration register #4	See fuse-map tab for details.	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[0]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x460[1]	SEC_CONFIG[1]	1	Security Configuration (with SEC_CONFIG[0])	00 - FAB (Open) 01 - Open - allows any code to be flashed and executed, even if it has no valid signature. 1x - Closed (Security On)	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[2]	BOOT_FREQ	1	Determines, ARM Core and Bus frequencies during boot	0 - (ARM) 396 / (Bus) 132 MHz 1 - (ARM) 528 / (Bus) 132 MHz	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[4]	BT_FUSE_SEL	1	Determines, whether using fuses for boot configuration, or GPIO / Serial loader	If boot_mode="10" (internal boot) 0=Boot mode configuration is taken from GPIOs. 1=Boot mode configuration is taken from fuses. If boot_mode="00" (boot from fuses) 0 - Boot using Serila Loader (USB)	BOOT_CF G_LOCK

*Table continues on the next page...*

Fusemap Descriptions Table

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
				1- Boot mode configuration is taken from fuses.	
0x460[5]	FORCE_COLD_BOOT(OOT(SBMR))	1	Force cold boot when core comes out of reset. Reflected in SBMR register of SRC	Fuse Function: 0 – Default behavior equivalent to the rest of the product family allowing a fast recovery from low power modes. That is, the ROM is allowed to jump to the address previously programmed in the SRC persistent register.  1 – Fast recovery path in the ROM is not allowed and a cold boot is always performed. Customers wanting a higher level of security should burn this fuse.	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[6]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x460[7]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x460[11:8]	SDRAM_CONFIG[7:0]	4	(SDRAM config options)		BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[13:12]	BEE_KEY0_SEL	2	AES key selection for BEE_KEY0	00 - From register 01 - GP4[127:0]  10 - SNVS master key  11 - From SW-GP2	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[15:14]	BEE_KEY1_SEL	2	AES key selection for BEE_KEY1	00 - From register 01 - GP4[127:0]  10 - SNVS master key  11 - From SW-GP2	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[16]	FORCE_INTERNAL_BOOT	1	After this fuse is blown, the external BT_MODE[1:0] pins will be ignored, BootROM will take Boot Mode as "internal boot."	0 - Boot Mode from BT_MODE pins  1 - BT_MODE pins be ignored, Boot Mode forced to "internal boot"	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[17]	SDP_DISABLE	1	Disable/Enable serial download support	0 - Serial download supported 1 - No serial download support	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[18]	SDP_READ_DISABLE	1	Disable/Enable serial download READ_REGISTER command.	0 - SDP READ_REGISTER command is enabled  1 - SDP READ_REGISTER is disabled	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[19]	DAP_SJC_SWD_SEL	1	Control DAP works in JTAG or SWD mode	0 - DAP works in SWD mode  1 - DAP works in JTAG mode	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[20]	SJC_DISABLE	1	Disable/Enable the Secure JTAG Controller	0 - Secure JTAG Controller is enabled	BOOT_CF G_LOCK

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
			module. This fuse is used to create highest JTAG security level, where JTAG is totally blocked.	1 - Secure JTAG Controller is disabled	
0x460[21]	WDOG_ENABLE	1	Watchdog Enable	Used to specify whether to enable / not watchdog at boot. '0' - Watch-Dog is disabled. '1' - Watch-Dog is enabled.	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[23:22]	JTAG_SMODE[1:0]	2	JTAG Security Mode. Controls the security mode of the JTAG debug interface	00 - JTAG enable mode 01 - Secure JTAG mode 11 - No debug mode	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[24]	DLL_ENABLE	1	Controls the enable/disable of the DLL for SD/eMMC boot	0 - Disable DLL for SD/eMMC 1 - Enable DLL for SD/eMMC	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[25]	NAND_ECC_DISABLE	1	Indicate whether to enable ECC (done by SW/Device HW) for Raw Nand device	0 - NAND ECC is enabled 0 - NAND ECC is disabled	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[26]	KTE	1	Kill Trace Enable. Enables debug and tracing capability on ETM, and other modules	0 - Debug and tracing are allowed 1 - Debug and tracing are allowed in case security state as defined by Secure JTAG allows it (for example, JTAG_ENABLE)	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[27]	JTAG_HEO	1	JTAG HAB Enable Override. Disallows HAB JTAG enabling. The HAB may normally enable JTAG debugging by means of the HAB_JDE-bit in the OCOTP SCS register. The JTAG_HEO-bit can override this behavior	0 - HAB may enable JTAG debug access 1 - HAB JTAG enable is overridden (HAB may not enable JTAG debug access)	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[28]	Reserved	1			BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[29]	PWR_STABLE_CYCLE_SELECTION	1	Select Power Stable Cycle	0 - 5ms 1 - 2.5ms	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x460[31:30]	SD_PWR_CYCLE_SELECTION	2	Select SD Power Cycle	00 - 20ms 01 - 10ms 10 - 5ms 11 - 2.5ms	BOOT_CF G_LOCK

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x470[0]	Override SD Pad Settings	1	Overrides ROM default value for SD PAD control register. When set ROM will override SD pad control register with value programmed into PAD_SETTINGS fuse bits.		BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[1]	BT_MPUMPU_DISABLE	1	The fuse bit is used for ROM to not enable MMU	0 - MPU is enabled during boot 1 - MPU is disabled during boot	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[2]	L1 I-Cache DISABLE	1	The fuse bit is used for ROM to not enable L1 I-Cache	0 - L1 I-Cache is enabled during boot  1 - L1 I-Cache is disabled during boot	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[3]	Disable SDMMC Manufacture mode	1	The fuse bit is used to disable ROM feature "SD/MMC Manufacturing Mode".	0 - Enable 1 - Disable	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[4]	UART Serial Download Disable	1	Disable UART Serial Download	0 - Disable 1 - Enable	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[5]	SD2 VOLTAGE SELECTION	1	Fuse bit to change voltage selection for SD2 pads. When set ROM will select 1.8V for SD3 pads otherwise 3.3V	0 - 3.3V 1 - 1.8V	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[6]	SD1_RST_POLARITY_SELECT	1	Select reset polarity for SD1	0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[7]	DLL Override	1	Select the DLL mode for SD/eMMC.	0 - DLL Slave Mode for SD/eMMC  1 - DLL Override Mode for SD/eMMC	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[8]	USDHC IOMUX SRE Enable	1	The fuse bit is used for ROM to enable SRE bit for SD pads	0 - Disable 1 - Enable	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[9]	USDHC_IOMUX_SION_BIT_ENABLE	1	The fuse bit is used for ROM to enable SION bit for MUX control register.	0 - Disable 1 - Enable	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[10]	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[4]	1	Indicate Boot Failure	00000 - gpio1.IO00 00001 - gpio1.IO01  ...  11111 - gpio1.IO31  Note: Please refer RM for pins which gpio1.IOxx will be muxed to by default	BOOT_CF G_LOCK

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x470[11]	ENABLE_EMMC_22K_PULLUP	1	The fuse bit is used for ROM to enable 22K pullup for SD pads.	0 - 47K pullup 1 - 22K pullup	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[12]	USDHC_PAD_PU_LL_DOWN	1	The fuse bit is used for ROM to enable pull down bit for SD pads.	0 - no action 1 - pull down	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[13]	Override HYS bit for SD/MMC pads	1	After this fuse is blown, the [HYS] bit of IOMUXC_SW_PAD_CTL_PAD_SDx_CLK(x is the SD port which the ROM boot from), IOMUXC_SW_PAD_CTL_PAD_SDx_CMD, IOMUXC_SW_PAD_CTL_PAD_SDx_CTL(n will be 0, 3, or 7, depends on the bus width selected) will be set.		BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[14]	eMMC 4.4 - RESET TO PRE-IDLE STATE	1	After this fuse is blown, the CMD0 with argument 0xf0f0f0f0 will be sent to put the eMMC card into pre-IDLE state so that eMMC card's fast boot can work properly. This is useful for the warm boot, such as boot due to the WDOG reset.		BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[15]	SD2_RST_POLARITY_SELECT	1	Select reset polarity for SD2	0 - Reset active low 1 - Reset active high	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[19:16]	Boot Failure Indicator Pin Select[3:0]	4	Miscellaneous power management configuration bits.	00000 - gpio1.IO00 00001 - gpio1.IO01 ... 11111 - gpio1.IO31  Note: Please refer RM for pins which gpio1.IOxx will be muxed to by default	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[20]	BT_LP_B_POLARITY	1	Define GPIO3 polarity, for determining LPB boot mode.	'0' - Active High '1' - Active Low	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[22:21]	LPB_BOOT	2	Divide (Core / Bus) based on Boot Frequencies	'00' - Div by 1; '01' - Div by 2; '10' - Div by 4; '11' - Div by 8	BOOT_CF G_LOCK
0x470[23]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

*Table continues on the next page...*

Fusemap Descriptions Table

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x470[30:24]	MMC_DLL_DLY[6:0]	7	eMMC 4.4 delay line default value (set by boot rom), used in conjunction with "DLL Override" = 1 (BOOT_CFG3[3])	Conneted to LVDS module.	BOOT_CF_G_LOCK
0x470[31]	Override NAND Pad Settings	1	Override pad settings for NAND boot.		BOOT_CF_G_LOCK
0x480[5:0]	Reserved	6	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[7:6]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[15:8]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[23:16]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[26:24]	Reserved	3	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[27]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[29:28]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[30]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x480[31]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x490[9:0]	Reserved	10	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x490[23:10]	Reserved	14	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x490[27:24]	Reserved	4	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x490[31:28]	Reserved	4	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x4A0[7:0]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x4A0[19:8]	Reserved	76	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x4C0[31:20]	Reserved	12	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x4D0[31:0]	Reserved	32	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x4E0[31:0]	Reserved	32	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x4F0[15:0]	USB_VID[31:0]	16	USB VID		ANALOG_LOCK
0x4F0[31:16]	USB_PID[31:0]	16	USB PID		ANALOG_LOCK
0x500[31:0]	Reserved	256	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x580[31:0]	SRK_HASH[255:0]	256	SRK key, no HW visible lines. NO HW Visible signals available		N/A
0x600[23:0]	SJC_RESP[55:0]	56	Response reference value for the secure JTAG controller		SJC_RESP_LOCK (locks also for read and explicit sense)
0x610[31:24]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x620[15:0]	MAC1_ADDR[47:0]	48	Ethernet MAC Address		MAC_ADDR_LOCK

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x630[31:16]	MAC2_ADDR[47:0]	48	Ethernet2 MAC Address		MAC_ADD_R_LOCK
0x650[31:0]	Reserved	32	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x660[31:0]	GP1[31:0]	32	General Purpose fuse register #1		GP1_LOCK
0x670[31:0]	GP2[31:0]	32	General Purpose fuse register #2		GP2_LOCK
0x680[31:0]	SW_GP1[31:0]	32	SW general purpose key		SW_GP1_LOCK
0x690[31:0]	SW_GP2[127:0]	128	SW general purpose key		SW_GP2_LOCK
0x6D0[5:0]	PAD_SETTINGS	6	Used with conjunction of MMC/SD/Nand "Override Pad Settings" fuse value, as follow:  '0' - Use IO default settings for boot device IO pads.  '1' - Use "Override" value, as set by this register.	IO pads settings of selected boot interface, are override with this fuses, as follow:  [0] - Slew Rate [3:1] Drive Strength [5:4] - Speed Settings.  Refer to IO PAD chapter for "Settings" fields value	MISC_CONFIG_LOCK
0x6D0[6]	USB_VBUS_EVENT_HANDLER_EN	1	Rom handle USB VBUS attach/detach event	0 - ROM not handle USB VBUS attach/detach event  1 - ROM handle USB VBUS attach/detach event	MISC_CONFIG_LOCK
0x6D0[7]	Enable Boot Failure Indicator Pin	1	Enable Boot Failure Indicator Pin	0 - disabled  1 - enabled	MISC_CONFIG_LOCK
0x6D0[11:8]	READ_RETRY_SEQ_ID	4	Choose Read Retry Sequence	0000 - don't use read retry(RR) sequence embedded in ROM  0001 - Micron 20nm RR sequence  0010 - Toshiba A19nm RR sequence  0011 - Toshiba 19nm RR sequence  0100 - SanDisk 19nm RR sequence  0101 - SanDisk 1ynmRR sequence  Others - Reserved	MISC_CONFIG_LOCK
0x6D0[12]	Reserved	1	Unallocated	Reserved	Reserved
0x6D0[15:13]	WDOG Timeout Select	3	Select WDOG Timeout	000 - 64s  001 - 32s	MISC_CONFIG_LOCK

Table continues on the next page...

## Fusemap Descriptions Table

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
				010 - 16s 011 - 8s 100 - 4s Others - Reserved	
0x6D0[19:16]	Default_FlexRAM_Part	4	Default FlexRAM RAM bank partitioning	CFG DTCM ITCM ORAM RAM_Bank0~15_CFG (D=DTCM, I=ITCM, O=ORAM) 0000: 128KB 128KB 256KB {O O O O D D I I I I D D O O O O} 0001: 128KB 64KB 320KB {O O O O D D I I D D O O O O O O} 0010: 128KB 256KB 128KB {O O D D I I I I I I I I D D O O} 0011: 128KB 32KB 352KB {O O O D D D D I O O O O O O O O} 0100: 64KB 128KB 320KB {O O O O D D I I I I O O O O O O} 0101: 64KB 64KB 384KB {O O O O D D I I O O O O O O O O} 0110: 64KB 256KB 192KB {O O D D I I I I I I O O O O O} 0111: 0KB 442KB 64KB {O O I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I} 1000: 256KB 128KB 128KB {O O D D D D I I I I D D D D O O} 1001: 256KB 64KB 192KB {O O D D D D I I D D D D O O O O} 1010: 192KB 256KB 64KB {O O D D I I I I I I D D D D D D} 1011: 448KB 0KB 64KB {O O D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D} 1100: 0KB 128KB 384KB {O O O I I I I O O O O O O O O O O} 1101: 32KB 32KB 448KB {O O O D I O O O O O O O O O O O O O} 1110: 0KB 256KB 256KB {O O I I I I I I I I I I O O O O O O O O} 1111: 0KB 0KB 512KB {O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O}	MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6D0[21:20]	Reserved	2	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x6D0[22]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x6D0[23]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 4-9. Fusemap Descriptions (continued)**

Fuse Address	Fuses Name	Number of Fuses	Fuses Function	Setting	Locked by
0x6D0[24]	EEPROM_RECO VERY_EN	1	EEPROM Recovery Enable	0' - Disabled '1' - Enabled	MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6D0[26:25]	LPSPI_PORT_SEL	2	LPSPI Port Select	00 - LPSPI1 01 - LPSPI2 10 - LPSPI3 11 - LPSPI4	MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6D0[27]	LPSPI_ADDR	1	SPI Addressing	0 - 3-bytes (24-bit) 1 - 2-bytes (16-bit)	MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6D0[29:28]	LPSPI_SPEED	2	LPSPI Speed select	00 - 20 MHz (default) 01 - 10 MHz 10 - 5 MHz 11 - 2 MHz	MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6D0[31:30]	SD_CALIBRATION_STEP	2	SD Calibration Step	00' - 1	MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6E0[7:0]	BOOT_CONFIG_MISC0	8	boot configuration misc		MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6E0[15:8]	BOOT_CONFIG_MISC1	8	boot configuration misc		MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6E0[23:16]	BOOT_CONFIG_MISC2	8	boot configuration misc		MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6E0[31:24]	BOOT_CONFIG_MISC3	8	boot configuration misc		MISC_CON F_LOCK
0x6F0[2:0]	Reserved	3	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x6F0[3]	Reserved	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x6F0[7:4]	Reserved	4	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x6F0[15:8]	Reserved	8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x6F0[31:16]	Reserved	16	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x800[31:0]	Reserved	256	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x880[31:0]	GP3[127:0]	128	General Purpose fuse register #3		GP3_LOCK
0x8C0[31:0]	GP4[127:0]	128	General Purpose fuse register #4		GP4_LOCK & GP4_RLOCK



# Chapter 5

## Central Security Unit (CSU)

### 5.1 Overview

The CSU manages the system security policy for peripheral access on the SoC. The CSU allows trusted code to set individual security access privileges on each of the peripherals, using one of eight security access privilege levels. Also, according to programmed policy, the CSU may assign bus master security privileges during bus transactions.

#### NOTE

No TrustZone (TZ) support in CSU for this device.

#### 5.1.1 Features

The Central Security Unit (CSU) sets the access control policies between the bus masters and bus slaves, allowing for peripherals to be separated into distinct security domains. This protects against unauthorized access to data, for example, when the software programs a DMA bus master to access the addresses that the software is prohibited from accessing directly. By configuring the DMA bus master privileges in the CSU to be consistent with the software privileges defends against such access attempts. Additionally, the CSU manages the system security alarms. These alarms are signals routed from various SoC peripherals and I/Os that indicate security-violation conditions.

The CSU has these security-related features:

- Peripheral access policy—the appropriate bus master privilege and identity are required to access each peripheral.
- Masters privilege policy—the CSU overrides the bus master privilege signals (user/supervisor, secure/non-secure) according to the access control policy.

## 5.2 Functional description

The CSU enables the secure software to set the bus privilege security policy within the platform.

The security policies may be set, and optionally locked in the CSU registers. The examples of a secure software include the Command Sequence File (CSF) processed by the High Assurance Boot (HAB) or the HAB-authenticated image which executes after the boot ROM.

### 5.2.1 Peripheral access policy

According to its programmed policy, the CSU determines the bus master privileges and the masters that are allowed to access each of the slave peripherals.

There are four security modes of operation (bus privileges) in the system distinguished by the security (TrustZone/non-TrustZone) and privilege (Supervisor/User) setting of the module. This is the list of these security modes, organized from the highest security level to the lowest:

- TrustZone (secure) privilege (supervisor) mode—highest security level
- TrustZone (secure) non-privilege (user) mode—medium security level
- Non-TrustZone (regular) privilege (supervisor) mode—medium security level
- Non-TrustZone (regular) non-privilege (user) mode—lowest security level

This functionality is implemented as follows:

The Configure Slave Level (CSL) Register value for a specified peripheral resource defines the output signal (csu\_sec\_level) for that peripheral. The value of this signal determines the master privileges that can access the peripheral. The relationship between the value of the csu\_sec\_level signal and the security operation mode is shown in this table:

**Table 5-1. Access permissions**

CSU_SEC_LEVEL[2:0]	Non-secure user mode	Non-secure SPVR mode	Secure (TZ) user mode	Secure (TZ) SPVR mode	CSL register value
(0) 000	RD+WR	RD+WR	RD+WR	RD+WR	8'b1111_1111
(1) 001	None	RD+WR	RD+WR	RD+WR	8'b1011_1011
(2) 010	RD	RD	RD+WR	RD+WR	8'b0011_1111
(3) 011	None	RD	RD+WR	RD+WR	8'b0011_1011
(4) 100	None	None	RD+WR	RD+WR	8'b0011_0011

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 5-1. Access permissions (continued)**

CSU_SEC_LEVEL[2:0]	Non-secure user mode	Non-secure SPVR mode	Secure (TZ) user mode	Secure (TZ) SPVR mode	CSL register value
(5) 101	None	None	None	RD+WR	8'b0010_0010
(6) 110	None	None	RD	RD	8'b0000_0011
(7) 111	None	None	None	None	Any other value

## 5.2.2 Initialization policy

The recommended initialization procedure is as follows:

1. Write the CSU\_CSL register field value to indicate each peripheral's privilege mode.
2. Write the HP register field value to override the master's privilege mode.

### NOTE

After programming, the register lock bit must be set to prevent further modifications to a register value.

## 5.3 Programmable Registers

The following sections provide a detailed description of the CSU registers and their respective bit and field assignments. Assume that the base address is 021C.

- The CSU registers: CSU\_CSL, CSU\_HP, CSU\_SA , and CSU\_HPCONTROL can only be written in the secure supervisor mode. (Note: These registers are also referred to as the security control registers (or SCRs) in this document)
- The previous cycle's lock bit is checked while writing to a register. If the lock bit was cleared in the previous cycle and is being set during the current cycle, then the register fields covered by that lock bit may be written during the current cycle.

### CSU memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400D_C000	Config security level register (CSU_CSL0)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C004	Config security level register (CSU_CSL1)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C008	Config security level register (CSU_CSL2)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C00C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL3)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>

Table continues on the next page...

## CSU memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400D_C010	Config security level register (CSU_CSL4)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C014	Config security level register (CSU_CSL5)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C018	Config security level register (CSU_CSL6)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C01C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL7)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C020	Config security level register (CSU_CSL8)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C024	Config security level register (CSU_CSL9)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C028	Config security level register (CSU_CSL10)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C02C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL11)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C030	Config security level register (CSU_CSL12)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C034	Config security level register (CSU_CSL13)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C038	Config security level register (CSU_CSL14)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C03C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL15)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C040	Config security level register (CSU_CSL16)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C044	Config security level register (CSU_CSL17)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C048	Config security level register (CSU_CSL18)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C04C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL19)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C050	Config security level register (CSU_CSL20)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C054	Config security level register (CSU_CSL21)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C058	Config security level register (CSU_CSL22)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C05C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL23)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C060	Config security level register (CSU_CSL24)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C064	Config security level register (CSU_CSL25)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C068	Config security level register (CSU_CSL26)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C06C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL27)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C070	Config security level register (CSU_CSL28)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C074	Config security level register (CSU_CSL29)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C078	Config security level register (CSU_CSL30)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C07C	Config security level register (CSU_CSL31)	32	R/W	0033_0033h	<a href="#">5.3.1/188</a>
400D_C200	HP0 register (CSU_HP0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">5.3.2/192</a>
400D_C218	Secure access register (CSU_SA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">5.3.3/195</a>
400D_C358	HPCONTROL0 register (CSU_HPCONTROL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">5.3.4/199</a>

### 5.3.1 Config security level register (CSU\_CSLn)

There are several config security level (CSU\_CSL0-CSU\_CSLn) registers. Each CSU\_CSL comprises of two fields, with each field used to determine the read and write access permissions for a slave peripheral. These 8-bit fields for the first and second slaves are located in b23-b16 and bits b7-b0, respectively.

The permission access table **Table 5-1** shows the security levels and the csu\_sec\_level signal levels corresponding to different values of the 8-bit CSU\_CSL field for a given slave.

Most slaves have unique CSL registers. Some slaves are grouped together in USB, Timers, PowerUp, and Audio groups. The following table shows the allocation of the CSL register per slave or a group of slave modules.

**Table 5-2. CSL slave modules mapping**

Slave module	Corresponding CSL register and bit field	Comments
CCM	CSL0[7:0]	
SRC	CSL0[23:16]	
GPC	CSL1[7:0]	
Reserved	CSL1[23:16]	
DMA_CH_MUX	CSL2[7:0]	
EDMA	CSL2[23:16]	
SJC	CSL3[7:0]	
TSC_DIG	CSL3[23:16]	
CSU	CSL4[7:0]	
ANATOP	CSL4[23:16]	
SNVS_HP	CSL5[7:0]	
RT_WDOG	CSL5[23:16]	
TRNG	CSL6[7:0]	
ADC1 ADC2	CSL6[23:16]	
WDOG1 WDOG3 EWM	CSL7[7:0]	
FLEXRAM	CSL7[23:16]	
ACMP	CSL8[7:0]	
PIT	CSL8[23:16]	
DCDC	CSL9[7:0]	
KPP	CSL9[23:16]	
IOMUXC_IOMUXC_GPR	CSL10[7:0]	
OCOTP	CSL10[23:16]	
GPT1 GPT2	CSL11[7:0]	
QTimer1 QTimer2 QTimer3 QTimer4	CSL11[23:16]	
CAN1 CAN2	CSL12[7:0]	
GPIO1 GPIO2 GPIO3 GPIO4	CSL12[23:16]	
FlexIO1 FlexIO2	CSL13[7:0]	
LPUART1 LPUART2 LPUART3 LPUART4 LPUART5 LPUART6 LPUART7 LPUART8	CSL13[23:16]	
ROMCP	CSL14[7:0]	
DCP	CSL14[23:16]	

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 5-2. CSL slave modules mapping (continued)**

Slave module	Corresponding CSL register and bit field	Comments
SEMC	CSL15[7:0]	
USB	CSL15[23:16]	
ENET	CSL16[7:0]	
USDHC1 USDHC2	CSL16[23:16]	
PXP LCDIF CSI	CSL17[7:0]	
FlexSPI	CSL17[23:16]	
LPI2C3 LPI2C4	CSL18[7:0]	
LPI2C1 LPI2C2	CSL18[23:16]	
BEE	CSL19[7:0]	
FLEXPWM1 FLEXPWM2 FLEXPWM3 FLEXPWM4	CSL19[23:16]	
Reserved	CSL20[7:0]	
ENC1 ENC2 ENC3 ENC4	CSL20[23:16]	
AOI1 AOI2 XBAR1 XBAR2 XBAR3	CSL21[7:0]	
ADC_ETC	CSL21[23:16]	
Reserved	CSL22[7:0]	
LPSPI1 LPSPI2 LPSPI3 LPSPI4	CSL22[23:16]	
SAI1 SAI2 SAI3 SPDIF	CSL23[7:0]	
IOMUXC_SNVS IOMUXC_SNVS_GPR	CSL23[23:16]	
Reserved	CSL24 to CSL31	

Address: 400D\_C000h base + 0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	LOCK_S1	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								LOCK_S1	NSW_S1	NUW_S1	SSW_S1	SUW_S1	NSR_S1	NUR_S1	SSR_S1	SUR_S1
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	LOCK_S2	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								LOCK_S2	NSW_S2	NUW_S2	SSW_S2	SUW_S2	NSR_S2	NUR_S2	SSR_S2	SUR_S2
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1

### CSU\_CSIn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–25 -	This field is reserved. Reserved.

Table continues on the next page...

**CSU\_CSLn field descriptions (continued)**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
24 LOCK_S1	The lock bit corresponding to the first slave. It is written by the secure software.  0 Not locked. The bits 16-23 can be written by the software. 1 The bits 16-23 are locked and can't be written by the software.
23 NSW_S1	Non-secure supervisor write access control for the first slave  0 The non-secure supervisor write access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The non-secure supervisor write access is enabled for the first slave
22 NUW_S1	Non-secure user write access control for the first slave  0 The non-secure user write access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The non-secure user write access is enabled for the first slave.
21 SSW_S1	Secure supervisor write access control for the first slave  0 The secure supervisor write access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The secure supervisor write access is enabled for the first slave.
20 SUW_S1	Secure user write access control for the first slave  0 The secure user write access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The secure user write access is enabled for the first slave.
19 NSR_S1	Non-secure supervisor read access control for the first slave  0 The non-secure supervisor read access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The non-secure supervisor read access is enabled for the first slave.
18 NUR_S1	Non-secure user read access control for the first slave  0 The non-secure user read access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The non-secure user read access is enabled for the first slave.
17 SSR_S1	Secure supervisor read access control for the first slave  0 The secure supervisor read access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The secure supervisor read access is enabled for the first slave.
16 SUR_S1	Secure user read access control for the first slave  0 The secure user read access is disabled for the first slave. 1 The secure user read access is enabled for the first slave.
15–9 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
8 LOCK_S2	The lock bit corresponding to the second slave. It is written by the secure software.  0 Not locked. Bits 7-0 can be written by the software. 1 Bits 7-0 are locked and cannot be written by the software
7 NSW_S2	Non-secure supervisor write access control for the second slave  0 The non-secure supervisor write access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The non-secure supervisor write access is enabled for the second slave.
6 NUW_S2	Non-secure user write access control for the second slave

*Table continues on the next page...*

**CSU\_CSLn field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
	0 The non-secure user write access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The non-secure user write access is enabled for the second slave.
5 SSW_S2	Secure supervisor write access control for the second slave 0 The secure supervisor write access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The secure supervisor write access is enabled for the second slave.
4 SUW_S2	Secure user write access control for the second slave 0 The secure user write access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The secure user write access is enabled for the second slave.
3 NSR_S2	Non-secure supervisor read access control for the second slave 0 The non-secure supervisor read access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The non-secure supervisor read access is enabled for the second slave.
2 NUR_S2	Non-secure user read access control for the second slave 0 The non-secure user read access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The non-secure user read access is enabled for the second slave.
1 SSR_S2	Secure supervisor read access control for the second slave 0 The secure supervisor read access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The secure supervisor read access is enabled for the second slave.
0 SUR_S2	Secure user read access control for the second slave 0 The secure user read access is disabled for the second slave. 1 The secure user read access is enabled for the second slave.

**5.3.2 HP0 register (CSU\_HP0)**

The CSU\_HP0 register can be programmed to determine the privilege (either the user mode or the supervisor mode) for several different master groups. The privilege of a particular master group can be overridden by muxing it with the corresponding bit in this register.

The even bit positions (CSU\_HP0[30,28,...0] ) in the register hold the privilege indicator bits; while the odd bit positions (CSU\_HP0[31,29,...,1] ) contain lock bits which enable/disable writing to the corresponding privilege indicator bits.

Address: 400D\_C000h base + 200h offset = 400D\_C200h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

**CSU\_HP0 field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–26 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
25 L_ENET2	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the ENET2  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
24 HP_ENET2	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the ENET2.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
23 L_USB	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USB  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
22 HP_USB	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the USB.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
21 L_TPSMP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the TPSMP  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.

Table continues on the next page...

## CSU\_HP0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
20 HP_TPSMP	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the TPSMP.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
19 L_USDHC2	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USDHC2  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
18 HP_USDHC2	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the USDHC2.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
17 L_USDHC1	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USDHC1  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
16 HP_USDHC1	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the USDHC1.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
15 L_ENET	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the ENET  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
14 HP_ENET	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the ENET.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
13 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
12 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
11 L_DCP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the DCP  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit cannot be written by the software.
10 HP_DCP	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the DCP.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
9 L_PXP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the PXP  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.

Table continues on the next page...

**CSU\_HP0 field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
8 HP_PXP	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the PXP.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
7 L_CSI	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the CSI  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
6 HP_CSI	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the CSI.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
5 L_LCDIF	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the LCDIF  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
4 HP_LCDIF	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the LCDIF.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
3 L_DMA	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the eDMA  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
2 HP_DMA	Determines whether the register value of the corresponding HP field is passed as the hprot[1] of the eDMA.  0 The hprot1 input signal value is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master. 1 The HP register bit is routed to the csu_hprot1 output for the corresponding master.
1 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
0 -	This field is reserved. Reserved

**5.3.3 Secure access register (CSU\_SA)**

The secure access register can be programmed to specify the access policy (either secure or non-secure) for up to several different masters. This register is used to set the access policy for the type-1 masters which are not capable of setting the policy by themselves.

The 16 even bit positions (CSU\_SA[30,28,...,0]) in the register hold the policy indicator bits, while the odd bit positions (CSU\_SA[31,29,...,1]) contain the lock bits which enable/disable writing to the corresponding policy indicator bits.

## Programmable Registers

Address: 400D\_C000h base + 218h offset = 400D\_C218h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R								L_ENET2								
W									NSA_ENET2							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	L_ENET	NSA_ENET	Reserved	Reserved	L_DCP	NSA_DCP	L_PXP	NSA_PXP	L_CS1	NSA_CS1	L_LCDIF	NSA_LCDIF	L_DMA	NSA_DMA	Reserved	Reserved
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### CSU\_SA field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 -	This field is reserved. Reserved.
25 L_ENET2	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the ENET2  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
24 NSA_ENET2	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Access policy indicator bit for the ENET2  0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
23 L_USB	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USB  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
22 NSA_USB	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the USB  0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
21 L_TPSMP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the TPSMP

Table continues on the next page...

**CSU\_SA field descriptions (continued)**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
	0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
20 NSA_TPSMP	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the TPSMP  0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
19 L_USDHC2	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USDHC2  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
18 NSA_USDHC2	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) Access for the USDHC2  0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
17 L_USDHC1	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USDHC1  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
16 NSA_USDHC1	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the USDHC1  0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
15 L_ENET	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the ENET  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
14 NSA_ENET	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Access policy indicator bit for the ENET  0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
13 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
12 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
11 L_DCP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the DCP  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
10 NSA_DCP	Non-secure access policy indicator bit  Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the DCP

*Table continues on the next page...*

## CSU\_SA field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
9 L_PXP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the PXP 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
8 NSA_PXP	Non-Secure Access Policy indicator bit Indicates the access type (secure/non-Secure) for the PXP 0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
7 L_CSI	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the CSI 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
6 NSA_CSI	Non-secure access policy indicator bit Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the CSI 0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
5 L_LCDIF	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the LCDIF 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
4 NSA_LCDIF	Non-secure access policy indicator bit Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the LCDIF 0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
3 L_DMA	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the eDMA 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
2 NSA_DMA	Non-secure access policy indicator bit Indicates the access type (secure/non-secure) for the eDMA 0 Secure access for the corresponding type-1 master 1 Non-secure access for the corresponding type-1 master
1 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
0 -	This field is reserved. Reserved

### 5.3.4 HPCONTROL0 register (CSU\_HPCONTROL0)

The HP control register CSU\_HPCONTROL0 enables the CSU to control the USER/SUPERVISOR mode state for the specified masters. The register toggles the csu\_hprot1 output signal for the system masters. The two possible sources for the csu\_hprot1 output are:

1. The hprot1 input signal
2. The corresponding bit in the HP register

The even bits in the registers are used to lock the control bit values.

Address: 400D\_C000h base + 358h offset = 400D\_C358h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	L_ENET	HPC_ENET	Reserved	Reserved	L_DCP	HPC_DCP	L_PXP	HPC_PXP	L_CS1	HPC_CS1	L_LCDIF	HPC_LCDIF	L_DMA	HPC_DMA	Reserved	Reserved
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

**CSU\_HPCONTROL0 field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–26 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
25 L_ENET2	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the ENET2 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
24 HPC_ENET2	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the ENET2

*Table continues on the next page...*

## CSU\_HPCONTROL0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
23 L_USB	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USB.  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
22 HPC_USB	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the USB  0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
21 L_TPSMP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the TPSMP.  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
20 HPC_TPSMP	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the TPSMP  0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
19 L_USDHC2	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USDHC2.  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
18 HPC_USDHC2	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the USDHC2  0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
17 L_USDHC1	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the USDHC1  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
16 HPC_USDHC1	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the USDHC1  0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
15 L_ENET	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the ENET  0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
14 HPC_ENET	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the ENET  0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
13 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
12 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
11 L_DCP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the DCP

Table continues on the next page...

**CSU\_HPCONTROL0 field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
	0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
10 HPC_DCP	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the DCP 0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
9 L_PXP	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the PXP 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
8 HPC_PXP	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the PXP 0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
7 L_CSI	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the CSI 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
6 HPC_CSI	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the CSI 0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
5 L_LCDIF	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the LCDIF 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
4 HPC_LCDIF	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the LCDIF 0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
3 L_DMA	Lock bit set by the TZ software for the eDMA 0 No lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can be written by the software. 1 Lock—the adjacent (next lower) bit can't be written by the software.
2 HPC_DMA	Indicates the privilege/user mode for the eDMA 0 User mode for the corresponding master 1 Supervisor mode for the corresponding master
1 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
0 -	This field is reserved. Reserved



# Chapter 6

## Bus Encryption/decryption Engine (BEE)

### 6.1 Chip-specific BEE information

#### NOTE

BEE is used only for decryption on FlexSPI in this device. Also the encryption engine is turned off.

The following steps show how BEE works in this device.

1. BEE firstly checks if it hits any of the four IOMUXC\_GPR-defined regions:
  - If not hit, raw FlexSPI data is returned directly without BEE decryption;
  - If hit, go to the next Step.
2. BEE checks access protection of the hit IOMUXC\_GPR-defined region:
  - If the BEE\_CTRL[AC\_PROT\_EN] is set:
    - if the access is not CPU instruction fetch, access will abort and BEE interrupt will assert;
    - if the access is CPU instruction fetch, go to the next Step.
  - If the BEE\_CTRL[AC\_PROT\_EN] is not set, go to the next Step.
3. BEE checks decryption enable of the hit IOMUXC\_GPR-defined region:
  - If the corresponding GPR BEE\_DE\_RX\_EN is not set, raw FlexSPI data is returned without decryption;
  - If the corresponding GPR BEE\_DE\_RX\_EN is set, go to the next Step.
4. BEE fetches and decrypts data from FlexSPI:
  - If the access is to BEE's region 1 defined by BEE\_REGION1\_TOP/BOTTOM registers: Add BEE\_ADDR\_OFFSET1 to the access address to get the FlexSPI AHB address; Use the key selected by BEE\_KEY1\_SEL to do decryption.
  - If the access is not to BEE's region 1 defined by BEE\_REGION1\_TOP/BOTTOM registers: Add BEE\_ADDR\_OFFSET0 to the access address to get the FlexSPI AHB address; Use the key selected by BEE\_KEY0\_SEL to do decryption.

## 6.2 Introduction

This document describes the micro-architecture for Bus Encryption Engine (BEE). It also describes the block level functionality of BEE.

The BEE module is implemented as an on-the-fly decryption engine. Main features of the BEE module are:

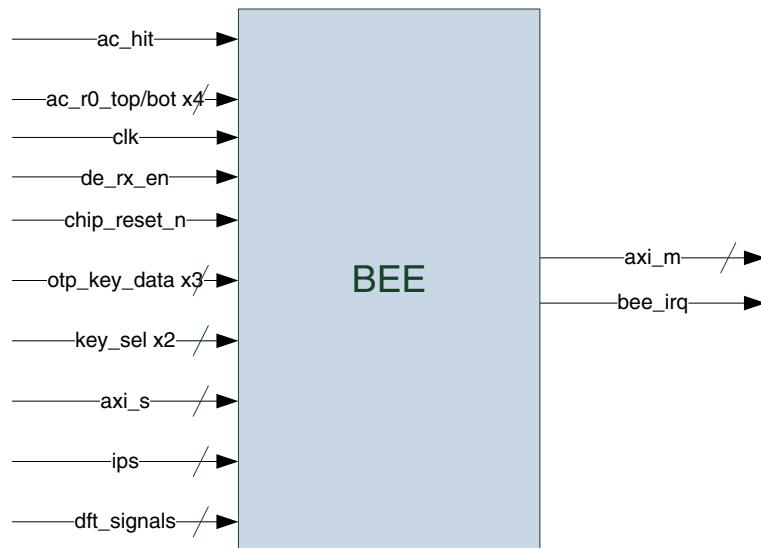
- Standard AXI interconnection
- On-the-fly AES-128 decryption, supporting ECB and CTR mode
- Aliased memory space support. Address remapping for up to two individual regions
- Independent AES Key management for those two individual regions
- Bus access pattern optimization with the aid of local store and forward buffer
- Non-secured access filtering based on security label of the access
- Illegal access check and filtering

The known hardware limitations of the BEE module are as follows:

- Only supports 128 bits data width AXI interconnection
- Only supports 16-byte burst access size. For single transaction, the minimum supported access size is limited to 4-byte.
- Granularity of the address bias is 128 KB per step
- Maximum supported burst length is limited to 4.

### 6.2.1 Interface and signal list

The following diagram shows the interface of BEE module. Detail descriptions of the signals are listed in the table below.

**Figure 6-1. BEE Interface****Table 6-1. BEE external control signal list**

Signal Name	Description	Direction	Width	Notes
otp_key_data0	128 bits key required by AES encryption engine (default SNVS key)	input	[ 127 : 0 ]	a secret key derived from eFuse OTPMK
otp_key_data1	128 bits key required by AES encryption engine (default SNVS key)	input	[ 127 : 0 ]	a secret key derived from eFuse OTPMK
otp_key_data2	128 bits key required by AES encryption engine (user defined key)	input	[ 127 : 0 ]	From eFuse SW_GP2[127:0]
otp_key_sel0	AES key selection control for memory region0	Input	[ 1 : 0 ]	From eFuse BEE_KEY0_SEL[1:0] 2'b00: from BEE register configuration 2'b01: Reserved 2'b10: SNVS master key 2'b11: SW_GP2
otp_key_sel1	AES key selection control for memory region1	Input	[ 1 : 0 ]	From eFuse BEE_KEY1_SEL[1:0] 2'b00: from BEE register configuration 2'b01: Reserved 2'b10: SNVS master key 2'b11: SW_GP2

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 6-1. BEE external control signal list (continued)**

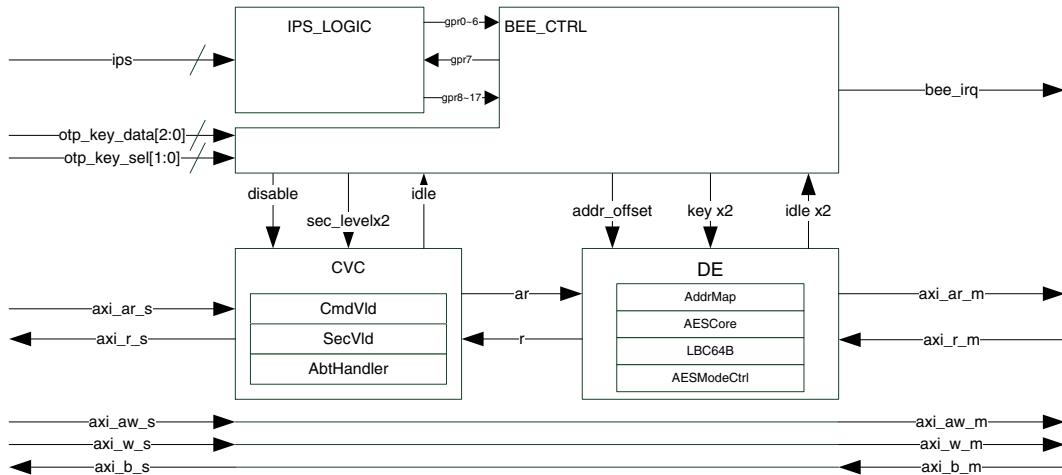
Signal Name	Description	Direction	Width	Notes
ac_r0_top	End address of access protected region-0	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR19 , M7_APP_AC_R0_TOP[ 31:3]
ac_r0_bot	Start address of access protected region-0	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR18 , M7_APP_AC_R0_BOT[ 31:3]
ac_r1_top	End address of access protected region-1	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR21 , M7_APP_AC_R1_TOP[ 31:3]
ac_r1_bot	Start address of access protected region-1	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR20 , M7_APP_AC_R1_BOT[ 31:3]
ac_r2_top	End address of access protected region-2	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR23 , M7_APP_AC_R2_TOP[ 31:3]
ac_r2_bot	Start address of access protected region-2	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR22 , M7_APP_AC_R2_BOT[ 31:3]
ac_r3_top	End address of access protected region-3	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR25 , M7_APP_AC_R3_TOP[ 31:3]
ac_r3_bot	Start address of access protected region-3	input	[ 31: 3]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR24 , M7_APP_AC_R3_BOT[ 31:3]
de_rx_en	Decryption enable control for those four protected regions.	Input	[ 3: 0 ]	From IOMUXC_GPR_GPR11.BEE_DE_RX_EN <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• de_rx_en[0]. value 0: disable decryption for region-0; value 1: enable decryption for region-0</li> <li>• de_rx_en[1] for region-1</li> </ul>

**Table 6-1. BEE external control signal list**

Signal Name	Description	Direction	Width	Notes
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• de_rx_en[2] for region-2</li> <li>• de_rx_en[3] for region-3</li> </ul>

## 6.3 BEE u-architecture

The BEE is composed of four main functional sub-blocks: BEE\_CTRL, CVC, DE, and IPS\_LOGIC, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 6-2. BEE u-architecture**

### 6.3.1 BEE\_CTRL

The BEE\_CTRL block is responsible for:

- Synchronizing external hardware inputs to BEE's internal domain
- Work mode and internal workflow control
- Internal interrupt handling

### 6.3.2 Command Validity Checker (CVC)

The CVC block is composed of three functional sub-blocks: CmdVld, SecVld, and AbtHandler.

## Command validation (CmdVld)

As BEE only supports 16 byte aligned and full size accesses, the Masters which issue AXI commands to BEE must make sure that all AXI commands do not violate the rule. If an unexpected command is sent to the BEE, CmdVld block will detect the violation and notify AbtHandler of the violation event.

## Security level validation (SecVld)

The SecVld block grants access permission to each command based on:

- Security level input (refer to the BEE Registers section for more details)
- Security label (arprot field) of the AXI command. The access permission is granted to each command as shown in the following table<sup>1</sup>.

Security level	Non-Secure User Mode	Non-Secure Spvr Mode	Secure (TZ) User Mode	Secure (TZ) Spvr Mode
(0) 00	RD+WR	RD+WR	RD+WR	RD+WR
(1) 01	None	RD+WR	RD+WR	RD+WR
(2) 10	None	None	RD+WR	RD+WR
(3) 11	None	None	None	RD+WR

If an unauthorized command is sent to the BEE, SecVld blocks the command and notifies AbtHandler of the security violation.

## Abort handler (AbtHandler)

The AbtHandler is responsible for:

- Collecting abnormal events reported by CmdVld and SecVld
- Illegal command filtering (so illegal commands won't be propagated to the output of BEE)
- Error response generation for detected illegal commands
- Access permission control based on external input singles
  - Access permission is prohibited when:
    - Read access to memory region defined by “ac\_r[x]\_bot” and “ac\_r[x]\_top”, and
    - Corresponding ac\_hit[x] signal (which is generated by comparing the current CPU instruction fetching address and the boundary of the access protected regions) input is low, and
    - Register configuration gpr0.ac\_prot\_en is high.
  - Access is granted when:

1. In the table the “Security level” is the security level input; the arprot value corresponding to those 4 modes “Non-Secure User Mode, Non-Secure Spvr Mode, Secure (TZ) User Mode, Secure (TZ) Spvr Mode” is “3'bx00, 3'bx01, 3'bx10, 3'bx11”.

- Read access to memory region outside of region defined by “ac\_r[x]\_bot” and “ac\_r[x]\_top”, or
- Read access to memory region defined by “ac\_r[x]\_bot” and “ac\_r[x]\_top” and corresponding ac\_hit[x] signal input is high, or
- Register configuration gpr0.ac\_prot\_en is low.

### 6.3.3 Decryption Engine (DE)

The Decryption Engine is composed of four functional sub-blocks: AddrMap, AESCore, LBC64B, and AESModeCtrl.

#### Address map (AddrMap)

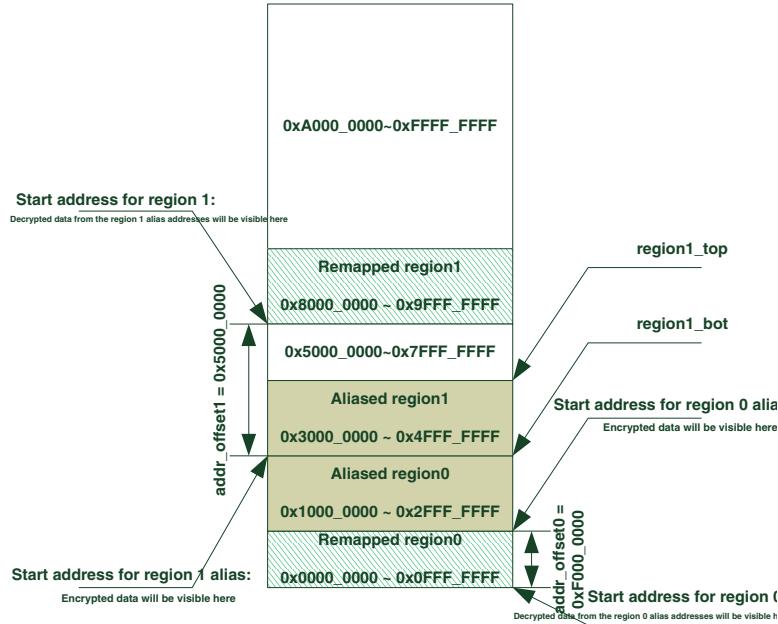
Functionalities of the AddrMap block are:

- Synchronize the AXI AR channel with R channel
- Remaps the address field of the BEE AXI slave interface to address field of the BEE AXI master interface by biasing the received address with a fixed OFFSET
- BEE is capable of remapping two individual regions (Region0 and Region1). Those two regions can be biased with a signed offset (OFFSET0 and OFFSET1). Address field of BEE AXI output (addr\_o\_0 and addr\_o\_1) is remapped as below <sup>2</sup> :
  - $\text{addr\_o\_0} = (\text{addr\_i\_0} + \text{addr\_offset0} \ll 16) \% (2^{32})$
  - $\text{addr\_o\_1} = (\text{addr\_i\_1} + \text{addr\_offset1} \ll 16) \% (2^{32})$

The following diagram shows an example of the address remapping function.

---

2. Description of addr\_offset0 and addr\_offset1 can be found in the BEE Registers section.

**Figure 6-3. Address Space Remap**

- Those two aliased space (Aliased region0 and Aliased region1) are [0x1000\_0000~0x2FFF\_FFFF] and [0x3000\_0000~0x4FFF\_FFFF]. The memory region is defined by the “region1\_top” and “region1\_bot” registers. Memory space other than region1 is defined as memory region0.
- The BEE receives the aliased address and remaps it to a physical address of the encrypted/decrypted data based on the above requirements.
- 

**NOTE**

When OFFSET0 and/or OFFSET1 are used, applications must ensure that remapped addresses do not point back to the aliased memory regions.

**AES algorithmic Core (AESCore)**

The AESCore block implements a 128-bit key/data encryption/decryption block as defined by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) as US FIPS PUB 197 dated November 2001 (see references for specifications and toolkits). There are three variations of AES, each corresponding to the key size used: AES-128, AES-192 or AES-256. AES always operates on 128 bits of data at a time. Only the AES-128 algorithm is implemented at this time.

The core contains separate encrypt and decrypt cipher modules which are instantiated within the AES sub-module. The top-level AES block contains controls to allocate resources between encrypt and decrypt operations and contains a common key expansion module.

**Local Buffer 64Byte Control (LBC64B)**

To reduce logic gate count, the AESCore applies folded-pipeline architecture which reduces overall throughput of the AESCore. Without proper handling BEE may send non-continuous burst transactions to on-chip fabric which may reduce the bus efficiency. The LBC64B block is added to resolve this problem.

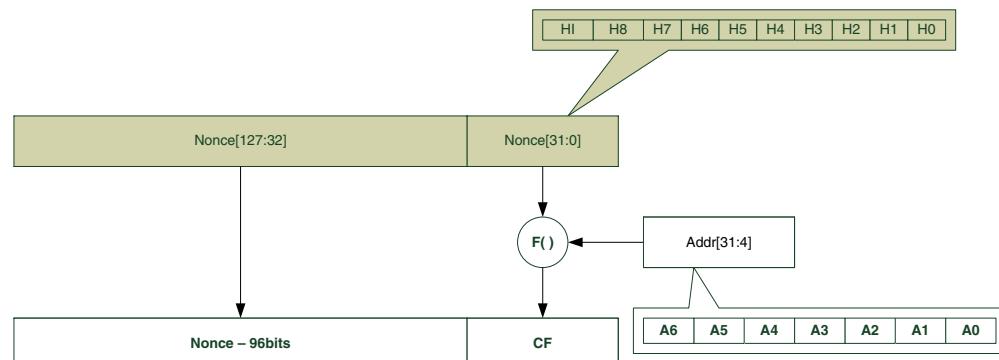
On the read channel the LBC64B:

1. Buffering the incoming read data into local buffer
2. As long as the local buffer isn't empty, it pushes data into the AESCore pipeline
3. After the entire Burst is processed by the AESCore, returns the entire Burst to upstream module in a continuous way

### AES mode control (AESModeCtrl)

The BEE module supports both AES-ECB and AES-CTR modes. These two modes are supported by allocating internal resources of the Decryption Engine (DE) by the AESModeCtrl block.

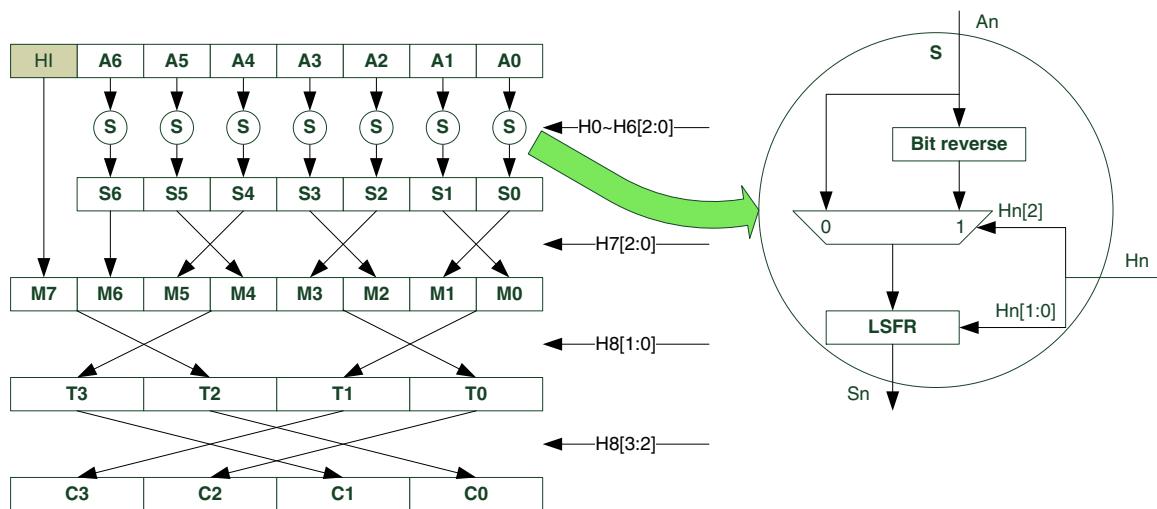
- When BEE works in ECB mode,
  - a. On the decryption path, the Cipher Text (CT) is decrypted by the DE using AES key, and the Plain Text (PT) is then returned to upstream module directly.
- When in CTR mode,
  - a. ctr\_nonce0[127:32] and ctr\_nonce1[127:32] as described in the BEE Registers section is used as 96-bit CTR mode Nonce[127:32] input of region0 and region1
  - b. bit4 to bit31 of the physical address (before BEE address remapping) of corresponding data is used as Counter input
  - c. ctr\_nonce0[31:0] and ctr\_nonce1[31:0] which corresponds to Nonce[31:0] of region0 and region1 as shown in diagram below is used to control the one-to-one mapping function (F()) which maps the address input, Addr[31:4] as shown below, to the final Counter Field (CF). {Nonce[127:32],CF} is then used as the Nonce input for corresponding 16B data block



**Figure 6-4. CTR Nonce Generation**

- d. Functionalities of the F() function is shown as in figure below:

## BEE registers



**Figure 6-5. Counter Mapping Function using AES key**

- e. For decryption, the final Nonce is sent to AESCore for encryption. The AESCore output is then XORed with the CT to generate the final PT output.

## 6.4 BEE registers

**BEE memory map**

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
403E_C000	Control Register (BEE_CTRL)	32	R/W	0000_7700h	6.4.1/213
403E_C004	Offset region 0 Register (BEE_ADDR_OFFSET0)	32	R/W	0000_F000h	6.4.2/215
403E_C008	Offset region 1 Register (BEE_ADDR_OFFSET1)	32	R/W	0000_F000h	6.4.3/216
403E_C00C	AES Key 0 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W0)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.4/216
403E_C010	AES Key 1 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W1)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.5/216
403E_C014	AES Key 2 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W2)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.6/217
403E_C018	AES Key 3 Register (BEE_AES_KEY0_W3)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.7/217
403E_C01C	Status Register (BEE_STATUS)	32	R	Undefined	6.4.8/218
403E_C020	NONCE00 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W0)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.9/218
403E_C024	NONCE01 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W1)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.10/219
403E_C028	NONCE02 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W2)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.11/219
403E_C02C	NONCE03 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE0_W3)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.12/219
403E_C030	NONCE10 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W0)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.13/220
403E_C034	NONCE11 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W1)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.14/220
403E_C038	NONCE12 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W2)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.15/220
403E_C03C	NONCE13 Register (BEE_CTR_NONCE1_W3)	32	W	0000_0000h	6.4.16/221
403E_C040	Region1 Top Address Register (BEE_REGION1_TOP)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	6.4.17/221
403E_C044	Region1 Bottom Address Register (BEE_REGION1_BOT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	6.4.18/221

## 6.4.1 Control Register (BEE\_CTRL)

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 0h offset = 403E\_C000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	REGION1_KEY_LOCK	CTRL_AES_MODE_R1_LOCK	SECURITY_LEVEL_R1_LOCK		REGION0_KEY_LOCK	CTRL_AES_MODE_R0_LOCK	SECURITY_LEVEL_R0_LOCK		LITTLE_ENDIAN_LOCK	AC_PROT_EN_LOCK	KEY_REGION_SEL_LOCK	KEY_VALID_LOCK	REGION1_ADDR_LOCK	CTRL_SFTRST_N_LOCK	CTRL_CLK_EN_LOCK	BEE_ENABLE_LOCK
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	CTRL_AES_MODE_R1	SECURITY_LEVEL_R1	Reserved	CTRL_AES_MODE_R0	SECURITY_LEVEL_R0		LITTLE_ENDIAN	AC_PROT_EN	KEY_REGION_SEL	KEY_VALID	Reserved	CTRL_SFTRST_N	CTRL_CLK_EN	BEE_ENABLE	
W																
Reset	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### BEE\_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31 REGION1_KEY_LOCK	Lock bit for region1 AES key
30 CTRL_AES_MODE_R1_LOCK	Lock bit for region1 ctrl_aes_mode
29–28 SECURITY_LEVEL_R1_LOCK	Lock bits for security_level_r1
27 REGION0_KEY_LOCK	Lock bit for region0 AES key
26 CTRL_AES_MODE_R0_LOCK	Lock bit for region0 ctrl_aes_mode

Table continues on the next page...

**BEE\_CTRL field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
25–24 SECURITY_LEVEL_R0_LOCK	Lock bits for security_level_r0
23 LITTLE_ENDIAN_LOCK	Lock bit for little_endian
22 AC_PROT_EN_LOCK	Lock bit for ac_prot
21 KEY_REGION_SEL_LOCK	Lock bit for key_region_sel
20 KEY_VALID_LOCK	Lock bit for key_valid
19 REGION1_ADDR_LOCK	Lock bit for region1 address boundary
18 CTRL_SFTRST_N_LOCK	Lock bit for ctrl_sftrst
17 CTRL_CLK_EN_LOCK	Lock bit for ctrl_clk_en
16 BEE_ENABLE_LOCK	Lock bit for bee_enable
15 Reserved	This field is reserved.
14 CTRL_AES_MODE_R1	AES mode of region1 0 ECB 1 CTR
13–12 SECURITY_LEVEL_R1	Security level of the allowed access for memory region1
11 Reserved	This field is reserved.
10 CTRL_AES_MODE_R0	AES mode of region0 0 ECB 1 CTR
9–8 SECURITY_LEVEL_R0	Security level of the allowed access for memory region0
7 LITTLE_ENDIAN	Endian swap control for the 16 bytes input and output data of AES core. 0 The input and output data of the AES core is swapped as below:

*Table continues on the next page...*

**BEE\_CTRL field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
	{B15,B14,B13,B12,B11,B10,B9,B8, B7,B6,B5,B4,B3,B2,B1,B0} swap to {B0,B1,B2,B3,B4,B5,B6,B7, B8,B9,B10,B11,B12,B13,B14,B15}, where B0~B15 refers to Byte0 to Byte15. 1 The input and output data of AES core is not swapped.
6 AC_PROT_EN	Enable access permission control <b>NOTE:</b> When AC_PROT_EN is asserted, all encrypted regions are limited to be ARM core access only.
5 KEY_REGION_SEL	AES key region select 0 Load AES key for region0 1 Load AES key for region1
4 KEY_VALID	AES-128 key is ready <b>NOTE:</b> Load AES key by changing this bit from 0 to 1.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved.
2 CTRL_SFTRST_N	Soft reset input, low active
1 CTRL_CLK_EN	Clock enable input, low inactive
0 BEE_ENABLE	BEE enable bit 0 Disable BEE 1 Enable BEE

**6.4.2 Offset region 0 Register (BEE\_ADDR\_OFFSET0)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 4h offset = 403E\_C004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0

**BEE\_ADDR\_OFFSET0 field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–16 ADDR_OFFSET0_LOCK	Lock bits for addr_offset0
ADDR_OFFSET0	Signed offset for BEE region 0. The signed offset specified here is added to the upper 16-bits of the region 0 addresses to create aliased regions. The data stored in the region 0 alias is decrypted and visible at the region 0 addresses.

### 6.4.3 Offset region 1 Register (BEE\_ADDR\_OFFSET1)

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 8h offset = 403E\_C008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ADDR_OFFSET1_LOCK																ADDR_OFFSET1															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

#### BEE\_ADDR\_OFFSET1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 ADDR_OFFSET1_LOCK	Lock bits for addr_offset1
ADDR_OFFSET1	Signed offset for BEE region 1. The signed offset specified here is added to the upper 16-bits of the region 1 addresses to create aliased regions. The data stored in the region 1 alias is decrypted and visible at the region 1 addresses.

### 6.4.4 AES Key 0 Register (BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W0)

Address: 403E\_C000h base + Ch offset = 403E\_C00Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																	KEY0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

#### BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W0 field descriptions

Field	Description
KEY0	AES 128 key from software  AES_128KEY={key3,key2, key1,key0}

### 6.4.5 AES Key 1 Register (BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W1)

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 10h offset = 403E\_C010h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																	KEY1															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W1 field descriptions**

Field	Description
KEY1	AES 128 key from software AES_128KEY={key3,key2, key1,key0}

**6.4.6 AES Key 2 Register (BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W2)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 14h offset = 403E\_C014h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W2 field descriptions**

Field	Description
KEY2	AES 128 key from software AES_128KEY={key3,key2, key1,key0}

**6.4.7 AES Key 3 Register (BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W3)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 18h offset = 403E\_C018h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_AES\_KEY0\_W3 field descriptions**

Field	Description
KEY3	AES 128 key from software AES_128KEY={key3,key2, key1,key0}

## 6.4.8 Status Register (BEE\_STATUS)

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 1Ch offset = 403E\_C01Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved																
W																	
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*		x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								BEE_IDLE	IRQ_VEC							
W										w1c							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*		x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

\* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

### BEE\_STATUS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved.
8 BEE_IDLE	1'b1: BEE is idle; 1'b0: BEE is active
IRQ_VEC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bit 7: Protected region-3 access violation</li> <li>• bit 6: Protected region-2 access violation</li> <li>• bit 5: Protected region-1 access violation</li> <li>• bit 4: Protected region-0 access violation</li> <li>• bit 3: Region-1 read channel security violation</li> <li>• bit 2: Read channel illegal access detected</li> <li>• bit 1: Region-0 read channel security violation</li> <li>• bit 0: Disable abort. Received AXI command during BEE disabled period</li> </ul>

## 6.4.9 NONCE00 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W0)

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 20h offset = 403E\_C020h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W	NONCE00																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W0 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE00	Nonce0 from software for CTR, for region0. Nonce0={Nonce03,Nonce02,Nonce01,Nonce00}

**6.4.10 NONCE01 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W1)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 24h offset = 403E\_C024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W1 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE01	Nonce0 from software for CTR, for region0. Nonce0={Nonce03,Nonce02,Nonce01,Nonce00}

**6.4.11 NONCE02 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W2)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 28h offset = 403E\_C028h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W2 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE02	Nonce0 from software for CTR, for region0. Nonce0={Nonce03,Nonce02,Nonce01,Nonce00}

**6.4.12 NONCE03 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W3)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 2Ch offset = 403E\_C02Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE0\_W3 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE03	Nonce0 from software for CTR, for region0. Nonce0={Nonce03,Nonce02,Nonce01,Nonce00}

**6.4.13 NONCE10 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W0)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 30h offset = 403E\_C030h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W0 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE10	Nonce1 from software for CTR, for region1. Nonce1={Nonce13,Nonce12,Nonce11,Nonce10}

**6.4.14 NONCE11 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W1)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 34h offset = 403E\_C034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W1 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE11	Nonce1 from software for CTR, for region1. Nonce1={Nonce13,Nonce12,Nonce11,Nonce10}

**6.4.15 NONCE12 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W2)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 38h offset = 403E\_C038h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W2 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE12	Nonce1 from software for CTR, for region1. Nonce1={Nonce13,Nonce12,Nonce11,Nonce10}

**6.4.16 NONCE13 Register (BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W3)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 3Ch offset = 403E\_C03Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_CTR\_NONCE1\_W3 field descriptions**

Field	Description
NONCE13	Nonce1 from software for CTR, for region1. Nonce1={Nonce13,Nonce12,Nonce11,Nonce10}

**6.4.17 Region1 Top Address Register (BEE\_REGION1\_TOP)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 40h offset = 403E\_C040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**BEE\_REGION1\_TOP field descriptions**

Field	Description
REGION1_TOP	Address upper limit of region1  The REGION1_TOP and REGION1_BOT registers define which FAC addresses (configured in the IOMUXC_GPR registers) will be treated at BEE region 1. Any FAC addresses that do not hit in BEE region1 as defined by REGION1_TOP and REGION1_BOT will be treated as BEE region 0.

**6.4.18 Region1 Bottom Address Register (BEE\_REGION1\_BOT)**

Address: 403E\_C000h base + 44h offset = 403E\_C044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

### BEE\_REGION1\_BOT field descriptions

Field	Description
REGION1_BOT	<p>Address lower limit of region1</p> <p>The REGION1_TOP and REGION1_BOT registers define which FAC addresses (configured in the IOMUXC_GPR registers) will be treated at BEE region 1. Any FAC addresses that do not hit in BEE region1 as defined by REGION1_TOP and REGION1_BOT will be treated as BEE region 0.</p>

## 6.5 BEE program model

The BEE module is designed to minimize software intervention; however, software assistance is still required in the following scenarios:

- BEE initialization after POR reset
- BEE parameter update, if it is required by the application
- BEE interrupt service routine (ISR)

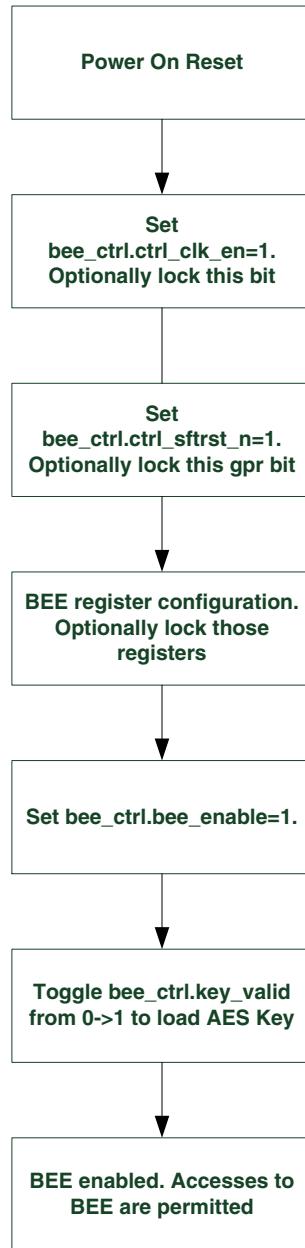


Figure 6-6. BEE initialization flow

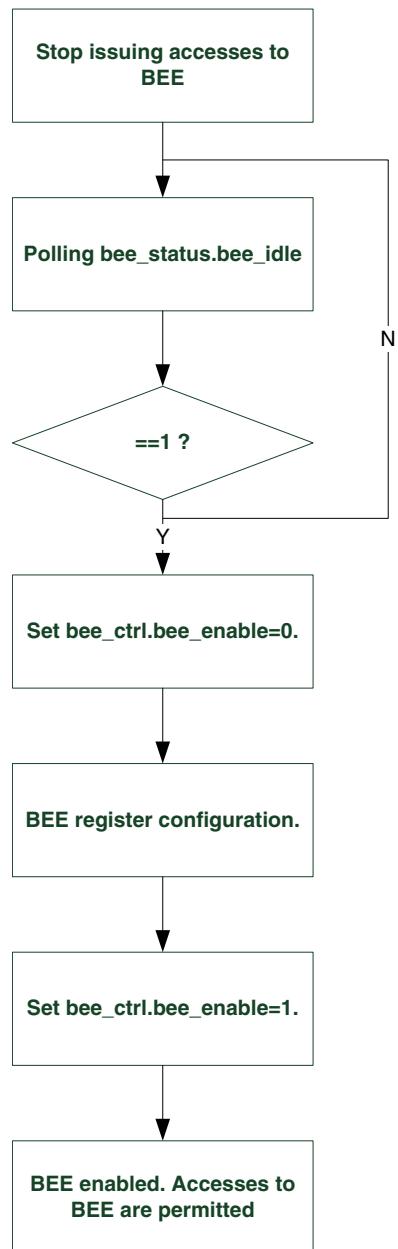


Figure 6-7. BEE parameter update flow

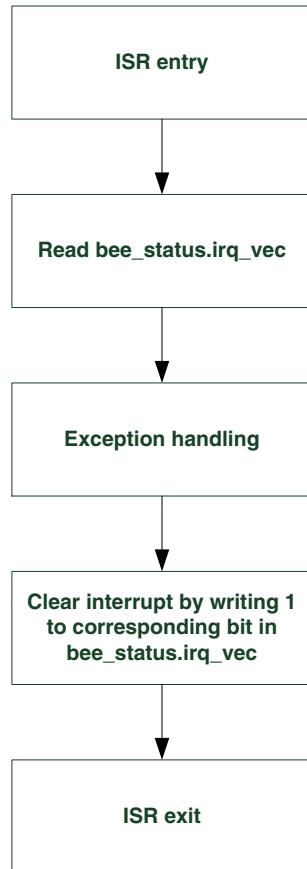


Figure 6-8. BEE ISR flow



# Chapter 7

## Data Co-Processor (DCP)

### 7.1 Overview

This chapter describes the Data Co-Processor (DCP) block included on the chip and how to use it.

It includes sections on memory copy functionality, Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), hashing, and arbitration. The sections on programming the channel operations and example code are also provided. The programmable registers are described in [DCP](#).

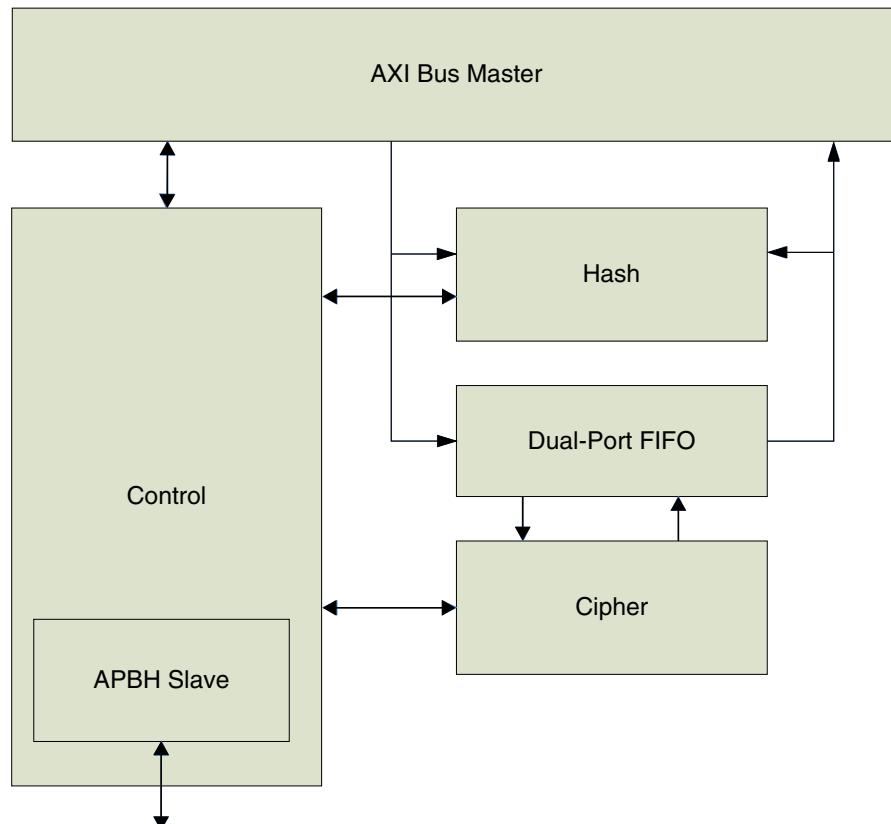


Figure 7-1. DCP block diagram

The DCP module provides support for the general encryption and hashing functions typically used for the security functions. Because its basic job is to move data from memory to memory, it also incorporates the memory-copy (memcpy) function for debugging and as a more efficient method to copy data between memory blocks than the DMA-based approach. The memcpy function also has a "blit" mode of operation where it can transfer a rectangular block of data to a video frame buffer.

The DCP supports a wide variety of encryption and hashing algorithms, and the control structures are designed to enable flexibility in adding of additional algorithms and modes in the future. It supports up to 16 encryption algorithms with up to 16 different modes of operation as well as up to 16 hashing algorithms . While the DCP module is designed to support numerous algorithms, only a subset may be implemented in any given implementation (see the Capability Register section).

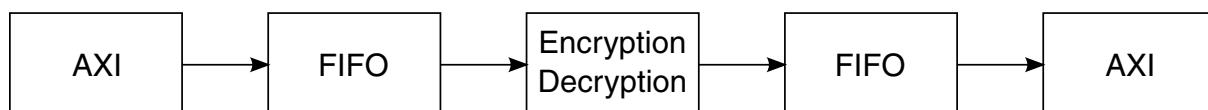
The DCP module processes data based on chained command structures written to the system memory by software (in a manner similar to the DMA engine). The control block maintains the registers to support four independent and concurrent chains, enabling the software to virtualize the access to the DCP block. Each command in the chain represents a work unit that the module processes to completion. At the end of each work unit, the control logic arbitrates among chains with outstanding commands and processes a command from that chain. The arbitration among the channels is round-robin, enabling equal access to the data engine for all active channels. Each channel also supports a "high-priority" mode that enables it to have priority over the remaining channels. If multiple channels are selected as high-priority, the channel arbiter selects from the high-priority channels in a round-robin fashion.

The data flow through the DCP module can be configured in one of five fashions, depending on the functionality activated by the control packet:

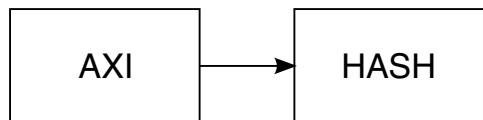
- **Memcpy/blit mode**-The data is moved unchanged from one memory buffer to another.



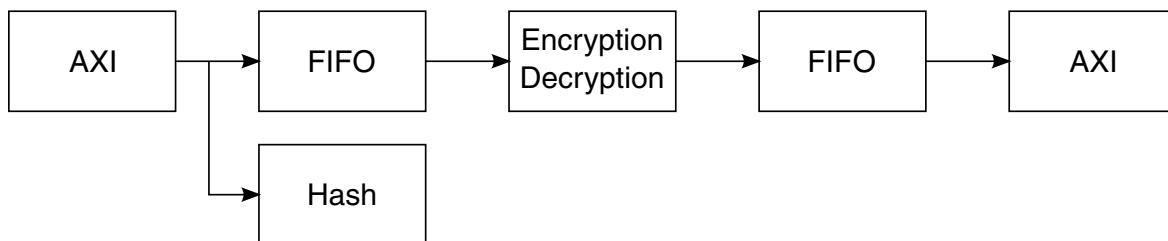
- **Encryption only**-The data from the source buffer is encrypted/decrypted into the destination buffer.



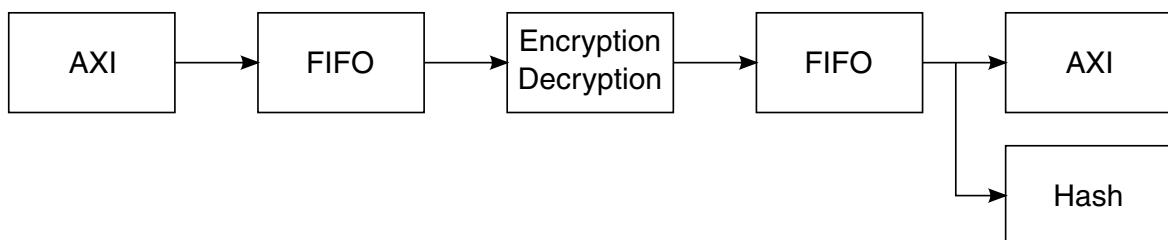
- **Hashing only**-The data from the source buffer is read, and a hash is generated.



- **Encryption and input hashing**-The data from the source buffer is encrypted/decrypted into the destination and the source buffer is hashed.



- **Encryption and output hashing**-The data from the source buffer is encrypted/decrypted into the destination and the output data is hashed.



### 7.1.1 DCP limitations for software

While the DCP module is designed to be as flexible as possible, there are these limitations to which the software must adhere:

- The buffer sizes for all operations must be aligned to the natural size of the transfer algorithm used. The memcpy operations can transfer any number of bytes (one-byte granularity), and the AES operations must be multiples of 16 bytes (four-word granularity). For all operations, if the byte count is not a word granularity, the hardware rounds up to the next word. The hashing is supported at a byte granularity.
- The DCP module supports buffer operations to any byte alignment, but the performance is improved if the buffers are aligned to a four-byte boundary because the fetch/store operations can be performed without having to make byte operations to accommodate the misaligned addresses.

- The hash operations are limited to a buffer size of 512 MB. The hardware only implements a 32-bit hash length counter instead of the 64-bit counter supported by the SHA-1/SHA-256 algorithm (counter counts bits not bytes, therefore the total of 512 MB).
- For the chained hashing operations (operations involving multiple descriptors), every descriptor except the last must have a byte count that is a 16-word multiple (granularity of the hash algorithm).
- The key values can't be written while the AES block is active. This limitation exists because the key RAM is in use while the AES is operational. Any writes from the peripheral bus cannot be held in the wait states. Therefore, the RAM must be accessible during the key writes.
- The byte-swap controls can only be used with the modulo-4 length buffers. For the non-modulo-4 lengths, the final partial word contains incorrect data. Any address alignment can be used with the byte swapping.
- The word-swap controls are only useful for the cipher operations because the logic forms the 128-bit cipher data from four words from the system memory. The word-swap controls are ignored for the memcpy or hashing operations.
- The DCP only supports writes to the word boundaries to the OCRAM.

## 7.2 Clocks

See [Clock Controller Module \(CCM\)](#) for the clock setting, configuration, and gating information.

## 7.3 Operation

The top-level DCP module contains the AXI master, the peripheral slave bus interface units, the main control block and FIFO, and any encryption or hashing blocks included within the design.

The controller manages the fetching of work blocks, the fetching/storing of context information when switching between the chain pointers, and the managing of the data flow through the FIFO, SHA, and AES blocks. The data entering the block from the AXI master is placed in the FIFO for consumption by the cipher block. After the cipher module has finished its operation, the data is placed back into the FIFO and stored back to the memory via the AXI master. When the hashing is enabled, the SHA block takes its inputs from the bus side of the FIFO to enable it to operate without waiting for the cipher block to complete. The peripheral slave provides all register controls and interfaces mainly with the control block.

### 7.3.1 Memory copy, blit, and fill functionality

In its most basic operation, the DCP supports moving of unmodified data from one place in the system memory to another.

This functionality is referred to as "memcpy", because it operates only on the memory and it copies the data from one place to another. The typical uses for the memcpy might be for fast virtual memory page moves or repositioning of data blocks in the memory. The memcpy buffers can be aligned to any memory address and can be of any length (byte granularity). For the best performance, the buffers must be word-aligned, although the DCP includes the enhancements to improve the performance for the unaligned cases.

The DCP also has the ability to perform basic blit operations that are typical in graphics operations. To specify a blit, the control packet must have the ENABLE\_BLIT bit set in the packet control register. The blit source buffers must be contiguous. The output destination buffer for the blit operation is defined as a "M runs of N bytes" that defines a rectangular region in a frame buffer. For the blit operations, each line of the blit can consist of any number of bytes. After performing a run, the DCP updates the destination pointer such that the next destination address falls on the pixel below the start of the previous run operation. This is done by incrementing the starting pointer by the frame buffer width, which is specified in the Control field.

In addition to copying the data within the memory, the DCP also provides a fill operation, where the source data does not come from another memory location, but from an internal register (the source buffer address in the control packet). This is done whenever the DCP\_Control0[CONSTANT\_FILL] flag is set in the packet control register (see [Control1 field](#)). This feature can be used with the memcpy to prefill the memory with a specified value, or during a blit operation to fill a rectangular region with a constant color.

### 7.3.2 Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)

The AES block implements a 128-bit key/data encryption/decryption block, as defined by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) as the US FIPS PUB 197, dated November 2001 (see the references for the specifications and toolkits).

### 7.3.2.1 Key storage

The DCP implements four SRAM-based keys that can be used by the software to securely store keys on a semi-permanent basis. The keys may be written via the programming interface by specifying a key index (to specify which key to load) and a subword pointer that indicates which word to write within the key. After a subword is written, the logic automatically increments the subword pointer so that the software can program the higher-order words of the key without rewriting the key index. The keys written into the key storage are not readable.

To use a key in the key storage, the cipher descriptor packet must select the key by setting the DCP\_Control1[KEY\_SELECT] field in the Control1 descriptor field without setting the OTP\_KEY or PAYLOAD\_KEY fields in the Control0 register. See [Control0 field](#) and [Control1 field](#).

### 7.3.2.2 AES OTP key

After a system reset, the OTP controller reads the eFuse devices and provides the OTP key information to the DCP. The DCP receives a 64-bit UNIQUE KEY and a 128-bit OTP key (CRYPTO KEY). Depending on the key path control fuse, the DCP receives the CRYTPO KEY either directly or indirectly through the SNVS trust controller module. The CRYPTO KEY in fuses is actually 256-bit and a mux (configured by **DCP\_KEY\_SEL** bitfield in IOMUXC\_GPR register set) is used to select the high or low 128 bits of the key <sup>1</sup>. The DCP internally generates the control logic signals to capture this key into the key RAM. The system reset controller coordinates the deassertion of reset such that the OTP key is stable before the DCP reads it. If the SNVS key path is chosen, the security violation removes the CRYPTO KEY, resets the key in the DCP, and makes the key unavailable to the DCP until the next successful secure boot.

To use the OTP key, the descriptor packet must set the OTP\_KEY field in the Control1 register (see [Control1 field](#)).

### 7.3.2.3 Encryption modes

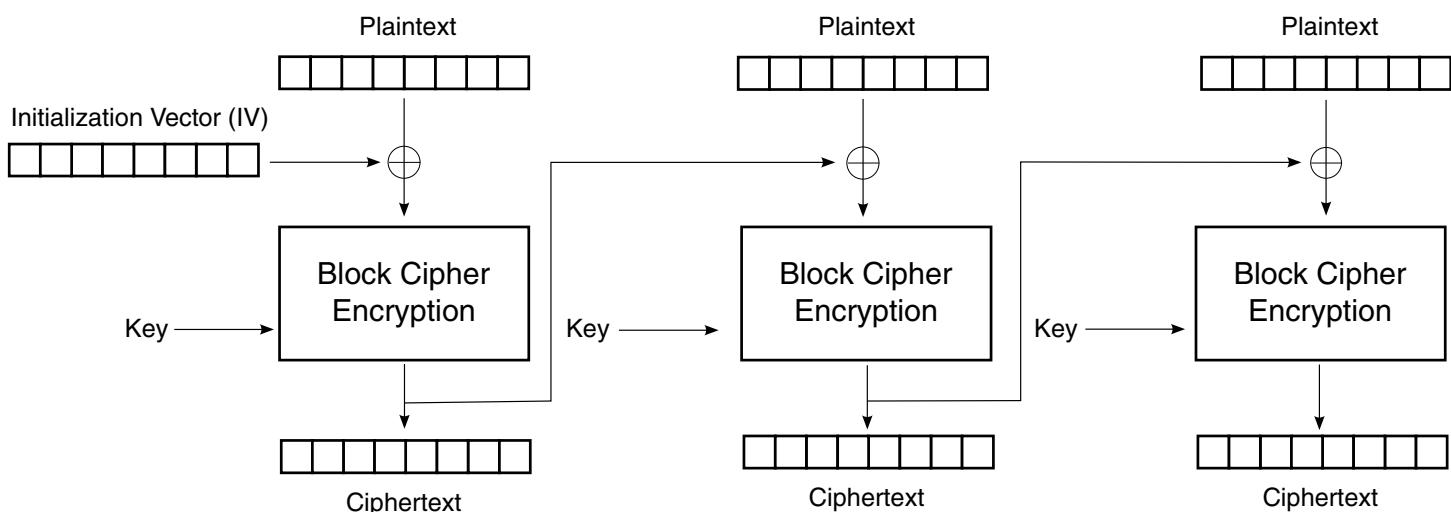
The most basic form of encryption is the Electronic Code Book (ECB) mode. In this mode, the encryption output is a function of the key and the plaintext only, thus it can be visualized as a giant look-up table. While this provides a great deal of security, there are some limitations. For instance, if the same plaintext appears in a block of data more than

- When changing the IOMUXC\_GPR registers to select a different key, the user has to do a software reset of the DCP to get the new key to take effect. See "Configuring Master Key checking and control " section in SNVS chapter for more details.

once, the same ciphertext appears also. This can be evident if the plaintext contains large blocks of constant data (for example zeros) and can be used to formulate the attacks against a key.

To make the ciphers stronger, several modes of operation can be implemented around the basic ECB cipher to provide additional security. One such mode is the CBC mode (Cipher Block Chaining) which takes the previous encrypted data and logically XORs it with the next incoming plaintext before performing the encryption. During the decryption, the process is reversed and the previously encrypted data is XORed with the decrypted ECB data to provide the plaintext again.

The AES engine supports handling of various modes of operation. The core AES block supports the ECB mode, and the other algorithms are handled in the wrapper around the encryption blocks. The DCP module supports Cipher Block Chaining (CBC), which chains the data blocks by XORing the previously encrypted data with the plaintext before the encryption. The CBC encryption is shown in this figure:



**Figure 7-2. CBC mode encryption**

The decryption (shown in the following figure) works in a similar manner, where the cipher text is first decrypted and then XORed with the previous ciphertext. For the first encryption/decryption operation, the Initialization Vector (IV) is used to seed the operation. The IV must be the same for both the encryption and decryption steps. Otherwise, the decrypted data don't match the original plaintext.

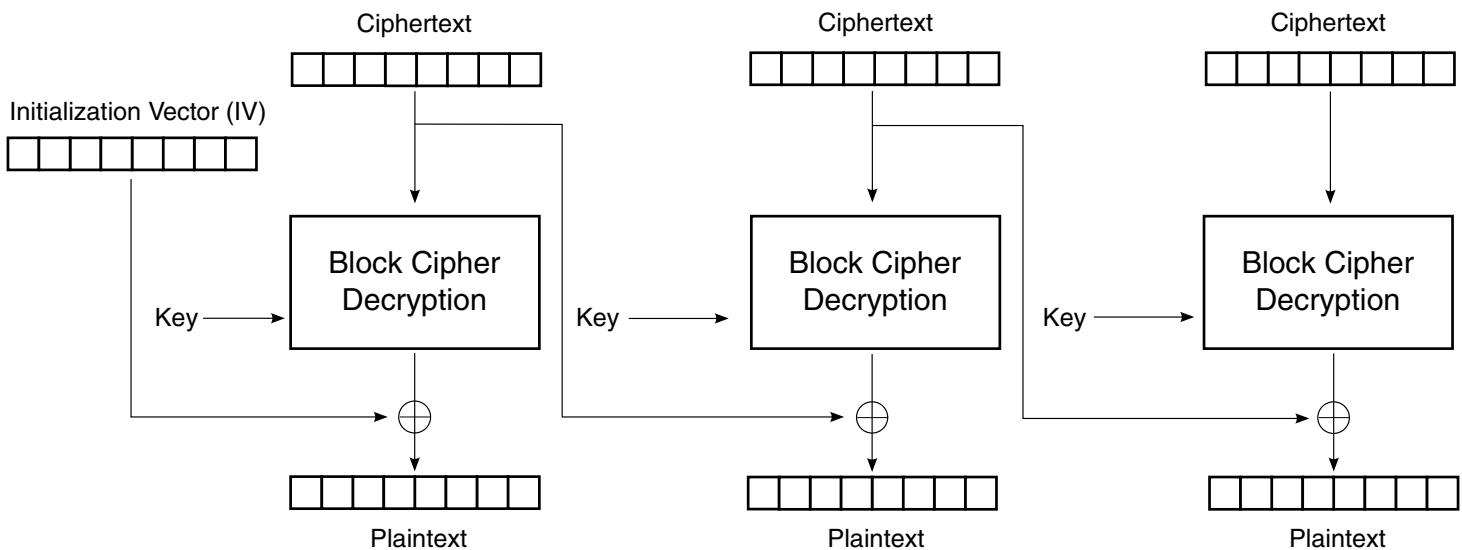


Figure 7-3. CBC mode decryption

### 7.3.3 Hashing

The hashing module implements the SHA-1 and SHA-256 hashing algorithms and a modified CRC-32 checksum algorithm.

These algorithms produce a signature for a block of data that can be used to determine whether the data is intact.

The CRC-32 algorithm implements a 32-bit CRC algorithm similar to the one used by Ethernet and many other protocols. The CRC differs from the Unix `cksum()` function in these three ways:

- The CRC is initialized as 0xFFFFFFFF instead of 0x00000000.
- The logic pads the zeros to a 32-bit boundary for the trailing bytes.
- The logic doesn't post-pend the file length.

The SHA-1 block implements a 160-bit hashing algorithm that operates on 512-bit (64-byte) blocks, as defined by US FIPS PUB 180-1 in 1995. The SHA-256 mode implements a 256-bit hashing algorithm that operates on 512-bit (64-byte) blocks, as defined by US FIPS PUB 180-2 in 2002. The purpose of the hashing module is to generate a unique signature for a block of data that can be used to validate the integrity of the data by comparing the resulting "digest" with the original digest.

The results of the hash operations are written to the beginning of the payload for the descriptor. The DCP also has the ability to check the resulting hash against a value in the payload and issue an interrupt if a mismatch occurs.

### 7.3.4 One-Time Programmable (OTP) key

After a system reset, the OTP controller reads the eFuse devices and provides the OTP key information to the DCP through the 128-bit otp\_crypto\_key\_data input data bus and the 64-bit otp\_unique\_key\_data unique key input that come directly from the OTP controller.

These bus input values are held constant and originate from the eFuse shadow registers after a reset. Note that the shadow registers for these bits can be changed in the OTP block if they are unlocked. They are only loaded by the DCP after the deassertion of the system reset. After a reset, the DCP automatically loads these (at the time 32 bits wide) keys into the internal key RAM.

While the OTP key is normally not available for the read operations, the module enables the key to be read if the otp\_crypto\_key\_ren (read-enable) input is active (high). This enables the verification of the key after it is programmed into the eFuse device. After the programming is validated, another fuse is set to disable the read capability.

The OTP key (CRYPTO KEY) can be selected using the DCP\_Control1[OTP\_KEY] bit in the control field of the packet descriptor or by using the key select 0xFF in the CTRL1 field of the descriptor. The DCP also supports a second hardware key called the UNIQUE KEY which is generated from the OTP KEY and the key modifier bits from other OTP fuse fields. This key is unique to the device and can be used to encrypt the private data stored on the NAND. This key can be selected by writing 0xFE to the KEY\_SELECT field in the CTRL1 packet data.

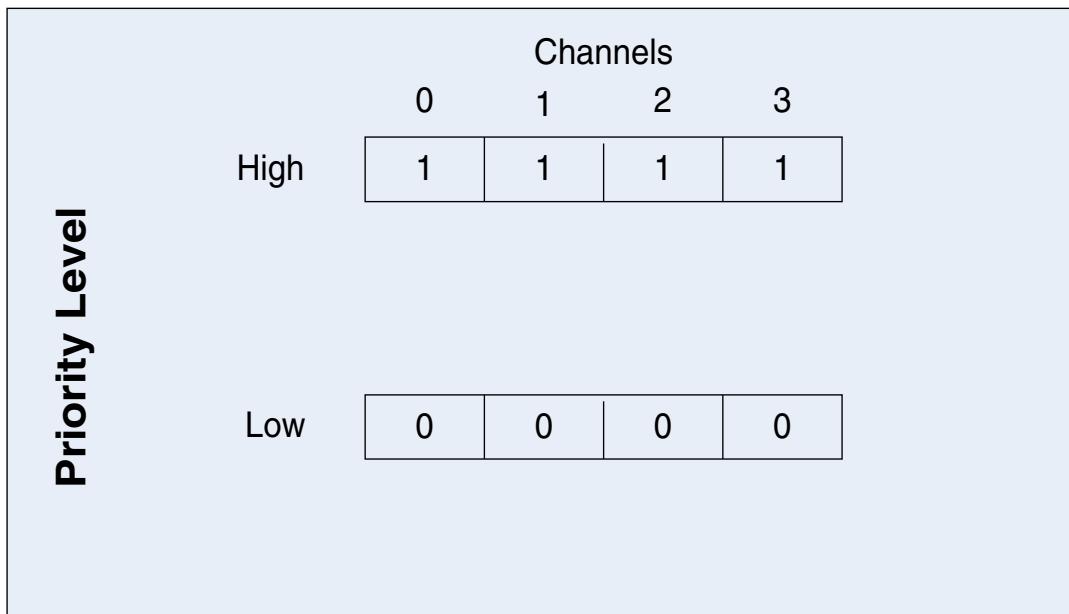
### 7.3.5 Managing DCP channel arbitration and performance

The DCP can have four channels and all competition for the DCP resources to complete their operations.

Depending on the situation, the critical operations may need to be prioritized above the less important operations to ensure a smooth system operation. To help the software achieve this goal, the DCP implements a programmable arbiter for the internal DCP operations and provides the recovery timers on each channel to throttle the channel activity.

### 7.3.5.1 DCP arbitration

The DCP implements a multi-tiered arbitration policy that gives the software the flexibility in scheduling the DCP operations. This figure illustrates the arbitration levels and how each channel fits into the arbitration scheme:



**Figure 7-4. DCP arbitration**

Each channel can be programmed as being in either the high-priority or the low-priority arbitration pool, depending on the setting in the HIGH\_PRIORITY\_CHANNEL field of the DCP\_CHANNELCTRL register. When the corresponding bit is programmed as a 1, the channel arbitrates in the high-priority pool. Otherwise, it arbitrates in the low-priority pool. When a channel is selected, it completes one packet, and then the arbiter rearbitrates. The channel that just completed participates in the new arbitration round.

### 7.3.5.2 Channel-recovery timers

Each channel contains a channel-recovery timer in its DCP\_CHnOPTS register. The purpose of the recovery timer is to keep the channel inactive for a period of time after it completes an operation. This capability can be used for a high-priority channel to ensure that at least some of the lower-priority requests get serviced between the packets or to simply enable more timeslices for the other channels to perform the operations. The value programmed into the recovery timers register delays the channel from operations until it is 16 times the programmed value. Any non-zero value must prevent the channel from participating in the next arbitration cycle.

## 7.3.6 Programming channel operations

The control logic block maintains the channel pointers and manages the arbitration and context switching between the different channels.

It also manages the fetching of work packets and the data fetch/store operations from the AXI master interface and coordinates the actions of the hashing and encryption blocks.

The control logic maintains four channels that enable the software to effectively create four independent work sets for the DCP module. The software can construct the chained control packets in the memory that describe the encryption/hashing/memcopy operations to the hardware unit. The address for this first control packet can be written to one of the four virtual channels and enabled. When one or more of the channels is enabled, the controller fetches the control packet pointed to by that channel and initiates the data fetches from the source buffer. The data is then processed as described in the control packet and stored back to the system memory.

When the processing for a control packet is complete, the controller writes the completion status information back to the control packet, and optionally stores the relevant state information to the context buffer. If the control packet specifies a subsequent control packet, the channel's pointer is updated to the address for the next packet and an optional interrupt can be issued to the processor.

At this point, the DCP module arbitrates among the virtual channels for the next operation and processes its control packet. If a subsequent operation continues from a previous operation, the controller automatically loads the context from the previous session into the working registers before resuming the operation for that channel.

### 7.3.6.1 Virtual channels

The DCP module processes the data via the work packets stored in the memory. Each channel contains a pointer to the current work packet and enough control logic to determine whether the channel is active and to provide the status to the processor. Each channel also provides a recovery timer to help throttle the processing by a particular channel. After processing a packet, the channel enables its 16-bit recovery timer (if the recovery time is set to a non-zero value). The channel does not become active again until its recovery timer expires. The recovery timer timebase is 16 HCLK cycles, so the timer acts as a 20-bit timer with the bottom four bits implicitly tied to 0. This provides an effective range from zero to  $2^{20-1}$  clocks or 0 ns to 7.8 ms at 133 MHz.

A channel is activated any time its semaphore is non-zero and its recovery timer is cleared. The semaphore can be incremented by the software to indicate that the chain pointer is loaded with a valid pointer. As the hardware completes the work packets, it decrements the semaphore if the Decrement Semaphore flag in the Control 0 field is set. The work packets can be chained together using the CHAIN or CHAIN\_CONTIGUOUS bits in the Control0 field which causes the channel to automatically update the work packet pointer to the value in the NEXT\_COMMAND\_ADDRESS field at the end of the current work packet.

### 7.3.6.2 Context switching

The control logic maintains four virtual channels that enable the DCP block to time-multiplex encryption, hashing, and memcpy operations. It must also retain the state information when changing the channels so that when a channel is resumed, it can resume the operation from where it left off. This process is called context switching.

To minimize the number of registers used in the design, the controller saves the context information from each channel into a private context area in the system memory. When initializing the DCP module, the software must allocate the memory for the context buffer and write the address into the context buffer pointer register. As the DCP module processes the packets, it saves the context information for each channel to the buffer after completing each control packet. When the channel is subsequently activated, the DCP module's internal registers are then reloaded with the proper context before resuming the operation.

Each channel reserves one-fourth of the context buffer area for its context storage. The context buffer consumes 208 bytes of the system memory and is formatted as shown in this figure:

**Table 7-1. DCP context buffer layout**

Range	Channel	Data	Size
0x00-0x0C	3	Cipher context	16 B
0x10-0x30	-	Hash context	36 B
0x34-0x40	2	Cipher context	16 B
0x44-0x64	-	Hash context	36 B
0x68-0x74	1	Cipher context	16 B
0x78-0x98	-	Hash context	36 B
0x9C-0xA8	0	Cipher context	16 B
0xAC-0xCC	-	Hash context	36 B

The control logic writes to the context buffer only if the function is being used. This means that the cipher context is stored for the CBC encryption/decryption operations only, and the hash context is written only if SHA-1/SHA-256 is used. If neither of these modes are used for a given channel, the memory for the context buffer does not need to be allocated by the software.

Since channel 0 is likely to be used for the VMI in an SDRAM-based system-to-page data from the SDRAM to the on-chip SRAM, the buffer allocation table is organized so that the *highest* numbered channel uses the *lowest* area in the context buffer. For this reason, the software must allocate the higher-numbered channels for the encryption/ hashing operations and the lower-numbered channels for the memcpy operations to reduce the size of the context buffer.

If only a single channel is used for the CBC mode operations or hashing operations, the controller provides a bit in the control register to disable the context switching. In this scenario, the context switching is not required because the other channels do not corrupt the state of the hashing or cipher modes. When the channel resumes, a context load is not required.

Additionally, the control logic monitors the use of CBC/hashing, so that a context reload is not done when the previous channel resumes an operation without an intermediate operation from another channel.

### 7.3.6.3 Working with semaphores

Each channel has a semaphore register to indicate that the control packets are ready to be processed. Several techniques can be used when programming the semaphores to control the execution of packets within a channel. The channel continues to execute the packets as long as the semaphore is non-zero, a chain bit is set in the descriptor, and no error occurred.

- The software can write the number of pending packets into the semaphore register with the Decrement Semaphore bit in each control packet set. In this scenario, the channel simply decrements the semaphore for each packet set and terminates at the end of the packet chain. The benefit of this method is that the software can easily determine how many packets have executed by reading the semaphore status register.
- The software can create a packet chain with the Decrement Semaphore bit set only in the last packet. In this case, the software writes 1 to the semaphore register to start the chains and the DCP terminates after executing the last packet.
- The software can create a packet chain with the Decrement Semaphore bit set for each packet and write either 1 or a number less than the number of packets to the semaphore register. This can be useful when debugging, because it enables the

channel to execute only a portion of the packets and the software can inspect the intermediate values before restarting the channel again.

If an error occurs, the channel issues an interrupt and clears the semaphore register. The channel does not perform any further operations until the error bits in the status register are cleared. The software can manually clear a non-zero semaphore by writing 0xFF to the CLR (clear) address of the semaphore register.

### 7.3.6.4 Work packet structure

The work packets for the DCP module are created in the memory by the processor. Each work packet includes all information required for the hardware to process the data. The general structure of the packet is shown in this figure:

Word0	Next Cmd Addr
Word1	Control0
Word2	Control1
Word3	Source Buffer Addr
Word4	Destination Buffer Addr
Word5	Buffer Size
Word6	Payload Pointer
Word7	Status

**Figure 7-5. DCP work packet structure**

For some operations, additional information is required to process the data in the packet. This additional information is provided in the variable-sized payload buffer which can be found at the address specified in the payload pointer field. When the encryption is specified, the payload may include the encryption key (if the key selected resides in the packet), the initialization vector (for modes of operation such as CBC), and the expected hash values when the data hashing is indicated. The hardware can automatically compare the expected hash with the actual hash and interrupt the processor only on a mismatch. The payload area is used by the software to store the calculated hash value at the end of the hashing operations (when the HASH\_TERM control bit in DCP\_Control0 is set).

### 7.3.6.4.1 Next command address field

The NEXT\_COMMAND\_ADDRESS field (as shown in the following figure) is used to point to the next work packet in the chain. This field is loaded into the channel's command pointer after the current packet has completed processing if the CHAIN bit in the CONTROL0 field (see [Table 7-3](#)) is set. The next command address field must be programmed to a non-zero value when the CHAIN bit is set. Otherwise, the channel flags an invalid setup error.

**Table 7-2. DCP next command address field**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
NEXT_COMMAND_ADDRESS																															

### 7.3.6.4.2 Control0 field

The main functions of the DCP module are enabled with the ENABLE\_MEMCOPY, ENABLE\_BLIT, ENABLE\_CIPHER, and ENABLE\_HASH bits from the Control0 field in the work packet.

The combinations of these bits determine the function performed by the DCP. [Table 7-4](#) summarizes the function performed for each combination.

**Table 7-3. DCP Control0 field**

TAG	OUTPUT_WORDSWAP	OUTPUT_BYTESWAP	INPUT_WORDSWAP	INPUT_BYTESWAP	KEY_WORDSWAP	KEY_BYTESWAP	TEST_SEMA IRQ	CONSTANT_FILL	HASH_OUTPUT	HASH_CHECK	HASH_TERM	HASH_INIT	PAYOUT_KEY	OTP_KEY	CIPHER_INIT	CIPHER_ENCRYP	ENABLE_BLIT	ENABLE_HASH	ENABLE_CIPHER	ENABLE_MEMCOPY	CHAIN_CONTINUOUS	CHAIN	DECR_SEMAPHOR	INTERRUPT_ENABL	E
-----	-----------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	---------------	-------------	------------	-----------	-----------	------------	---------	-------------	---------------	-------------	-------------	---------------	----------------	------------------	-------	---------------	-----------------	---

**Table 7-4. DCP function enable bits**

Hash	Cipher	Blit	Memcpy	Description
0	0	0	X	Simple memcpy operation.
0	0	1	0	Blit operation.
0	1	0	0	Simple encrypt/decrypt operation.
1	0	0	0	Simple hash. Only reads performed.
1	0	0	1	Memcpy and hash operation.
1	1	0	0	Hash with encryption/decryption.
All others				Invalid setup.

The CHAIN bit must be set if the NEXT\_COMMAND\_ADDRESS field has a valid pointer to the next work packet. When set, this bit causes the channel to update its pointer to the next packet. The CHAIN\_CONTINUOUS bit is similar, but it indicates that the next packet follows immediately after the current packet. This enables the software to generate templates of operations without regards to the actual physical addresses used, which makes programming easier (especially in a virtual memory environment).

If the INTERRUPT\_ENABLE bit is set, the channel generates an interrupt to the processor after completing the work for this packet. When the interrupt is issued, the packet would be completely processed, including the update of the status/payload fields in the work packet.

Each channel contains an eight-bit counting semaphore that controls whether it is in the run or idle state. When the semaphore is non-zero, the channel is ready to run and process commands. Whenever a command finishes its operation, it checks the DECR\_SEMAPHORE bit. If set, it decrements the counting semaphore. If the semaphore goes to 0 as a result, then the channel enters the idle state and remains there until the semaphore is incremented by the software. When the semaphore goes to non-zero and the channel is in its idle state, it then uses the value in the NEXT\_COMMAND\_ADDRESS field to begin processing.

If the ENABLE\_CIPHER bit is set, the data is encrypted or decrypted based on the CIPHER\_ENCRYPT bit using the key/encryption settings from the Control1 field. The OTP\_KEY and PAYLOAD\_KEY indicate the source of the keys for the operation. If the OTP\_KEY value is set, the KEY\_SELECT field from the Control1 register indicates which OTP key is to be used. If the PAYLOAD\_KEY bit is set, the first entry in the payload is the key to be used for the operation. If neither bit is set, the KEY\_SELECT field indicates an index in the key RAM that contains the key to be used. (For cases when both the OTP\_KEY and PAYLOAD\_KEY bits are set, the PAYLOAD\_KEY takes precedence.)

The HASH\_ENABLE enables hashing the data with the HASH\_OUTPUT bit controlling whether the input data (HASH\_OUTPUT=0) or the output data (HASH\_OUTPUT=1) is hashed. In addition, the hardware can be programmed to automatically check the hashed data if the HASH\_CHECK bit is set. If the hash does not match, an interrupt is generated, and the channel terminates the operation on the current chain. The hashing algorithms also require two additional fields to operate properly. The HASH\_INIT bit must be set for the first block in a hashing pass to properly initialize the hashing function. The HASH\_TERM bit must be set on the final block of a hash to notify the hardware that the hashing operation is complete so that it can properly pad the tail of the buffer according to the hashing algorithm. This flag also triggers the write-back of the hash output to the work packet's payload area.

The CONSTANT\_FILL flag may be used for both the memcpy and blot operations. When this is set, the source address field is used as a constant that is written to all locations in the output buffer instead.

The WORDSWAP and BYTESWAP bits enable the muxes around the FIFO to swap the data to handle the little-endian and big-endian storage of data in the system memory. When these bits are cleared, the data is assumed to be in the little-endian format. When all bits are set, the data is assumed to be in the big-endian format.

The TAG field is used to identify the work packet and the associated completion status. When each packet is completed, the channel provides the status and tag information for the last packet processed.

#### 7.3.6.4.3 Control1 field

The Control1 field (shown in the following table) provides additional values used when hashing or encrypting/decrypting data.

For the blot operations, this field indicates the number of bytes in a frame buffer line, which is used to calculate the address for successive lines in each blot operation.

**Table 7-5. DCP Control1 field**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
CIPHER_CONFIG								HASH_SELECT				KEY_SELECT						CIPHER_MODE				CIPHER_SELECT									
FRAMEBUFFER_LENGTH (in bytes, blot mode)																															

The CIPHER\_SELECT field selects one from the sixteen possible encryption algorithms (0=AES128). The CIPHER\_MODE selects the mode of operation for that cipher (0=ECB, 1=CBC).

The KEY\_SELECT field enables the key selection for one of several sources. The keys can be included in the packet payload or may come from the OTP or write-only registers.

The HASH\_SELECT field selects a hashing algorithm for the operation (0=SHA-1, 1=CRC32, 2=SHA-256).

The CIPHER\_CONFIG field provides the optional configuration information for the selected cipher. An example is a key length for the RC4 algorithm.

### 7.3.6.4.4 Source buffer

The SOURCE\_BUFFER pointer (shown in the following figure) specifies the location of the source buffer in the memory. The buffer can reside at any byte alignment and must refer to the on-chip SRAM or the off-chip SDRAM location. For optimal performance, the buffers must be word-aligned. When the CONSTANT\_FILL flag is set in the Control0 field, the value in this field is used as the data written to all destination buffer locations.

**Table 7-6. DCP source buffer field**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
SOURCE_BUFFER																															
CONSTANT (CONSTANT_FILL mode)																															

### 7.3.6.4.5 Destination buffer

The DESTINATION\_BUFFER (shown in the following table) specifies the location of the destination buffer in the on-chip SRAM or the off-chip SDRAM memory and can be set to any byte alignment. For the in-place encryption, the destination buffer and the source buffer must be of the same value. For the optimal performance, the buffer location must be word-aligned.

**Table 7-7. DCP destination buffer field**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
DESTINATION_BUFFER																															

### 7.3.6.4.6 Buffer size field

The BUFFER\_SIZE field (shown in the following table) indicates the size of the buffers for the memcpy, encryption, and hashing modes. For the memcpy and hashing operations, the value can be any number of bytes (byte granularity). For the encryption modes, the length must be a multiple of the selected encryption algorithm's natural data size (16 B for AES).

**Table 7-8. DCP buffer size field**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
NUMBER_LINES (blit mode)																BLIT_WIDTH (in bytes, blit mode)															
BUFFER_SIZE (in bytes, memcpy, encryption, and hashing modes)																															

For blit operations, the buffer size field is split into two portions: a BLIT\_WIDTH value which specifies the number of bytes in each line of the blit operation, and a NUMBER\_LINES value which specifies how many vertical rows of pixels are in the image buffer.

#### 7.3.6.4.7 Payload pointer

Some operations require additional control values that are stored in the payload buffer (shown in the following table) which is pointed to by this field. After the DCP reads the control packet, it examines the Control0 register and determines whether any payload information is required. If so, the DCP loads the payload from the address specified in this field. (See [Payload](#) for more details.)

**Table 7-9. DCP payload buffer pointer**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
PAYLOAD_POINTER																															

The payload area is also written to by the DCP at the completion of a hash operation (when the HASH\_TERM bit is set). The software must allocate the appropriate amount of storage (20 B for SHA-1 and 4 B for CRC32) in the payload or risk having the DCP write to an unallocated address.

#### 7.3.6.4.8 Status

After the DCP engine has completed processing the descriptor, it writes the packet status (shown in the following table) back to the descriptor in the status field. The packet status is the value of the channel status register at the time the packet completed processing.

**Table 7-10. DCP status field**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
TAG																															

ERROR\_CODE  
E

## Operation

For various error conditions, the DCP encodes additional error information in the ERROR\_CODE field. See [DCP](#) for more details on the assignments of error codes. For any completion codes besides the COMPLETE flag, the channel suspends the processing of the command chain until the error status values are cleared in the channel status register.

The format for this field is the same as for the channel status register, with the exception that the COMPLETE bit is written to the payload status but is not present in the channel status register.

### 7.3.6.4.9 Payload

The payload is a variable-length field that is used to provide the key, initialization values, and expected results from the hashing operations.

The payload may consist of the data fields listed in this table:

**Table 7-11. DCP payload field**

Field name	Size	Description	Condition
Cipher key	16 B	AES key	Cipher enable with the PAYLOAD_KEY
Cipher IV	16 B	CBC initialization vector	Cipher enable with the CBC mode
Hash check	20 B	Hash completion value	Hash enabled with the HASH_TERM fields set

If the fields are not used, they do not appear in the payload and the other payload values move upwards in the payload area. For example, if only hashing is used, then the HASH\_CHECK value appears at offset 0 in the payload area. This table must be used by the software to determine the amount of payload to allocate and initialize:

**Table 7-12. DCP payload allocation by software**

Control bits present			Payload size
Hash_Check	Cipher_Init	Payload_Key	
0	0	0	0 words / 0 bytes
0	0	1	4 words / 16 bytes
0	1	0	4 words / 16 bytes
0	1	1	8 words / 32 bytes
1	0	0	SHA-1: 5 words / 20 bytes SHA-2: 8 words / 32 bytes
1	0	1	SHA-1: 9 words / 36 bytes SHA-2: 12 words / 48 bytes
1	1	0	SHA-1: 9 words / 36 bytes SHA-2: 12 words / 48 bytes

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 7-12. DCP payload allocation by software (continued)**

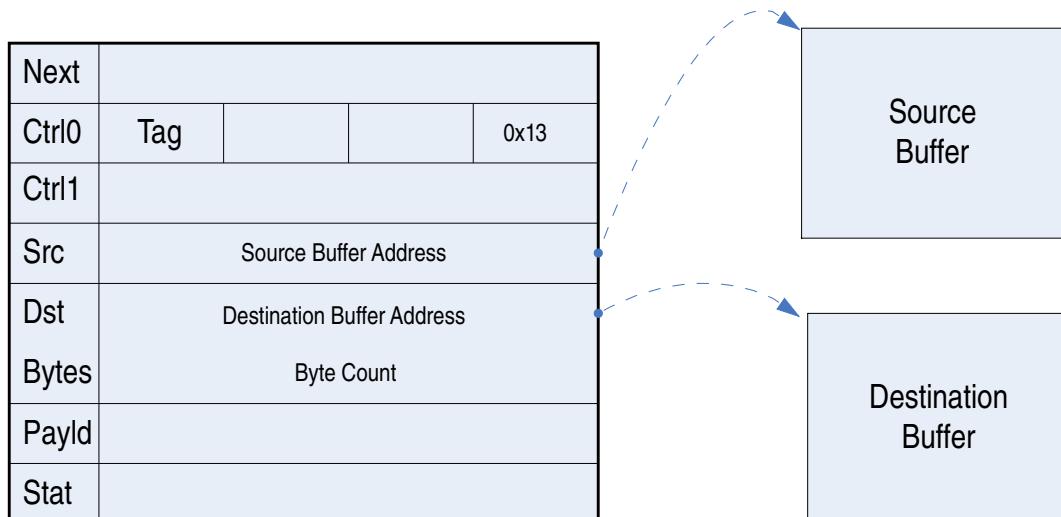
Control bits present			Payload size
Hash_Check	Cipher_Init	Payload_Key	
1	1	1	SHA-1: 13 words / 52 bytes SHA-2: 16 words / 64 bytes

For the hashing operations, the DCP module writes the final hash value back to the start of the payload area for the descriptors with the HASH\_TERM bit set in the control packet. It is important that the software allocates the required payload space, even though it is not required to set up the payload for control purposes.

## 7.3.7 Programming DCP functions

### 7.3.7.1 Basic memory copy programming example

To perform a basic memcpy operation, only a single descriptor is required. The DCP simply copies the data from the source to the destination buffer. This process is illustrated in this figure:



0x13 = Memcopy | DecrSema | Interrupt

**Figure 7-6. Basic memory copy operation**

```
<code>
typedef struct _dcp_descriptor
{
    u32          *next;
    hw_dcp_packet1_t ctrl0;
    hw_dcp_packet2_t ctrl1;
    u32          *src,
    *dst,
```

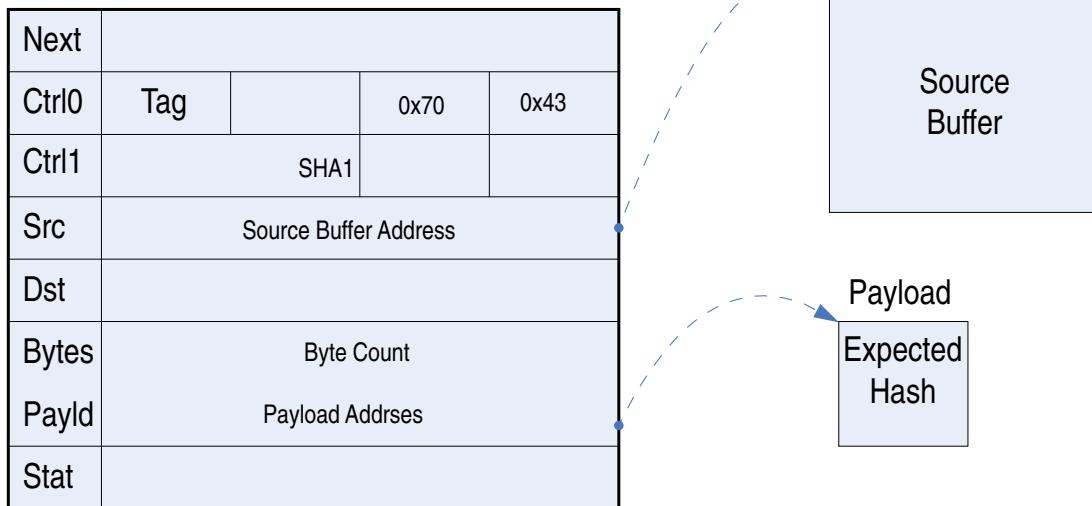
```

        buf_size,
        *payload,
        stat;
} DCP_DESCRIPTOR;
DCP_DESCRIPTOR dcp1;
u32 *srcbuffer, *dstbuffer;
// set up control packet
dcp1.next = 0;                                // single packet in chain
dcp1.ctrl0.U = 0;                             // clear ctrl0 field
dcp1.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_MEMCOPY = 1; // enable memcpy
dcp1.ctrl0.B.DECR_SEMAPHORE = 1; // decrement semaphore
dcp1.ctrl0.B.INTERRUPT = 1; // interrupt
dcp1.ctrl1.U = 0;                             // clear ctrl1
dcp1.src = srcbuffer;                         // source buffer
dcp1.dst = dstbuffer;                         // destination buffer
dcp1.buf_size = 512;                          // 512 bytes
dcp1.payload = NULL;                          // not required
dcp1.status = 0;                            // clear status
// Enable channel 0
HW_DCP_CHnCMDPTR_WR(0, dcp1); // write packet address to pointer register
HW_DCP_CHnSEMA_WR(0, 1); // increment semaphore by 1
// now wait for interrupt or poll
// polling code
while ( (HW_DCP_STAT_RD() & 0x01) == 0x00 );
// now check/clear channel status
if ( (HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_RD(0) & 0xFF) != 0 ) {
    // an error occurred
    HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_CLR(0, 0xff);
}
// clear interrupt register
HW_DCP_STAT_CLR(1);
</code>

```

### 7.3.7.2 Basic hash operation programming example

To perform a basic hash operation, only a single descriptor is required. The DCP simply reads the data from the source buffer and computes the hash value on the contents. This process is illustrated in this figure:



0x70 = Hash Check | Hash Term | Hash Init

0x43 = Hash Enable | DecrSema | Interrupt

**Figure 7-7. Basic hash operation**

```

<code>
typedef struct _dcp_descriptor
{
    u32             *next;
    hw_dcp_packet1_t ctrl0;
    hw_dcp_packet2_t ctrl1;
    u32             *src,
    *dst,
    buf_size,
    *payload,
    stat;
} DCP_DESCRIPTOR;
DCP_DESCRIPTOR dcp1;
u32 *srcbuffer;
u32 payload[5];
// set up expected hash check value
payload[0]=0x01234567;
payload[1]=0x89ABCDEF;
payload[2]=0x00112233;
payload[3]=0x44556677;
payload[4]=0x8899aab;
// set up control packet
dcp1.next = 0;                      // single packet in chain
dcp1.ctrl0.U = 0;                    // clear ctrl0 field
dcp1.ctrl0.B.HASH_CHECK = 1;         // check hash when complete
dcp1.ctrl0.B.HASH_INIT = 1;          // initialize hash with this block
dcp1.ctrl0.B.HASH_TERM = 1;          // terminate hash with this block
dcp1.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_HASH = 1;         // enable hash
dcp1.ctrl0.B.DECR_SEMAPHORE = 1;     // decrement semaphore
dcp1.ctrl0.B.INTERRUPT = 1;          // interrupt
dcp1.ctrl1.U = 0;                   // clear ctrl1
dcp1.src = srcbuffer;               // source buffer
dcp1.dst = 0;                       // no destination buffer
dcp1.buf_size = 512;                // 512 bytes
dcp1.payload = payload;              // holds expected hash value
dcp1.status = 0;                    // clear status
// Enable channel 0
HW_DCP_CHnCMDPTR_WR(0, dcp1);      // write packet address to pointer register
HW_DCP_CHnSEMA_WR(0, 1);            // increment semaphore by 1
// now wait for interrupt or poll
// polling code

```

## Operation

```
while ( (HW_DCP_STAT_RD() & 0x01) == 0x00 );
// now check/clear channel status
if ( (HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_RD(0) & 0xFF) != 0 ) {
    // an error occurred
    HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_CLR(0, 0xff);
}
// clear interrupt register
HW_DCP_STAT_CLR(1);
</code>
```

### 7.3.7.3 Basic cipher operation programming example

To perform a basic cipher operation, only a single descriptor is required. The DCP reads the data from the source buffer, encrypts it, and writes it to the destination buffer. For this example, the key is provided in the payload and the algorithm uses the AES CBC mode of operation. This requires a payload with both the key and the CBC initialization value. This process is illustrated in this figure:

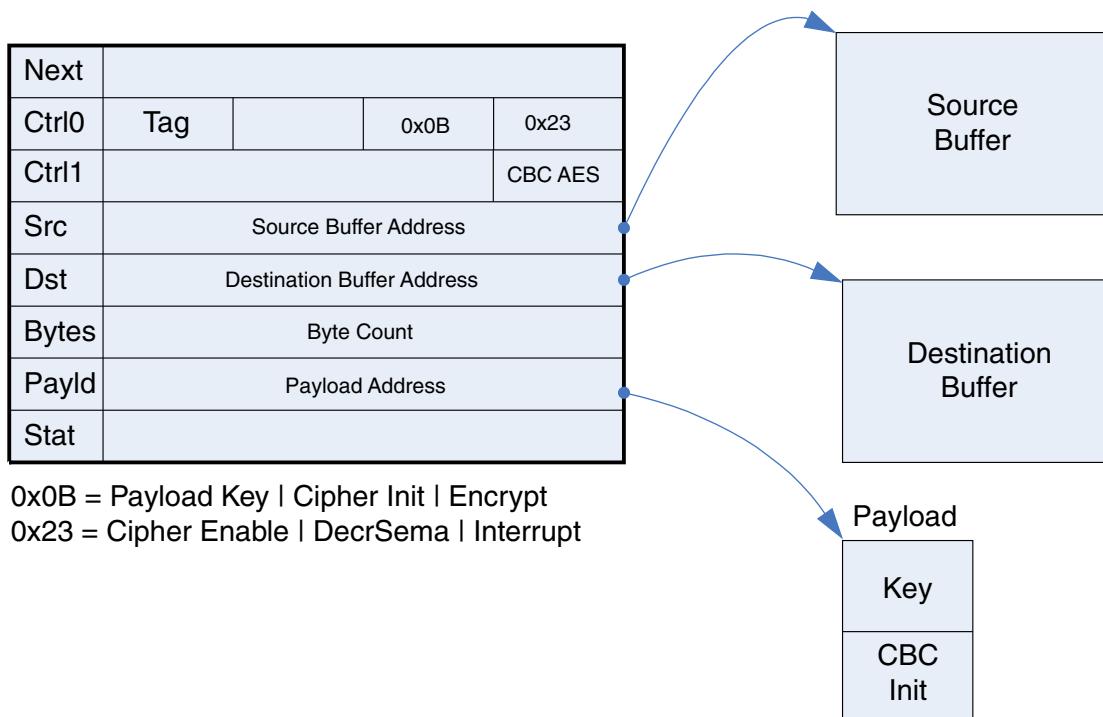


Figure 7-8. Basic cipher operation

```
<code>
typedef struct _dcp_descriptor
{
    u32             *next;
    hw_dcp_packet1_t ctrl0;
    hw_dcp_packet2_t ctrl1;
    u32             *src,
    *dst,
    buf_size,
    *payload,
    stat;
} DCP_DESCRIPTOR;
DCP_DESCRIPTOR dcp1;
```

```

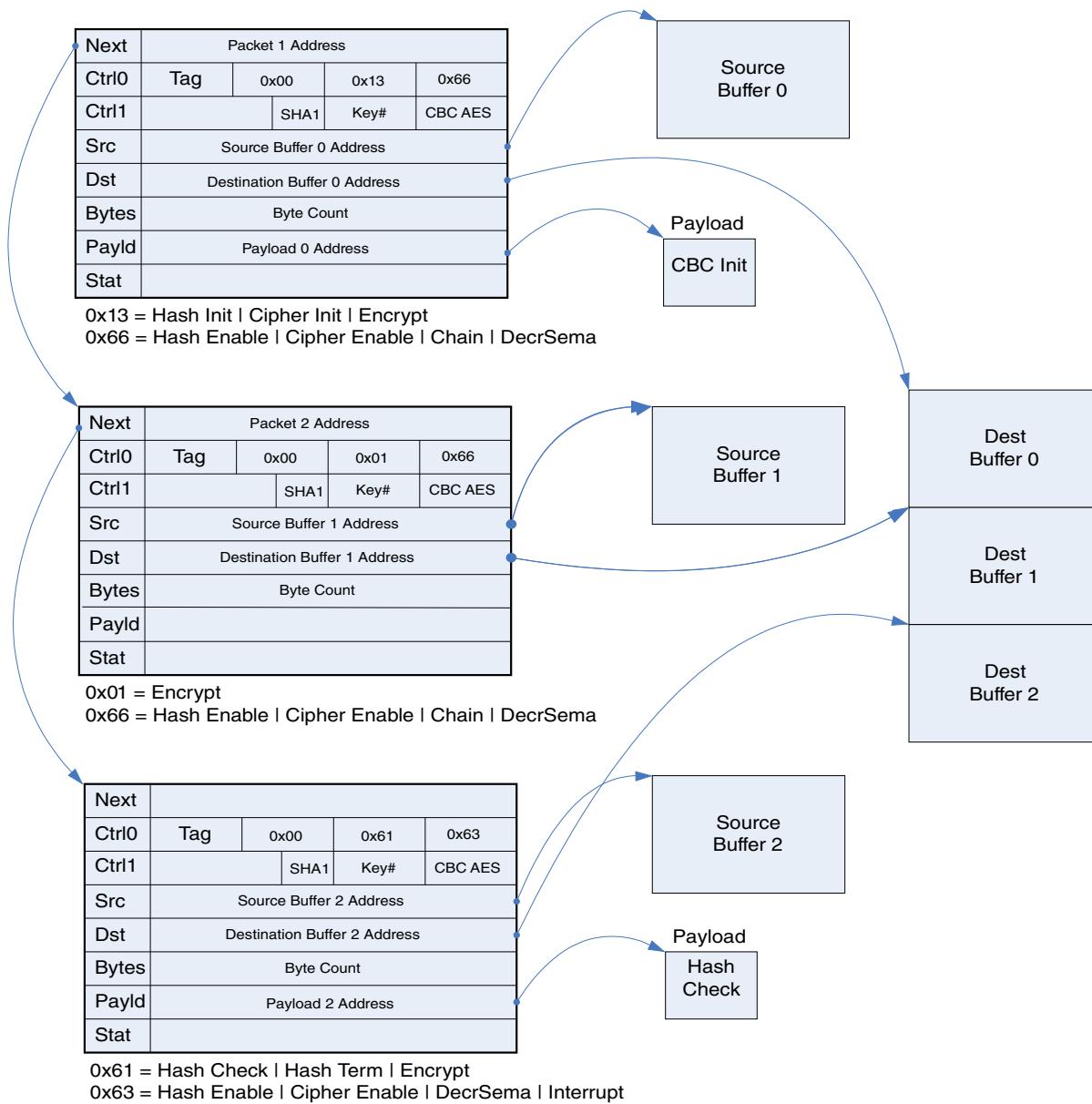
u32 *srcbuffer;
u32 *dstbuffer;
u32 payload[8];
// set up key/CBC init in the payload
payload[0]=0x01234567;           // key
payload[1]=0x89ABCDEF;
payload[2]=0xfedcba98;
payload[3]=0x76543210;
payload[4]=0x00112233;           // CBC initialization
payload[5]=0x44556677;
payload[6]=0x8899aab8;
payload[7]=0xcccddeeff;
// set up control packet
dcp1.next = 0;                  // single packet in chain
dcp1.ctrl0.U = 0;                // clear ctrl0 field
dcp1.ctrl0.B.PAYLOAD_KEY = 1;    // key is located in payload
dcp1.ctrl0.B.CIPHER_ENCRYPT = 1; // encryption operation
dcp1.ctrl0.B.CIPHER_INIT = 1;    // init CBC for this block (from payload)
dcp1.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_CIPHER = 1;   // enable cipher
dcp1.ctrl0.B.DECR_SEMAPHORE = 1; // decrement semaphore
dcp1.ctrl0.B.INTERRUPT = 1;      // interrupt
dcp1.ctrl1.U = 0;                // clear ctrl1
dcp1.ctrl1.B.CIPHER_MODE = 1;    // select CBC mode of operation
dcp1.src = srcbuffer;            // source buffer
dcp1.dst = dstbuffer;            // destination buffer
dcp1.buf_size = 512;             // 512 bytes
dcp1.payload = payload;          // holds key/CBC init
dcp1.status = 0;                 // clear status
// Enable channel 0
HW_DCP_CHnCMDPTR_WR(0, dcp1);   // write packet address to pointer register
HW_DCP_CHnSEMA_WR(0, 1);         // increment semaphore by 1
// now wait for interrupt or poll
// polling code
while ( (HW_DCP_STAT_RD() & 0x01) == 0x00 );
// now check/clear channel status
if ( (HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_RD(0) & 0xFF) != 0 ) {
    // an error occurred
    HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_CLR(0, 0xff);
}
// clear interrupt register
HW_DCP_STAT_CLR(1);
</code>

```

### 7.3.7.4 Multi-buffer scatter/gather cipher and hash operation programming example

For this example, three separate buffers are encrypted and hashed with the results being directed to a unified buffer (gather operation). Three descriptors are used for the operation because there are three separate source buffer pointers. The DCP reads the data from the source buffer and computes a hash on the unencrypted data. It then encrypts the data and writes it to the destination buffer. For this example, the key is located in the key RAM, and the algorithm uses the AES CBC mode of operation with a SHA-1 hash. The payload for the first operation contains the CBC initialization value, and the payload for the last packet contains the expected hash value. The middle packet requires no payload. This process is illustrated in this figure:

## Operation



**Figure 7-9. Multi-buffer scatter/gather cipher and hash operation**

```

<code>
typedef struct _dcp_descriptor
{
    u32             *next;
    hw_dcp_packet1_t ctrl0;
    hw_dcp_packet2_t ctrl1;
    u32             *src,
                    *dst,
                    buf_size,
                    *payload,
                    stat;
} DCP_DESCRIPTOR;
DCP_DESCRIPTOR dcp1, dcp2, dcp3;
u32 *srcbuffer0, *srcbuffer2, *srcbuffer3;
u32 *dstbuffer;
u32 payload0[4], payload2[5];
// set up CBC init in the payload
payload0[0]=0x01234567;           // key
payload0[1]=0x89ABCDEF;

```

```

payload0[2]=0xfedcba98;
payload0[3]=0x76543210;
payload2[0]=0x00112233;           // CBC initialization
payload2[1]=0x44556677;
payload2[2]=0x8899aabb;
payload2[3]=0xcccddeff;
payload2[3]=0xaabbccdd;
// set up control packet
dcp1.next = dcp2;                // point to packet 2
dcp1.ctrl0.U = 0;                 // clear ctrl0 field
dcp1.ctrl0.B.CIPHER_ENCRYPT = 1;   // encryption operation
dcp1.ctrl0.B.CIPHER_INIT = 1;      // init CBC for this block (from payload)
dcp1.ctrl0.B.HASH_INIT = 1;        // init hash this block
dcp1.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_CIPHER = 1;    // enable cipher
dcp1.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_HASH = 1;      // enable cipher
dcp1.ctrl0.B.DECR_SEMAPHORE = 1;   // decrement semaphore
dcp1.ctrl0.B.CHAIN = 1;           // chain to next packet
dcp1.ctrl1.U = 0;                 // clear ctrl1
dcp1.ctrl1.B.CIPHER_MODE = BV_DCP_PACKET2_CIPHER_MODE_CBC; //select CBC mode of
operation
dcp1.ctrl1.B.HASH_SELECT = BV_DCP_PACKET2_HASH_SELECT_SHA1; // select SHA1 hash
dcp1.ctrl1.B.KEY_SELECT = 2;       // select key #2
dcp1.src = srcbuffer0;            // source buffer
dcp1.dst = dstbuffer;             // destination buffer
dcp1.buf_size = 512;              // 512 bytes
dcp1.payload = payload0;          // holds key/CBC init
dcp1.status = 0;                  // clear status
// set up control packet
dcp2.next = dcp3;                // point to packet 2
dcp2.ctrl0.U = 0;                 // clear ctrl0 field
dcp2.ctrl0.B.CIPHER_ENCRYPT = 1;   // encryption operation
dcp2.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_CIPHER = 1;    // enable cipher
dcp2.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_HASH = 1;      // enable cipher
dcp2.ctrl0.B.DECR_SEMAPHORE = 1;   // decrement semaphore
dcp2.ctrl0.B.CHAIN = 1;           // chain to next packet
dcp2.ctrl1.U = 0;                 // clear ctrl1
dcp2.ctrl1.B.CIPHER_MODE = BV_DCP_PACKET2_CIPHER_MODE_CBC; //select CBC mode of
operation
dcp2.ctrl1.B.HASH_SELECT = BV_DCP_PACKET2_HASH_SELECT_SHA1; // select SHA1 hash
dcp2.ctrl1.B.KEY_SELECT = 2;       // select key #2
dcp2.src = srcbuffer1;            // source buffer
dcp2.dst = dstbuffer+512;         // destination buffer
dcp2.buf_size = 512;              // 512 bytes
dcp2.payload = NULL;              // no payload required
dcp2.status = 0;                  // clear status
// set up control packet
dcp3.next = dcp3;                // point to packet 2
dcp3.ctrl0.U = 0;                 // clear ctrl0 field
dcp3.ctrl0.B.HASH_TERM = 1;        // terminate hash block
dcp3.ctrl0.B.HASH_CHECK = 1;       // check hash against payload value
dcp3.ctrl0.B.CIPHER_ENCRYPT = 1;   // encryption operation
dcp3.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_CIPHER = 1;    // enable cipher
dcp3.ctrl0.B.ENABLE_HASH = 1;      // enable cipher
dcp3.ctrl0.B.DECR_SEMAPHORE = 1;   // decrement semaphore
dcp3.ctrl0.B.INTERRUPT = 1;        // interrupt on completion
dcp3.ctrl1.U = 0;                 // clear ctrl1
dcp3.ctrl1.B.CIPHER_MODE = BV_DCP_PACKET2_CIPHER_MODE_CBC; //select CBC mode of
operation
dcp3.ctrl1.B.HASH_SELECT = BV_DCP_PACKET2_HASH_SELECT_SHA1; // select SHA1 hash
dcp3.ctrl1.B.KEY_SELECT = 2;       // select key #2
dcp3.src = srcbuffer1;            // source buffer
dcp3.dst = dstbuffer+1024;         // destination buffer
dcp3.buf_size = 512;              // 512 bytes
dcp3.payload = payload2;          // payload is hash check value
dcp3.status = 0;                  // clear status
// Enable channel 0
HW_DCP_CHnCMDPTR_WR(0, dcp1);    // write packet address to pointer register
HW_DCP_CHnSEMA_WR(0, 3);          // increment semaphore by 3 (for 3 packets)
// now wait for interrupt or poll
// polling code

```

## DCP memory map/register definition

```

while ( (HW_DCP_STAT_RD() & 0x01) == 0x00 );
// now check/clear channel status
if ( (HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_RD(0) & 0xFF) != 0 ) {
    // an error occurred
    HW_DCP_CHnSTAT_CLR(0, 0xff);
}
// clear interrupt register
HW_DCP_STAT_CLR(1);
</code>

```

## 7.4 DCP memory map/register definition

### DCP hardware register format summary

**DCP memory map**

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
402F_C000	DCP control register 0 (DCP_CTRL)	32	R/W	F080_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.1/256</a>
402F_C004	DCP control register 0 (DCP_CTRL_SET)	32	R/W	F080_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.1/256</a>
402F_C008	DCP control register 0 (DCP_CTRL_CLR)	32	R/W	F080_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.1/256</a>
402F_C00C	DCP control register 0 (DCP_CTRL_TOG)	32	R/W	F080_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.1/256</a>
402F_C010	DCP status register (DCP_STAT)	32	R/W	1000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.2/258</a>
402F_C014	DCP status register (DCP_STAT_SET)	32	R/W	1000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.2/258</a>
402F_C018	DCP status register (DCP_STAT_CLR)	32	R/W	1000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.2/258</a>
402F_C01C	DCP status register (DCP_STAT_TOG)	32	R/W	1000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.2/258</a>
402F_C020	DCP channel control register (DCP_CHANNELCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.3/261</a>
402F_C024	DCP channel control register (DCP_CHANNELCTRL_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.3/261</a>
402F_C028	DCP channel control register (DCP_CHANNELCTRL_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.3/261</a>
402F_C02C	DCP channel control register (DCP_CHANNELCTRL_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.3/261</a>
402F_C030	DCP capability 0 register (DCP_CAPABILITY0)	32	R/W	0000_0404h	<a href="#">7.4.4/262</a>
402F_C040	DCP capability 1 register (DCP_CAPABILITY1)	32	R	0007_0001h	<a href="#">7.4.5/263</a>
402F_C050	DCP context buffer pointer (DCP_CONTEXT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.6/264</a>
402F_C060	DCP key index (DCP_KEY)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.7/264</a>
402F_C070	DCP key data (DCP_KEYDATA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.8/265</a>
402F_C080	DCP work packet 0 status register (DCP_PACKET0)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.9/266</a>
402F_C090	DCP work packet 1 status register (DCP_PACKET1)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.10/267</a>
402F_C0A0	DCP work packet 2 status register (DCP_PACKET2)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.11/270</a>
402F_C0B0	DCP work packet 3 status register (DCP_PACKET3)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.12/271</a>
402F_C0C0	DCP work packet 4 status register (DCP_PACKET4)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.13/271</a>
402F_C0D0	DCP work packet 5 status register (DCP_PACKET5)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.14/272</a>
402F_C0E0	DCP work packet 6 status register (DCP_PACKET6)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.15/272</a>

Table continues on the next page...

## DCP memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
402F_C100	DCP channel 0 command pointer address register (DCP_CH0CMDPTR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.16/273</a>
402F_C110	DCP channel 0 semaphore register (DCP_CH0SEMA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.17/274</a>
402F_C120	DCP channel 0 status register (DCP_CH0STAT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.18/275</a>
402F_C124	DCP channel 0 status register (DCP_CH0STAT_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.18/275</a>
402F_C128	DCP channel 0 status register (DCP_CH0STAT_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.18/275</a>
402F_C12C	DCP channel 0 status register (DCP_CH0STAT_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.18/275</a>
402F_C130	DCP channel 0 options register (DCP_CH0OPTS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.19/277</a>
402F_C134	DCP channel 0 options register (DCP_CH0OPTS_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.19/277</a>
402F_C138	DCP channel 0 options register (DCP_CH0OPTS_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.19/277</a>
402F_C13C	DCP channel 0 options register (DCP_CH0OPTS_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.19/277</a>
402F_C140	DCP channel 1 command pointer address register (DCP_CH1CMDPTR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.20/278</a>
402F_C150	DCP channel 1 semaphore register (DCP_CH1SEMA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.21/279</a>
402F_C160	DCP channel 1 status register (DCP_CH1STAT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.22/280</a>
402F_C164	DCP channel 1 status register (DCP_CH1STAT_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.22/280</a>
402F_C168	DCP channel 1 status register (DCP_CH1STAT_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.22/280</a>
402F_C16C	DCP channel 1 status register (DCP_CH1STAT_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.22/280</a>
402F_C170	DCP channel 1 options register (DCP_CH1OPTS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.23/282</a>
402F_C174	DCP channel 1 options register (DCP_CH1OPTS_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.23/282</a>
402F_C178	DCP channel 1 options register (DCP_CH1OPTS_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.23/282</a>
402F_C17C	DCP channel 1 options register (DCP_CH1OPTS_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.23/282</a>
402F_C180	DCP channel 2 command pointer address register (DCP_CH2CMDPTR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.24/283</a>
402F_C190	DCP channel 2 semaphore register (DCP_CH2SEMA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.25/284</a>
402F_C1A0	DCP channel 2 status register (DCP_CH2STAT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.26/285</a>
402F_C1A4	DCP channel 2 status register (DCP_CH2STAT_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.26/285</a>
402F_C1A8	DCP channel 2 status register (DCP_CH2STAT_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.26/285</a>
402F_C1AC	DCP channel 2 status register (DCP_CH2STAT_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.26/285</a>
402F_C1B0	DCP channel 2 options register (DCP_CH2OPTS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.27/287</a>
402F_C1B4	DCP channel 2 options register (DCP_CH2OPTS_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.27/287</a>
402F_C1B8	DCP channel 2 options register (DCP_CH2OPTS_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.27/287</a>
402F_C1BC	DCP channel 2 options register (DCP_CH2OPTS_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.27/287</a>
402F_C1C0	DCP channel 3 command pointer address register (DCP_CH3CMDPTR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.28/288</a>
402F_C1D0	DCP channel 3 semaphore register (DCP_CH3SEMA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.29/289</a>
402F_C1E0	DCP channel 3 status register (DCP_CH3STAT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.30/290</a>
402F_C1E4	DCP channel 3 status register (DCP_CH3STAT_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.30/290</a>
402F_C1E8	DCP channel 3 status register (DCP_CH3STAT_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.30/290</a>

Table continues on the next page...

## DCP memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
402F_C1EC	DCP channel 3 status register (DCP_CH3STAT_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.30/290</a>
402F_C1F0	DCP channel 3 options register (DCP_CH3OPTS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.31/292</a>
402F_C1F4	DCP channel 3 options register (DCP_CH3OPTS_SET)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.31/292</a>
402F_C1F8	DCP channel 3 options register (DCP_CH3OPTS_CLR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.31/292</a>
402F_C1FC	DCP channel 3 options register (DCP_CH3OPTS_TOG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.31/292</a>
402F_C400	DCP debug select register (DCP_DBGSELECT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.32/292</a>
402F_C410	DCP debug data register (DCP_DBGDATA)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.33/293</a>
402F_C420	DCP page table register (DCP_PAGETABLE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.34/293</a>
402F_C430	DCP version register (DCP_VERSION)	32	R	0201_0000h	<a href="#">7.4.35/294</a>

#### 7.4.1 DCP control register 0 (DCP\_CTRLn)

The CTRL register contains the controls for the DCP module.

CTRL: 0x000

CTRL\_SET: 0x004

CTRL\_CLR: 0x008

CTRL\_TOG: 0x00C

The control register contains the primary controls for the DCP block. The present bits indicate which sub-features of the block are present in the hardware. The context control bits control how the DCP utilizes its context buffer and the gather residual writes bit controls how the master handles the writing of misaligned data to the bus. Each channel and the color-space converter contain an independent interrupt enable.

#### EXAMPLE

```
DCP_CTRL_SET(BM_DCP_CTRL_SFTRST);
DCP_CTRL_CLR(BM_DCP_CTRL_SFTRST | BM_DCP_CTRL_CLKGATE);
```

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 0h offset + (4d x i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
R	SFTRST	CLKGATE		PRESENT_CRYPTO	PRESENT_SHA	Reserved					GATHER_RESIDUAL_WRITES	ENABLE_CONTEXT_CACHING	ENABLE_CONTEXT_SWITCHING	Reserved			
W																	
Reset	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

**DCP\_CTRLn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31 SFTRST	Set this bit to zero to enable a normal DCP operation. Set this bit to one (default) to disable the clocking with the DCP and hold it in its reset (lowest power) state. This bit can be turned on and then off to reset the DCP block to its default state.
30 CLKGATE	This bit must be set to zero for a normal operation. When set to one, it gates off the clocks to the block.
29 PRESENT_CRYPTO	Indicates whether the crypto (cipher/hash) functions are present. 0x1 <b>Present</b> — 0x0 <b>Absent</b> —
28 PRESENT_SHA	Indicates whether the SHA1/SHA2 functions are present. 0x1 <b>Present</b> — 0x0 <b>Absent</b> —
27–24 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
23 GATHER_RESIDUAL_WRITES	The software must set this bit to enable the ragged writes to the unaligned buffers to be gathered between multiple write operations. This improves the performance by removing several byte operations between the write bursts. The trailing byte writes are held in a residual write data buffer and combined with a subsequent write to the buffer to form a word write.
22 ENABLE_CONTEXT_CACHING	The software must set this bit to enable the caching of contexts between the operations. If only a single channel is used for encryption/hashing, enabling the caching causes the context to not be reloaded if the channel was the last one to be used.
21 ENABLE_CONTEXT_SWITCHING	Enable automatic context switching for the channels. The software must set this bit if more than one channel is performing the hashing or cipher operations that require the context to be saved (for example, when the CBC mode is enabled). By disabling the context switching, the software can save the 208 bytes used for the context buffer.
20–9 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
8 RSVD_CSC_INTERRUPT_ENABLE	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
CHANNEL_INTERRUPT_ENABLE	Per-channel interrupt enable bit. When set, the channel's interrupt is routed to the interrupt controller. Channel 0 is routed to the dcp_vmi_irq signal and the other channels are combined (along with the CRC interrupt) into the dcp_irq signal.  0x01 <b>CH0</b> — 0x02 <b>CH1</b> — 0x04 <b>CH2</b> — 0x08 <b>CH3</b> —

**7.4.2 DCP status register (DCP\_STATn)**

The DCP interrupt status register provides the channel interrupt status information.

STAT: 0x010

STAT\_SET: 0x014

STAT\_CLR: 0x018

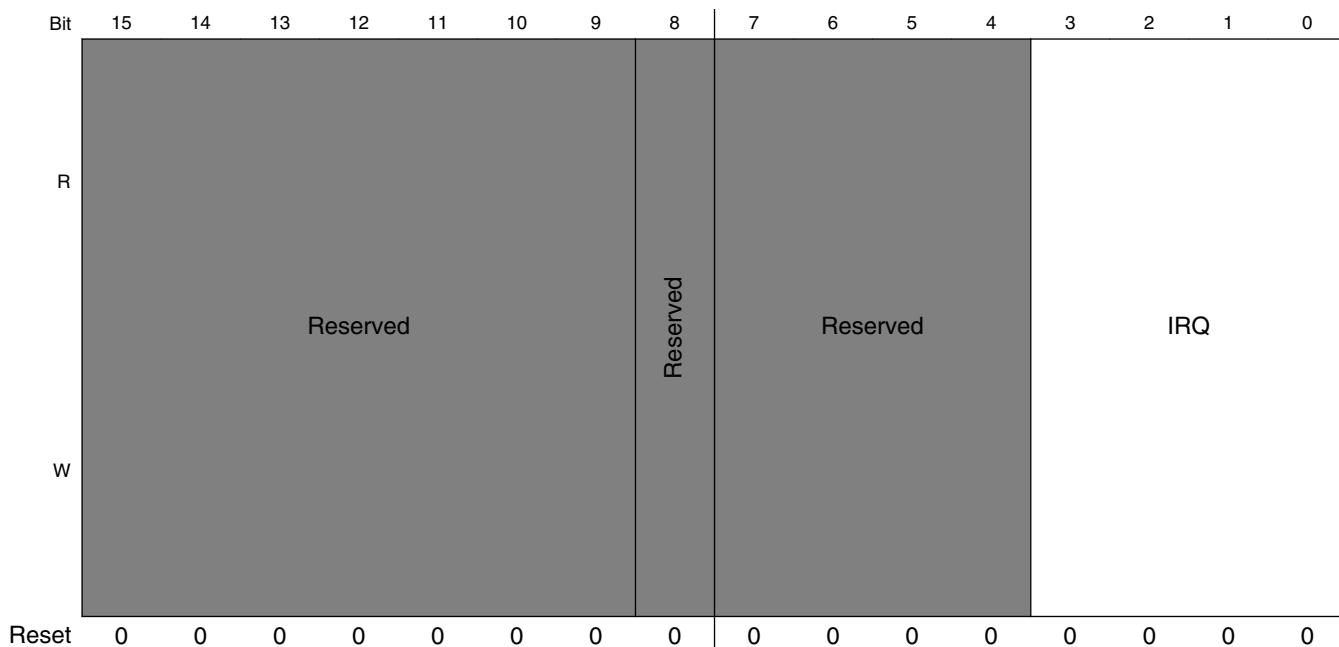
STAT\_TOG: 0x01C

This register provides the status feedback indicating which channel is currently performing an operation and which channels have pending operations.

## EXAMPLE

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 10h offset + (4d x i), where i=0d to 3d

## DCP memory map/register definition



### DCP\_STATn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
28 OTP_KEY_READY	When set, it indicates that the OTP key is shifted from the fuse block and is ready for use.
27–24 CUR_CHANNEL	Current (active) channel (encoded)  0x0 <b>None</b> — 0x1 <b>CH0</b> — 0x2 <b>CH1</b> — 0x3 <b>CH2</b> — 0x4 <b>CH3</b> —
23–16 READY_CHANNELS	Indicates which channels are ready to proceed with a transfer (the active channel is also included). Each bit is a one-hot indicating the request status for the associated channel.  0x01 <b>CH0</b> — 0x02 <b>CH1</b> — 0x04 <b>CH2</b> — 0x08 <b>CH3</b> —
15–9 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
8 RSVD_IRQ	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
7–4 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
IRQ	Indicates which channels have pending interrupt requests. The channel 0 interrupt is routed through the dcp_vmi_irq and the other interrupt bits are routed through the dcp_irq.

### 7.4.3 DCP channel control register (DCP\_CHANNELCTRL $n$ )

The DCP channel control register provides the controls for the channel arbitration and channel enables.

CHANNELCTRL: 0x020

CHANNELCTRL\_SET: 0x024

CHANNELCTRL\_CLR: 0x028

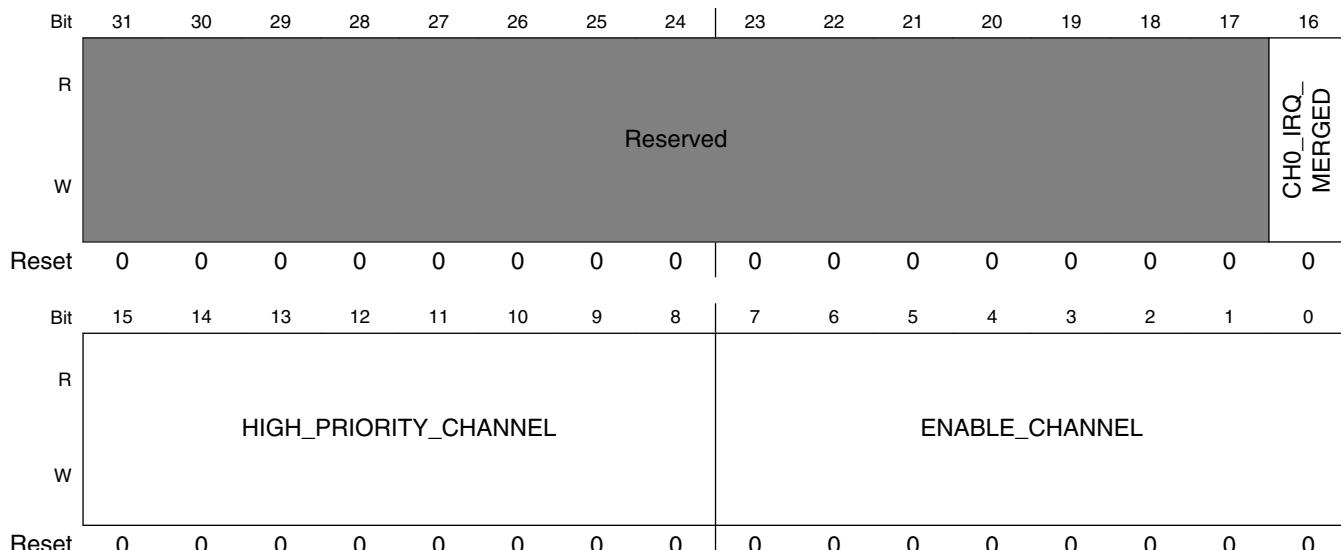
CHANNELCTRL\_TOG: 0x02C

This register provides the status feedback indicating the channel currently performing an operation and which channels have pending operations.

#### EXAMPLE

```
BW_DCP_CHANNELCTRL_ENABLE_CHANNEL(BV_DCP_CHANNELCTRL_ENABLE_CHANNEL__CH0); //  
enable channel 0
```

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 20h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



#### DCP\_CHANNELCTRL $n$ field descriptions

Field	Description
31–17 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
16 CH0_IRQ_MERGED	Indicates that the interrupt for channel 0 must be merged with the other interrupts on the shared dcp_irq interrupt. When set to 0, the channel 0 interrupt is routed to the separate dcp_vmi_irq. When set to 1, the interrupt is routed to the shared DCP interrupt.

Table continues on the next page...

**DCP\_CHANNELCTRL*n* field descriptions (continued)**

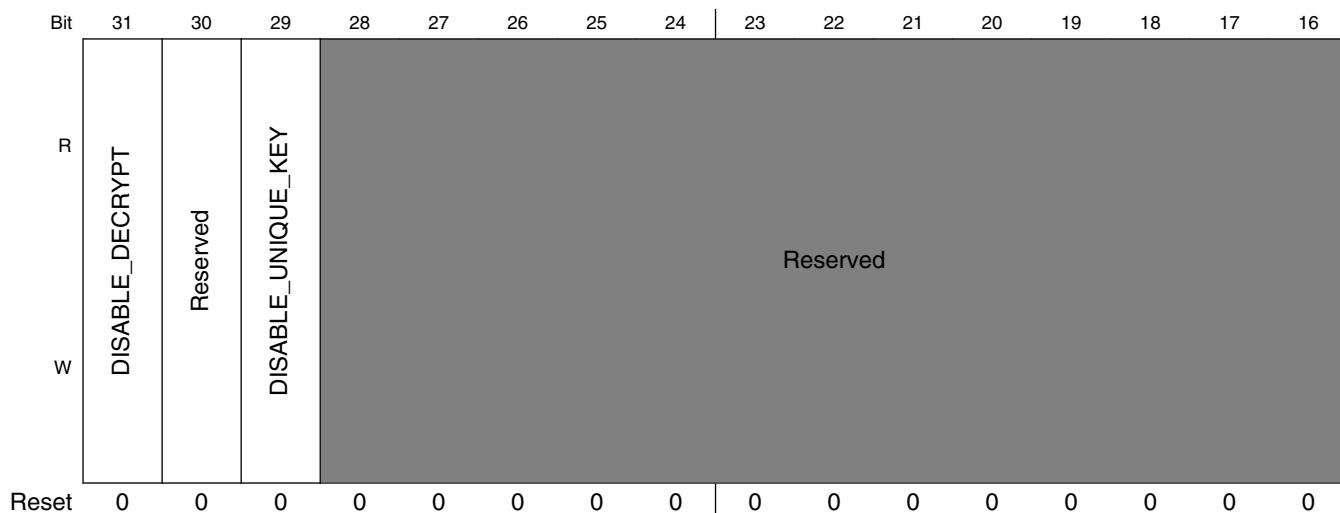
Field	Description
15–8 HIGH_PRIORITY_CHANNEL	Setting a bit in this field causes the corresponding channel to have high-priority arbitration. The high-priority channels are arbitrated round-robin and take the precedence over other channels that are not marked as high-priority.  0x01 <b>CH0</b> — 0x02 <b>CH1</b> — 0x04 <b>CH2</b> — 0x08 <b>CH3</b> —
ENABLE_CHANNEL	Setting a bit in this field enables the DMA channel associated with it. This field is a direct input to the DMA channel arbiter. When not enabled, the channel is denied access to the central DMA resources.  0x01 <b>CH0</b> — 0x02 <b>CH1</b> — 0x04 <b>CH2</b> — 0x08 <b>CH3</b> —

**7.4.4 DCP capability 0 register (DCP\_CAPABILITY0)**

This register contains additional information about the DCP module implementation parameters.

This register provides the capability information for the DCP block. It indicates the number of channels implemented, as well as the number of the key storage locations available for the software use.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 30h offset = 402F\_C030h



Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
Reserved																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

### DCP\_CAPABILITY0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 DISABLE_DECRYPT	Write to 1 to disable the decryption. This bit can only be written by the secure software and the value can only be cleared by a reset.
30 Reserved	This field is reserved. -
29 DISABLE_UNIQUE_KEY	Write to a 1 to disable the per-device unique key. The device-specific hardware key may be selected by using a value of 0xFE in the key-select field.
28–12 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
11–8 NUM_CHANNELS	Encoded value indicating the number of channels implemented in the design
NUM_KEYS	Encoded value indicating the number of key-storage locations implemented in the design

### 7.4.5 DCP capability 1 register (DCP\_CAPABILITY1)

This register contains the information about the algorithms available in the implementation.

This register provides the capability information for the DCP block. It contains two fields indicating which encryption and hashing algorithms are present in the design. Each bit set indicates that the support for the associated function is present.

## DCP memory map/register definition

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 40h offset = 402F\_C040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	HASH_ALGORITHMS															CIPHER_ALGORITHMS																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

## DCP\_CAPABILITY1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 HASH_ALGORITHMS	One-hot field indicating which hashing features are implemented in the hardware  0x0001 <b>SHA1</b> — 0x0002 <b>CRC32</b> — 0x0004 <b>SHA256</b> —
CIPHER_ALGORITHMS	One-hot field indicating which cipher algorithms are available  0x0001 <b>AES128</b> —

## 7.4.6 DCP context buffer pointer (DCP\_CONTEXT)

This register contains a pointer to the memory region to be used for the DCP context swap operations.

This register contains a pointer to the start of the context pointer memory in the on-chip SRAM or off-chip SDRAM. This buffer is used to store the state information when the DCP module changes from one channel to another.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 50h offset = 402F\_C050h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ADDR																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

## DCP\_CONTEXT field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Context pointer address. The address must be located in the system RAM and must be word-aligned for the optimal performance.

## 7.4.7 DCP key index (DCP\_KEY)

This register contains a pointer to the key location to be written.

The DCP module maintains a set of write-only keys that can be used by the software. To write a key, the software must first write the desired key index/subword to this register and then write the key values to the key registers (below). After each write to the key data register, the SUBWORD field increments to enable the software to write the subsequent key to be written without having to rewrite the key index.

## EXAMPLE

```
// write key 0 to 0x00112233_44556677_8899aabb_ccddeeef
DCP_KEY_WR(BF_DCP_KEY_INDEX(0) | BF_DCP_KEY_SUBWORD(0)); // set key index to key 0, subword
0
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0xccddeeef); // write key values (subword 0)
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0x8899aabb); // write key values (subword 1)
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0x44556677); // write key values (subword 2)
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0x00112233); // write key values (subword 3)
```

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 60h offset = 402F\_C060h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### DCP\_KEY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
7–6 RSVD_INDEX	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
5–4 INDEX	Key index pointer. The valid indices are 0-[number_keys].
3–2 RSVD_SUBWORD	This field is reserved. Reserved always set to zero
SUBWORD	Key subword pointer. The valid indices are 0-3. After each write to the key data register, this field increments.

## 7.4.8 DCP key data (DCP\_KEYDATA)

This register provides the write access to the key/key subword specified by the key index register.

## DCP memory map/register definition

Writing this location updates the selected subword for the key located at the index specified by the key index register. The write also triggers the SUBWORD field of the KEY register to increment to the next higher word in the key.

## EXAMPLE

```
// write key 0 to 0x00112233_44556677_8899aabb_ccddeeef
DCP_KEY_WR(BF_DCP_KEY_INDEX(0) | BF_DCP_KEY_SUBWORD(0)); // set key index to key 0, subword
0
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0xcccddeeef); // write key values (subword 0)
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0x8899aabb); // write key values (subword 1)
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0x44556677); // write key values (subword 2)
DCP_KEYDATA_WR(0x00112233); // write key values (subword 3)
```

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 70h offset = 402F\_C070h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

### DCP\_KEYDATA field descriptions

Field	Description
DATA	Word 0 data for the key. This is the least-significant word.

## 7.4.9 DCP work packet 0 status register (DCP\_PACKET0)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x00 (Next Command) field.

The work packet status registers show the contents of the currently executing packet. When the channels are inactive, the packet status register returns 0. The register bits are fully listed here to document the packet structure in the memory.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 80h offset = 402F\_C080h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

### DCP\_PACKET0 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Next pointer register

### 7.4.10 DCP work packet 1 status register (DCP\_PACKET1)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x04 (control) field.

This register shows the contents of the Control0 register from the packet being processed.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 90h offset = 402F\_C090h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									OUTPUT_WORDSWAP	OUTPUT_BYTESWAP	INPUT_WORDSWAP	INPUT_BYTESWAP	KEY_WORDSWAP	KEY_BYTESWAP	TEST_SEMA_IRQ	CONSTANT_FILL
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## DCP memory map/register definition

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	HASH_OUTPUT	CHECK_HASH	HASH_TERM	HASH_INIT	PAYLOAD_KEY	OTP_KEY	CIPHER_INIT	CIPHER_ENCRYPT	ENABLE_BLIT	ENABLE_HASH	ENABLE_CIPHER	ENABLE_MEMCOPY	CHAIN_CONTIGUOUS	CHAIN	DECR_SEMAPHORE	INTERRUPT
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## DCP\_PACKET1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 TAG	Packet Tag
23 OUTPUT_WORDSWAP	Reflects whether the DCP engine wordswaps the output data (big-endian data).
22 OUTPUT_BYTESWAP	Reflects whether the DCP engine byteswaps the output data (big-endian data).
21 INPUT_WORDSWAP	Reflects whether the DCP engine wordswaps the input data (big-endian data).
20 INPUT_BYTESWAP	Reflects whether the DCP engine byteswaps the input data (big-endian data).
19 KEY_WORDSWAP	Reflects whether the DCP engine swaps the key words (big-endian key).
18 KEY_BYTESWAP	Reflects whether the DCP engine swaps the key bytes (big-endian key).

Table continues on the next page...

**DCP\_PACKET1 field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
17 TEST_SEMA_IRQ	This bit is used to test the channel semaphore transition to 0. FOR TEST USE ONLY!
16 CONSTANT_FILL	When this bit is set (MEMCOPY and BLIT modes only), the DCP simply fills the destination buffer with the value found in the source address field.
15 HASH_OUTPUT	When the hashing is enabled, this bit controls whether the input or output data is hashed. 0 INPUT — 1 OUTPUT —
14 CHECK_HASH	Reflects whether the calculated hash value must be compared to the hash provided in the payload.
13 HASH_TERM	Reflects whether the current hashing block is the final block in the hashing operation, so the hash padding must be applied by the hardware.
12 HASH_INIT	Reflects whether the current hashing block is the initial block in the hashing operation, so the hash registers must be initialized before the operation.
11 PAYLOAD_KEY	When set, it indicates the payload contains the key. This bit takes precedence over the OTP_KEY control.
10 OTP_KEY	Reflects whether a hardware-based key must be used. The KEY_SELECT field from the Control1 field is used to select from multiple hardware keys. The PAYLOAD_KEY bit takes precedence over the OTP_KEY bit.
9 CIPHER_INIT	Reflects whether the cipher block must load the initialization vector from the payload for this operation.
8 CIPHER_ENCRYPT	When the cipher block is enabled, this bit indicates whether the operation is encryption or decryption. 1 ENCRYPT — 0 DECRYPT —
7 ENABLE_BLIT	Reflects whether the DCP must perform a blit operation. The source data is always continuous and the destination buffer is written in the run/stride format. When set, the BUFFER_SIZE field is treated as two 16-bit values for the X-Y extents of the blit operation.
6 ENABLE_HASH	Reflects whether the selected hashing function must be enabled for this operation.
5 ENABLE_CIPHER	Reflects whether the selected cipher function must be enabled for this operation.
4 ENABLE_MEMCOPY	Reflects whether the selected memory-copy (memcpy) function should be enabled for this operation.
3 CHAIN_CONTIGUOUS	Reflects whether the next packet's address is located following this packet's payload.
2 CHAIN	Reflects whether the next command pointer register must be loaded into the channel's current descriptor pointer.
1 DECR_SEMAPHORE	Reflects whether the channel's semaphore must be decremented at the end of the current operation. When the semaphore reaches a value of zero, no more operations are issued from the channel.
0 INTERRUPT	Reflects whether the channel must issue an interrupt upon the completion of the packet.

### 7.4.11 DCP work packet 2 status register (DCP\_PACKET2)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x08 (Control1) field.

This register shows the contents of the Control0 register from the packet being processed.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + A0h offset = 402F\_C0A0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	CIPHER_CFG								Reserved				HASH_SELECT			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	KEY_SELECT								CIPHER_MODE				CIPHER_SELECT			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

#### DCP\_PACKET2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 CIPHER_CFG	Cipher configuration bits. Optional configuration bits are required for the ciphers.
23–20 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
19–16 HASH_SELECT	Hash Selection Field  0x00 <b>SHA1</b> — 0x01 <b>CRC32</b> — 0x02 <b>SHA256</b> —
15–8 KEY_SELECT	Key selection field. The value here reflects the key index for the cipher operation. Values 0-3 refer to the software keys that can be written to the key RAM. The OTP key or the unique device-specific key may also be selected with a value of 0xFF (OTP key) or 0xFE (unique key).  0x00 <b>KEY0</b> — 0x01 <b>KEY1</b> — 0x02 <b>KEY2</b> — 0x03 <b>KEY3</b> — 0xFE <b>UNIQUE_KEY</b> — 0xFF <b>OTP_KEY</b> —
7–4 CIPHER_MODE	Cipher mode selection field. Reflects the mode of operation for the cipher operations.  0x00 <b>ECB</b> — 0x01 <b>CBC</b> —
CIPHER_SELECT	Cipher selection field  0x00 <b>AES128</b> —

### 7.4.12 DCP work packet 3 status register (DCP\_PACKET3)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x0C (source address) field.

This register shows the contents of the source address register from the packet being processed. When the CONSTANT\_FILL bit in the Control 0 field is set, this field contains the data written to the destination buffer.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + B0h offset = 402F\_C0B0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

#### DCP\_PACKET3 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Source buffer address pointer. This value is the working value and updates as the operation proceeds.

### 7.4.13 DCP work packet 4 status register (DCP\_PACKET4)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x10 (destination address) field.

This register shows the contents of the destination address register from the packet being processed.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + C0h offset = 402F\_C0C0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

#### DCP\_PACKET4 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Destination buffer address pointer. This value is the working value and updates as the operation proceeds.

### 7.4.14 DCP work packet 5 status register (DCP\_PACKET5)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x14 (buffer size) field.

This register shows the contents of the bytecount register from the packet being processed. The field can be considered either a byte count or a buffer size. The logic treats this as a decrementing count of bytes from the buffer size programmed into the field. As the transaction proceeds, the logic decrements the bytecount as the data is written into the destination buffer. For blit operations, the top 16 bits of this field represent the number of lines (y size) in the blit and the lower 16 bits represent the number of bytes in a line (x size).

Address: 402F\_C000h base + D0h offset = 402F\_C0D0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R																	COUNT																
W																																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

#### DCP\_PACKET5 field descriptions

Field	Description
COUNT	Byte count register. This value is the working value and updates as the operation proceeds.

### 7.4.15 DCP work packet 6 status register (DCP\_PACKET6)

This register displays the values for the current work packet offset 0x1C (payload pointer) field.

This register shows the contents of the payload pointer field from the packet being processed.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + E0h offset = 402F\_C0E0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R																	ADDR																
W																																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

#### DCP\_PACKET6 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	This register reflects the payload pointer for the current control packet.

### 7.4.16 DCP channel 0 command pointer address register (DCP\_CH0CMDPTR)

The DCP channel 0 current command addresses the register points to the multiword descriptor that is to be executed (or is currently being executed). The channel may be activated by writing the command pointer address to a valid descriptor in the memory and then updating the semaphore to a non-zero value. After the engine completes the processing of a descriptor, the "next\_ptr" field from the descriptor is moved into this register to enable the processing of the next descriptor. All channels with a non-zero semaphore value arbitrate for access to the engine for the subsequent operation.

DCP channel 0 is controlled by a variable-sized command structure. This register points to the command structure to be executed.

## EXAMPLE

```
    DCP_CHnCMDPTR_WR(0, v); // Write channel 0 command pointer  
    pCurptr = (DCP_chncmdptr_t *) DCP_CHnCMDPTR_RD(0); // Read current command  
pointer
```

Address: 402E C000h base + 100h offset = 402E C100h

## DCP CH0CMDPTB field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Pointer to the descriptor structure to be processed for channel 0.

### 7.4.17 DCP channel 0 semaphore register (DCP\_CH0SEMA)

The DCP channel 0 semaphore register is used to synchronize the ARM platform instruction stream and the DMA chain processing state. After a command chain is generated in the memory, the software must write the address of the first command descriptor to the CMDPTR register and then write a non-zero value to the semaphore register to indicate that the channel is active. Each command packet has a chaining bit which indicates that another descriptor must be loaded into the channel upon the completion of the current descriptor. If the chaining bit is not set, the next address is not loaded into the CMDPTR register. Each packet also contains a "decrement semaphore" bit, which indicates that the counting semaphore must be decremented after the operation. A channel is considered active when the semaphore is of a non-zero value. When programming a series of operations, the software must properly program the semaphore values in conjunction with the "decrement\_semaphore" bits in the control packets to ensure that a proper number of descriptors is activated. A semaphore may be cleared by the software by writing 0xFF to the DCP\_CHnSEMA\_CLR register. The logic also clears the semaphore if an error occurs.

Each DCP channel has an 8-bit counting semaphore that is used to synchronize between the program stream and the DCP chain processing. After processing each control packet, the DCP decrements the semaphore if it is non-zero. The channel continues to process the packets as long as the semaphore contains a non-zero value and the CHAIN or CHAIN\_CONTIGOUS control bits in the Control0 field are set.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 110h offset = 402F\_C110h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved					VALUE					Reserved					INCREMENT																
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

#### DCP\_CH0SEMA field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
23–16 VALUE	This read-only field shows the current (instantaneous) value of the semaphore counter.
15–8 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
INCREMENT	The value written to this field is added to the semaphore count in an atomic way such that the simultaneous software adds and DCP hardware subtracts happening on the same clock are protected. This bit field reads back a value of 0x00. Writing a value of 0x02 increments the semaphore count by two (unless the DCP channel decrements the count on the same clock) and then the count is incremented by a net one. The semaphore may be cleared by writing 0xFF into the DCP_CHnSEMA_CLR register.

### 7.4.18 DCP channel 0 status register (DCP\_CH0STAT $n$ )

The DCP channel 0 interrupt status register contains the interrupt status bit and the tag of the last completed operation from the command chain. If an error occurs during processing, the ERROR bit is set and an interrupt is generated.

DCP\_CH0STAT: 0x120

CH0STAT\_SET: 0x124

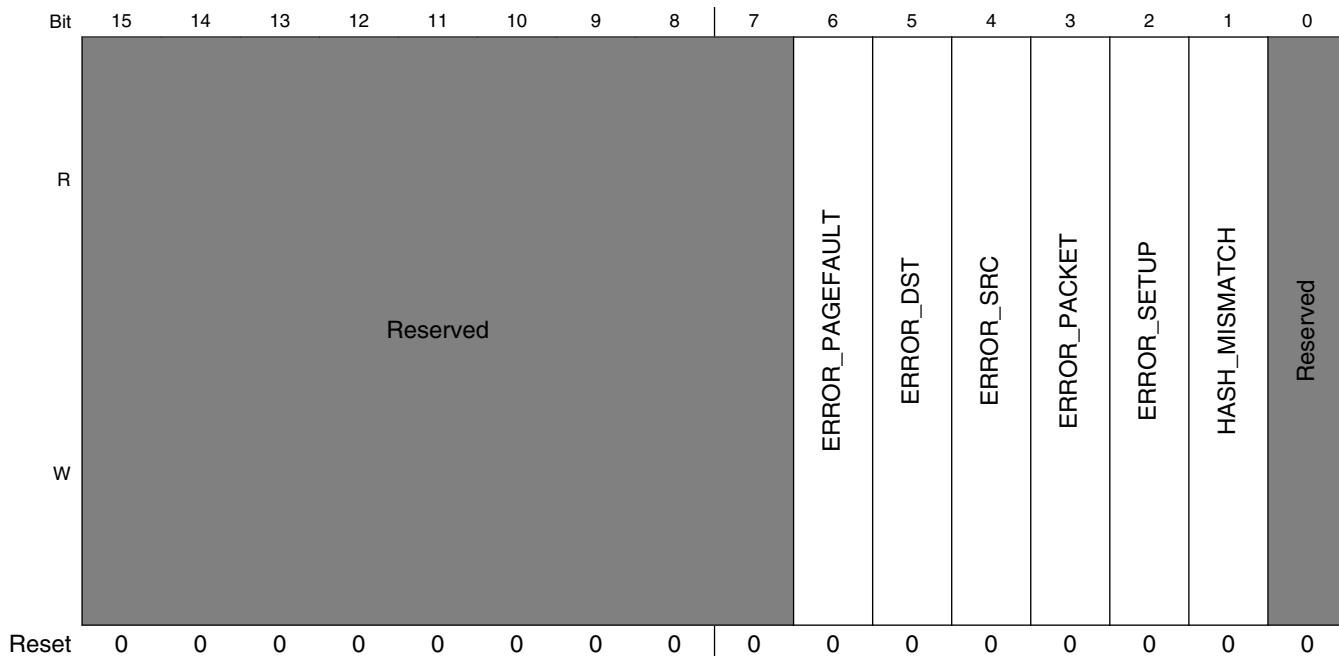
CH0STAT\_CLR: 0x128

CH0STAT\_TOG: 0x12C

The interrupt status register is updated at the end of each work packet. If the interrupt bit is set in the command packet's command field, an interrupt is generated when the packet is completed. In addition, the tag value from the command is stored in the TAG field so that the software can identify which command structure was the last to complete. If an error occurs, the ERROR bit is set and the processing of the command chain is halted.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 120h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
								TAG								
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

**DCP\_CH0STATn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–24 TAG	Indicates the tag from the last completed packet in the command structure
23–16 ERROR_CODE	Indicates the additional error codes for some of the error conditions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0x01 <b>NEXT_CHAIN_IS_0</b> — Error signalled because the next pointer is 0x00000000</li> <li>0x02 <b>NO_CHAIN</b> — Error signalled because the semaphore is non-zero and neither chain bit is set</li> <li>0x03 <b>CONTEXT_ERROR</b> — Error signalled because an error is reported reading/writing the context buffer</li> <li>0x04 <b>PAYOUTLOAD_ERROR</b> — Error signalled because an error is reported reading/writing the payload</li> <li>0x05 <b>INVALID_MODE</b> — Error signalled because the control packet specifies an invalid mode select (for instance, blit + hash)</li> </ul>
15–7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
6 ERROR_PAGEFAULT	This bit indicates that a page fault occurred while converting a virtual address to a physical address. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
5 ERROR_DST	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when storing to the destination buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
4 ERROR_SRC	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading from the source buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
3 ERROR_PACKET	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading the packet or payload, or when writing the status back to the packet payload. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
2 ERROR_SETUP	This bit indicates that the hardware detected an invalid programming configuration (such as a buffer length that is not a multiple of the natural data size for the operation). When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.

*Table continues on the next page...*

**DCP\_CH0STATn field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
1 HASH_ MISMATCH	This bit indicates that a hashing check operation mismatched for the control packets that enable the HASH_CHECK bit. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
0 RSVD_ COMPLETE	This field is reserved. This bit always reads 0 in the status register, but it is set to 1 in the packet status field after the processing of the packet completes. This is done so that the software can verify that each packet completed properly in a chain of commands for the cases when an interrupt is issued only for the last item in a packet. The completion bit for the channel is effectively the channel interrupt status bit.

**7.4.19 DCP channel 0 options register (DCP\_CH0OPTSn)**

The DCP channel 0 options status register contains optional control information that may be used to further tune the behavior of the channel.

DCP\_CH0OPTS: 0x130

CH0OPTS\_SET: 0x134

CH0OPTS\_CLR: 0x138

CH0OPTS\_TOG: 0x13C

The options register can be used to control the optional features of the channels.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 130h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

**DCP\_CH0OPTSn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–16 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
RECOVERY_ TIMER	This field indicates the recovery time for the channel. After each operation, the recovery timer for the channel is initialized with this value and then decremented until the timer reaches zero. The channel does not initiate another operation for the next packet in the chain until the recovery time is satisfied. The timebase for the recovery timer is 16 HCLK clock cycles, providing a range from 0 ns to 8.3 ms at the operation frequency of 133 MHz.

### 7.4.20 DCP channel 1 command pointer address register (DCP\_CH1CMDPTR)

The DCP channel 1 current command address register points to the multiword descriptor that is to be executed (or is currently being executed). The channel may be activated by writing the command pointer address to a valid descriptor in the memory and then updating the semaphore to a non-zero value. After the engine completes the processing of a descriptor, the "next\_ptr" field from the descriptor is moved into this register to enable the processing of the next descriptor. All channels with a non-zero semaphore value arbitrate for the access to the engine for the subsequent operation.

DCP channel 1 is controlled by a variable-sized command structure. This register points to the command structure to be executed.

#### EXAMPLE

```
DCP_CHn_CMDPTR_WR(1, v); // Write channel 1 command pointer
pCurptr = (DCP_chn_cmdptr_t *) DCP_CHn_CMDPTR_RD(1); // Read current command
pointer
```

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 140h offset = 402F\_C140h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | 0

#### DCP\_CH1CMDPTR field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Pointer to the descriptor structure to be processed for channel 1.

### 7.4.21 DCP channel 1 semaphore register (DCP\_CH1SEMA)

The DCP channel 1 semaphore register is used to synchronize the ARM platform instruction stream and the DMA chain processing state. After a command chain is generated in the memory, the software must write the address of the first command descriptor to the CMDPTR register and then write a non-zero value to the semaphore register to indicate that the channel is active. Each command packet has a chaining bit which indicates that another descriptor must be loaded into the channel upon the completion of the current descriptor. If the chaining bit is not set, the next address is not loaded into the CMDPTR register. Each packet also contains a "decrement semaphore" bit, which indicates that the counting semaphore must be decremented after the operation. A channel is considered active when the semaphore is of a non-zero value. When programming a series of operations, the software must properly program the semaphore values in conjunction with the "decrement\_semaphore" bits in the control packets to ensure that a proper number of descriptors is activated. A semaphore may be cleared by the software by writing 0xFF to the DCP\_CHnSEMA\_CLR register. The logic also clears the semaphore if an error occurs.

Each DCP channel has an 8-bit counting semaphore that is used to synchronize between the program stream and the DCP chain processing. The DCP processing continues until the engine attempts to decrement a semaphore that already reached a value of zero. When the attempt is made, the DCP channel is stalled until the software increments the semaphore count.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 150h offset = 402F\_C150h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved					VALUE					Reserved					INCREMENT																
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

**DCP\_CH1SEMA field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–24 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
23–16 VALUE	This read-only field shows the current (instantaneous) value of the semaphore counter.
15–8 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
INCREMENT	The value written to this field is added to the semaphore count in an atomic way, such that the simultaneous software adds and the DCP hardware subtracts happening on the same clock are protected. This bit field reads back a value of 0x00. Writing a value of 0x02 increments the semaphore count by two (when the DCP channel decrements the count on the same clock then the count is

*Table continues on the next page...*

**DCP\_CH1SEMA field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
	incremented by a net one). The semaphore may be cleared by writing 0xFF into the DCP_CHnSEMA_CLR register.

**7.4.22 DCP channel 1 status register (DCP\_CH1STATn)**

The DCP channel 1 interrupt status register contains the interrupt status bit and the tag of the last completed operation from the command chain. If an error occurs during processing, the ERROR bit is set and an interrupt is generated.

CH1STAT: 0x160

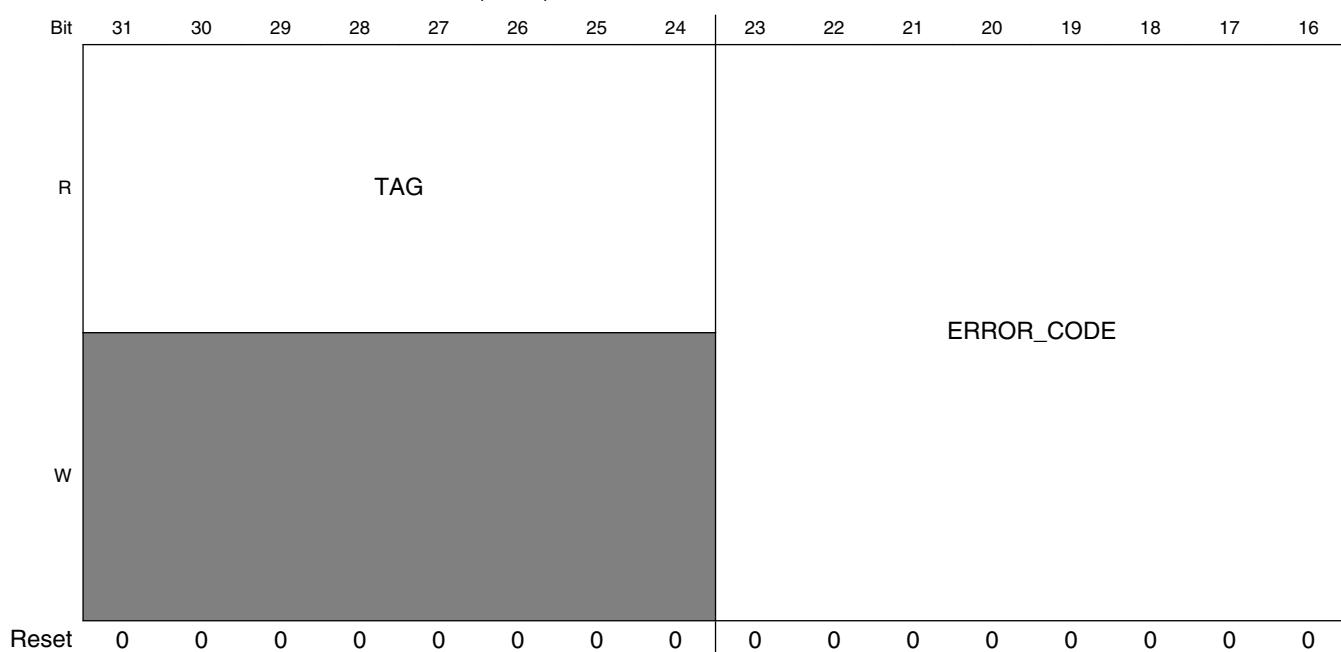
CH1STAT\_SET: 0x164

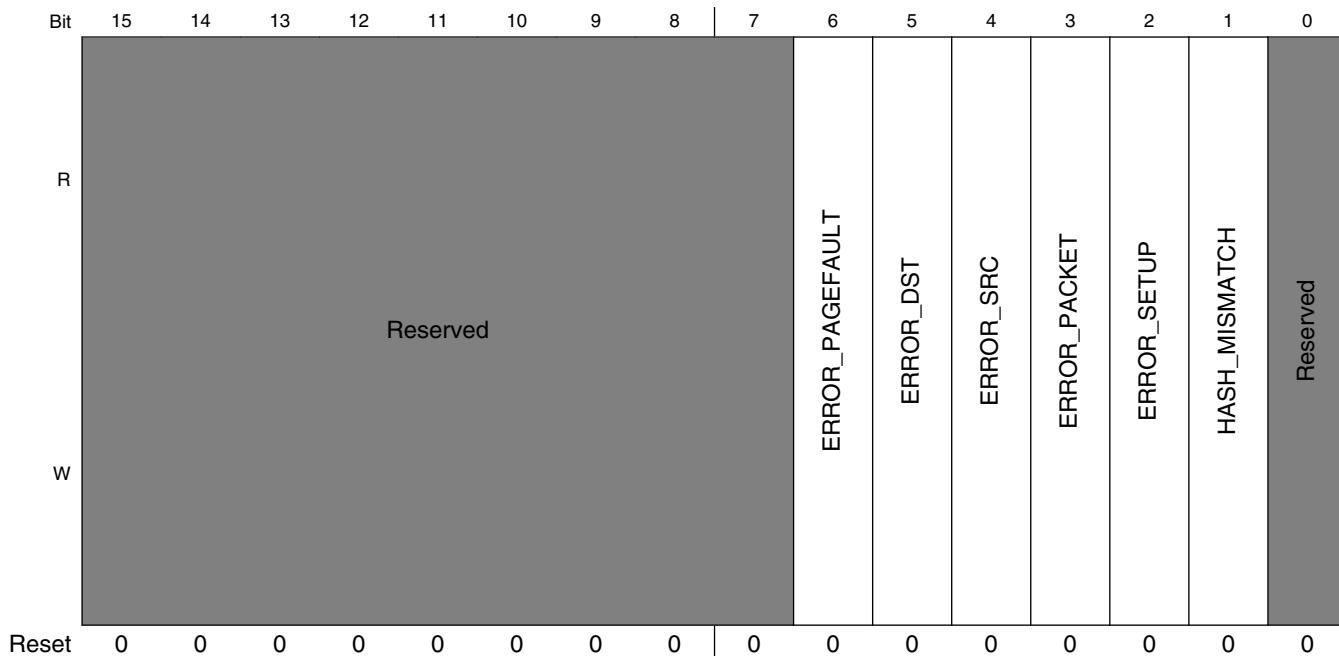
CH1STAT\_CLR: 0x168

CH1STAT\_TOG: 0x16C

The interrupt status register is updated at the end of each work packet. If the interrupt bit is set in the command packet's command field, an interrupt is generated when the packet completes. In addition, the tag value from the command is stored in the TAG field so that the software can identify which command structure was the last to complete. If an error occurs, the ERROR bit is set and processing of the command chain is halted.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 160h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



**DCP\_CH1STATn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–24 TAG	Indicates the tag from the last completed packet in the command structure.
23–16 ERROR_CODE	Indicates the additional error codes for some of the error conditions. 0x01 <b>NEXT_CHAIN_IS_0</b> — Error is signalled because the next pointer is 0x00000000. 0x02 <b>NO_CHAIN</b> — Error is signalled because the semaphore is of a non-zero value and neither of the chain bits is set. 0x03 <b>CONTEXT_ERROR</b> — Error is signalled because an error was reported when reading/writing the context buffer. 0x04 <b>PAYOUTLOAD_ERROR</b> — Error is signalled because an error was reported when reading/writing the payload. 0x05 <b>INVALID_MODE</b> — Error is signalled because the control packet specifies an invalid mode select (for example, blit + hash).
15–7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
6 ERROR_PAGEFAULT	This bit indicates that a page fault occurred while converting a virtual address to a physical address. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
5 ERROR_DST	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when storing to the destination buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
4 ERROR_SRC	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading from the source buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
3 ERROR_PACKET	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading the packet or payload, or when writing the status back to the packet payload. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
2 ERROR_SETUP	This bit indicates that the hardware detected an invalid programming configuration (such as a buffer length that is not a multiple of the natural data size for the operation). When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.

*Table continues on the next page...*

## DCP CH1STAT*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 HASH_ MISMATCH	This bit indicates that a hashing check operation is mismatched for the control packets that enable the HASH_CHECK bit. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
0 RSVD_ COMPLETE	This field is reserved. This bit always reads 0 in the status register, but is set to 1 in the packet status field after the processing of the packet completes. This is done so that the software can verify that each packet completed properly in a chain of commands for the cases when an interrupt is issued only for the last item in a packet. The completion bit for the channel is effectively the channel interrupt status bit.

#### 7.4.23 DCP channel 1 options register (DCP\_CH1OPTS $n$ )

The DCP channel 1 options status register contains the optional control information that may be used to further tune the behavior of the channel.

DCP CH1OPTS: 0x170

DCP CH1OPTS SET: 0x174

CH1OPTS CLR: 0x178

CH1OPTS TOG: 0x17C

The options register can be used to control the optional features of the channels.

Address: 402F C000h base + 170h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

## DCP CH1OPTS $n$ field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
RECOVERY_TIMER	This field indicates the recovery time for the channel. After each operation, the recovery timer for the channel is initialized with this value and then decremented until the timer reaches zero. The channel does not initiate the operation on the next packet in the chain until the recovery time expires. The timebase for the recovery timer is 16 HCLK clock cycles, providing a range from 0 ns to 8.3 ms at the operation frequency of 133 MHz.

#### **7.4.24 DCP channel 2 command pointer address register (DCP\_CH2CMDPTR)**

The DCP channel 2 current command address register points to the multiword descriptor that is to be executed (or is currently being executed). The channel may be activated by writing the command pointer address to a valid descriptor in the memory and then updating the semaphore to a non-zero value. After the engine completes the processing of a descriptor, the "next\_ptr" field from the descriptor is moved into this register to enable the processing of the next descriptor. All channels with a non-zero semaphore value arbitrate for the access to the engine for the subsequent operation.

DCP channel 2 is controlled by a variable-sized command structure. This register points to the command structure to be executed.

## EXAMPLE

```
    DCP_CHn_CMDPTR_WR(2, v); // Write channel 2 command pointer  
    pCurptr = (DCP_chn_cmdptr_t *) DCP_CHn_CMDPTR_RD(2); // Read current command  
pointer
```

Address: 402F C000h base + 180h offset = 402F C180h

## DCP CH2CMDPTB field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Pointer to the descriptor structure to be processed for channel 2.

### 7.4.25 DCP channel 2 semaphore register (DCP\_CH2SEMA)

The DCP channel 2 semaphore register is used to synchronize the ARM platform instruction stream and the DMA chain processing state. After a command chain is generated in the memory, the software must write the address of the first command descriptor to the CMDPTR register and then write a non-zero value to the semaphore register to indicate that the channel is active. Each command packet has a chaining bit which indicates that another descriptor must be loaded into the channel upon the completion of the current descriptor. If the chaining bit is not set, the next address is not loaded into the CMDPTR register. Each packet also contains a "decrement semaphore" bit which indicates that the counting semaphore must be decremented after the operation. A channel is considered active when the semaphore is of a non-zero value. When programming a series of operations, the software must properly program the semaphore values in conjunction with the "decrement\_semaphore" bits in the control packets to ensure that a proper number of descriptors is activated. A semaphore may be cleared by the software by writing 0xFF into the DCP\_CHnSEMA\_CLR register. The logic also clears the semaphore if an error occurs.

Each DCP channel has an 8-bit counting semaphore that is used to synchronize between the program stream and the DCP chain processing. The DCP processing continues until the engine attempts to decrement a semaphore that already reached a value of zero. When the attempt is made, the DCP channel is stalled until the software increments the semaphore count.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 190h offset = 402F\_C190h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved					VALUE					Reserved					INCREMENT																
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

#### DCP\_CH2SEMA field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
23–16 VALUE	This read-only field shows the current (instantaneous) value of the semaphore counter.
15–8 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
INCREMENT	The value written to this field is added to the semaphore count in an atomic way, such that the simultaneous software adds and DCP hardware subtracts happening on the same clock are protected. This bit field reads back a value of 0x00. Writing a value of 0x02 increments the semaphore count by two. When the DCP channel decrements the count on the same clock, then the count is incremented by a net one. The semaphore may be cleared by writing 0xFF into the DCP_CHnSEMA_CLR register.

### 7.4.26 DCP channel 2 status register (DCP\_CH2STAT $n$ )

The DCP channel 2 interrupt status register contains the interrupt status bit and the tag of the last completed operation from the command chain. If an error occurs during processing, the ERROR bit is set and an interrupt is generated.

CH2STAT: 0x1A0

CH2STAT\_SET: 0x1A4

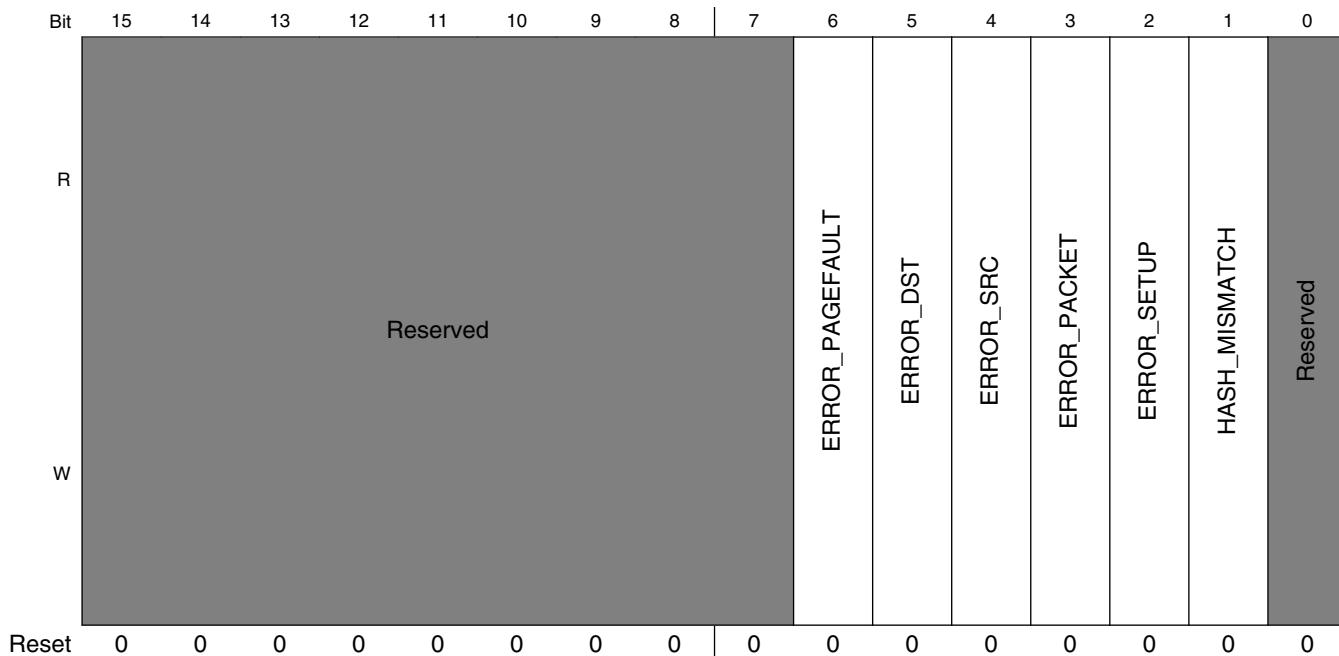
CH2STAT\_CLR: 0x1A8

CH2STAT\_TOG: 0x1AC

The interrupt status register is updated at the end of each work packet. If the interrupt bit is set in the command packet's command field, an interrupt is generated when the packet completes. In addition, the tag value from the command is stored in the TAG field, so that the software can identify which command structure was the last to complete. If an error occurs, the ERROR bit is set and the processing of the command chain is halted.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 1A0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
								TAG								
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

**DCP\_CH2STATn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–24 TAG	Indicates the tag from the last completed packet in the command structure.
23–16 ERROR_CODE	Indicates additional error codes for some of the error conditions.  0x01 <b>NEXT_CHAIN_IS_0</b> — Error is signalled because the next pointer is 0x00000000. 0x02 <b>NO_CHAIN</b> — Error is signalled because the semaphore is of a non-zero value and neither of the chain bits is set. 0x03 <b>CONTEXT_ERROR</b> — Error is signalled because an error was reported while reading/writing the context buffer. 0x04 <b>PAYOUTLOAD_ERROR</b> — Error is signalled because an error was reported while reading/writing the payload. 0x05 <b>INVALID_MODE</b> — Error is signalled because the control packet specifies an invalid mode select (for instance, blit + hash).
15–7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
6 ERROR_PAGEFAULT	This bit indicates that a page fault occurred while converting a virtual address to a physical address. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
5 ERROR_DST	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when storing to the destination buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
4 ERROR_SRC	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading from the source buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
3 ERROR_PACKET	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading the packet or payload, or when writing the status back to the packet payload. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
2 ERROR_SETUP	This bit indicates that the hardware detected an invalid programming configuration (such as a buffer length that is not a multiple of the natural data size for the operation). When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.

*Table continues on the next page...*

**DCP\_CH2STATn field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
1 HASH_ MISMATCH	This bit indicates that a hashing check operation is mismatched for the control packets that enable the HASH_CHECK bit. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
0 RSVD_ COMPLETE	This field is reserved. This bit always reads 0 in the status register, but is set to 1 in the packet status field after the processing of the packet completes. This is done so that the software can verify that each packet completed properly in a chain of commands for the cases when an interrupt is issued only for the last item in a packet. The completion bit for the channel is effectively the channel interrupt status bit.

**7.4.27 DCP channel 2 options register (DCP\_CH2OPTSn)**

The DCP channel 2 options status register contains optional control information that can be used to further tune the behavior of the channel.

CH2OPTS: 0x1B0

CH2OPTS\_SET: 0x1B4

CH2OPTS\_CLR: 0x1B8

CH2OPTS\_TOG: 0x1BC

The options register can be used to control the optional features of the channels.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 1B0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

**DCP\_CH2OPTSn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–16 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
RECOVERY_ TIMER	This field indicates the recovery time for the channel. After each operation, the recovery timer for the channel is initialized with this value and then decremented until the timer reaches zero. The channel does not initiate the operation on the next packet in the chain until the recovery time expires. The timebase for the recovery timer is 16 HCLK clock cycles, providing a range from 0 ns to 8.3 ms at an operation frequency of 133 MHz.

### 7.4.28 DCP channel 3 command pointer address register (DCP\_CH3CMDPTR)

The DCP channel 3 current command address register points to the multiword descriptor that is to be executed (or is currently being executed). The channel can be activated by writing the command pointer address to a valid descriptor in the memory and then updating the semaphore to a non-zero value. After the engine completes the processing of a descriptor, the "next\_ptr" field from the descriptor is moved into this register to enable the processing of the next descriptor. All channels with a non-zero semaphore value arbitrate for the access to the engine for the subsequent operation.

DCP channel 3 is controlled by a variable-sized command structure. This register points to the command structure to be executed.

#### EXAMPLE

```
DCP_CHn_CMDPTR_WR(3, v); // Write channel 3 command pointer
pCurptr = (DCP_chn_cmdptr_t *) DCP_CHn_CMDPTR_RD(3); // Read current command
pointer
```

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 1C0h offset = 402F\_C1C0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R																																	
W																																	

Reset 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | 0

#### DCP\_CH3CMDPTR field descriptions

Field	Description
ADDR	Pointer to the descriptor structure to be processed for channel 3.

### 7.4.29 DCP channel 3 semaphore register (DCP\_CH3SEMA)

The DCP channel 3 semaphore register is used to synchronize the ARM platform instruction stream and the DMA chain processing state. After a command chain is generated in the memory, the software must write the address of the first command descriptor to the CMDPTR register and then write a non-zero value to the semaphore register to indicate that the channel is active. Each command packet has a chaining bit which indicates that another descriptor must be loaded into the channel upon the completion of the current descriptor. If the chaining bit is not set, the next address is not loaded into the CMDPTR register. Each packet also contains a "decrement semaphore" bit which indicates that the counting semaphore must be decremented after the operation. A channel is considered active when the semaphore is of a non-zero value. When programming a series of operations, the software must properly program the semaphore values in conjunction with the "decrement\_semaphore" bits in the control packets to ensure that a proper number of descriptors is activated. A semaphore can be cleared by the software by writing 0xFF into the DCP\_CHnSEMA\_CLR register. The logic also clears the semaphore if an error occurs.

Each DCP channel has an 8-bit counting semaphore that is used to synchronize between the program stream and the DCP chain processing. The DCP processing continues until the engine attempts to decrement a semaphore that already reached a value of zero. When the attempt is made, the DCP channel is stalled until the software increments the semaphore count.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 1D0h offset = 402F\_C1D0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved					VALUE					Reserved					INCREMENT																
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

**DCP\_CH3SEMA field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–24 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
23–16 VALUE	This read-only field shows the current (instantaneous) value of the semaphore counter.
15–8 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
INCREMENT	The value written to this field is added to the semaphore count in an atomic way, such that the simultaneous software adds and DCP hardware subtracts happening on the same clock are protected. This bit field reads back a value of 0x00. Writing a value of 0x02 increments the semaphore count by two. When the DCP channel decrements the count on the same clock, then the count is incremented by a net one. The semaphore can be cleared by writing 0xFF to the DCP_CHnSEMA_CLR register.

### 7.4.30 DCP channel 3 status register (DCP\_CH3STATn)

The DCP channel 3 interrupt status register contains the interrupt status bit and the tag of the last completed operation from the command chain. If an error occurs during processing, the ERROR bit is set and an interrupt is generated.

DCP\_CH3STAT: 0x1E0

CH3STAT\_SET: 0x1E4

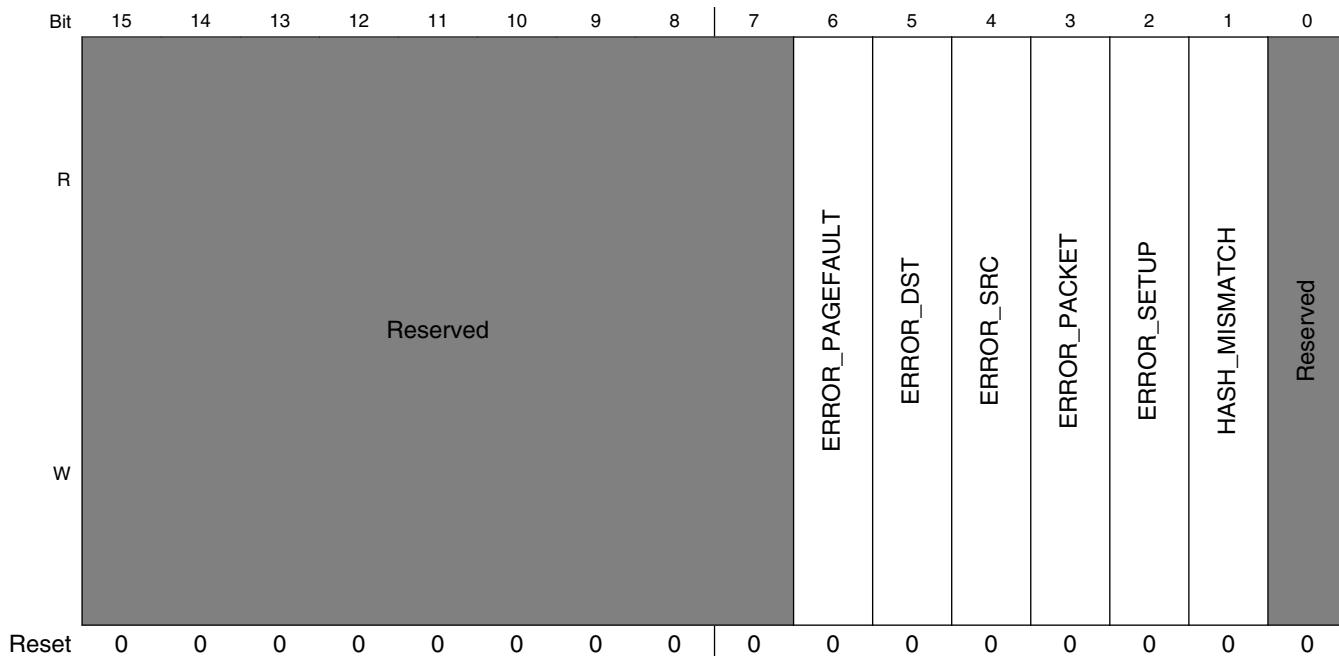
CH3STAT\_CLR: 0x1E8

CH3STAT\_TOG: 0x1EC

The interrupt status register is updated at the end of each work packet. If the interrupt bit is set in the command packet's command field, an interrupt is generated once the packet is completed. In addition, the tag value from the command is stored in the TAG field so that software can identify which command structure was the last to complete. If an error occurs, the ERROR bit is set and the processing of the command chain is halted.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 1E0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R								TAG								
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

**DCP\_CH3STATn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–24 TAG	Indicates the tag from the last completed packet in the command structure.
23–16 ERROR_CODE	Indicates additional error codes for some of the error conditions.  0x01 <b>NEXT_CHAIN_IS_0</b> — Error is signalled because the next pointer is 0x00000000. 0x02 <b>NO_CHAIN</b> — Error is signalled because the semaphore is of a non-zero value and neither of the chain bits is set. 0x03 <b>CONTEXT_ERROR</b> — Error is signalled because an error was reported while reading/writing the context buffer. 0x04 <b>PAYOUTLOAD_ERROR</b> — Error is signalled because an error was reported while reading/writing the payload. 0x05 <b>INVALID_MODE</b> — Error is signalled because the control packet specifies an invalid mode select (for example, blit + hash).
15–7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
6 ERROR_PAGEFAULT	This bit indicates that a page fault occurred while converting a virtual address to a physical address. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
5 ERROR_DST	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when storing to the destination buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
4 ERROR_SRC	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading from the source buffer. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
3 ERROR_PACKET	This bit indicates that a bus error occurred when reading the packet or payload or when writing the status back to the packet payload. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
2 ERROR_SETUP	This bit indicates that the hardware detected an invalid programming configuration (such as a buffer length that is not a multiple of the natural data size for the operation). When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.

*Table continues on the next page...*

**DCP\_CH3STATn field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
1 HASH_ MISMATCH	This bit indicates that a hashing check operation is mismatched for the control packets that enable the HASH_CHECK bit. When an error is detected, the channel's processing stops until the error is handled by the software.
0 RSVD_ COMPLETE	This field is reserved. This bit always reads 0 in the status register, but is set to 1 in the packet status field after processing of the packet completes. This was done so that the software can verify that each packet completed properly in a chain of commands for cases when an interrupt is issued only for the last item in a packet. The completion bit for the channel is effectively the channel interrupt status bit.

**7.4.31 DCP channel 3 options register (DCP\_CH3OPTSn)**

The DCP channel 3 options status register contains optional control information that may be used to further tune the behavior of the channel.

DCP\_CH3OPTS: 0x1F0

CH3OPTS\_SET: 0x1F4

CH3OPTS\_CLR: 0x1F8

CH3OPTS\_TOG: 0x1FC

The options register can be used to control the optional features of the channels.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 1F0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

**DCP\_CH3OPTSn field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–16 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
RECOVERY_ TIMER	This field indicates the recovery time for the channel. After each operation, the recovery timer for the channel is initialized with this value and then decremented until the timer reaches zero. The channel does not initiate the operation on the next packet in the chain until the recovery time expires. The timebase for the recovery timer is 16 HCLK clock cycles, providing a range from 0 ns to 8.3 ms at the operation frequency of 133 MHz.

**7.4.32 DCP debug select register (DCP\_DBGSELECT)**

This register selects a debug register to view.

This register selects the debug information to return in the debug data register.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 400h offset = 402F\_C400h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

#### DCP\_DBGSELECT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 RSVD	This field is reserved. Reserved, always set to zero
INDEX	Selects a value to read via the debug data register.  0x01 <b>CONTROL</b> — 0x10 <b>OTPKEY0</b> — 0x11 <b>OTPKEY1</b> — 0x12 <b>OTPKEY2</b> — 0x13 <b>OTPKEY3</b> —

#### 7.4.33 DCP debug data register (DCP\_DBGDATA)

Reading this register returns the debug data value from the selected index.

This register returns the debug data from the selected debug index source.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 410h offset = 402F\_C410h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																

Reset 0

#### DCP\_DBGDATA field descriptions

Field	Description
DATA	Debug data

#### 7.4.34 DCP page table register (DCP\_PAGETABLE)

The DCP page table register controls the virtual memory functionality of the DCP. It provides a base address for the page table as well as an enable/disable bit and the ability to flush the cached page table entries.

This register returns the debug data from the selected debug index source.

## DCP memory map/register definition

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 420h offset = 402F\_C420h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																	
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																	
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## DCP\_PAGETABLE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 BASE	Page table base address. The page table must be word-aligned and the pointer must reference a page table in the standard ARM format.
1 FLUSH	Page table flush control. To flush the TLB, write this bit to 1 and then back to 0.
0 ENABLE	Page table enable control. The virtual addressing is only used when this bit is set to 1. Disabling the page table does not flush any cached entries, so the software must write the FLUSH high and enable the LOW when updating the page tables.

## 7.4.35 DCP version register (DCP\_VERSION)

Read-only register indicating the implemented version of the DCP.

This register returns the debug data from the selected debug index source.

Address: 402F\_C000h base + 430h offset = 402F\_C430h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

## DCP\_VERSION field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 MAJOR	Fixed read-only value reflecting the MAJOR version of the design implementation.
23–16 MINOR	Fixed read-only value reflecting the MINOR version of the design implementation.
STEP	Fixed read-only value reflecting the stepping of the version of the design implementation.

# **Chapter 8**

## **On-Chip OTP Controller (OCOTP\_CTRL)**

### **8.1 Chip-specific OCOTP\_CTRL information**

#### **NOTE**

Kill Trace Enable (KTE) fuse to disable trace must also be blown for the SMODE fuse to take effect. See the "Kill Trace" section in "System JTAG Controller (SJC)" chapter for more details.

### **8.2 Overview**

This section contains information describing the requirements for the on-chip eFuse OTP controller along with details about the block functionality and implementation.

In this document, the words "eFuse" and "OTP" are interchangeable. OCOTP refers to the hardware block itself.

#### **8.2.1 Features**

The OCOTP provides the following features :

- 32-bit word restricted program and read to 2 kbit (128 x 8) of eFuse OTP.
- Loading and housing of fuse content into shadow registers
- Memory-mapped (restricted) access to shadow registers
- Generation of STICKY\_REG which consists of sticky register bits
- Provides program-protect and read-protect eFuse
- Provides override and read protection of shadow register

## 8.3 Clocks

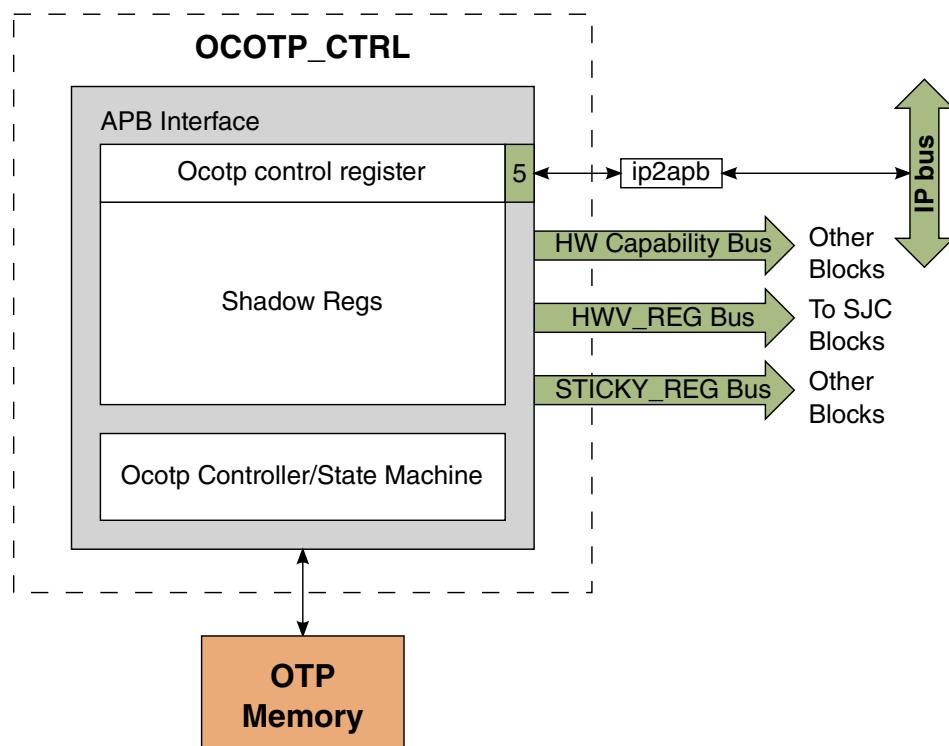
The table found here describes the clock sources for OCOTP. Please see the chip-specific clocking section for clock setting, configuration and gating information.

**Table 8-1. OCOTP Clocks**

Clock name	Clock Root	Description
ipg_clk	ipg_clk_root	Peripheral clock
ipg_clk_s	ipg_clk_root	Peripheral access clock

## 8.4 Top-Level Symbol and Functional Overview

The figure below shows the OCOTP system level diagram.



**Figure 8-1. OCOTP System Level Diagram**

## 8.4.1 Operation

The IP bus interface of the OCOTP has the following functions.

- Configure control registers for programming and reading all the fuse words
- Override and read shadow registers

OCOTP configuration for programs and reads are performed on 32-bit words for software (SW) convenience. For writes, the 32-bit word reflects the "write-mask." Bit fields with 0 will not be programmed and bit fields with 1 will be programmed. OCOTP will program bit field with 1 in the fuse word one bit by one bit. For reads, OCOTP will read 4 times to get 4 bytes in the fuse word in order.

In this document, 2 kbit fuse are divided into 8 banks by function. Each bank has 8 fuse words. Physically, 2 kbits fuse are in two 128x8 efusebox.

### 8.4.1.1 Shadow Register Reload

All fuse words in efusebox are shadowed. Therefore, fuse information is available through memory mapped shadow registers. If fuses are subsequently programmed, the shadow registers should be reloaded to keep them coherent with the fuse bank arrays.

The "reload shadows" feature allows the user to force a reload of the shadow registers without having to reset the device. To force a reload, complete the following steps:

1. Set the HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING[STROBE\_READ] field value appropriately.
2. Set the HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING[RELAX] field value appropriately.
3. Check that HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] and HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] are clear. Overlapped accesses are not supported by the controller. Any pending write, read or reload must be completed before a new access can be requested.
4. Set the HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS] bit. OCOTP will read all the fuses one by one and put it into corresponding shadow register.
5. Wait for HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] and HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS] to be cleared by the controller.

The controller will automatically clear the HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS] bit after the successful completion of the operation.

### 8.4.1.2 Fuse and Shadow Register Read

All shadow registers are always readable through the IPS bus. When their corresponding fuse lock bits are set, the shadow registers also become read locked. After read locking, reading from these registers will return 0xBADABADA.

In addition HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] will be set. It must be cleared by software before any new write, read or reload access can be issued. Subsequent reads to unlocked shadow locations will still work successfully however.

To read fuse words directly from the fusebox, complete the following steps:

1. Program HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING[STROBE\_READ] and HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING[RELAX] fields with timing values to match the current frequency of the ipg\_clk. OTP read will work at maximum bus frequencies as long as the HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING parameters are set correctly.
2. Check that HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] and HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] are clear. Overlapped accesses are not supported by the controller. Any pending write, read or reload must be completed before a read access can be requested.
3. Write the requested fuse address to HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ADDR].
4. Set HW\_OCOTP\_READ\_CTRL[READ\_FUSE] to 1. OCOTP will auto read the fuse word according to HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ADDR] in fusebox. Then put read value into HW\_OCOTP\_READ\_FUSE\_DATA
5. Once complete, the controller will clear BUSY. A read request to a protected or locked region will result in no OTP access and no setting of HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY]. In addition HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] will be set. It must be cleared by software before any new access can be issued.
6. Read HW\_OCOTP\_READ\_FUSE\_DATA to get fuse word value. HW\_OCOTP\_READ\_FUSE\_DATA will be 0xBADABADA when HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] is set.

#### 8.4.1.3 Fuse and Shadow Register Writes

Shadow register bits can be overridden by software until the corresponding fuse lock bit for the region is set. When the lock shadow bit is set, the shadow registers for that lock region become write locked. The HW\_OCOTP\_LOCKn register also has no overwrite or fuse lock bits, but it is always read-only.

In order to avoid "rogue" code performing erroneous writes to OTP, a special unlocking sequence is required for writes to the fuse banks. To program fuse bank complete the following steps:

1. Program the following fields with timing values to match the frequency of ipg\_clk:
  - HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING[STROBE\_PROG]
  - HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING[RELAX]OTP writes will work at maximum bus frequencies as long as the HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING parameters are set correctly.

2. Check that HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] and HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] are clear. Overlapped accesses are not supported by the controller. Any pending write or reload must be completed before a write access can be requested.
3. Write the requested address to HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ADDR] and program the unlock code into HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[WR\_UNLOCK]. The unlock code must be programmed for each write access. The unlock code is documented in the register description. Both the unlock code and address can be written in the same operation.
4. Write the data to the HW\_OCOTP\_DATA register. This will automatically set HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] and clear HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[WR\_UNLOCK]. Bit fields with 1's will result in that OTP bit being programmed. Bit fields with 0's will be ignored. At the same time that the write is accepted, the controller makes an internal copy of HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ADDR] which cannot be updated until the next write sequence is initiated. This copy guarantees that erroneous writes to HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ADDR] will not affect an active write operation. During the write operation, HW\_OCOTP\_DATA cannot be modified.
5. Once complete, the controller will clear HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY]. A write request to a protected or locked region will result in no OTP access and no setting of HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY]. In addition HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] will be set. It must be cleared by software before any new write access can be issued.

It should be noted that write latencies to OTP are numbers of 10 micro-seconds per word. The write latency is based on the number of "1" bits being written. For example : to program half the fuse bits in one 32-bit word needs 10 us x 16.

HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[ERROR] will be set under the following conditions:

- A write is performed to a shadow register during a shadow reload (essentially, while HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS] is set). In addition, the contents of the shadow register shall not be updated.
- A write is performed to a shadow register which has been locked.
- A read is performed to a shadow register which has been read locked.
- A program is performed to a fuse word which has been locked.
- A read is performed to a fuse word which has been read locked.

#### 8.4.1.4 Write Postamble

Due to internal electrical characteristics of the OTP during writes, all OTP operations (direct reads, shadow reloads, or other writes) following a write must wait at least 2  $\mu$ s after the clearing of HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] following the write. The delay guarantees programming voltages on-chip reach a steady state when exiting a write sequence.

A recommended software sequence to meet the postamble requirements is as follows:

1. Issue the write and poll for HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY].
2. Once HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] is clear, wait 2  $\mu$ s.
3. Perform the next OTP operation.

## 8.4.2 Fuse Shadow Memory Footprint

The OTP memory footprint is shown in the following figure. The registers are grouped by lock region. Their names correspond to the fusemap names.

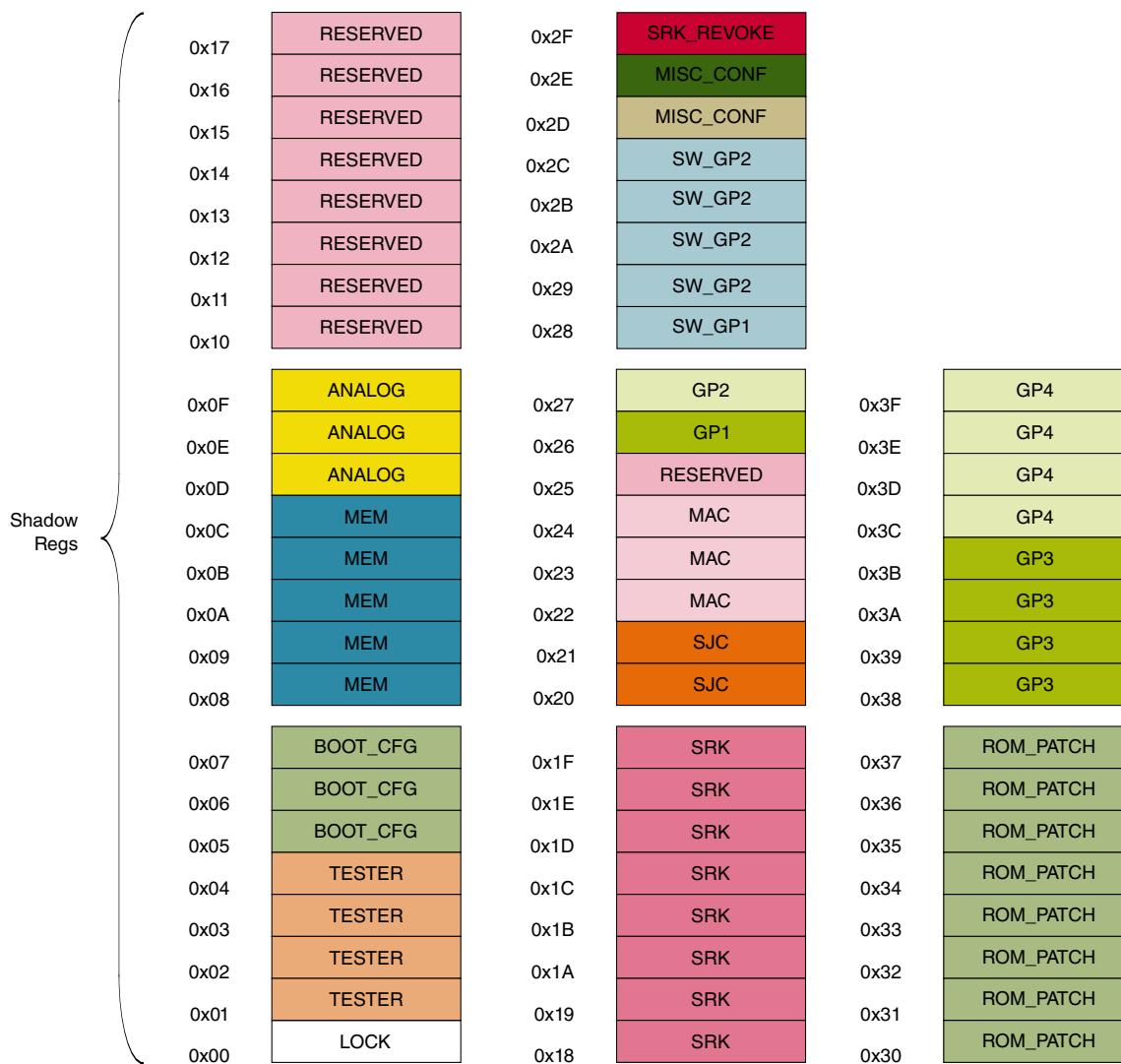


Figure 8-2. OTP Memory Footprint

### 8.4.3 OTP Read/Write Timing Parameters

The timing fields contained in the HW\_OCOTP\_TIMING register that specify counter limit values, which are used to time how long the state machine remains in the various states, as well as specify the STROBE signal timing.

The timing parameters are specified in ipg\_clk cycles. Since the ipg\_clk frequency can be set to a range of values, these parameters must be adjusted with the clock to yield the appropriate delay.

Register Field	Description
HW_OCOTP_TIMING[WAIT]	"WAIT" specifies time interval between auto read and write access in one time program. $t_{SP\_RD} = (WAIT+1)/ipg\_clk\_freq$ , should be $\geq 150$ ns.
HW_OCOTP_TIMING[RELAX]	"RELAX" is used to configure the setup/hold time for certain timing margin. $t_{SP\_PGM} = t_{HP\_PGM} = (RELAX+1)/ipg\_clk\_freq$ , should be $\geq 100$ ns.
HW_OCOTP_TIMING[STROBE_PROG]	$t_{PGM} = [(STROBE\_PROG+1) - 2 \times (RELAX\_PROG+1)]/ipg\_clk\_freq$ . The $t_{PGM}$ should be configured within the range of 9000 ns < $t_{PGM}$ < 11000 ns, while its recommended value is 10000 ns.
HW_OCOTP_TIMING[STROBE_READ]	$t_{RD} = [(STROBE\_READ+1) - 2 \times (RELAX\_READ+1)]/ipg\_clk\_freq$ . The $t_{RD}$ is required to be larger than 45 ns. $t_{AEN} = (STROBE\_READ+1)/ipg\_clk\_freq$ . The $t_{AEN}$ is required to be larger than 75 ns.
HW_OCOTP_TIMING2[RELAX_READ]	"RELAX_READ" is used to configure the setup/hold time for certain timing margin. $(RELAX\_READ+1)/ipg\_clk\_freq$ should be $\geq 10$ ns.
HW_OCOTP_TIMING2[RELAX_PROG]	"RELAX_PROG" is used to configure the setup/hold time for certain timing margin. $(t_{AEN} - t_{PGM})/2 = (RELAX\_PROG+1)/ipg\_clk\_freq$ , should be $\geq 950$ ns.

## 8.4.4 Behavior During Reset

The OCOTP is always active. The shadow registers automatically load the appropriate OTP contents after reset is deasserted. During this load-time HW\_OCOTP\_CTRL[BUSY] is set.

## 8.4.5 Secure JTAG control

The JTAG control fuses are used to allow or disallow JTAG access to secured resources.

Three JTAG security levels are implemented as shown in the table below.

**Table 8-2. JTAG Security Level Control Bits**

Security Mode	JTAG_SMODE	Description
No Debug	2'b11	The highest security level.
Secure JTAG	2'b01	Limit the JTAG access by using key based authentication mechanism.
JTAG Enable	2'b00	Low Security, all JTAG features are enabled.

## 8.5 Fuse Map

See the Fusemap chapter of this reference manual for more information.

## 8.6 OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition

The OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition can be found here.

**NOTE**

Writing or reading unimplemented register address in OCOTP Controller will not send error and read data will be 0.

### 8.6.1 OCOTP register descriptions

OCOTP Hardware Register Format Summary

### 8.6.1.1 OCOTP memory map

OCOTP base address: 401F\_4000h

Offset	Register	Width (In bits)	Access	Reset value
0h	OTP Controller Control and Status Register (CTRL)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4h	OTP Controller Control and Status Register (CTRL_SET)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8h	OTP Controller Control and Status Register (CTRL_CLR)	32	RW	0000_0000h
Ch	OTP Controller Control and Status Register (CTRL_TOG)	32	RW	0000_0000h
10h	OTP Controller Timing Register (TIMING)	32	RW	0C0D_9755h
20h	OTP Controller Write Data Register (DATA)	32	RW	0000_0000h
30h	OTP Controller Write Data Register (READ_CTRL)	32	RW	0000_0000h
40h	OTP Controller Read Data Register (READ_FUSE_DATA)	32	RW	0000_0000h
50h	Sticky bit Register (SW_STICKY)	32	RW	0000_0000h
60h	Software Controllable Signals Register (SCS)	32	RW	0000_0000h
64h	Software Controllable Signals Register (SCS_SET)	32	RW	0000_0000h
68h	Software Controllable Signals Register (SCS_CLR)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6Ch	Software Controllable Signals Register (SCS_TOG)	32	RW	0000_0000h
90h	OTP Controller Version Register (VERSION)	32	RO	0300_0000h
100h	OTP Controller Timing Register 2 (TIMING2)	32	RW	01C3_0092h
400h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word0 (Lock controls) (LOCK)	32	RW	4012_8003h
410h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word1 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
420h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word2 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
430h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word3 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG2)	32	RW	0000_0000h
440h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word4 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG3)	32	RW	0000_0000h
450h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word5 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG4)	32	RW	0000_0000h
460h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word6 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG5)	32	RW	0000_0000h
470h	Value of OTP Bank0 Word7 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG6)	32	RW	0000_0000h
480h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word0 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
490h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word1 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4A0h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word2 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM2)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4B0h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word3 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM3)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4C0h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word4 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM4)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4D0h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word5 (Analog Info.) (ANA0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4E0h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word6 (Analog Info.) (ANA1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
4F0h	Value of OTP Bank1 Word7 (Analog Info.) (ANA2)	32	RW	0000_0000h

Table continues on the next page...

## OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition

Offset	Register	Width (In bits)	Access	Reset value
580h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word0 (SRK Hash) (SRK0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
590h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word1 (SRK Hash) (SRK1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
5A0h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word2 (SRK Hash) (SRK2)	32	RW	0000_0000h
5B0h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word3 (SRK Hash) (SRK3)	32	RW	0000_0000h
5C0h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word4 (SRK Hash) (SRK4)	32	RW	0000_0000h
5D0h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word5 (SRK Hash) (SRK5)	32	RW	0000_0000h
5E0h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word6 (SRK Hash) (SRK6)	32	RW	0000_0000h
5F0h	Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word7 (SRK Hash) (SRK7)	32	RW	0000_0000h
600h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word0 (Secure JTAG Response Field) (SJC_RESP0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
610h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word1 (Secure JTAG Response Field) (SJC_RESP1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
620h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word2 (MAC Address) (MAC0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
630h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word3 (MAC Address) (MAC1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
640h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word4 (MAC2 Address) (MAC2)	32	RW	0000_0000h
660h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word6 (General Purpose Customer Defined Info) (GP1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
670h	Value of OTP Bank4 Word7 (General Purpose Customer Defined Info) (GP2)	32	RW	0000_0000h
680h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word0 (SW GP1) (SW_GP1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
690h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word1 (SW GP2) (SW_GP20)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6A0h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word2 (SW GP2) (SW_GP21)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6B0h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word3 (SW GP2) (SW_GP22)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6C0h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word4 (SW GP2) (SW_GP23)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6D0h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word5 (Misc Conf) (MISC_CONF0)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6E0h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word6 (Misc Conf) (MISC_CONF1)	32	RW	0000_0000h
6F0h	Value of OTP Bank5 Word7 (SRK Revoke) (SRK_REVOKE)	32	RW	0000_0000h
880h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word0 (GP3) (GP30)	32	RW	0000_0000h
890h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word1 (GP3) (GP31)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8A0h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word2 (GP3) (GP32)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8B0h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word3 (GP3) (GP33)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8C0h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word4 (GP4) (GP40)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8D0h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word5 (GP4) (GP41)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8E0h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word6 (GP4) (GP42)	32	RW	0000_0000h
8F0h	Value of OTP Bank7 Word7 (GP4) (GP43)	32	RW	0000_0000h

### 8.6.1.2 OTP Controller Control and Status Register (CTRL)

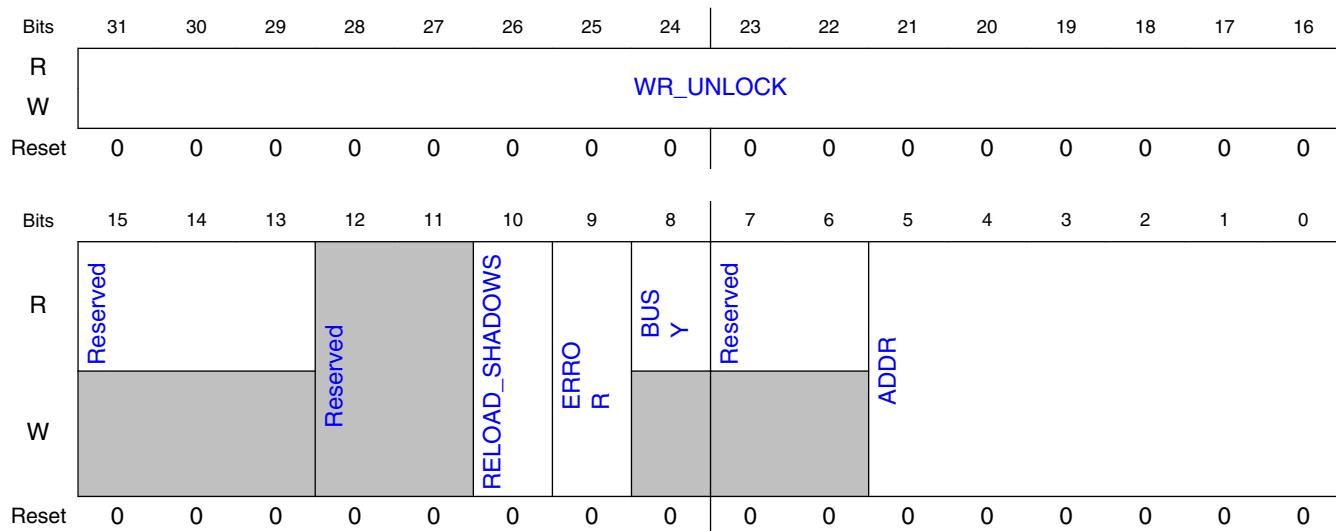
### 8.6.1.2.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
CTRL	0h	OTP Controller Control and Status Register
CTRL_SET	4h	Writing a 1 to a bit in this register sets the corresponding bit in CTRL
CTRL_CLR	8h	Writing a 1 to a bit in this register clears the corresponding bit in CTRL
CTRL_TOG	Ch	Writing a 1 to a bit in this register toggles the corresponding bit in CTRL

### 8.6.1.2.2 Function

The OCOTP Control and Status Register provides the necessary software interface for performing read and write operations to the On-Chip OTP (One-Time Programmable ROM). The control fields such as WR\_UNLOCK, ADDR, BUSY and ERROR may be used in conjunction with the DATA register to perform write operations. Read operations to the On-Chip OTP involve ADDR, BUSY and ERROR bit fields and the READ\_CTRL register. The read value is saved in the READ\_FUSE\_DATA register.

### 8.6.1.2.3 Diagram



### 8.6.1.2.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 WR_UNLOCK	Write Unlock

Table continues on the next page...

## OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition

Field	Function
	<p>Write 0x3E77 to enable OTP write accesses. NOTE: This register must be unlocked on a write-by-write basis (a write is initiated when DATA is written), so the UNLOCK bitfield must contain the correct key value during all writes to DATA, otherwise a write shall not be initiated. This field is automatically cleared after a successful write completion (clearing of BUSY).</p> <p>Values not listed are reserved.</p> <p>0000000000000000b - OTP write access is locked. 001111001110111b - OTP write access is unlocked.</p>
15-13 —	Reserved
12-11 —	Reserved
10 RELOAD_SHAD OWS	<p>Reload Shadow Registers</p> <p>This bit can be set to force re-loading of the shadow registers. This operation will automatically set BUSY. After the shadow registers have been re-loaded, BUSY and RELOAD_SHADOWS are automatically cleared by the controller.</p> <p>0b - Do not force shadow register re-load. 1b - Force shadow register re-load. This bit is cleared automatically after shadow registers are re-loaded.</p>
9 ERROR	<p>Locked Region Access Error</p> <p>This bit is set by the controller when an access to a locked region (OTP or shadow register) is requested. Reset this bit by writing a one to the CTRL_CLR[ERROR] bit and not by writing to the CTRL register.</p> <p>0b - No error. 1b - Error - access to a locked region requested.</p>
8 BUSY	<p>OTP controller status bit</p> <p>This bit is automatically set by the controller when a write or read access to the OTP is started. When set, no new write access or read access to OTP (including RELOAD_SHADOWS) can be performed. This bit is cleared by the controller when an access completes. After reset (or after setting RELOAD_SHADOWS), this bit is set by the controller until the HW/SW and LOCK registers are successfully copied, after which time it is automatically cleared by the controller.</p> <p>0b - No write or read access to OTP started. 1b - Write or read access to OTP started.</p>
7-6 —	Reserved
5-0 ADDR	<p>OTP write and read access address register</p> <p>Specifies one of 128 word address locations (0x00 - 0x3F).</p>

### 8.6.1.3 OTP Controller Timing Register (TIMING)

#### 8.6.1.3.1 Offset

Register	Offset
TIMING	10h

### 8.6.1.3.2 Function

The OCOTP Data Register is used for OTP Programming

This register specifies timing parameters for programming and reading the OTP fuse array.

See [OTP Read/Write Timing Parameters](#) for more details.

### 8.6.1.3.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0				WAIT				STROBE_READ							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	RELAX				STROBE_PROG											
W	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

### 8.6.1.3.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-28	Reserved
—	
27-22 WAIT	Wait Interval This count value specifies the time interval between auto read and write access in one time program to the OTP. It is given in number of ipg_clk periods. The OTP controller performs a read action before each program action. This is the "auto" read. The purpose of the auto read is to avoid multiple programming to the same bits.
21-16 STROBE_READ	Read Strobe Period This count value specifies the strobe period in one time read OTP (Trd). $Trd = ((STROBE\_READ+1)-2*(RELAX\_READ+1)) / \text{ipg\_clk\_freq}$ . It is given in number of ipg_clk periods.
15-12 RELAX	Relax Count Value This count value specifies the time to add to all default timing parameters other than the Tpgm and Trd. It is given in number of ipg_clk periods.
11-0 STROBE_PROG	Write Strobe Period This count value controls the strobe period in one time to write OTP (Tpgm). $Tpgm = ((STROBE\_PROG+1)-2*(RELAX\_PROG+1)) / \text{ipg\_clk\_freq}$ . It is given in number of ipg_clk periods.

## 8.6.1.4 OTP Controller Write Data Register (DATA)

### 8.6.1.4.1 Offset

Register	Offset
DATA	20h

### 8.6.1.4.2 Function

This register is used in conjunction with the CTRL register to perform one-time writes to the OTP. See the [Fuse and Shadow Register Writes](#) section for operating details.

### 8.6.1.4.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	DATA															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	DATA															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.4.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	Used to initiate a write to OTP. See the <a href="#">Fuse and Shadow Register Writes</a> section for operating details.
DATA	

## 8.6.1.5 OTP Controller Write Data Register (READ\_CTRL)

### 8.6.1.5.1 Offset

Register	Offset
READ_CTRL	30h

### 8.6.1.5.2 Function

This register is used in conjunction with CTRL to perform reads of the OTP. See the [Fuse and Shadow Register Read](#) section for operating details.

### 8.6.1.5.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved															READ_FUSE
W																E
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.5.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-1	Reserved
—	
0	READ_FUSE
READ_FUSE	Used to initiate a read from OTP. See the <a href="#">Fuse and Shadow Register Read</a> section for operating details.

## 8.6.1.6 OTP Controller Read Data Register (READ\_FUSE\_DATA)

### 8.6.1.6.1 Offset

Register	Offset
READ_FUSE_DATA	40h

### 8.6.1.6.2 Function

The data read from OTP.

### 8.6.1.6.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.6.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	The data read from OTP. See the <a href="#">Fuse and Shadow Register Read</a> section for operating details.
DATA	

### 8.6.1.7 Sticky bit Register (SW\_STICKY)

#### 8.6.1.7.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SW_STICKY	50h

### 8.6.1.7.2 Function

Some sticky bits are used by SW to lock some fuse areas, shadow registers, and other features.

### 8.6.1.7.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								0	0	0	0	0	FIELD_RETURN_LOCK	SRK_REVOKER_LOCK	0
W														0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.7.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-5 —	Reserved
4 —	Reserved
3 —	Reserved
2 FIELD_RETURN_LOCK	Field Return Lock Shadow register write and OTP write lock for FIELD_RETURN region. 0b - Writing to this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - Writing to this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked. Once this bit is set, it is always high unless a POR is issued.
1 SRK_REVOKER_LOCK	SRK Revoke Lock Shadow register write and OTP write lock for SRK_REVOKER region. 0b - The writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - The writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked. Once this bit is set, it is always high unless a POR is issued.
0 —	Reserved

## 8.6.1.8 Software Controllable Signals Register (SCS)

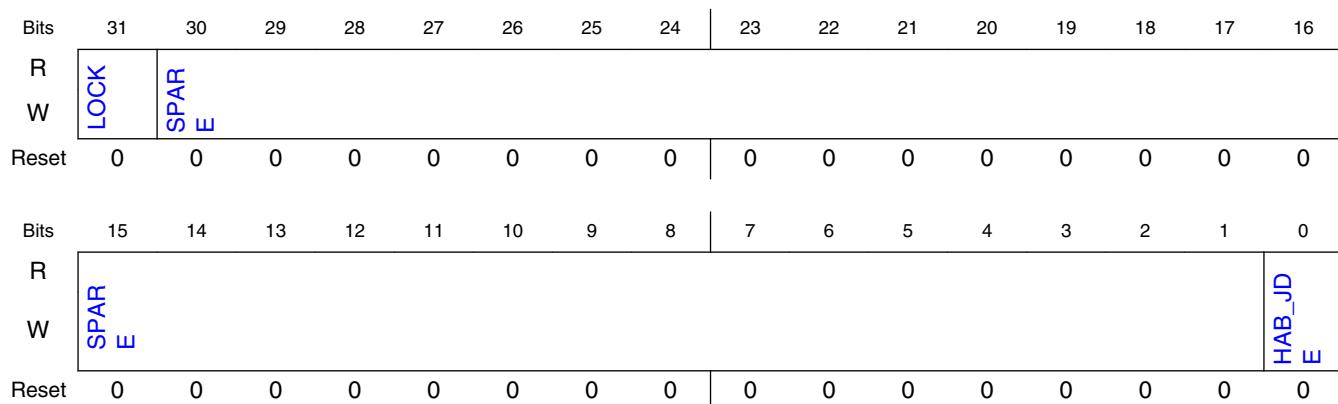
### 8.6.1.8.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCS	60h	Software Controllable Signals Register
SCS_SET	64h	Writing a 1 to a bit in this register sets the corresponding bit in SCS
SCS_CLR	68h	Writing a 1 to a bit in this register clears the corresponding bit in SCS
SCS_TOG	6Ch	Writing a 1 to a bit in this register toggles the corresponding bit in SCS

### 8.6.1.8.2 Function

This register holds volatile configuration values that can be set and locked by software.

### 8.6.1.8.3 Diagram



### 8.6.1.8.4 Fields

Field	Function
31 LOCK	Lock This bitfield locks the bits in this register. 0b - Bits in this register are unlocked.

*Table continues on the next page...*

Field	Function
	1b - Bits in this register are locked. When set, all of the bits in this register are locked and can not be changed through SW programming. After this bit is set, it can only be cleared by a POR.
30-1 SPARE	Unallocated read/write bits for implementation specific software use.
0 HAB_JDE	<p>HAB JTAG Debug Enable</p> <p>This bit can be used by the High Assurance Boot (HAB) portion of the Boot ROM to enable JTAG debugging, assuming that a properly signed command to do so is found and validated by the HAB. The HAB will lock the register before passing control to the application whether or not JTAG debugging has been enabled. Once JTAG is enabled by this bit, it cannot be disabled unless the system is reset by POR.</p> <p>0b - JTAG debugging is not enabled by the HAB (it may still be enabled by other mechanisms). 1b - JTAG debugging is enabled by the HAB (though this signal may be gated off).</p>

### 8.6.1.9 OTP Controller Version Register (VERSION)

#### 8.6.1.9.1 Offset

Register	Offset
VERSION	90h

#### 8.6.1.9.2 Function

This register indicates the RTL version in use.

#### 8.6.1.9.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	MAJOR								MINOR							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	STEP															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.9.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24	Major RTL Version
MAJOR	Fixed read-only value reflecting the MAJOR field of the RTL version.
23-16	Minor RTL Version
MINOR	Fixed read-only value reflecting the MINOR field of the RTL version.
15-0	RTL Version Steping
STEP	Fixed read-only value reflecting the stepping of the RTL version.

### 8.6.1.10 OTP Controller Timing Register 2 (TIMING2)

#### 8.6.1.10.1 Offset

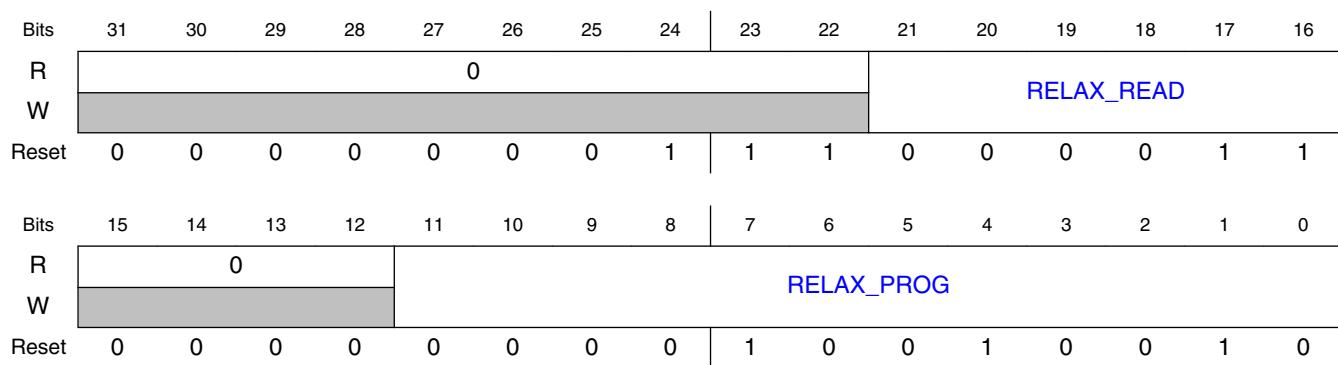
Register	Offset
TIMING2	100h

#### 8.6.1.10.2 Function

This register specifies timing parameters for programming and reading the OCOTP fuse array.

See [OTP Read/Write Timing Parameters](#) for more details.

#### 8.6.1.10.3 Diagram



### 8.6.1.10.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22 —	Reserved
21-16 RELAX_READ	Relax Read count value This count value specifies the strobe period in one time read OTP. $T_{rd} = ((STROBE\_READ+1)-2*(RELAX\_READ+1)) / ipg\_clk\_freq$ . It is given in number of ipg_clk periods.
15-12 —	Reserved
11-0 RELAX_PROG	Relax Prog. count value This count value specifies the strobe period in one time write OTP. $T_{pgm} = ((STROBE\_PROG+1)-2*(RELAX\_PROG+1)) / ipg\_clk\_freq$ . It is given in number of ipg_clk periods.

### 8.6.1.11 Value of OTP Bank0 Word0 (Lock controls) (LOCK)

#### 8.6.1.11.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LOCK	400h

#### 8.6.1.11.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 0 (ADDR = 0x00).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.11.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	<b>FIELD_RETURN</b>	Reserved			GP3		GP4		<b>SW_GP2_RLOCK</b>	<b>MISC_CONF</b>	<b>SW_GP2_LOCK</b>	1	<b>ANALOG</b>	1	1	<b>SW_GP1</b>
W																
Reset	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	0	GP2		GP1		MAC_ADDR		<b>GP4_RLOCK</b>	<b>SJC_RESET_P</b>	Reserved		<b>BOOT_CFG</b>		Reserved	
W																
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

### 8.6.1.11.4 Fields

Field	Function
31 <b>FIELD_RETURN</b>	FIELD RETURN Status Status of shadow register and the configuration of the device for field return testing. 0b - The device is a functional part. 1b - The device is a field returned part.
30-28 —	Reserved
27-26 <b>GP3</b>	GP3 Write Lock Status Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for GP3 region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
25-24 <b>GP4</b>	GP4 Write Lock Status Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for GP4 region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
23 <b>SW_GP2_RLOCK</b>	SW_GP2 Read Lock Status Status of shadow register and OTP read lock for sw_gp2 region. When set, the reading of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked. 0b - The reading of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - When set, the reading of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked.
22 <b>MISC_CONF</b>	MISC_CONF Write Lock Status Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for misc_conf region. 0b - Writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
	1b - When set, the writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked.
21 SW_GP2_LOCK	SW_GP2 Write Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for sw_gp2 region.  0b - Writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - When set, the writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked.
20 —	Reserved
19-18 ANALOG	ANALOG Write Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for analog region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
17 —	Reserved
16 SW_GP1	SW_GP1 Write Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for sw_gp1 region.  0b - Writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - When set, the writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked.
15 —	Reserved
14 —	Reserved
13-12 GP2	GP2 Write Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for gp2 region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
11-10 GP1	GP1 Write Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for gp2 region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
9-8 MAC_ADDR	MAC_ADDR Write Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for mac_addr region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
7 GP4_RLOCK	GP4 Read Lock Status  Status of shadow register and OTP read lock for gp4 region.  0b - Reading of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - When set, the reading of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked.
6 SJC_RESP	SJC_RESP Lock Status  Status of shadow register read and write, OTP read and write lock for sjc_resp region.  0b - The writing or reading of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are not blocked. 1b - When set, the writing of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are blocked. The read of this region's shadow register and OTP fuse word are also blocked
5-4 —	Reserved
3-2	BOOT_CFG Write Lock Status

*Table continues on the next page...*

## OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition

Field	Function
BOOT_CFG	Status of shadow register and OTP write lock for boot_cfg region. When bit 1 is set, the writing of this region's shadow register is blocked. When bit 0 is set, the writing of this region's OTP fuse word is blocked.
1-0 —	Reserved

### 8.6.1.12 Value of OTP Bank0 Word1 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG0)

#### 8.6.1.12.1 Offset

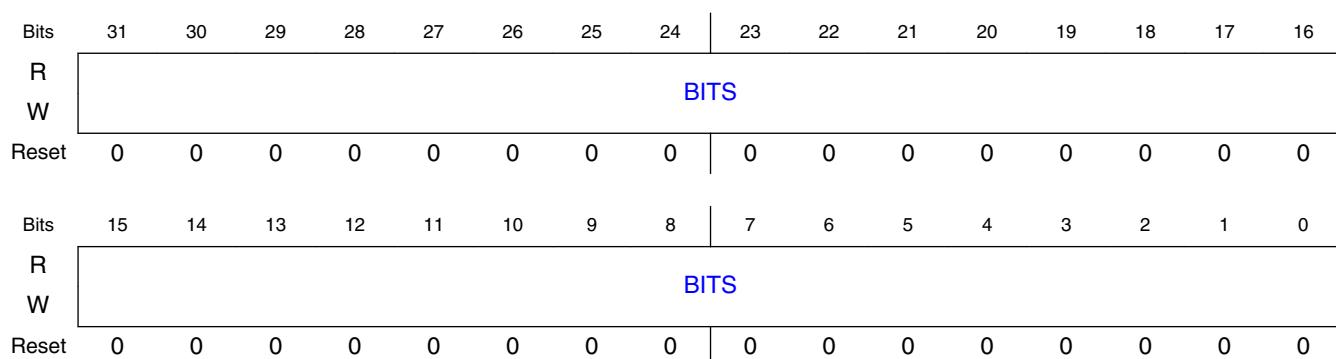
Register	Offset
CFG0	410h

#### 8.6.1.12.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 1 (ADDR = 0x01).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

#### 8.6.1.12.3 Diagram



#### 8.6.1.12.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS

Field	Function
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 1 (ADDR = 0x01). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

### 8.6.1.13 Value of OTP Bank0 Word2 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG1)

#### 8.6.1.13.1 Offset

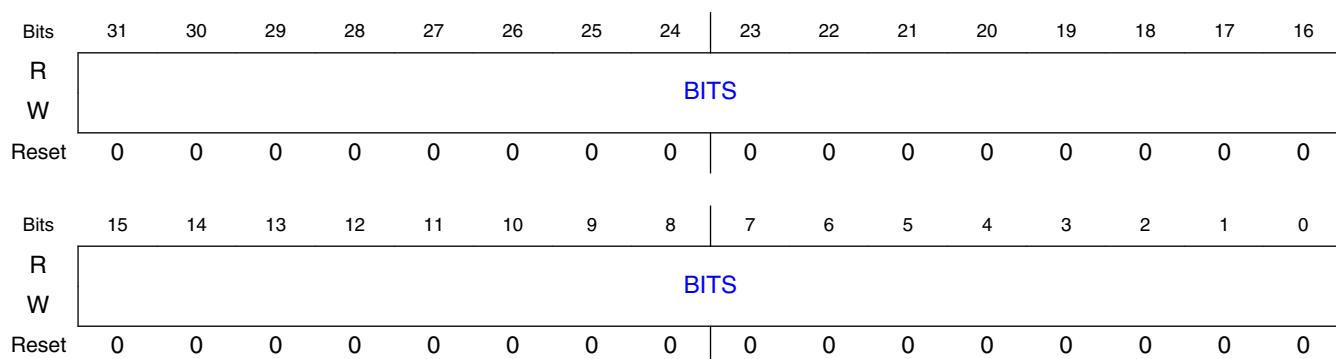
Register	Offset
CFG1	420h

#### 8.6.1.13.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 2 (ADDR = 0x02).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

#### 8.6.1.13.3 Diagram



#### 8.6.1.13.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 2 (ADDR = 0x02). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

### 8.6.1.14 Value of OTP Bank0 Word3 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG2)

#### 8.6.1.14.1 Offset

Register	Offset
CFG2	430h

#### 8.6.1.14.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 3 (ADDR = 0x03).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

#### 8.6.1.14.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

#### 8.6.1.14.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 3 (ADDR = 0x03). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

### 8.6.1.15 Value of OTP Bank0 Word4 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG3)

#### 8.6.1.15.1 Offset

Register	Offset
CFG3	440h

#### 8.6.1.15.2 Function

Non-shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 4 (ADDR = 0x04).

#### 8.6.1.15.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

#### 8.6.1.15.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 4 (ADDR = 0x04). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

### 8.6.1.16 Value of OTP Bank0 Word5 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG4)

### 8.6.1.16.1 Offset

Register	Offset
CFG4	450h

### 8.6.1.16.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 5 (ADDR = 0x05).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.16.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.16.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 5 (ADDR = 0x05). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

### 8.6.1.17 Value of OTP Bank0 Word6 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG5)

#### 8.6.1.17.1 Offset

Register	Offset
CFG5	460h

### 8.6.1.17.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 6 (ADDR = 0x06).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.17.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.17.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 6 (ADDR = 0x06). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.18 Value of OTP Bank0 Word7 (Configuration and Manufacturing Info.) (CFG6)

### 8.6.1.18.1 Offset

Register	Offset
CFG6	470h

### 8.6.1.18.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 0, word 7 (ADDR = 0x07).

## OCOTP Memory Map/Register Definition

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.18.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.18.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 0, word 7 (ADDR = 0x07). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.19 Value of OTP Bank1 Word0 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM0)

### 8.6.1.19.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MEM0	480h

### 8.6.1.19.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 0 (ADDR = 0x08).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.19.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.19.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 0 (ADDR = 0x08). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.20 Value of OTP Bank1 Word1 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM1)

### 8.6.1.20.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MEM1	490h

### 8.6.1.20.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 1 (ADDR = 0x09).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.20.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.20.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 1 (ADDR = 0x09). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.21 Value of OTP Bank1 Word2 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM2)

### 8.6.1.21.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MEM2	4A0h

### 8.6.1.21.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 2 (ADDR = 0x0A).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.21.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.21.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 2 (ADDR = 0x0A). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.22 Value of OTP Bank1 Word3 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM3)

### 8.6.1.22.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MEM3	4B0h

### 8.6.1.22.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 3 (ADDR = 0x0B).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.22.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.22.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 3 (ADDR = 0x0B). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.23 Value of OTP Bank1 Word4 (Memory Related Info.) (MEM4)

### 8.6.1.23.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MEM4	4C0h

### 8.6.1.23.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 4 (ADDR = 0x0C).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.23.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.23.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 4 (ADDR = 0x0C). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.24 Value of OTP Bank1 Word5 (Analog Info.) (ANA0)

### 8.6.1.24.1 Offset

Register	Offset
ANA0	4D0h

### 8.6.1.24.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 5 (ADDR = 0x0D).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.24.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.24.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 5 (ADDR = 0x0D). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.25 Value of OTP Bank1 Word6 (Analog Info.) (ANA1)

### 8.6.1.25.1 Offset

Register	Offset
ANA1	4E0h

### 8.6.1.25.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 6 (ADDR = 0x0E).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.25.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.25.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 6 (ADDR = 0x0E). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.26 Value of OTP Bank1 Word7 (Analog Info.) (ANA2)

### 8.6.1.26.1 Offset

Register	Offset
ANA2	4F0h

### 8.6.1.26.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 1, word 7 (ADDR = 0x0F).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.26.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.26.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 1, word 7 (ADDR = 0x0F). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.27 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word0 (SRK Hash) (SRK0)

### 8.6.1.27.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK0	580h

### 8.6.1.27.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 0 (ADDR = 0x18).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.27.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.27.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 0 (ADDR = 0x18). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.28 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word1 (SRK Hash) (SRK1)

### 8.6.1.28.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK1	590h

### 8.6.1.28.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 1 (ADDR = 0x19).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.28.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.28.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 1 (ADDR = 0x19). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.29 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word2 (SRK Hash) (SRK2)

### 8.6.1.29.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK2	5A0h

### 8.6.1.29.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 2 (ADDR = 0x1A).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.29.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.29.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 2 (ADDR = 0x1A). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.30 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word3 (SRK Hash) (SRK3)

### 8.6.1.30.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK3	5B0h

### 8.6.1.30.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 3 (ADDR = 0x1B).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.30.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.30.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 3 (ADDR = 0x1B). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.31 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word4 (SRK Hash) (SRK4)

### 8.6.1.31.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK4	5C0h

### 8.6.1.31.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 4 (ADDR = 0x1C).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.31.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.31.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 4 (ADDR = 0x1C). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.32 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word5 (SRK Hash) (SRK5)

### 8.6.1.32.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK5	5D0h

### 8.6.1.32.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 5 (ADDR = 0x1D).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.32.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.32.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 5 (ADDR = 0x1D). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.33 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word6 (SRK Hash) (SRK6)

### 8.6.1.33.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK6	5E0h

### 8.6.1.33.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 6 (ADDR = 0x1E).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.33.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.33.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 6 (ADDR = 0x1E). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.34 Shadow Register for OTP Bank3 Word7 (SRK Hash) (SRK7)

### 8.6.1.34.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK7	5F0h

### 8.6.1.34.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 3, word 7 (ADDR = 0x1F).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS].

### 8.6.1.34.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.34.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 3, word 7 (ADDR = 0x1F). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.35 Value of OTP Bank4 Word0 (Secure JTAG Response Field) (SJC\_RESP0)

### 8.6.1.35.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SJC_RESP0	600h

### 8.6.1.35.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 0 (ADDR = 0x20).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.35.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.35.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 0 (ADDR = 0x20). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.36 Value of OTP Bank4 Word1 (Secure JTAG Response Field) (SJC\_RESP1)

### 8.6.1.36.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SJC_RESP1	610h

### 8.6.1.36.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 1 (ADDR = 0x21).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.36.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.36.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 1 (ADDR = 0x21). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.37 Value of OTP Bank4 Word2 (MAC Address) (MAC0)

### 8.6.1.37.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MAC0	620h

### 8.6.1.37.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 2 (ADDR = 0x22).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.37.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.37.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 2 (ADDR = 0x22). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.38 Value of OTP Bank4 Word3 (MAC Address) (MAC1)

### 8.6.1.38.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MAC1	630h

### 8.6.1.38.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 3 (ADDR = 0x23).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.38.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.38.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 3 (ADDR = 0x23). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.39 Value of OTP Bank4 Word4 (MAC2 Address) (MAC2)

### 8.6.1.39.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MAC2	640h

### 8.6.1.39.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 4 (ADDR = 0x24).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.39.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.39.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 4 (ADDR = 0x24). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.40 Value of OTP Bank4 Word6 (General Purpose Customer Defined Info) (GP1)

### 8.6.1.40.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP1	660h

### 8.6.1.40.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 6 (ADDR = 0x26).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.40.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.40.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 6 (ADDR = 0x26). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.41 Value of OTP Bank4 Word7 (General Purpose Customer Defined Info) (GP2)

### 8.6.1.41.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP2	670h

### 8.6.1.41.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 4, word 7 (ADDR = 0x27).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.41.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.41.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 4, word 7 (ADDR = 0x27). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.42 Value of OTP Bank5 Word0 (SW GP1) (SW\_GP1)

### 8.6.1.42.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SW_GP1	680h

### 8.6.1.42.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 0 (ADDR = 0x28).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.42.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.42.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 0 (ADDR = 0x28). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.43 Value of OTP Bank5 Word1 (SW GP2) (SW\_GP20)

### 8.6.1.43.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SW_GP20	690h

### 8.6.1.43.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 1 (ADDR = 0x29).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.43.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.43.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 1 (ADDR = 0x29). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.44 Value of OTP Bank5 Word2 (SW GP2) (SW\_GP21)

### 8.6.1.44.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SW_GP21	6A0h

### 8.6.1.44.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 2 (ADDR = 0x2a).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.44.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.44.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 2 (ADDR = 0x2A). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.45 Value of OTP Bank5 Word3 (SW GP2) (SW\_GP22)

### 8.6.1.45.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SW_GP22	6B0h

### 8.6.1.45.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 3 (ADDR = 0x2B).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.45.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.45.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 3 (ADDR = 0x2B). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.46 Value of OTP Bank5 Word4 (SW GP2) (SW\_GP23)

### 8.6.1.46.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SW_GP23	6C0h

### 8.6.1.46.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 4 (ADDR = 0x2C).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.46.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.46.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 4 (ADDR = 0x2C). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.47 Value of OTP Bank5 Word5 (Misc Conf) (MISC\_CONF0)

### 8.6.1.47.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MISC_CONF0	6D0h

### 8.6.1.47.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 5 (ADDR = 0x2D).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.47.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.47.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 5 (ADDR = 0x2D). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.48 Value of OTP Bank5 Word6 (Misc Conf) (MISC\_CONF1)

### 8.6.1.48.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MISC_CONF1	6E0h

### 8.6.1.48.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 6 (ADDR = 0x2E).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.48.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.48.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 6 (ADDR = 0x2E). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.49 Value of OTP Bank5 Word7 (SRK Revoke) (SRK\_REVOKE)

### 8.6.1.49.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SRK_REVOKE	6F0h

### 8.6.1.49.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 5, word 7 (ADDR = 0x2F).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.49.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.49.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 5, word 7 (ADDR = 0x2F). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.50 Value of OTP Bank7 Word0 (GP3) (GP30)

### 8.6.1.50.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP30	880h

### 8.6.1.50.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 0 (ADDR = 0x38).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.50.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.50.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 0 (ADDR = 0x38). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details. Reflects value of OTP Bank 7, word 0 (ADDR = 0x38).

## 8.6.1.51 Value of OTP Bank7 Word1 (GP3) (GP31)

### 8.6.1.51.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP31	890h

### 8.6.1.51.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 1 (ADDR = 0x39).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.51.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.51.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 1 (ADDR = 0x39). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.52 Value of OTP Bank7 Word2 (GP3) (GP32)

### 8.6.1.52.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP32	8A0h

### 8.6.1.52.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 2 (ADDR = 0x3A).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.52.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.52.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 2 (ADDR = 0x3A). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

### 8.6.1.53 Value of OTP Bank7 Word3 (GP3) (GP33)

#### 8.6.1.53.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP33	8B0h

#### 8.6.1.53.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 3 (ADDR = 0x3B).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.53.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.53.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 3 (ADDR = 0x3B). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.54 Value of OTP Bank7 Word4 (GP4) (GP40)

### 8.6.1.54.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP40	8C0h

### 8.6.1.54.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 4 (ADDR = 0x3C).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.54.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.54.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 4 (ADDR = 0x3C). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.55 Value of OTP Bank7 Word5 (GP4) (GP41)

### 8.6.1.55.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP41	8D0h

### 8.6.1.55.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 5 (ADDR = 0x3D).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.55.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BITS															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.55.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 5 (ADDR = 0x3D). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.56 Value of OTP Bank7 Word6 (GP4) (GP42)

### 8.6.1.56.1 Offset

Register	Offset
GP42	8E0h

### 8.6.1.56.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 6 (ADDR = 0x3E).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.56.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									BITS							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 8.6.1.56.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0	BITS
BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 6 (ADDR = 0x3E). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.

## 8.6.1.57 Value of OTP Bank7 Word7 (GP4) (GP43)

### 8.6.1.57.1 Offset

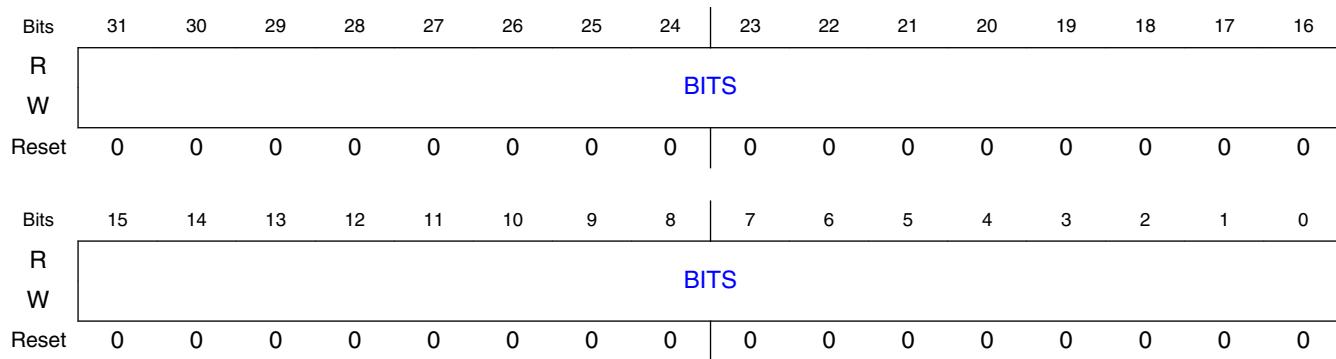
Register	Offset
GP43	8F0h

### 8.6.1.57.2 Function

Shadowed memory mapped access to OTP Bank 7, word 7 (ADDR = 0x3F).

Copied from the OTP automatically after reset. Can be re-loaded by setting CTRL[RELOAD\_SHADOWS]

### 8.6.1.57.3 Diagram



### 8.6.1.57.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0 BITS	This register reflects the value of OTP Bank 7, word 7 (ADDR = 0x3F). See the Fusemap Descriptions Table in the Fusemap chapter for more fuse details.



# Chapter 9

## True Random Number Generator (TRNG)

### 9.1 Chip-specific TRNG information

#### NOTE

TRNG Access Mode (MCTL[TRNG\_ACC] on bit5, as well as related content) is not applicable on this device.

### 9.2 Overview

The Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG) is a hardware accelerator module that generates a 512-bit entropy as needed by an entropy-consuming module or by other post-processing functions. A typical entropy consumer is a pseudo random number generator (PRNG) that can be implemented to achieve both true randomness and cryptographic-strength random numbers using the TRNG output as its entropy seed. The PRNG is not part of this module.

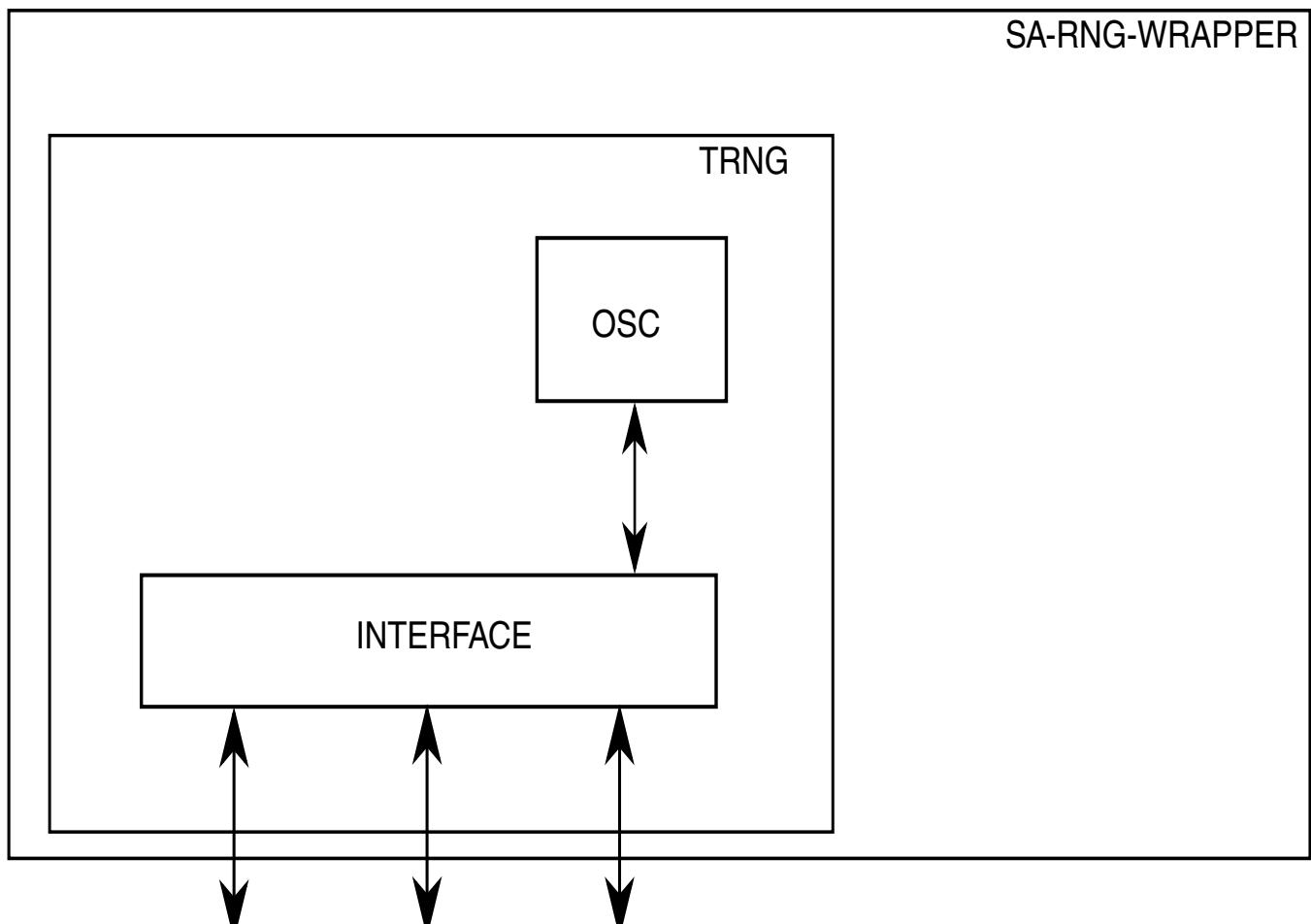
The entropy generated by a TRNG is intended for direct use by functions that generate secret keys, per-message secrets, random challenges, and other similar quantities used in cryptographic algorithms. In each of these cases, it is important that a random number be difficult to guess or predict. It is important that a random number is at least as difficult to predict as it is difficult to break the cryptographic algorithm with which it is being used. This stringent requirement is particularly difficult to fulfill if the entropy source from a TRNG contains bias and/or correlation. To increase the trustworthiness and quality of the generated random data, PRNGs are often used to post-process the output of a TRNG.

This document describes only the TRNG design functionality and usage.

Note that before entropy can be obtained from the TRNG, it must be initialized and instantiated in a particular mode by setting the appropriate TRNG registers.

The TRNG contains the following submodules: IP Slave bus (SkyBlue bus) interface, the TRNG core, and the free-running oscillator (OSC).

### 9.2.1 Block Diagram



**Figure 9-1. Standalone TRNG Block Diagram**

## 9.3 Functional Description

The TRNG consists of several functional submodules. Its overall functionality can be described from the top-level in terms of generating entropy for seed generation. The functionality of each sub-module is briefly described in the following subsections.

TRNG generates random bits by collecting bits from a random noise source. This random noise source is a ring oscillator that is sensitive to random noise (temperature variations, voltage variations, cross-talk and other random noise) within the device where

the TRNG is used. This noise causes various small changes in the period of the oscillator. Therefore, if the count of the ring oscillator clock cycles is sampled after a known period of time, this count will vary each time the sample is taken. By using the variance in this count over a large number of samples, random bits can be derived. In addition to generating entropy, the TRNG also performs several statistical tests on its output.

## 9.4 Register Interface Usage

The TRNG register interface is used to read and write registers within TRNG for the following purposes:

- to configure internal registers and TRNG register interface during chip initialization
- to initialize TRNG self tests
- to read status registers for hardware and software debug

Note that accesses to registers must be 32-bit reads or writes.

## 9.5 Operation

The TRNG is designed to operate as a slave module and can be controlled via the slave bus. In order to write to most TRNG registers, the MCTL register must be initialized in programming mode. After a power-on reset (POR) or an asynchronous system hard reset, the TRNG resets to programming mode. TRNG will not generate entropy until it has transitioned out of programming mode (into run mode) and access to the entropy registers have been enabled.

There are four steps that the user (programmer/integrator) will want to do with a TRNG.

1. Initialize.

Set up the parameters to proper values, dummy read entropy from TRNG, and then start generation of the first block of entropy. This is done once every time after a reset or any time the user wants to update operating parameters and/or built-in self test parameter bounds.

2. Read entropy and generate next block of entropy.

This is the normal flow of operation and is looped until enough entropy has been generated.

3. Run a self test to assure proper continued operation.

This involves taking TRNG off line, setting some self test parameters, running TRNG, and then reading the statistical test registers to see if they are within proper operation values. This may not be needed as TRNG has built-in self tests.

#### 4. Determine and check parameter values off line.

This is done in development in order to determine the proper initialization and self test parameters. The TRNG is taken off line. Test parameter values are written and entropy generation is started. If the statistical tests indicate poor operation (i.e., failing statistical tests), the entropy delay value should be increased and entropy generation should be restarted. Every case is a variation of setting TRNG parameter values, starting or restarting entropy generation, and reading out the entropy. This process requires pausing and restarting the TRNG.

### 9.5.1 Operation Programming Flow

Below is an example of a normal operation programming flow.

1. After reset, the TRNG will be in programming mode with the ok-to-stop bit asserted (MCTL[TSTOP\_OK] = 1). The TRNG must be put into run mode for entropy generation to begin (MCTL[PRGM] = 0). With the default self test limits after bootup, the entropy valid bit can be polled until it asserts (MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1). Alternatively if the interrupts are enabled in the INT\_MASK register, the ipi\_rng\_int\_b output will assert when the entropy valid bit asserts (MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1).
2. After the polling completes, the 512-bit entropy generated by the TRNG can be read. The values can be read in any order from entropy register 0 to register 15, (ENT0 to ENT15). After reading ENT15, the old entropy value is reset and a new entropy value is generated. **Note that reading ENT15 will reset the entropy, so it should always be read last.**
3. The new entropy value can be polled again or the Interrupt Status Register can be used to handle reading the entropy values when the entropy valid interrupt is triggered.
4. The interrupt can be masked or cleared as needed. See the Interrupt Status Register description.
5. To change the self-test limits, the seed counters, how fast the entropy is generated, and how entropy is sampled, see the register description section. In particular, see the the TRNG Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register (FRQMIN), the seed control register(SCML), the statistical run length registers, and other parameter registers.
6. Once in Run Mode, the entropy is re-generated automatically after ENT15 is read. Setting the TRNG back to programming mode (MCTL[PRGM]=1) also achieves the purpose of stopping entropy generation.

## 9.5.2 Interrupt Programming Flow

The TRNG has three interrupts that are managed using three TRNG registers: INT\_CTRL, INT\_STATUS and INT\_MASK registers. The interrupts are FRQ\_CT\_FAIL, ENT\_VAL and HW\_ERR. By default, these interrupts are disabled. They have to be individually enabled, as preferred, to work.

For example, to enable the ENT\_VAL interrupt, the corresponding bit in the INT\_MASK register must be set (INT\_MASK[ENT\_VAL] = 1). When a new interrupt is triggered, the corresponding bit in the INT\_STATUS register will assert (INT\_STATUS[ENT\_VAL]). To clear an asserted interrupt, the corresponding bit in the INT\_CTRL register is set (INT\_CTRL[ENT\_VAL] = 0).

After a power cycle or reset, the TRNG interrupts need to be enabled again. Note that these interrupt bits correspond to the MCTL[FCT\_FAIL], MCTL[ENT\_VAL] and MCTL[ERR]. These MCTL bits will always assert/deassert regardless of whether interrupts are masked or temporarily enabled/disabled. The interrupt registers mirror these MCTL bits but are independent.

Below is an example of an interrupt setup and programming flow for ENT\_VAL. HW\_ERR and FRQ\_CT\_FAIL interrupts can be enabled in the same way.

1. Initialize the TRNG normally to generate entropy, then poll for entropy valid bit (MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1).
2. When entropy is ready, the active-low interrupt port should be expected to be high (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 1), because the entropy valid interrupt has not been enabled yet.
3. Make sure that the INT\_MASK register does not have any interrupts enabled (INT\_MASK[2:0] = 0x7). Wait/sleep for about 100 clocks.
4. Disable or ensure that INT\_CTRL register has temporarily disabled the ENT\_VAL interrupt (INT\_CTRL[ENT\_VAL] = 0). Wait/sleep for a few clocks, maybe 100 clocks.
5. The active-low interrupt port should still be high (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 1).
6. Read out entropy values from ENT0 to ENT15 registers and make sure ENT15 is read last. Values from all registers should appear random. If SDCTL[SAMP\_SIZE] is less than 512, only the bits up to SAMP\_SIZE will be random. For example, if SAMP\_SIZE is 64, only bits in ENT14 and ENT15 will be random and valid.
7. Read out entropy values again from ENT0 to ENT15 registers. Verify that zeros are in all registers now after ENT15 is read.
8. Switch TRNG into programing mode by writing MCTL[PRGM] = 1.
9. Turn on the ENT\_VAL interrupt functionality by setting INT\_CTRL[ENT\_VAL] = 1 and INT\_MASK[ENT\_VAL] = 1.
10. Switch TRNG into running mode by setting MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

11. Wait or poll for entropy valid (MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1).
12. When entropy is ready, the active-low interrupt is expected to trigger (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 0). This should also be reflected in the interrupt status register (INT\_STATUS[ENT\_VAL] = 1).
13. Read out all entropy registers or at least just ENT15 to clear entropy and start generation again.
14. The active-low interrupt is expected to be cleared (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 1). This should also be reflected in the interrupt status register (INT\_STATUS[ENT\_VAL] = 0).
15. Wait or poll for entropy valid (MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1).
16. When entropy is ready, the active-low interrupt is expected to trigger (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 0). This should also be reflected in the interrupt status register (INT\_STATUS[ENT\_VAL] = 1).
17. The interrupt can be temporarily cleared before reading from ENT15 by
  - sleeping or waiting for 5 to 50 clocks, then
  - temporarily clearing the interrupt (INT\_CTRL[ENT\_VAL] = 0), then
  - sleeping or waiting for 5 to 50 clocks.
18. The active-low interrupt is expected to be cleared (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 1). This should also be reflected in the interrupt status register (INT\_STATUS[ENT\_VAL] = 0).
19. Read out all entropy registers or at least just ENT15 to clear entropy and start generation again.
20. Poll for the active-low interrupt port (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 0).
21. Read out all entropy registers or at least just ENT15 to clear entropy and start generation again.
22. Now mask any future ENT\_VAL interrupt by setting INT\_CTRL[ENT\_VAL] = 0 and INT\_MASK[ENT\_VAL] = 0.
23. Even though the interrupts are now masked, the ENT\_VAL event can still be polled by polling for MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1.
24. When MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1 is polled, the active-low interrupt port should NOT assert (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 1). The corresponding interrupt should also not assert in the interrupt status register (INT\_STATUS[ENT\_VAL] = 0).
25. The ENT\_VAL interrupt can be enabled again by setting INT\_MASK[ENT\_VAL] = 1.
26. Read out all entropy registers or at least just ENT15 to clear entropy and start generation again.
27. Poll for the active-low interrupt port (ipi\_rng\_int\_b = 0). The interrupt functionality should be enabled again.

### 9.5.3 Sample Size Adjustment Programming Flow

The sample size (SDCTL[SAMP\_SIZE]) parameter can be adjusted to speed up or to limit the number of bits that an application wants to use. The higher the sample size, the better the entropy quality (the internal self tests are more sensitive in monitoring entropy quality. However, this slows down entropy generation. The tradeoff between the speed versus the quality of entropy needs to be balanced per application.

Every time the sample size parameter is updated, the bounds of the built-in self tests (BIST) must also be updated to match the acceptable error ranges for the new sample size. The permutations can be almost unlimited.

Below are the empirical options for some sample size parameters and their corresponding self bounds adjustment. For these options, the "else" case will be the fastest but with the lowest entropy quality of only 128 bits. In other words, there will only be valid random bits in registers ENT12 to ENT15. Bits in other registers will be invalid.

```
// example Seed Control Register (SDCTL) parameters
samp_size      = 128; // decimal
ent_dly_curr = 1000; // decimal

// target rejection ratio = 1.00E-07

if ( samp_size == 256 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x0001001F ); // retry once, long run max 31

                                // min range max
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCML,   0x005600AB ); // 85   86 171 [     monobit limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L,  0x0038003f ); // 7    56 63 [run length 1 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L,  0x00260026 ); // 0    38 38 [run length 2 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L,  0x001A0019 ); // -1   26 25 [run length 3 limit]

    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L,  0x00120011 ); // -1   18 17 [run length 4 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L,  0x000E000D ); // -1   14 13 [run length 5 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x000D000C ); // -1   13 12 [run length 6+ limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x0000001FF );
    reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x0000000FC ); // 260  252 511 [           poker test]
} else if ( samp_size == 384 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x0001001F ); // retry once, long run max 31

                                // min range max
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCML,   0x008B00F4 ); // 139  105 244 [     monobit limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L,  0x00450056 ); // 17   69 86 [run length 1 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L,  0x002F0032 ); // 3    47 50 [run length 2 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L,  0x00210020 ); // -1   33 32 [run length 3 limit]

    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L,  0x00170016 ); // -1   23 22 [run length 4 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L,  0x0010000F ); // -1   16 15 [run length 5 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x0010000F ); // -1   16 15 [run length 6+ limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x0000003BF );
    reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x00000017B ); // 581  379 959 [           poker test]
} else if ( samp_size == 512 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x00010020 ); // retry once, long run max 32

                                // min range max
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCML,   0x007A013D ); // 195  122 317 [     monobit limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L,  0x0050006B ); // 27   80 107 [run length 1 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L,  0x0037003E ); // 7    55 62 [run length 2 limit]
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L,  0x00270027 ); // 0    39 39 [run length 3 limit]

    reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L,  0x001B001A ); // -1   27 26 [run length 4 limit]
```

## Operation

```

reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L, 0x00130012 ); // -1 19 18 [run length 5 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x00120011 ); // -1 18 17 [run length 6+ limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x00000640 );
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x0000023A ); // 1031 570 1600 [ poker test]
} else if ( samp_size == 1000 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x00010021 ); // retry once, long run max 33

                                // min range max
reg32_write( TRNG_SCML, 0x00AA0249 ); // 415 170 585 [ monobit limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L, 0x007000B8 ); // 72 112 184 [run length 1 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L, 0x004D0068 ); // 27 77 104 [run length 2 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L, 0x0037003E ); // 7 55 62 [run length 3 limit]

reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L, 0x00280027 ); // -1 40 39 [run length 4 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L, 0x001B001A ); // -1 27 26 [run length 5 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x001A0019 ); // -1 26 25 [run length 6+ limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x00001329 );
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x000003DB ); // 3919 987 4905 [ poker test]
} else if ( samp_size == 1024 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x00010021 ); // retry once, long run max 33

                                // min range max
reg32_write( TRNG_SCML, 0x00AC0256 ); // 426 172 598 [ monobit limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L, 0x007200BC ); // 74 114 188 [run length 1 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L, 0x004D0069 ); // 28 77 105 [run length 2 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L, 0x0038003F ); // 7 56 63 [run length 3 limit]

reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L, 0x00280028 ); // 0 40 40 [run length 4 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L, 0x001B001A ); // -1 27 26 [run length 5 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x001B001A ); // -1 27 26 [run length 6+ limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x00001438 );
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x0000042C ); // 4109 1068 5176 [ poker test]
} else if ( samp_size == 2000 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x00010022 ); // retry once, long run max 34

                                // min range max
reg32_write( TRNG_SCML, 0x00F00460 ); // 880 240 1120 [ monobit limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L, 0x009F014D ); // 174 159 333 [run length 1 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L, 0x006C00B5 ); // 73 108 181 [run length 2 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L, 0x004E0069 ); // 27 78 105 [run length 3 limit]

reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L, 0x0039003F ); // 6 57 63 [run length 4 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L, 0x00290028 ); // -1 41 40 [run length 5 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x00280028 ); // 0 40 40 [run length 6+ limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x000044D8 );
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x000007B7 ); // 15650 1975 17624 [ poker test]
} else if ( samp_size == 2500 ) {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x00010022 ); //retry once, long run max 34

                                // min range max
reg32_write( TRNG_SCML, 0x010C0568 ); // 1116 268 1384 [ monobit limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L, 0x00B10194 ); // 227 177 404 [run length 1 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L, 0x007900DC ); // 99 121 220 [run length 2 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L, 0x0057007D ); // 38 87 125 [run length 3 limit]

reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L, 0x003F004A ); // 11 63 74 [run length 4 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L, 0x002D002E ); // 1 45 46 [run length 5 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x002D002E ); // 1 45 46 [run length 6+ limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x00006920 );
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x000009A3 ); // 24446 2467 26912 [ poker test]
} else {
    reg32_write( TRNG_SCMISC, 0x0001001D ); // retry once, long run max 29

                                // min range max
reg32_write( TRNG_SCML, 0x003D005E ); // 33 61 94 monobit limit
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR1L, 0x00270027 ); // 0 39 39 [run length 1 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR2L, 0x00190018 ); // -1 25 24 [run length 2 limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR3L, 0x00120011 ); // -1 18 17 [run length 3 limit]

```

```

reg32_write( TRNG_SCR4L, 0x000D000C ); // -1    13  12 [run length 4  limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR5L, 0x000A0009 ); // -1    10   9 [run length 5  limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_SCR6PL, 0x000A0009 ); // -1    10   9 [run length 6+ limit]
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRMAX, 0x000000DA );
reg32_write( TRNG_PKRRNG, 0x00000099 ); // 66   153 218 [           poker test]
}

// adjust delay
reg32_write( TRNG_SDCTL, ( (uint32_t)ent_dly_curr << 16 |
                           (uint32_t)samp_size           )
);

```

Once the sample size parameter has been set, entropy can be requested in a normally without generating any errors.

## 9.6 Other Applications

The TRNG can also be used by a post-processing pseudo-random number generator function. For example, TRNG can be used to seed a hardware- or software-based implementation of a deterministic random bit generator (DRBG) as defined by SP800-90.

## 9.7 TRNG register descriptions

All accesses of undefined addresses always return zero and assert IPS transfer error. Writes to undefined and read-only addresses are ignored. Undefined addresses are those undocumented, protected or reserved addresses within and outside the range of the addresses defined in the memory map below. The register addresses shown in the Memory Map below represents how these registers are accessed over the register bus as 32-bit words. Accesses to registers must use full-word (32-bit) reads or writes.

The format and fields in each TRNG register are defined below. Some of the register format figures apply to several different registers. In such cases a different register name will be associated with each of the register offset addresses that appear at the top of the register format figure. Although these registers share the same format, they are independent registers. In addition, many registers can be accessed at multiple addresses. In these cases there will be a single register name and the list of addresses at which that register is accessible will be indicated as aliases. Unless noted in the individual register descriptions, registers are reset only at Power-On Reset (POR) or with an asynchronous system hard reset.

## 9.7.1 TRNG memory map

TRNG base address: 400C\_C000h

Offset	Register	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value
0h	Miscellaneous Control Register (MCTL)	32	RW	0001_2001h
4h	Statistical Check Miscellaneous Register (SCMISC)	32	RW	0001_0022h
8h	Poker Range Register (PKRRNG)	32	RW	0000_09A3h
Ch	Poker Maximum Limit Register (PKRMAX)	32	RW	0000_6920h
Ch	Poker Square Calculation Result Register (PKRSQ)	32	RO	0000_0000h
10h	Seed Control Register (SDCTL)	32	RW	0C80_09C4h
14h	Sparse Bit Limit Register (SBLIM)	32	RW	0000_003Fh
14h	Total Samples Register (TOTSAM)	32	RO	0000_0000h
18h	Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register (FRQMIN)	32	RW	0000_0640h
1Ch	Frequency Count Register (FRQCNT)	32	RO	0000_0000h
1Ch	Frequency Count Maximum Limit Register (FRQMAX)	32	RW	0000_6400h
20h	Statistical Check Monobit Count Register (SCMC)	32	RO	0000_0000h
20h	Statistical Check Monobit Limit Register (SCML)	32	RW	010C_0568h
24h	Statistical Check Run Length 1 Count Register (SCR1C)	32	RO	0000_0000h
24h	Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit Register (SCR1L)	32	RW	00B2_0195h
28h	Statistical Check Run Length 2 Count Register (SCR2C)	32	RO	0000_0000h
28h	Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit Register (SCR2L)	32	RW	007A_00DCh
2Ch	Statistical Check Run Length 3 Count Register (SCR3C)	32	RO	0000_0000h
2Ch	Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit Register (SCR3L)	32	RW	0058_007Dh
30h	Statistical Check Run Length 4 Count Register (SCR4C)	32	RO	0000_0000h
30h	Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit Register (SCR4L)	32	RW	0040_004Bh
34h	Statistical Check Run Length 5 Count Register (SCR5C)	32	RO	0000_0000h
34h	Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit Register (SCR5L)	32	RW	002E_002Fh
38h	Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Count Register (SCR6PC)	32	RO	0000_0000h
38h	Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit Register (SCR6PL)	32	RW	002E_002Fh
3Ch	Status Register (STATUS)	32	RO	0000_0000h
40h - 7Ch	Entropy Read Register (ENT0 - ENT15)	32	RO	0000_0000h
80h	Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 Register (PKRCNT10)	32	RO	0000_0000h
84h	Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 Register (PKRCNT32)	32	RO	0000_0000h
88h	Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 Register (PKRCNT54)	32	RO	0000_0000h
8Ch	Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 Register (PKRCNT76)	32	RO	0000_0000h
90h	Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 Register (PKRCNT98)	32	RO	0000_0000h
94h	Statistical Check Poker Count B and A Register (PKRCNTBA)	32	RO	0000_0000h
98h	Statistical Check Poker Count D and C Register (PKRCNTDC)	32	RO	0000_0000h
9Ch	Statistical Check Poker Count F and E Register (PKRCNTFE)	32	RO	0000_0000h
A0h	Security Configuration Register (SEC_CFG)	32	RW	0000_0000h

Table continues on the next page...

Offset	Register	Width (In bits)	Access	Reset value
A4h	Interrupt Control Register (INT_CTRL)	32	RW	0000_0007h
A8h	Mask Register (INT_MASK)	32	RW	0000_0000h
ACh	Interrupt Status Register (INT_STATUS)	32	RO	0000_0000h
F0h	Version ID Register (MS) (VID1)	32	RO	0030_0301h
F4h	Version ID Register (LS) (VID2)	32	RO	0000_0000h

## 9.7.2 Miscellaneous Control Register (MCTL)

### 9.7.2.1 Offset

Register	Offset
MCTL	0h

### 9.7.2.2 Function

This register is intended to be used for programming, configuring, and testing the RNG. It is the main register to read/write in order to enable entropy generation, to stop entropy generation, and to block access to entropy registers. This is done via the PRGM bit below.

The Miscellaneous Control Register is a read/write register used to control the RNG's True Random Number Generator (TRNG) access, operation and test.

#### NOTE

Note that in many cases two RNG registers share the same address, and a particular register at the shared address is selected based upon the value in the PRGM field of the MCTL register.

### 9.7.2.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved														PRGM		
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	LRUN_CONT	TSTOP_OK	ER_R	TST_OUT	ENT_VAL	FCT_VAL	FCT_FAIL	FOR_SCLK			UNUSED5	UNUSED4	OSC_DIV			
W	Reserved		W1C						RST_DE_F	0	0	0	0	0	0	SAMP_MODE	
Reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

### 9.7.2.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-17 —	Reserved
16 PRGM	Programming Mode Select. When this bit is 1, the TRNG is in Program Mode, otherwise it is in Run Mode. No Entropy value will be generated while the TRNG is in Program Mode. Note that different RNG registers are accessible at the same address depending on whether PRGM is set to 1 or 0. This is noted in the RNG register descriptions.
15 —	Reserved
14 LRUN_CONT	Long run count continues between entropy generations. If set to 1, the internal test's long_run count at the start of an entropy generation cycle will continue where it left off at the end of the previous entropy generation. If set to 0, then normal LRUN count is restarted for each entropy re-generation.
13 TSTOP_OK	TRNG_OK_TO_STOP. Software can check that this bit is a 1 before transitioning TRNG to low power mode (TRNG clock stopped). TRNG turns on the TRNG free-running ring oscillator whenever new entropy is being generated and turns off the ring oscillator when entropy generation is complete. If the TRNG clock is stopped while the TRNG ring oscillator is running, the oscillator will continue running even though the TRNG clock is stopped. To make sure the ring oscillator is stopped, assert ipg_stop input and verify ipg_rng_stop_ack is asserted after at least two (2) clock cycles. TSTOP_OK is asserted when the TRNG ring oscillator is not running.
12 ERR	Read: Error status. 1 = error detected. 0 = no error. Write: Write 1 to clear errors. Writing 0 has no effect.
11 TST_OUT	Read only: Test point inside ring oscillator.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
10 ENT_VAL	Read only: Entropy Valid. Will assert after an entropy value is generated. Will be cleared at most one (1) bus clock cycle after reading the ENT15 register. (ENT0 through ENT14 should be read before reading ENT15).
9 FCT_VAL	Read only: Frequency Count Valid. Indicates that a valid frequency count may be read from FRQCN.
8 FCT_FAIL	Read only: Frequency Count Fail. The frequency counter has detected a failure. This may be due to improper programming of the FRQMAX and/or FRQMIN registers, or a hardware failure in the ring oscillator. This error may be cleared by writing a 1 to the ERR bit.
7 FOR_SCLK	Force System Clock. If set, the system clock is used to operate the TRNG, instead of the ring oscillator. This is for test use only, and indeterminate results may occur. This bit is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously to writing this bit. This bit is cleared by writing the RST_DEF bit to 1.
6 RST_DEF	Reset Defaults. Writing a 1 to this bit clears various TRNG registers, and bits within registers, to their default state. This bit is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously to writing this bit. Reading this bit always produces a 0.
5 UNUSED5	This bit is unused. Always reads zero.
4 UNUSED4	This bit is unused. Always reads zero.
3-2 OSC_DIV	Oscillator Divide. Determines the amount of dividing done to the ring oscillator before it is used by the TRNG.  This field is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously to writing this field. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the RST_DEF bit to 1.  00b - use ring oscillator with no divide 01b - use ring oscillator divided-by-2 10b - use ring oscillator divided-by-4 11b - use ring oscillator divided-by-8
1-0 SAMP_MODE	Sample Mode. Determines the method of sampling the ring oscillator while generating the Entropy value:  This field is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously with writing this field. This field is cleared to the POR default value by writing the RST_DEF bit to 1.  00b - use Von Neumann data into both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker 01b - use raw data into both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker 10b - use Von Neumann data into Entropy shifter. Use raw data into Statistical Checker 11b - undefined/reserved.

## 9.7.3 Statistical Check Miscellaneous Register (SCMISC)

### 9.7.3.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SCMISC	4h

### 9.7.3.2 Function

The Statistical Check Miscellaneous Register contains the Long Run Maximum Limit value and the Retry Count value. This register is accessible only when the MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, otherwise this register will read zeroes, and cannot be written.

### 9.7.3.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	Reserved								RTY_CT							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	Reserved								LRUN_MAX							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0

### 9.7.3.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-20 —	Reserved
19-16 RTY_CT	RETRY COUNT. If a statistical check fails during the TRNG Entropy Generation, the RTY_CT value indicates the number of times a retry should occur before generating an error. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-8 —	Reserved
7-0 LRUN_MAX	LONG RUN MAX LIMIT. This value is the largest allowable number of consecutive samples of all 1, or all 0, that is allowed during the Entropy generation. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the POR reset value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

### 9.7.4 Poker Range Register (PKRRNG)

### 9.7.4.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRRNG	8h

### 9.7.4.2 Function

The Poker Range Register defines the difference between the TRNG Poker Maximum Limit and the minimum limit. These limits are used during the TRNG Statistical Check Poker Test.

### 9.7.4.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PKR_RNG															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1

### 9.7.4.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 —	Reserved Always 0.
15-0 PKR_RNG	Poker Range. During the TRNG Statistical Checks, a "Poker Test" is run which requires a maximum and minimum limit. The maximum is programmed in the PKRMAX[PKR_MAX] register, and the minimum is derived by subtracting the PKR_RNG value from the programmed maximum value. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1. Note that the minimum allowable Poker result is PKR_MAX - PKR_RNG + 1.

## 9.7.5 Poker Maximum Limit Register (PKRMAX)

### 9.7.5.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
PKRMAX	Ch	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.5.2 Function

The Poker Maximum Limit Register defines Maximum Limit allowable during the TRNG Statistical Check Poker Test. Note that this offset (0x0C) is used as PKRMAX only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as the PKRSQ readback register.

### 9.7.5.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.5.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24 —	Reserved
23-0 PKR_MAX	Poker Maximum Limit.  During the TRNG Statistical Checks, a "Poker Test" is run which requires a maximum and minimum limit. The maximum allowable result is programmed in the PKRMAX[PKR_MAX] register. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1. Note that the PKRMAX and PKRRNG registers combined are used to define

Field	Function
	the minimum allowable Poker result, which is PKR_MAX - PKR_RNG + 1. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0, this register address is used to read the Poker Test Square Calculation result in register PKRSQ, as defined in the following section.

## 9.7.6 Poker Square Calculation Result Register (PKRSQ)

### 9.7.6.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
PKRSQ	Ch	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

### 9.7.6.2 Function

The Poker Square Calculation Result Register is a read-only register used to read the result of the TRNG Statistical Check Poker Test's Square Calculation. This test starts with the PKRMAX value and decreases towards a final result, which is read here. For the Poker Test to pass, this final result must be less than the programmed PKRRNG value. Note that this offset (0x0C) is used as PKRMAX if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as PKRSQ readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.6.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R				0										PKR_SQ		
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R								PKR_SQ								
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 9.7.6.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24 —	Reserved
23-0 PKR_SQ	Poker Square Calculation Result.  During the TRNG Statistical Checks, a "Poker Test" is run which starts with the value PKRMAX[PKR_MAX]. This value decreases according to a "sum of squares" algorithm, and must remain greater than zero, but less than the PKRRNG[PKR_RNG] limit. The resulting value may be read through this register, if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Poker Test Maximum Limit in register PKRMAX, as defined in the previous section.

## 9.7.7 Seed Control Register (SDCTL)

### 9.7.7.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SDCTL	10h

### 9.7.7.2 Function

The Seed Control Register contains two fields. One field defines the length (in system clocks) of each Entropy sample (ENT\_DLY), and the other field indicates the number of samples that will be taken during each TRNG Entropy generation (SAMP\_SIZE).

### 9.7.7.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	ENT_DLY															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SAMP_SIZE															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0

### 9.7.7.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 ENT_DLY	Entropy Delay. Defines the length (in system clocks) of each Entropy sample taken. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to its reset value at POR.
15-0 SAMP_SIZE	Sample Size. Defines the total number of Entropy samples that will be taken during Entropy generation. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.8 Sparse Bit Limit Register (SBLIM)

### 9.7.8.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SBLIM	14h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.8.2 Function

The Sparse Bit Limit Register is used when Von Neumann sampling is selected during Entropy Generation. It defines the maximum number of consecutive Von Neumann samples which may be discarded before an error is generated. Note that this address (0x14) is used as SBLIM only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TOTSAM readback register.

### 9.7.8.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved							SB_LIM									
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1

### 9.7.8.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-10 —	Reserved Always 0.
9-0 SB_LIM	Sparse Bit Limit. During Von Neumann sampling (if enabled by MCTL[SAMP_MODE], samples are discarded if two consecutive raw samples are both 0 or both 1. If this discarding occurs for a long period of time, it indicates that there is insufficient Entropy. The Sparse Bit Limit defines the maximum number of consecutive samples that may be discarded before an error is generated. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0, this register address is used to read the Total Samples count in register TOTSAM, as defined in the following section.

## 9.7.9 Total Samples Register (TOTSAM)

### 9.7.9.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
TOTSAM	14h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.9.2 Function

The Total Samples Register is a read-only register used to read the total number of samples taken during Entropy generation. It is used to give an indication of how often a sample is actually used during Von Neumann sampling. Note that this offset (0x14) is used as SBLIM if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TOTSAM readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.9.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved												TOT_SAM			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TOT_SAM															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.9.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-20 —	Reserved Always 0.
19-0 TOT_SAM	Total Samples. During Entropy generation, the total number of raw samples is counted. This count is useful in determining how often a sample is used during Von Neumann sampling. The count may be read through this register, if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Sparse Bit Limit in register SBLIM, as defined in the previous section.

## 9.7.10 Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register (FRQMIN)

### 9.7.10.1 Offset

Register	Offset
FRQMIN	18h

### 9.7.10.2 Function

The Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register defines the minimum allowable count taken by the Entropy sample counter during each Entropy sample. During any sample period, if the count is less than this programmed minimum, a Frequency Count Fail is flagged in MCTL[FCT\_FAIL] and an error is generated.

### 9.7.10.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								FRQ_MIN							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FRQ_MIN															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.10.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22	Reserved Always 0.
—	
21-0 FRQ_MIN	Frequency Count Minimum Limit. Defines the minimum allowable count taken during each entropy sample. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to its reset value at POR.

## 9.7.11 Frequency Count Register (FRQCNT)

### 9.7.11.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
FRQCNT	1Ch	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.11.2 Function

The Frequency Count Register is a read-only register used to read the frequency counter within the TRNG entropy generator. Note that this offset (0x1C) is used as FRQMAX if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as live FRQCNT readback register, as described here. This register must be read once, as a full 32-bit value. A subsequent read is only valid when MCTL[FCT\_VAL] bit is HIGH. A read clears this register. The next read when MCTL[FCT\_VAL] bit is HIGH must be treated as a different value from the previous one, even though the counts might be the same.

### 9.7.11.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved												FRQ_CT			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FRQ_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.11.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22 —	Reserved Always 0.
21-0 FRQ_CT	Frequency Count. Reads a sample frequency count taken during entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Frequency Maximum Limit in register FRQMAX, as defined in the FRQ_MAX field.

## 9.7.12 Frequency Count Maximum Limit Register (FRQMAX)

### 9.7.12.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
FRQMAX	1Ch	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.12.2 Function

The Frequency Count Maximum Limit Register defines the maximum allowable count taken by the Entropy sample counter during each Entropy sample. During any sample period, if the count is greater than this programmed maximum, a Frequency Count Fail is flagged in MCTL[FCT\_FAIL] and an error is generated. Note that this address (001C) is used as FRQMAX only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as FRQCNT readback register.

### 9.7.12.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								FRQ_MAX							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FRQ_MAX															
W																
Reset	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.12.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22 —	Reserved Always 0.
21-0 FRQ_MAX	Frequency Counter Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable count taken during each entropy sample. This field is writable only if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field is cleared to its reset value at POR. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0, this register address is used to read the Frequency Count result in register FRQCNT, as defined in the FRQ_CT field.

## 9.7.13 Statistical Check Monobit Count Register (SCMC)

### 9.7.13.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCMC	20h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.13.2 Function

The Statistical Check Monobit Count Register is a read-only register used to read the final monobit count after entropy generation. This counter starts with the value in SCML[MONO\_MAX], and is decremented each time a one is sampled. Note that this offset (0x20) is used as SCML if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCMC readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.13.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MONO_CT																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.13.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 —	Reserved Always 0.
15-0 MONO_CT	Monobit Count. Reads the final Monobit count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0. Note that if MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Statistical Check Monobit Limit in register SCML, as defined in the previous section.

## 9.7.14 Statistical Check Monobit Limit Register (SCML)

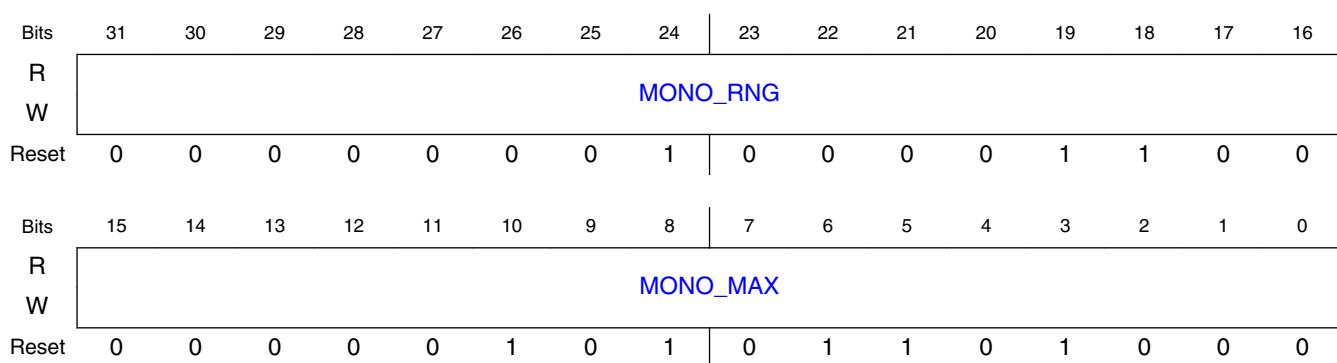
### 9.7.14.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCML	20h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.14.2 Function

The Statistical Check Monobit Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of ones/zero detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of ones/zeros generated must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of ones/zeros generated must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this offset (0x20) is used as SCML only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCMC readback register.

### 9.7.14.3 Diagram



### 9.7.14.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 MONO_RNG	Monobit Range. The number of ones/zeroes detected during entropy generation must be greater than MONO_MAX - MONO_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-0 MONO_MAX	Monobit Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable count taken during entropy generation. The number of ones/zeroes detected during entropy generation must be less than MONO_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.15 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Count Register (SCR1C)

### 9.7.15.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR1C	24h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.15.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 1 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 1 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in SCR1L[RUN1\_MAX]. The R1\_1\_CT decrements each time a single one is sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R1\_0\_CT decrements each time a single zero is sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x24) is used as SCR1L if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR1C readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.15.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved																
W		R1_1_CT															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																
W		R1_0_CT															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.15.4 Fields

Field	Function
31	Reserved Always 0.
—	
30-16 R1_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 1 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 1 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15	Reserved Always 0.
—	
14-0 R1_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 1 Count. Reads the final Runs of Zeroes, length 1 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.16 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit Register (SCR1L)

### 9.7.16.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR1L	24h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.16.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 1 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 1 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 1 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x24) is used as SCR1L only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as SCR1C readback register.

### 9.7.16.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved	RUN1_RNG														
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	RUN1_MAX														
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1

### 9.7.16.4 Fields

Field	Function
31 —	Reserved Always 0.
30-16 RUN1_RNG	Run Length 1 Range. The number of runs of length 1 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN1_MAX - RUN1_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15 —	Reserved Always 0.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
14-0 RUN1_MAX	Run Length 1 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 1 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 1 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN1_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.17 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Count Register (SCR2C)

### 9.7.17.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR2C	28h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.17.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 2 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 2 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in SCR2L[RUN2\_MAX]. The R2\_1\_CT decrements each time two consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R2\_0\_CT decrements each time two consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x28) is used as SCR2L if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR2C readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.17.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								R2_1_CT								
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								R2_0_CT								
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.17.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-30	Reserved Always 0.
—	
29-16 R2_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 2 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 2 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-14	Reserved Always 0.
—	
13-0 R2_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 2 Count. Reads the final Runs of Zeroes, length 2 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.18 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit Register (SCR2L)

### 9.7.18.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR2L	28h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.18.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 2 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 2 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 2 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x28) is used as SCR2L only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as SCR2C readback register.

### 9.7.18.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved															
W	RUN2_RNG															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved															
W	RUN2_MAX															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0

### 9.7.18.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-30 —	Reserved Always 0.
29-16 RUN2_RNG	Run Length 2 Range. The number of runs of length 2 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN2_MAX - RUN2_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-14 —	Reserved Always 0.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
13-0 RUN2_MAX	Run Length 2 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 2 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 2 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN2_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.19 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Count Register (SCR3C)

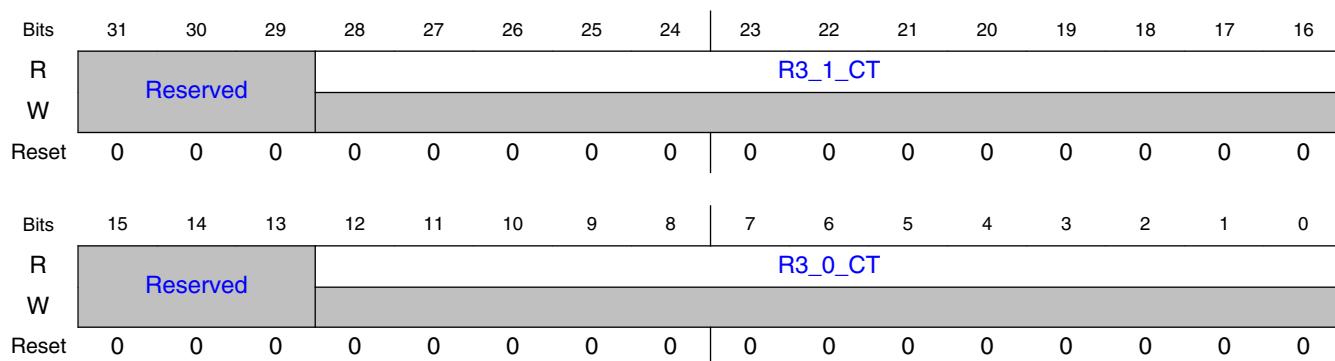
### 9.7.19.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR3C	2Ch	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.19.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 3 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 3 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in SCR3L[RUN3\_MAX]. The R3\_1\_CT decrements each time three consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R3\_0\_CT decrements each time three consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x2C) is used as SCR3L if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR3C readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.19.3 Diagram



## 9.7.19.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-29 —	Reserved Always 0.
28-16 R3_1_CT	Runs of Ones, Length 3 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 3 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-13 —	Reserved Always 0.
12-0 R3_0_CT	Runs of Zeroes, Length 3 Count. Reads the final Runs of Zeroes, length 3 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.20 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit Register (SCR3L)

### 9.7.20.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR3L	2Ch	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.20.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 3 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 3 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 3 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x2C) is used as SCR3L only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as SCR3C readback register.

### 9.7.20.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved			RUN3_RNG												
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved			RUN3_MAX												
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1

### 9.7.20.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-29	Reserved Always 0.
—	
28-16 RUN3_RNG	Run Length 3 Range. The number of runs of length 3 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN3_MAX - RUN3_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-13	Reserved Always 0.
—	
12-0 RUN3_MAX	Run Length 3 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 3 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 3 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN3_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.21 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Count Register (SCR4C)

### 9.7.21.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR4C	30h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.21.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 4 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 4 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in SCR4L[RUN4\_MAX]. The R4\_1\_CT decrements each time four consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R4\_0\_CT decrements each time four consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x30) is used as SCR4L if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR4C readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.21.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved				R4_1_CT											
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved				R4_0_CT											
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.21.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-28 —	Reserved Always 0.
27-16 R4_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 4 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 4 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-12 —	Reserved Always 0.
11-0 R4_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 4 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 4 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.22 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit Register (SCR4L)

### 9.7.22.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR4L	30h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.22.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 4 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 4 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 4 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x30) is used as SCR4L only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as SCR4C readback register.

### 9.7.22.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved				RUN4_RNG											
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved				RUN4_MAX											
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1

### 9.7.22.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-28	Reserved Always 0.
—	

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
27-16 RUN4_RNG	Run Length 4 Range. The number of runs of length 4 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN4_MAX - RUN4_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-12 —	Reserved Always 0.
11-0 RUN4_MAX	Run Length 4 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 4 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 4 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN4_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.23 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Count Register (SCR5C)

### 9.7.23.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR5C	34h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.23.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 5 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 5 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in SCR5L[RUN5\_MAX]. The R5\_1\_CT decrements each time five consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R5\_0\_CT decrements each time five consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x34) is used as SCR5L if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR5C readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.23.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved				R5_1_CT												
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved				R5_0_CT												
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.23.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27	Reserved Always 0.
—	
26-16 R5_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 5 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 5 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-11	Reserved Always 0.
—	
10-0 R5_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 5 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 5 count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.24 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit Register (SCR5L)

### 9.7.24.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR5L	34h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.24.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 5 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 5 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 5 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x34) is used as SCR5L only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as SCR5C readback register.

### 9.7.24.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								RUN5_RNG							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								RUN5_MAX							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1

### 9.7.24.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27 —	Reserved Always 0.
26-16 RUN5_RNG	Run Length 5 Range. The number of runs of length 5 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN5_MAX - RUN5_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-11 —	Reserved Always 0.
10-0 RUN5_MAX	Run Length 5 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 5 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 5 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN5_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.25 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Count Register (SCR6PC)

### 9.7.25.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR6PC	38h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 0

### 9.7.25.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 6+ counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in SCR6PL[RUN6P\_MAX]. The R6P\_1\_CT decrements each time six or more consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R6P\_0\_CT decrements each time six or more consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x38) is used as SCR6PL if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR6PC readback register, as described here.

### 9.7.25.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved					R6P_1_CT										
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved					R6P_0_CT										
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.25.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27	Reserved Always 0.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
—	
26-16 R6P_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 6+ Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 6+ count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-11	Reserved Always 0.
—	
10-0 R6P_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 6+ Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 6+ count after entropy generation. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.26 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit Register (SCR6PL)

### 9.7.26.1 Offset

Register	Offset	Description
SCR6PL	38h	Accessible at this address when MCTL[PRGM] = 1

### 9.7.26.2 Function

The Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 6 or more detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 6 or more (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 6 or more must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this offset (0x38) is used as SCR6PL only if MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as SCR6PC readback register.

### 9.7.26.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved					RUN6P_RNG										
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved					RUN6P_MAX										
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1

### 9.7.26.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27 —	Reserved Always 0.
26-16 RUN6P_RNG	Run Length 6+ Range. The number of runs of length 6 or more (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN6P_MAX - RUN6P_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-11 —	Reserved Always 0.
10-0 RUN6P_MAX	Run Length 6+ Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 6 or more (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 6 or more detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN6P_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

## 9.7.27 Status Register (STATUS)

### 9.7.27.1 Offset

Register	Offset
STATUS	3Ch

### 9.7.27.2 Function

Various statistical tests are run as a normal part of the TRNG's entropy generation process. The least-significant 16 bits of the STATUS register reflect the result of each of these tests. The status of these bits will be valid when the TRNG has finished its entropy generation process. Software can determine when this occurs by polling the ENT\_VAL bit in the Miscellaneous Control Register.

Note that there is a very small probability that a statistical test will fail even though the TRNG is operating properly. If this happens the TRNG will automatically retry the entire entropy generation process, including running all the statistical tests. The value in RETRY\_CT is decremented each time an entropy generation retry occurs. If a statistical check fails when the retry count is nonzero, a retry is initiated. But if a statistical check fails when the retry count is zero, an error is generated by the RNG. By default RETRY\_CT is initialized to 1, but software can increase the retry count by writing to the RTY\_CT field in the SCMISC register.

All 0s will be returned if this register address is read while the RNG is in Program Mode (see PRGM field in MCTL register). If this register is read while the RNG is in Run Mode the value returned will be formatted as follows.

### 9.7.27.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved												RETRY_CT			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TFMB	TFPP	TFL_R	TFS_B	TF6PBR1	TF6PBR0	TF5BR1	TF5BR0	TF4BR1	TF4BR0	TF3BR1	TF3BR0	TF2BR1	TF2BR0	TF1BR1	TF1BR0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.27.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-20	Reserved Always 0.

*Table continues on the next page...*

Field	Function
—	
19-16 RETRY_CT	RETRY COUNT. This represents the current number of entropy generation retries left before a statistical test failure will cause the RNG to generate an error condition.
15 TFMB	Test Fail, Mono Bit. If TFMB=1, the Mono Bit Test has failed.
14 TFP	Test Fail, Poker. If TFP=1, the Poker Test has failed.
13 TFLR	Test Fail, Long Run. If TFLR=1, the Long Run Test has failed.
12 TFSB	Test Fail, Sparse Bit. If TFSB=1, the Sparse Bit Test has failed.
11 TF6PBR1	Test Fail, 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF6PBR1=1, the 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
10 TF6PBR0	Test Fail, 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF6PBR0=1, the 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
9 TF5BR1	Test Fail, 5-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF5BR1=1, the 5-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
8 TF5BR0	Test Fail, 5-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF5BR0=1, the 5-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
7 TF4BR1	Test Fail, 4-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF4BR1=1, the 4-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
6 TF4BR0	Test Fail, 4-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF4BR0=1, the 4-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
5 TF3BR1	Test Fail, 3-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF3BR1=1, the 3-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
4 TF3BR0	Test Fail, 3-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF3BR0=1, the 3-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
3 TF2BR1	Test Fail, 2-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF2BR1=1, the 2-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
2 TF2BR0	Test Fail, 2-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF2BR0=1, the 2-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
1 TF1BR1	Test Fail, 1-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF1BR1=1, the 1-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
0 TF1BR0	Test Fail, 1-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF1BR0=1, the 1-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.

## 9.7.28 Entropy Read Register (ENT0 - ENT15)

### 9.7.28.1 Offset

For  $a = 0$  to 15:

Register	Offset	Description
ENTa	40h + ( $a \times 4h$ )	Word a

### 9.7.28.2 Function

The RNG TRNG can be programmed to generate an entropy value that is readable via the SkyBlue bus. Once the entropy value has been generated, the MCTL[ENT\_VAL] bit will be set to 1. At this point, ENT0 through ENT15 may be read to retrieve the 512-bit entropy value. Note that once ENT15 is read, the entropy value will be cleared and a new value will begin generation, so it is important that ENT15 be read last. These registers are readable only when MCTL[PRGM] = 0 (Run Mode) and MCTL[ENT\_VAL] = 1. After at most one (1) bus clock cycle of reading a valid ENT15 register value, reading any ENT0 through ENT15 register would return zeros.

### 9.7.28.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									ENT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									ENT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.28.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0 ENT	Entropy Value. Will be non-zero only if MCTL[PRGM] = 0 Run Mode) and MCTL[ENT_VAL] = 1 (Entropy Valid). The most significant bits of the entropy are read from the lowest offset, and the least significant bits are read from the highest offset. Note that reading the highest offset also clears the entire entropy value, and starts a new entropy generation.

## 9.7.29 Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 Register (PKRCNT10)

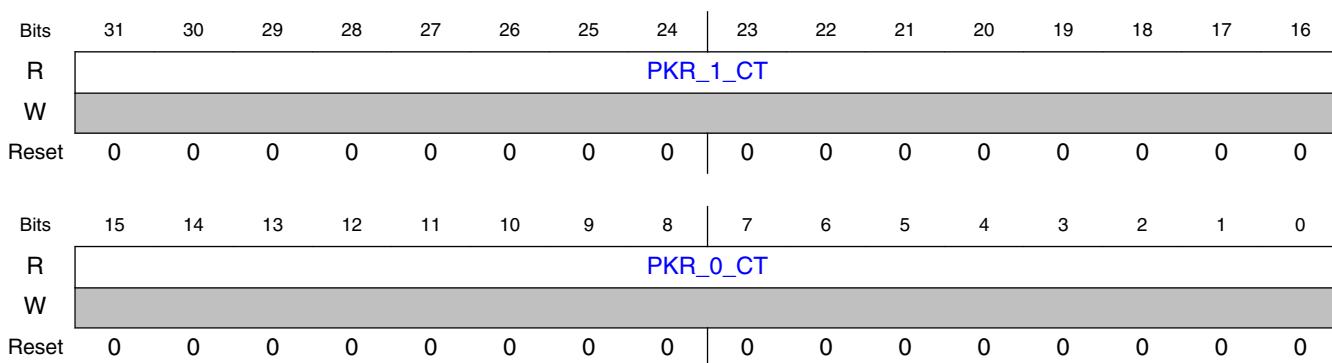
### 9.7.29.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNT10	80h

### 9.7.29.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 1h and 0h patterns. The Poker 0h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 0h. The Poker 1h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 1h. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.29.3 Diagram



### 9.7.29.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_1_CT	Poker 1h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 1h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_0_CT	Poker 0h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 0h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.30 Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 Register (PKRCNT32)

### 9.7.30.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNT32	84h

### 9.7.30.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 3h and 2h patterns. The Poker 2h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 2h. The Poker 3h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 3h. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.30.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	PKR_3_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PKR_2_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.30.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_3_CT	Poker 3h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 3h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_2_CT	Poker 2h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 2h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.31 Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 Register (PKRCNT54)

### 9.7.31.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNT54	88h

### 9.7.31.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 5h and 4h patterns. The Poker 4h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 4h. The Poker 5h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 5h. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.31.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	PKR_5_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PKR_4_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.31.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_5_CT	Poker 5h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 5h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_4_CT	Poker 4h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 4h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.32 Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 Register (PKRC NT76)

### 9.7.32.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNT76	8Ch

### 9.7.32.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 7h and 6h patterns. The Poker 6h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 6h. The Poker 7h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 7h. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.32.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	PKR_7_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PKR_6_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.32.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_7_CT	Poker 7h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 7h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_6_CT	Poker 6h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 6h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.33 Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 Register (PKRC NT98)

### 9.7.33.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNT98	90h

### 9.7.33.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 9h and 8h patterns. The Poker 8h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 8h. The Poker 9h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 9h. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.33.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									PKR_9_CT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									PKR_8_CT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.33.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_9_CT	Poker 9h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 9h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_8_CT	Poker 8h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 8h. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.34 Statistical Check Poker Count B and A Register (PKRCNTBA)

### 9.7.34.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNTBA	94h

### 9.7.34.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count B and A Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of Bh and Ah patterns. The Poker Ah Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Ah. The Poker Bh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Bh. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.34.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	PKR_B_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PKR_A_CT															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.34.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_B_CT	Poker Bh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Bh. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_A_CT	Poker Ah Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Ah. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.35 Statistical Check Poker Count D and C Register (PKRCNTDC)

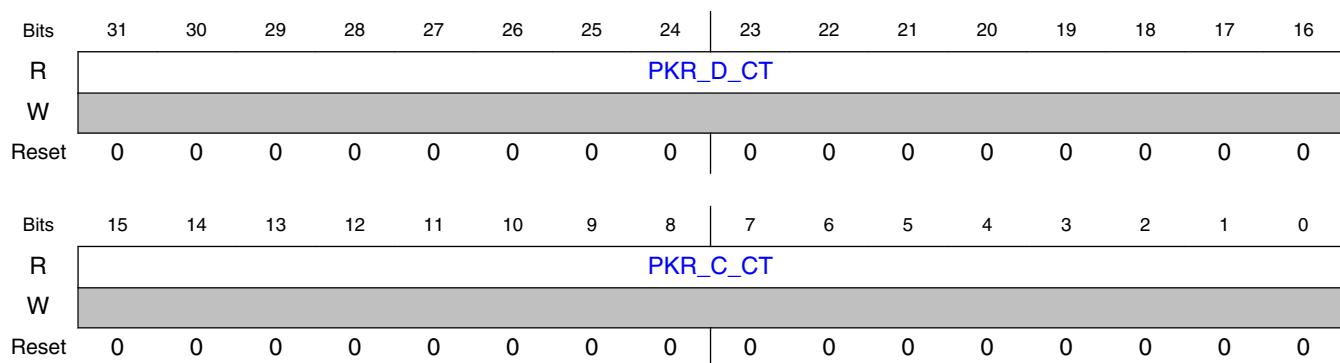
### 9.7.35.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNTDC	98h

### 9.7.35.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count D and C Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of Dh and Ch patterns. The Poker Ch Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Ch. The Poker Dh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Dh. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.35.3 Diagram



### 9.7.35.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_D_CT	Poker Dh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Dh. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
15-0 PKR_C_CT	Poker Ch Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Ch. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.36 Statistical Check Poker Count F and E Register (PKRCNTFE)

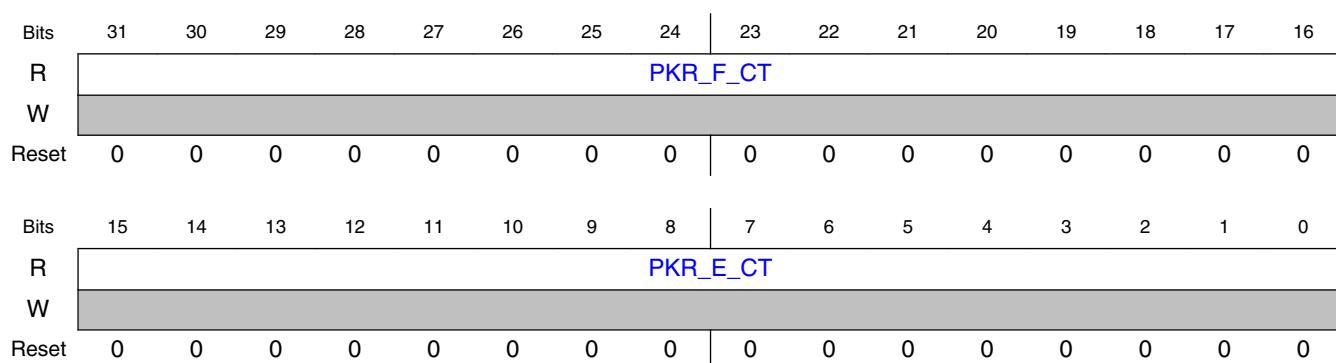
### 9.7.36.1 Offset

Register	Offset
PKRCNTFE	9Ch

### 9.7.36.2 Function

The Statistical Check Poker Count F and E Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of Fh and Eh patterns. The Poker Eh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Eh. The Poker Fh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Fh. Note that this register is readable only if MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

### 9.7.36.3 Diagram



### 9.7.36.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_F_CT	Poker Fh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Fh. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_E_CT	Poker Eh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Eh. Requires MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

## 9.7.37 Security Configuration Register (SEC\_CFG)

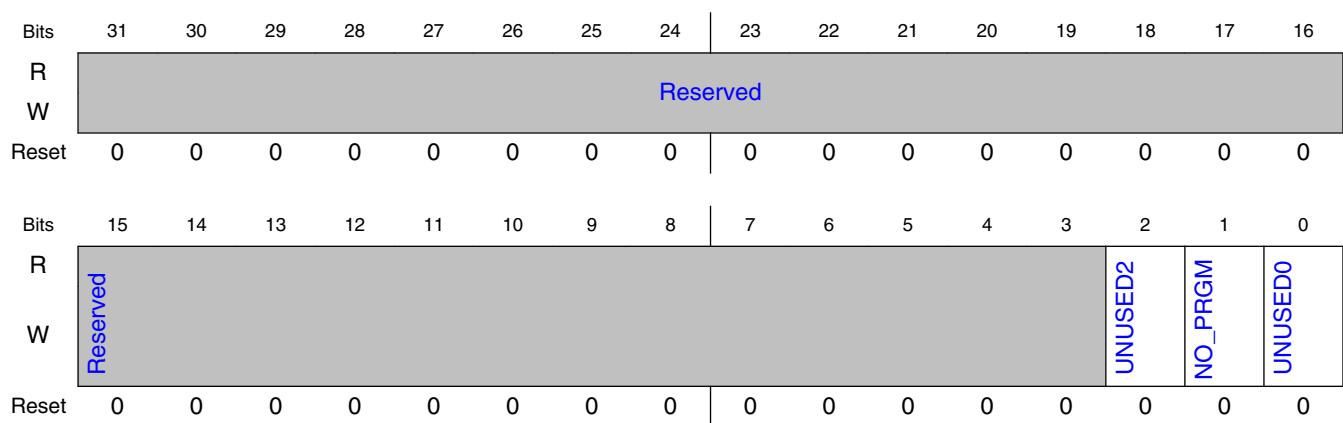
### 9.7.37.1 Offset

Register	Offset
SEC_CFG	A0h

### 9.7.37.2 Function

The Security Configuration Register is a read/write register used to control the test mode, programmability and state modes of the TRNG. Clears on asynchronous system hard reset or POR.

### 9.7.37.3 Diagram



### 9.7.37.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 —	Reserved
2 UNUSED2	This bit is unused. Ignore.
1 NO_PRGM	If set, the TRNG registers cannot be programmed 0b - Programability of registers controlled only by the Miscellaneous Control Register's access mode bit. 1b - Overrides Miscellaneous Control Register access mode and prevents TRNG register programming.
0 UNUSED0	This bit is unused. Ignore.

## 9.7.38 Interrupt Control Register (INT\_CTRL)

### 9.7.38.1 Offset

Register	Offset
INT_CTRL	A4h

### 9.7.38.2 Function

The Interrupt Control Register is a read/write register used to control the status for the (currently) three important interrupts that are generated by the TRNG. See [INT\\_STATUS](#) register description. Each interrupt can be cleared by de-asserting the corresponding bit in the [INT\\_CTRL](#) register. Only a new interrupt will reassert the corresponding bit in the status register. Even if the interrupt is cleared or masked, interrupt status information can be read from the [MCTL](#) register.

### 9.7.38.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

### 9.7.38.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3	Reserved. Always zero.
—	
2	Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 0b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 1b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register.
FRQ_CT_FAIL	
1	Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 0b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 1b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register.
ENT_VAL	
0	Bit position that can be cleared if corresponding bit of <a href="#">INT_STATUS</a> register has been asserted. 0b - Corresponding bit of INT_STATUS register cleared. 1b - Corresponding bit of INT_STATUS register active.
HW_ERR	

## 9.7.39 Mask Register (INT\_MASK)

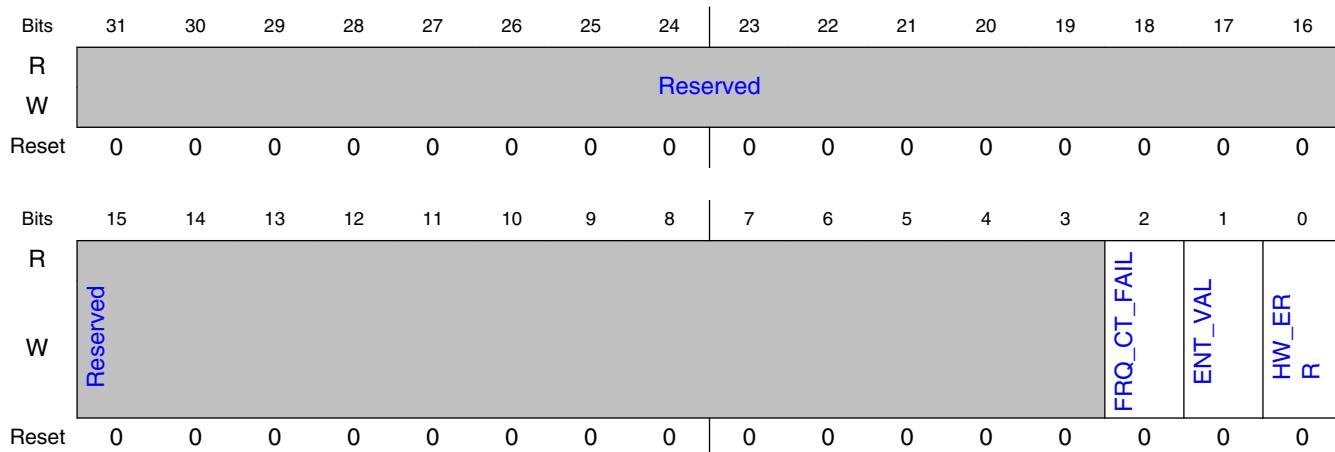
### 9.7.39.1 Offset

Register	Offset
INT_MASK	A8h

### 9.7.39.2 Function

The Interrupt Mask Register is a read/write register used to disable/mask the status reporting of the (currently) three important interrupts that are generated by the TRNG. See [INT\\_STATUS](#) register description. Each interrupt can be masked/disabled by de-asserting the corresponding bit in the [INT\\_MASK](#) register. Only setting this bit high will re-enable the interrupt in the status register. Even if the interrupt is cleared or masked, interrupt status information can be read from the [MCTL](#) register.

### 9.7.39.3 Diagram



### 9.7.39.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 —	Reserved
2 FRQ_CT_FAIL	Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 0b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 1b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register.
1 ENT_VAL	Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 0b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register. 1b - Same behavior as bit 0 of this register.
0 HW_ERR	Bit position that can be cleared or set to enable the corresponding bit of INT_STATUS to show interrupt status. 0b - Corresponding interrupt of INT_STATUS is masked. 1b - Corresponding bit of INT_STATUS is active.

#### 9.7.40 Interrupt Status Register (INT\_STATUS)

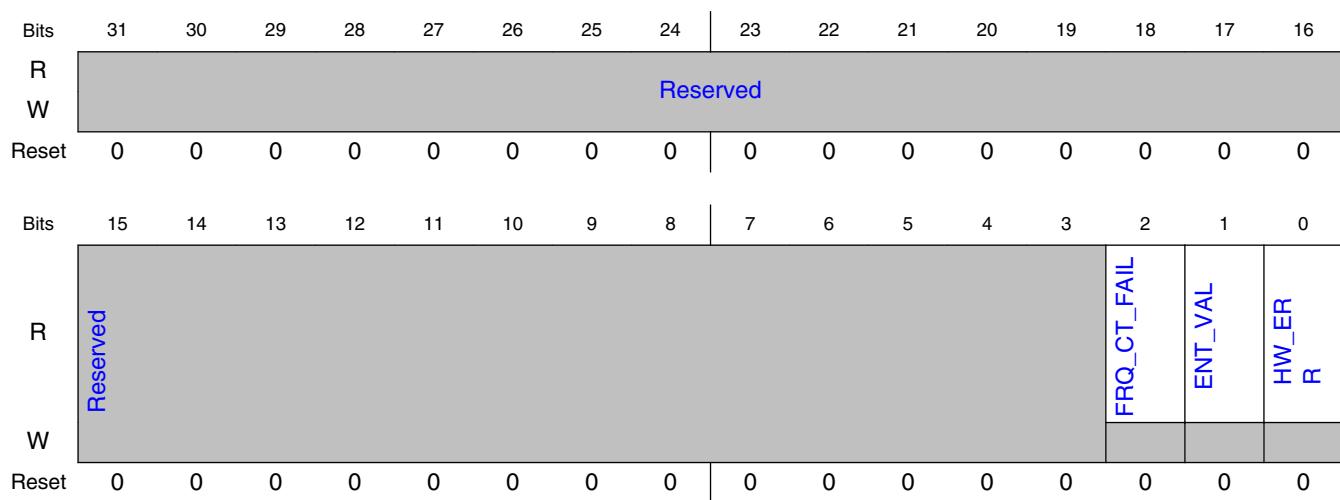
## 9.7.40.1 Offset

<b>Register</b>	<b>Offset</b>
INT_STATUS	ACh

## 9.7.40.2 Function

The Interrupt Status Register is a read register used to control and provide status for the (currently) three important interrupts that are generated by the TRNG. The TRNG interrupt signal alerts that TRNG has either generated a Frequency Count Fail, Entropy Valid or Error Interrupt. The cause of the interrupt can be decoded by checking the least significant bits of the INT\_STATUS register. Each interrupt can be temporarily cleared by de-asserting the corresponding bit in the [INT\\_CTRL](#) register. To mask the interrupts, clear the corresponding bits in the [INT\\_MASK](#) register. The description of each of the 3 interrupts is defined in the Block Guide under the MCTL register description. Even if the interrupt is cleared or masked, interrupt status information can be read from the MCTL register.

### **9.7.40.3 Diagram**



## 9.7.40.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 —	Reserved
2 FRQ_CT_FAIL	Read only: Frequency Count Fail. The frequency counter has detected a failure. This may be due to improper programming of the FRQMAX and/or FRQMIN registers, or a hardware failure in the ring oscillator.  0b - No hardware nor self test frequency errors. 1b - The frequency counter has detected a failure.
1 ENT_VAL	Read only: Entropy Valid. Will assert after an entropy value is generated. Will be cleared when ENT15 is read. (ENT0 through ENT14 should be read before reading ENT15).  0b - Busy generation entropy. Any value read is invalid. 1b - TRNG can be stopped and entropy is valid if read.
0 HW_ERR	Read: Error status. 1 = error detected. 0 = no error. Any HW error in the TRNG will trigger this interrupt.  0b - no error 1b - error detected.

## 9.7.41 Version ID Register (MS) (VID1)

### 9.7.41.1 Offset

Register	Offset
VID1	F0h

### 9.7.41.2 Function

The Version ID Register (VID1) is a MSW read only register used to identify the version of the TRNG in use. This register as well as [VID2](#) should both be read to verify the expected version.

### 9.7.41.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									IP_ID							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R				MAJ_REV							MIN_REV					
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

### 9.7.41.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16	Shows the IP ID.
IP_ID	0000000000110000b - ID for TRNG.
15-8	Shows the IP's Major revision of the TRNG.
MAJ_REV	00000001b - Major revision number for TRNG.
7-0	Shows the IP's Minor revision of the TRNG.
MIN_REV	00000000b - Minor revision number for TRNG.

## 9.7.42 Version ID Register (LS) (VID2)

### 9.7.42.1 Offset

Register	Offset
VID2	F4h

### 9.7.42.2 Function

The Version ID Register LSB is a read only register used to identify the architecture of the TRNG in use. This register as well as VID1 should both be read to verify the expected version.

### 9.7.42.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	ERA								INTG_OPT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ECO_REV								CONFIG_OPT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 9.7.42.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24 ERA	Shows the compile options for the TRNG. 00000000b - COMPILE_OPT for TRNG.
23-16 INTG_OPT	Shows the integration options for the TRNG. Used as REV_NUM and unique for each SoC type. <b>NOTE:</b> (For 2019 or newer SoCs). 00000000b - INTG_OPT for TRNG.
15-8 ECO_REV	Shows the IP's ECO revision of the TRNG. 00000000b - TRNG_ECO_REV for TRNG.
7-0 CONFIG_OPT	Shows the IP's Configuration options for the TRNG. 00000000b - TRNG_CONFIG_OPT for TRNG.



# **Chapter 10**

## **Secure Non-Volatile Storage (SNVS)**

### **10.1 Chip-specific SNVS information**

#### **NOTE**

Tamper Detection feature and ZMK hardware programming are not applicable on this device.

SNVS HP security violation inputs:

- sec\_vio\_in\_0 - disabled
- sec\_vio\_in\_1 - JTAG active
- sec\_vio\_in\_2 - WDOG2 reset
- sec\_vio\_in\_3 - disabled
- sec\_vio\_in\_4\_b - disabled
- sec\_vio\_in\_5\_b - GPIO\_EMCA\_19

#### **NOTE**

For power saving, register access to SNVS\_LP domain could be very slow, due to the low speed (XTAL32K) clocking structure of SNVS\_LP domain.

### **10.2 SNVS introduction**

SNVS is a companion module to the DCP module and serves as the SOC's central reporting point for security-relevant events such as the success or failure of boot software validation and the detection of security threat events. This security event information determines whether the SoC (hardware and software) is in the proper state to allow the DCP to use persistent and ephemeral secrets. Based on configuration fuses and configured bits within registers, SNVS is able to detect a variety of security violation inputs and perform the configured policy enforcement actions.

SNVS incorporates both security and non-security functionality.

SNVS security functions:

- Monitor security events in the SoC, and respond as per configured security policy
- Protect certain security-critical data objects
  - Master Key - can be used by DCP
    - One-Time Programmable Master Key (OTPMK) from fuses can be used as the source of the Master Key
    - Zeroizable Master Key (ZMK) - can be used as the source of the Master Key
    - OTPMK XOR ZMK (Combined Master Key, CMK) - can be used as the source of the Master Key
  - Monotonic Counter (MC) - a monotonically increasing counter that can be used for replay detection
  - Secure Realtime Counter (SRTC) - realtime counter that can't be altered by untrusted software
- Preserve state of the data objects listed above (if the SNVS\_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply)
  - ZMK value maintained when main SoC is powered off
  - MC value maintained when main SoC is powered off
  - SRTC continues to count when main SoC is powered off

SNVS non-security functions:

- Realtime Counter (RTC) - a software accessible realtime counter
  - RTC can be set to the value in the SRTC
- Periodic Interrupt - a hardware-generated interrupt that occurs periodically at software-specified frequency
- General Purpose Register - a set of registers used to hold 256 bits of data specified by software
  - If the SNVS\_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply, the GPR value is maintained when main SoC is powered off
- Chip power-on/power-off - If the SNVS\_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply and the Power On button input signal is connected to a power button external to the chip, logic within SNVS\_LP can be used to wake the chip from a power down.

### **10.2.1 SNVS feature list**

The following table summarizes the features of SNVS:

**Table 10-1. SNVS feature list**

Feature	Description	Links for Further Information
Security State Machine (SSM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Receives configuration inputs from SoC fuses</li> <li>• Receives security violation inputs from the various detectors in the chip</li> <li>• Tracks security state</li> <li>• Generates security state outputs to DCP and other logic within the chip</li> <li>• Can request system hard reset in case of non-recoverable violation</li> <li>• Programmable high assurance counter (HAC) to control time delay before system hard reset request generation</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Security state machine</a>
Master key checking and control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performs validity checks for the one-time programmable master key before allowing DCP to use it</li> <li>• Performs validity checks for the zeroizable master key before allowing DCP to use it</li> <li>• Selects the device-specific master key value as the OTPMK, the ZMK, or the bit-wise exclusive OR of both the OTPMK and the ZMK</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Configuring Master Key checking and control</a>
Zeroizable master key (ZMK).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The ZMK value can be programmed via software</li> <li>• The ZMK value is zeroized when a security violation occurs</li> <li>• If the SNVS_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply (see <a href="#">SNVS power domains</a>), the value is maintained even when the main SoC is powered off.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key</a>
Secure real time counter (SRTC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The SRTC is driven by a dedicated clock that is functionally independent of the chip configuration.</li> <li>• The SRTC does not rollover. Instead the SRTC logic issues an alarm if the SRTC reaches its maximum value.</li> <li>• Programmable time alarm interrupt <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Software can program the SRTC to generate an interrupt at a specific time.</li> <li>• If the main SoC is powered down at the programmed alarm time and the wake-up external alarm is enabled, the SRTC generates a wake-up alarm via an external pin. (Assuming that the SNVS_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply, see <a href="#">SNVS power domains</a>)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• The SRTC value is marked as invalid if an enabled SNVS security event is detected.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter (SRTC)</a>
Real time counter (RTC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The RTC is driven by a dedicated clock, which is off when the system power is down.</li> <li>• The RTC can be synchronized to the value of the Secure Real Time Counter.</li> <li>• Programmable time alarm interrupt</li> <li>• Periodic interrupt can be generated with software-selected frequency.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">SNVS_HP Real Time Counter</a>
Monotonic counter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The monotonic counter can only increment.</li> <li>• The monotonic counter does not rollover. Instead the monotonic counter logic issues an alarm if the monotonic counter reaches its maximum value.</li> <li>• The monotonic counter value is marked as invalid if an enabled SNVS security event is detected.</li> <li>• If the SNVS_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply (see <a href="#">SNVS power domains</a>), the monotonic counter value is retained even if the main chip is powered down.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Using the Monotonic Counter (MC)</a>
General-purpose register	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The general-purpose register is available to software to store 256 bits of data.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Using the General-Purpose Register</a>

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 10-1. SNVS feature list (continued)**

Feature	Description	Links for Further Information
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The general-purpose register is zeroized when a security violation is detected.</li> <li>If the SNVS_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply (see <a href="#">SNVS power domains</a>), the general-purpose register value is retained even if the main chip is powered down.</li> </ul>	
Register access restrictions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some registers/values can be written only once per boot cycle.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">privileged and non-privileged registers</a>
Violation detection and reporting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Detects (internal to the block) the following security violations:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scan exit</li> <li>Digital Low-Voltage Event for the LP domain</li> <li>Invalid OTPMK (ECC check failure)</li> <li>ZMK ECC check failure</li> <li>SRTC rollover</li> <li>MC rollover</li> </ul> </li> <li>Detects the following security violations:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Software-reported violations</li> <li>5 security violation inputs</li> </ul> </li> <li>Direct connections to DCP to lock out access to the OTPMK/ZMK and force zeroization of sensitive information</li> <li>Configurably triggers a device hard reset.</li> <li>Configurably reports to software (interrupts) all security violation and functional events</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Security violation policy</a>
Wakeup from power off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Input signal from off chip requests SNVS_LP to power on the main SoC (Assuming that the SNVS_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply (see <a href="#">SNVS power domains</a>)).</li> <li>Hardware debounces the input signal using software-specified signal bounce characteristics</li> </ul>	<a href="#">LP Wake-Up Interrupt Enable</a>

## 10.2.2 SNVS functional description

The low-power section of SNVS is intended to be initialized at SNVS\_LP POR, which normally occurs very rarely (when a new SNVS\_LP power source is installed). At this time software initializes the SNVS as described in [Reset and Initialization of SNVS](#). Once configured, much of the security functionality of SNVS operates automatically. However, there are a few SNVS security functions that involve interaction with software:

- reading the Secure Realtime Counter (SRTC) - this can be read, but not significantly altered<sup>1</sup>, by runtime software
- reading or updating the Monotonic Counter (MC) - this can be read or incremented by runtime software
- SNVS also stores certain data whose integrity or confidentiality must be protected (e.g. secure real-time clock,monotonic counter,zeroizable master key).

1. The SRTC cannot be written after it has been locked by initialization software, but the clock rate can be adjusted until the adjustment bits are also locked.

One of the major security functions of SNVS is to sense security-related events on the device and control the device's security state per the software-configured security policy. Once SNVS is initialized, sensing these events and initiating a response is handled by hardware. Certain security-relevant events are detected within SNVS itself (e.g. power on reset, boot from SoC ROM, digital low-voltage event), whereas other security-related events are detected via sensors on or off-chip and passed to SNVS via input signals. For instance, these other sensors might detect voltage or temperature or clock frequency out of acceptable ranges.

SNVS implements several non-security features that involve software interaction:

- reading or writing the Realtime Counter (RTC) (This is a non-privileged operation.) - software can also instruct SNVS to load the current SRTC value into the RTC
- reading or writing the General Purpose Register (GPR) (Note that there may be a significant delay when reading or writing registers in the LP section if the LP clock is different from the HP clock.)

The following sections describe in more detail the operation of SNVS.

### 10.3 SNVS Structure

The SNVS incorporates several features that help to ensure the security of data stored in the device.

- A security state machine that responds to various security conditions
  - hardware security violation inputs
  - software-implemented security checks
- Security-state-machine derived outputs that tell the DCP whether the device state is Trusted, Secure, NonSecure, or Fail
- Automatic zeroization of the Zeroizable Master Key if an enabled security event is detected
- Automatic zeroization of the General Purpose Register if an enabled security event is detected
- A digital low-voltage detector for the LP domain that alerts the security state machine when a low-voltage event causes a low-voltage detector bit to flip
- Validity flag that indicates if the value in the monotonic counter is valid
- Validity flag that indicates if the value in the secure realtime counter is valid

SNVS is organized as two major sub-modules:

- Low-Power Section of SNVS (SNVS\_LP)

The SNVS\_LP section provides hardware that enables secure storage and protection of sensitive data. The SNVS module is designed to safely hold security-related data such as cryptographic key, time counter, monotonic counter, and general purpose security information.

The SNVS\_LP block implements the following functional units:

- Zeroizable Master Key
- Control and Status Registers
- General Purpose Registers
- Monotonic Counter
- Secure Real Time Counter

When the LP section is powered by an uninterrupted power supply, like a backup battery, the state of these registers is maintained even when the main chip power is off. (see [SNVS power domains](#))

- High-Power Section of SNVS (SNVS\_HP)

The SNVS\_HP section contains all SNVS status and configuration registers. It implements all features that enable system communication and provisioning of the SNVS\_LP section. The SNVS\_HP section also incorporates the security state machine, which controls the system security state, and the master key control block, which is responsible for checking and selecting the master key value. The SNVS\_HP also incorporates the Zeroizable Master Key programming mechanism and the OTPMK logic.

The SNVS\_HP provides an interface between SNVS\_LP and the rest of the system.

The SNVS\_HP block implements the following functional units:

- IP Bus Interface
- SNVS\_LP Interface
- Security State Machine (SSM)
- Zeroizable Master Key Programming Mechanism
- Master Key Control block
- Real Time Counter with Alarm Control and Status Registers
- Control and status registers

SNVS\_HP is in the chip's power supply domain and thus receives power along with the rest of the chip.

The following figure illustrates the structure of SNVS.

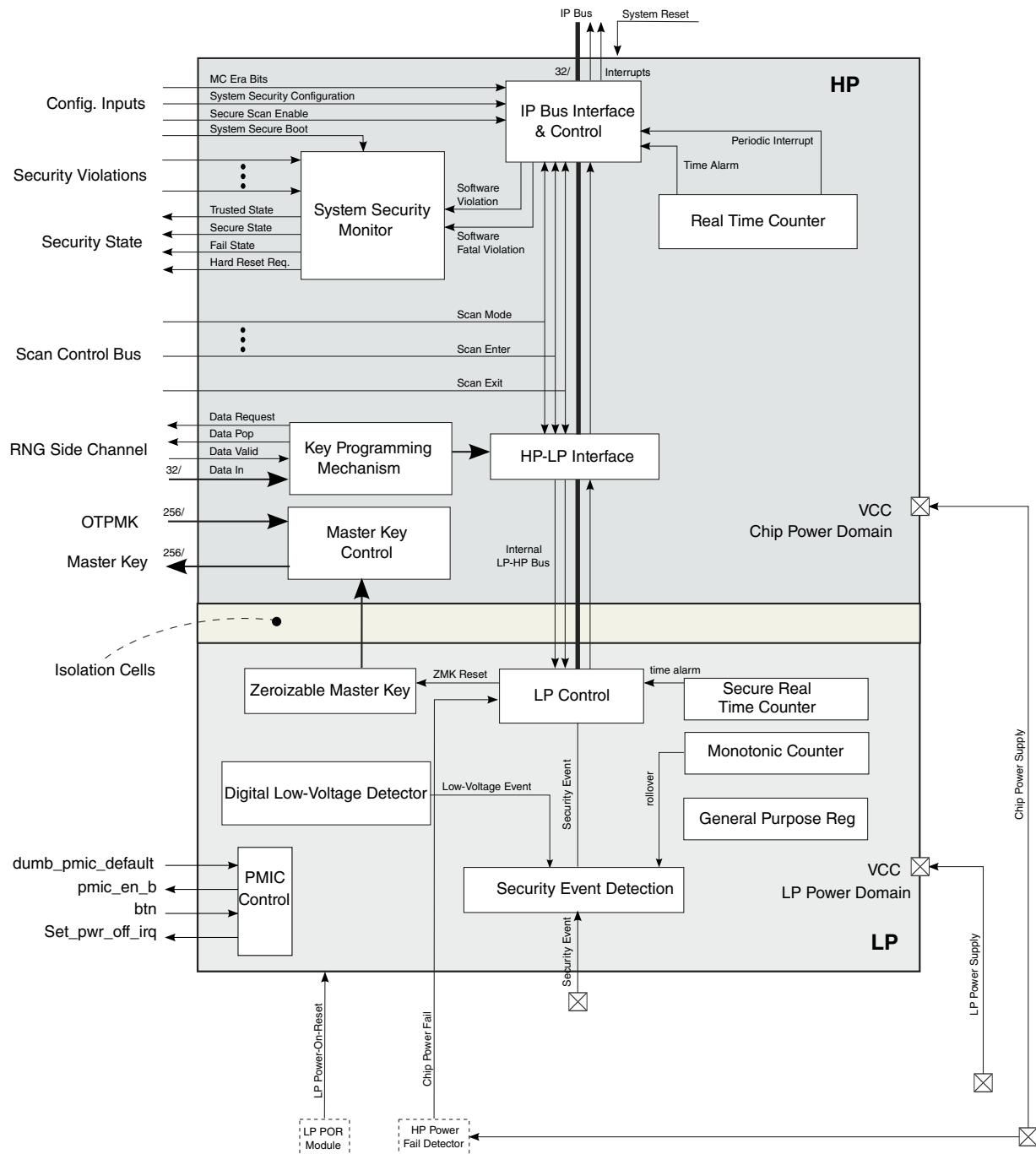


Figure 10-1. SNVS Block Diagram

### 10.3.1 SNVS power domains

In some versions of SNVS (including this version), the LP (Low Power) section is implemented in an independent power domain from the HP (High Power) section, and most other logic on the chip. Throughout the SNVS documentation whenever mention is

made of "always-on" logic, this assumes a version of SNVS that implements an independent power domain for the LP section, and that the power for this section is supplied by an uninterrupted power supply. The purpose for the independent power domain is so that data can be retained and certain logic can remain functional even when the main chip logic is powered down. But this is possible only if the LP domain remains powered via an uninterrupted power supply when the main chip power domain is powered off. Usually this uninterrupted power supply would be a battery, with possibly some power management logic to power the LP section from main power (and perhaps recharge the battery) when main power is on, and switch to battery power when the main power is off. In versions of SNVS with an independent LP power domain the LP section can be electrically isolated from the rest of the chip logic to ensure that its logic does not get corrupted when the main chip is powered down. If the battery runs down or is removed, an LP POR will occur when the LP section next powers up. Note that some OEMs may choose to connect LP power to HP/main chip power and dispense with a battery. In that case the SNVS will operate the same as an SNVS without an independent LP power domain. No state will be retained in the LP section when the chip is powered down, and an LP POR will occur whenever there is an HP POR.

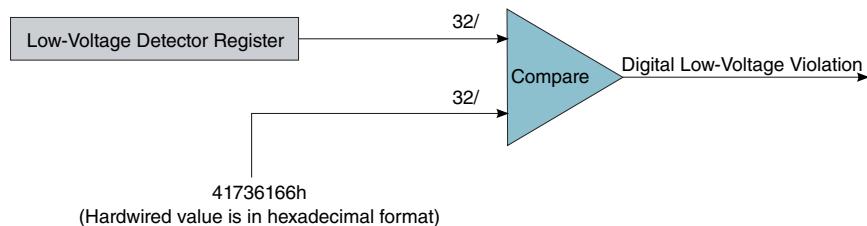
### 10.3.2 Digital Low-Voltage Detector (LVD)

SNVS\_LP incorporates a mechanism to detect interruptions of the SNVS\_LP power supply that might cause the LP control, status, and secure counter values to change. The mechanism works as follows:

1. The LVD register (LPLVDR) is loaded with the known specific value 4173\_6166h as part of the SNVS initialization process.
2. Subsequently, this register's value is continuously compared to the hardwired value 4173\_6166h.
3. If the comparison indicates that any bit has changed, a low-voltage violation is asserted.

Digital low-voltage detection is always enabled and cannot be disabled. At LP POR this register is reset to all 0's, so the hardwired comparison fails and a low-voltage violation is reported. Therefore, before programming any feature in the SNVS the low-voltage violation should be cleared. The initialization software should write the proper value (4173\_6166h) into LPLVDR (see [SNVS\\_LP Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register \(LPLVDR\)](#)) and should then clear the low-voltage event record in the LP status register (see [SNVS\\_LP Status Register \(LPSR\)](#)).

The following figure shows the LVD mechanism.



**Figure 10-2. Digital low-voltage detector**

### 10.3.3 SNVS clock sources

The SNVS has the following clock sources:

- System peripheral clock input. This clock is used by the SNVS's internal logic, for example, the Security State Machine. This clock can be gated outside of the module when the SNVS indicates that it is not in use.
- HP RTC clock. This clock is used by SNVS\_HP real-time counter. This clock does not need to be synchronous with other clocks.

## 10.4 Security violation policy

SNVS is intended to detect, and potentially initiate a response to, various security-relevant events in the chip. The nature of the response to various types of security-relevant events can be set by configuring the SNVS security policy appropriately. SNVS detects certain security-relevant events either within its HP section, or via "Security Violation" inputs to the HP section. The following security-relevant events are detected within SNVS\_HP hardware:

- OTPMK Hamming code error
- ZMK Hamming code error

The following security-relevant events are detected external to SNVS and are reported to SNVS\_HP via "Security Violation" input signals:

- Security Violation 0
- Security Violation 1
- Security Violation 2
- Security Violation 3
- Security Violation 4
- Security Violation 5

Software can also report a security violation to SNVS by writing into the SNVS\_HP Command register (HPCOMR).

## Security violation policy

In addition to the SNVS\_HP-detected security-relevant events mentioned, SNVS also detects certain other security-related events in the SNVS\_LP section and reacts to them even when main SoC power is off:

- Digital Low-Voltage Event Violation
- SRTC Rollover Violation
- MC Rollover Violation

The SoC firmware specifies SNVS's response to security violations by configuring the SNVS\_HP security policy. At boot time the SoC boot firmware also checks the status of the SNVS\_LP section. If the LP section has not been securely initialized, or an enabled LP security event has occurred, or the SNVS\_LP power source is interrupted, the status check will indicate that the state of the LP section is invalid, and the boot firmware will configure the SNVS\_LP security policy. The configured security policy determines how security-related events affect the SoC security state, which is tracked by the SNVS Security State Machine as explained in the next section.

### 10.4.1 Security state machine

SNVS implements a security state machine (SSM) that tracks the security state of the SoC. The states and state transitions of the SSM affect certain security actions taken by SNVS and DCP. Some state transitions cause SNVS and DCP to zeroize certain secret values.

The following figure and table describe the SSM's states and transitions.

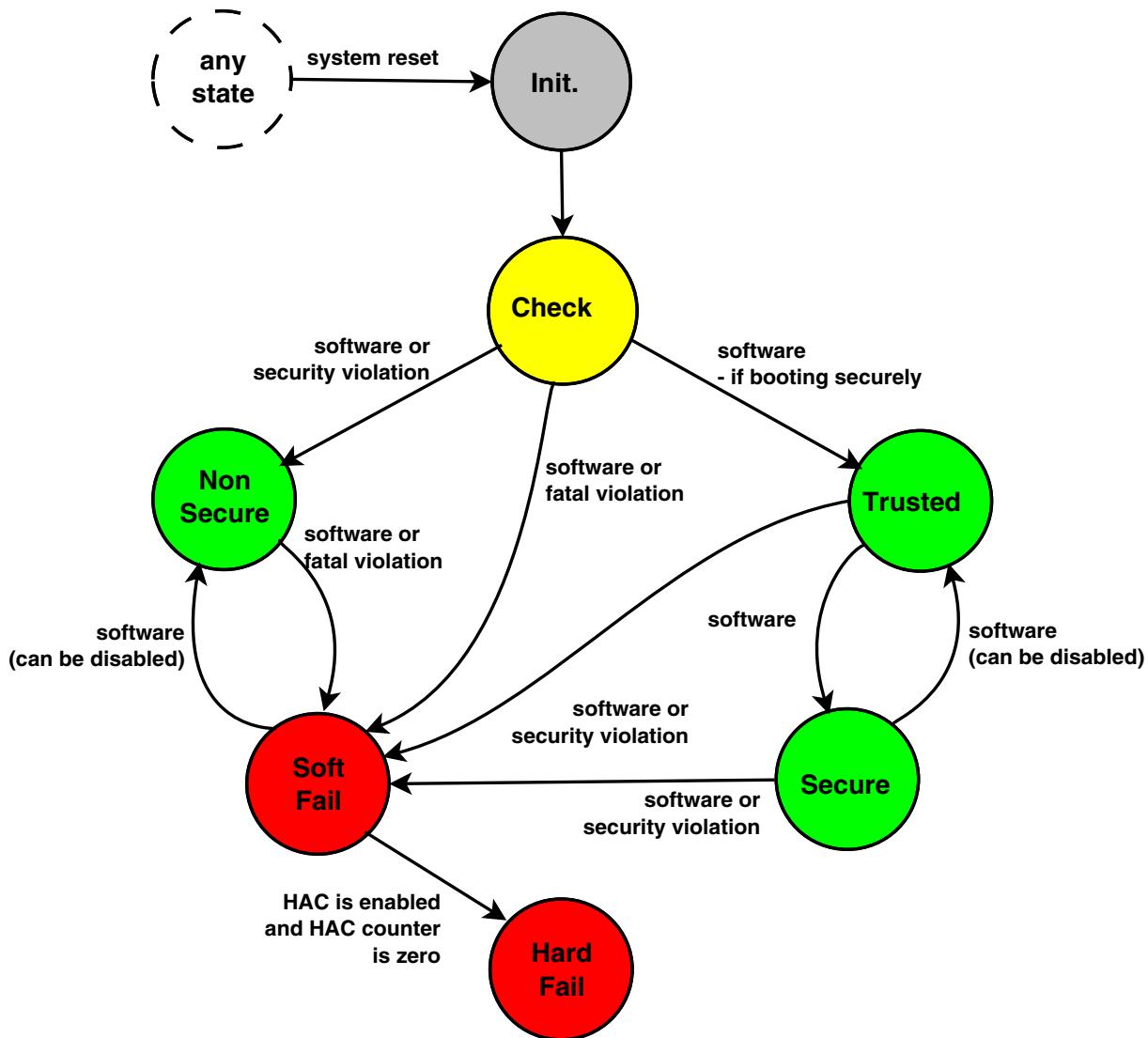


Figure 10-3. Security State Machine

Table 10-2. Security State Machine State Definitions

SSM State	What happens in this state	Security state signals sent to DCP:	Transitions from this SSM State to:
<b>Init</b> <i>(System enters this state at main SoC POR.)</i>	In this state the SSM ignores all security violations sources; security violations are not recorded and not responded to in the SNVS_HP domain.  SNVS registers cannot be programmed in this state.	Non-Secure (i.e. not Secure, not Trusted and not Fail)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check state</b> - if the clocks are stable and fuse values can be read accurately the SSM transitions from Init state to Check state.</li> </ul>
<b>Check</b>	System performs the check sequence, which consists of various hardware health checks. While in Check, the SNVS receives various inputs, including	Non-Secure (i.e. not Secure, not Trusted and not Fail)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Trusted state</b> - If software writes a 1 to the control bit in the HP Command Register while the SSM is in Check state, this initiates a transition to Trusted state. The transition is</li> </ul>

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 10-2. Security State Machine State Definitions  
(continued)**

SSM State	What happens in this state	Security state signals sent to DCP:	Transitions from this SSM State to:
	<p>the fuse values from the SFP, security violation status, and a pass/fail indication from the boot firmware.</p> <p>SNVS registers cannot be programmed in this state, with the exception of several bits in the HP Command Register.</p>		<p>allowed if the system is booting from ROM internal to the chip, or if the System Security Configuration is Fab (000). Upon transition to Trusted state, SNVS_LP is reset if it was previously provisioned in the Non-secure state.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Non-secure state</b> - If a non-fatal security violation is detected while in Check state the SSM transitions to the Non-secure state.</li> <li>• <b>Soft Fail state</b> - If a fatal violation is detected while in Check state the SSM transitions to the Soft Fail state.</li> </ul>
<b>Non-Secure</b>	In this state, the secure and trusted mode indication signals are not set. In Non-Secure state any write accesses to the SNVS_LP registers are denied if SNVS_LP was provisioned in the Trusted state or Secure state.	Non-Secure (i.e. not Secure, not Trusted and not Fail)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Soft Fail state</b> - If a fatal violation is detected while in Non-Secure state the SSM transitions to the Soft Fail state.</li> </ul>
<b>Trusted</b>	In this state, the trusted and secure mode indication signals are asserted. The fact that the SSM is in the Trusted state indicates that there are no hardware security violations and that HAB was satisfied with its security checks (including validating the signature over the next boot software).	Trusted, Secure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Secure state</b> - If software writes to the SSM_ST bit in the HP Command Register while SSM is in the Trusted state, this will trigger a transition to Secure state.</li> <li>• <b>Soft Fail state</b> - If the SSM detects a security violation condition while SSM is in the Trusted state, the SSM immediately (without clock) transitions to the Soft Fail state. If software writes to the HP Command register's SW_FSV or SW_SV bits while the SSM is in the Trusted state, the SSM will transition to Soft Fail state.</li> </ul>
<b>Secure</b>	In this state, the secure mode indication signal is asserted and trusted mode indication signal is de-asserted.	Secure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Trusted state</b> - If software writes to the SSM_ST bit in the HP Command Register while SSM is in the Secure state, this will trigger a transition to Trusted state. (The Secure state to Trusted state transition can be disabled by setting the SSM_ST_DIS bit in the HP Command Register.)</li> <li>• <b>Soft Fail state</b> - If the SSM detects a security violation condition while SSM is in the Secure state, the SSM immediately (without clock) transitions to the Soft Fail state. If software writes to the HP Command register's SW_FSV or SW_SV bits while the SSM is in the Secure state, the SSM will transition to Soft Fail state.</li> </ul>

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 10-2. Security State Machine State Definitions  
(continued)**

SSM State	What happens in this state	Security state signals sent to DCP:	Transitions from this SSM State to:
<b>Soft fail</b>	Upon transitioning to Soft Fail the SNVS signals the DCP to zeroize the KEKs, TDSK and all key registers. The SNVS also generates an interrupt to inform software of the Soft Fail, and if configured to do so, starts the HAC_Counter countdown toward Hard Fail. The device can operate with the SSM in the Soft Fail state indefinitely; however, no operations involving the DCP can occur unless the SNVS is transitioned from Soft Fail state to the Non-Secure state. Transition from Soft Fail to the Non-Secure state can be triggered by software via a write to the HP Command register SSM_ST bit, unless the HAC counter is actively counting or the transition to the Non-Secure state has been disabled via the SSM_SFNS_DIS bit. But the black keys and trusted descriptors that existed prior to the entry into Soft Fail will not be recoverable even in Non-Secure state and until the SoC is reset, the DCP will be unable to perform operations with the secret master key. SNVS registers cannot be programmed in this state, except for several bits in the HP Command Register.	Fail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Hard Fail state</b> - If the HP Command Register HAC_EN bit is 1 when the SSM enters the Soft Fail state, the High Assurance Counter is loaded from the High Assurance Counter IV register and then the High Assurance Counter begins counting down. Software can stop this counter by writing to the HAC_STOP bit in the HP Command Register. If software fails to stop the High Assurance Counter before it counts down to zero the SSM transitions to the Hard Fail state. This acts as a "deadman switch" to reset the SoC if the software is hung.</li> <li><b>Non-Secure state</b> Software can initiate a transition from Soft-Fail state to Non-Secure state by writing a 1 to the SSM_ST bit in the HP Command Register, unless the transition has been disabled by setting the SSM_ST_DIS bit in the HP Command Register or the High Assurance Counter has been activated but not stopped, or a fatal security violation is active. In these cases the SSM stays in the soft fail state.</li> </ul>
<b>Hard Fail</b>	Entering this state triggers the hard reset request output, which should be used in the system to perform a hardware reset without the aid of software. SNVS registers cannot be programmed in this state.	Fail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Hard-Fail state</b> - Once the SSM enters the Hard-Fail state it remains in the Hard-Fail state until the system is reset.</li> </ul>

All HP security violation sources are classified into one of three categories: disabled, non-fatal security, and fatal security. Disabled security violations have no effect on the SSM. Fatal security violations always result in the SSM transition to the Soft Fail state. The non-fatal security violations result in a transition from Check to Non-Secure or from Trusted/Secure states to Soft Fail state.

- Disabled violation - SNVS records the violation but does not otherwise react to the violation.

## Security violation policy

- Non-fatal security violation - SNVS records the violation but does not cause security registers to be cleared
- Fatal security violation - SNVS records the violation and causes security registers to be cleared.

Regardless of the category all security violation events are recorded in the corresponding status registers.

### 10.4.2 SNVS interrupts, alarms, and security violations

When SNVS detects enabled security events, SNVS responds as dictated by the security policies pre-configured by software. This security policy configuration specifies under what circumstances SNVS asserts the following interrupt and alarm signals:

**Table 10-3. Interrupts and alarms summary**

Interrupt/violation	Security Event	Default configuration <sup>1</sup>	Configuration options
SNVS security interrupt	Security violation input asserted	Disable	Enable/disable
	SSM transitions to the soft fail state	Enable	-
	LP security violation asserted	Disable	Enable/disable
SNVS security violation	SSM transitions to the soft fail state	Enable	-
SNVS hard failure reset	SSM transitions to the hard fail state	Enable	-

1. Default behavior refers to the setting after Reset

### 10.4.3 Configuring SNVS's response to a security event

SNVS's response to hardware or software reporting a security violation depends on the state of the [Security state machine](#), and the security policy that software has configured in SNVS. Software configures the SNVS security policy by writing to the following registers:

- [SNVS\\_HP Security Interrupt Control Register \(HPSICR\)](#) - enables or disables generating the security interrupt when specific security violation events are detected
- [SNVS\\_HP Security Violation Control Register \(HPSVCR\)](#) - configures specific security violation event inputs as fatal or non-fatal or disabled
- [SNVS\\_HP High Assurance Counter IV Register \(HPHACIVR\)](#) - sets the delay between the occurrence of an SSM transition from soft fail state to hard fail state
- [SNVS\\_HP Lock Register \(HPLR\)](#) - locks part or all of the security configuration set in SNVS\_HP
- [SNVS\\_LP Control Register \(LPCR\)](#) - configures certain LP security event responses:
  - whether GPRs are zeroized in response to a security event

- whether an LP low-voltage event alerts the PMIC
- whether a wake-up interrupt is requested when an LP section security event occurs
- whether the SRTC stops counting when a security violation occurs
- [SNVS\\_HP Security Violation Control Register \(HPSVCR\)](#) - configures whether specific HP section security violation event inputs cause an LP section security violation, which zeroizes sensitive data in the LP section
- [SNVS\\_LP Lock Register \(LPLR\)](#) - locks part or all of the security configuration set in SNVS\_LP

If the SNVS SSM is in the Trusted or Secure state, the occurrence of a security violation triggers a transition to the Soft Fail state. The transition to Soft Fail state is reported to DCP, which will also take certain response actions.

The consequences of an SSM transition to Soft Fail include:

- Zeroization of the ZMK value in SNVS\_LP
- Zeroization of the GPR value in SNVS\_LP
  - Zeroization of the GPR protects the confidentiality of key or other secret data stored in the GP register
- Lock out of the master key (OTPMK, ZMK or OTPMK XOR ZMK) until the next POR (and successful secure boot)

Note that software can continue to run following a transition to Soft Fail, and both SNVS and DCP remain operable. However, it is inadvisable to continue normal operation until the SoC has been reset. Whatever event triggered the transition from Secure or Trusted to Soft Fail state may have left the SoC in a vulnerable condition.

Consequently, operation following a transition from Secure or Trusted to Soft Fail state should be limited to recovery and debugging. In response to a Soft Fail, a security violation interrupt service routine should read the SNVS HP\_Status Register and HP\_Security Violation Status Register and write their values to NVRAM to log the occurrence and root cause of the security violation.

#### 10.4.4 SNVS\_LP security event policy

The tables below provide information about the SNVS\_LP security event policy.

**Table 10-4. SNVS\_LP security events**

Security event	Default behavior <sup>1</sup>	Configuration options <sup>2</sup>	Comments
Internal to LP Sources <sup>3</sup>			

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 10-4. SNVS\_LP security events  
(continued)**

Security event	Default behavior <sup>1</sup>	Configuration options <sup>2</sup>	Comments
SRTC Rollover Violation	Disable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable</li> <li>• Disable</li> </ul>	Asserted when SRTC is enabled and it reaches maximal value (all ones)
MC Rollover Violation	Disable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable</li> <li>• Disable</li> </ul>	Asserted when MC is enabled and it reaches maximal value (all ones)
<b>From HP Section</b>			
LP software violation	Enable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable</li> <li>• Disable</li> </ul>	Asserted by software
HP Security Violation Inputs SV0, SV1, SV2, SV3, SV4, SV5,	Disable ..../inst	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable</li> <li>• Disable</li> </ul>	Asserted on the Security Violation Port

1. Default behavior refers to the setting after LP POR, before the LP Security Violation policy is configured.
2. The configuration is set in the LPSECR and LPSVCR registers. Once set, the configuration can be locked to prevent further changes.
3. These security events can also be asserted and detected in the system power-down mode.

When an LP security violation is generated, the violation is reported to the SNVS\_HP section. The source of the violation is recorded in the LP status register.

#### 10.4.5 High Assurance Counter

If a security event occurs that transitions SNVS to the Soft Fail state, the software that is intended to respond to this transition may fail to act because it has become corrupted. SNVS implements a software "deadman" switch that is intended to deal with this case. The deadman switch consists of the High Assurance Counter (HAC) and the various other registers and register bit fields that control the HAC.

If enabled, the HAC begins counting down toward 0 when the SNVS Security State Machine (SSM) transitions to Soft Fail state. If software does not stop the count before it reaches 0, the security state machine will transition to the Hard Fail state. Transitioning to Hard Fail state is intended to cause the chip to reset.

If the HAC will be used, software should write the HAC initial value to the High Assurance Counter IV Register and then write a 1 to the HAC\_LOAD (High Assurance Counter Load) bit and a 1 to the HAC\_EN (High Assurance Counter Enable) in the HP Command Register. This will load the initial value into the HAC Register and enable the HAC for counting. Once the HAC register is initialized and enabled, software should write a 1 to the HAC\_L (High Assurance Configuration Lock) bit in the HP Lock Register to prevent malicious or corrupted software from altering the HAC configuration.

If a security event causes the SSM to transition to SOFT FAIL state the HAC will start counting, one count per system clock, from the initial value down to 0. While the SSM is in SOFT FAIL state software can halt the count by writing a 1 to the HAC\_STOP bit in the HP Command Register. If software later writes a 0 to HAC\_STOP the count will resume at the current value in the HAC. If software writes a 1 to the HAC\_CLEAR bit in the HP Command Register, the HAC will be cleared, regardless of the state of the SSM. If the SSM is in the Soft Fail state at that time the SSM will immediately transition to the Hard Fail state. If the SSM is in any other state when the HAC is cleared the SSM will transition to Hard Fail immediately after transitioning to Soft Fail (assuming the HAC is enabled).

## 10.5 Runtime Procedures

SNVS implements a number of features that are intended to be accessed by software at runtime (as opposed to accessed at boot time). These features include:

- Real Time Clock (see [SNVS\\_HP Real Time Counter](#))
- Secure Real Time Clock (see [SNVS\\_LP Secure Real Time Counter \(SRTC\)](#))
- General Purpose Register (see [Using the General-Purpose Register](#))
- Monotonic Counter (see [Using the Monotonic Counter \(MC\)](#))

Procedures for using these features are described in the following sections.

### 10.5.1 Using SNVS Timer Facilities

SNVS incorporates timer facilities that can optionally generate an interrupt at a specified time. As described in the following sections, SNVS\_HP incorporates a Real Time Counter that is available for general use, and SNVS\_LP incorporates a Secure Real Time Counter intended for security applications.

#### 10.5.1.1 SNVS\_HP Real Time Counter

SNVS\_HP implements a real time counter that can be read or written by any application; it has no privileged software access restrictions. When the chip is powered down the RTC is not active and it is reset at chip POR. The RTC can be used to generate a functional interrupt request either at a specific time, or at a specific frequency, or both. To generate an interrupt request at a specific time HPTA\_EN is set to 0, the desired time is written to HPTA\_MS and HPTA\_LS and then HPTA\_EN is set to 1. HPTA\_EN, HPTA\_MS and HPTA\_LS can be written by any software that has access to SNVS registers; there are no

privileged access restrictions. The counter can be synchronized to the SNVS\_LP SRTC by writing to the HP\_TS bit of SNVS\_HP Control Register. This is particularly useful if the SNVS\_LP is powered from an uninterrupted power source because the RTC can then be set from a chip-internal time source.

### 10.5.1.2 SNVS\_LP Secure Real Time Counter (SRTC)

SNVS\_LP implements a secure real time counter. The SRTC differs from the Realtime Counter (RTC) implemented in the HP section in the following ways:

- If the SNVS\_LP power input is connected to an uninterrupted power supply, the SRTC retains its state and continues counting even when the main chip is powered down.
- When the RTC reaches its maximum value it simply rolls over to all 0s. The SRTC is a non-rollover counter, which means that the SRTC does not rollover to all zeros when it reaches the maximum value of all ones. Instead, a time rollover indication is generated to the SNVS\_LP security event monitor, which generates a security violation and interrupt.
- The RTC can be written at any time. The SRTC can be locked so that a new value cannot be written into the SRTC.
- The RTC can be synchronized to the SRTC by writing to the HP\_TS bit of SNVS\_HP Control Register.
- The SRTC can be calibrated so that its count frequency tracks some other time source.
- The SRTC can be marked as valid or invalid, so software knows whether the SRTC value can be trusted.
- The SRTC can be configured to capture the time of a security violation.

The SRTC is intended for security applications that require real time. Some examples are:

- data rights management schemes in which the rights expire at a certain date and time
- audit logs that record the date and time of security-relevant events
- security protocols that rely on real time to ensure freshness or for event ordering

To ensure that the SRTC cannot be modified in order to circumvent time-based security policies, the SRTC can be programmed only when SRTC is not active and not locked, meaning the SRTC\_ENV, SRTC\_SL, and SRTC\_HL bits are not set. If the SRTC will be used for security purposes, at SNVS\_LP POR trusted software (e.g. boot firmware) should check if SRTC is enabled and valid (SRTC\_ENV=1). If SRTC\_ENV=0 the trusted software should set the SRTC from a trustworthy time source and then set SRTC\_ENV, SRTC\_SL and SRTC\_HL to 1. When SRTC\_SL=1 the SRTC cannot be written until main chip reset. When SRTC\_HL=1 the SRTC cannot be written until SNVS\_LP POR.

The SRTC can be used to generate a functional interrupt request at a particular time by setting the desired time in the LP Time Alarm register (LPTAR) and setting LPTA\_EN to 1. Note that the functional interrupt request is shared by both the LP time alarm and the HP time alarm, so the interrupt handler for the SNVS functional alarm should check the HPTA bit in the HPSR and/or the LPTA in the LPSR to distinguish between these two alarm sources.

The SRTC counting speed can be adjusted to match the speed of some other time source via a calibration mechanism. When the LPCALB\_EN, LPCALB\_SL, and LPCALB\_HL bits are 0 a value can be written into the LPCALB\_VAL field of the LP Control Register. When LPCALB\_EN is 1, every 32768 ticks of the SRTC the adjustment value specified in the LPCALB\_VAL field will be added to the SRTC. If needed, at LP POR the LPCALB\_VAL field should be set by trusted software and then LPCALB\_EN set to 1. Whether the SRTC calibration mechanism is used or not, trusted software should set LPCALB\_SL, and LPCALB\_HL bits to 1 to prevent misuse of the calibration mechanism.

### 10.5.1.3 RTC/SRTC control bits setting

All SNVS registers are programmed from the register bus, consequently any software-initiated changes are synchronized with the IP clock. Several registers can also change synchronously with the RTC/SRTC clock after they are programmed. To avoid IP clock and RTC/SRTC clock synchronization issues, the following values can be changed only when the corresponding function is disabled.

**Table 10-5. RTC/SRTC synchronized values list**

Function	Value/register	Control bit setting
HP section		
HP Real Time Counter	HPRTCMR and HPRTCLR Registers	RTC_EN = 0 : HPRTCMR/HPRTCLR <b>can</b> be programmed RTC_EN = 1 : HPRTCMR/HPRTCLR <b>cannot</b> be programmed
HP Time Alarm	HPTAMR and HPTALR Registers	HPTA_EN = 0 : HPTAMR/HPTALR <b>can</b> be programmed HPTA_EN = 1 : HPTAMR/HPTALR <b>cannot</b> be programmed
LP section		
LP Secure Real Time Counter	LPRTCMR and LPRTCLR Registers	SRTC_ENV = 0 : LPRTCMR/LPRTCLR <b>can</b> be programmed SRTC_ENV = 1 : LPRTCMR/LPRTCLR <b>cannot</b> be programmed
LP Time Alarm	LPTAR Register	LPTA_EN = 0 : LPTAR <b>can</b> be programmed

**Table 10-5. RTC/SRTC synchronized values list**

Function	Value/register	Control bit setting
		LPTA_EN = 1 : LPTAR <b>cannot</b> be programmed

Use the following steps to program synchronized values:

1. Check the enable bit value. If set, clear it.
2. Verify that the enable bit is cleared. There are two reasons to verify the enable bit's setting:
  - Enable bit clearing does not happen immediately; it takes three IP clock cycles and two RTC/SRTC clock cycles to change the enable bit's value.
  - If the enable bit is locked for programming, it cannot be cleared.
3. Program the desired value.
4. Set the enable bit; it takes three IP clock cycles and two RTC/SRTC clock cycles for the bit to set.

#### **NOTE**

Incrementing the value programmed into RTC/SRTC registers by two compensates for the two RTC/SRTC clock cycle delay that is required to enable the counter.

#### **10.5.1.4 Reading RTC and SRTC values**

Software should follow the following procedure to ensure that it has read correct data from the RTC (HPRTCMR and HPRTCLR) and SRTC (LPSRTCMR and LPSRTCLR) registers:

- Read the most-significant half and the least-significant half of the RTC/SRTC and then read both halves again. If the values read are the same both times, the value is correct.
- If the two consecutive pairs of reads yield different results, perform two more reads.

The worst case scenario may require three sessions of two consecutive pairs of reads.

There are several reasons that the values may be incorrectly read initially:

- Synchronization issues between the RTC/SRTC clock and the system clock
- Since the counter continues to increment, there may be a carry from the least-significant 32-bits to the most-significant bits in between reading the two halves of the counter

## 10.5.2 Using Other SNVS Registers

The sections below describe how to use the General Purpose Register.Monotonic Counter.The sections below describe how to use the General Purpose Register and the Monotonic Counter.

### 10.5.2.1 Using the General-Purpose Register

SNVS implements a 256-bit general-purpose register allows software to store a small amount of data. To maintain backward compatibility with versions of SNVS that implement only a 32-bit general purpose register, the most-significant word of the general purpose register is aliased to the original legacy address, and to maintain backward compatibility with versions of snvs\_module\_name that implement a 128-bit general purpose register, the most-significant half of the general purpose register is aliased to the previous legacy address address. The data in the GPR will be retained during system power-down mode as long as the SNVS\_LP remains powered by an uninterrupted power source.If LP Control Register GPR\_Z\_DIS bit is 0, the GPR will be zeroized if an enabled security event occurs.

### 10.5.2.2 Using the Monotonic Counter (MC)

The following figure shows the MC and its rollover security violation.

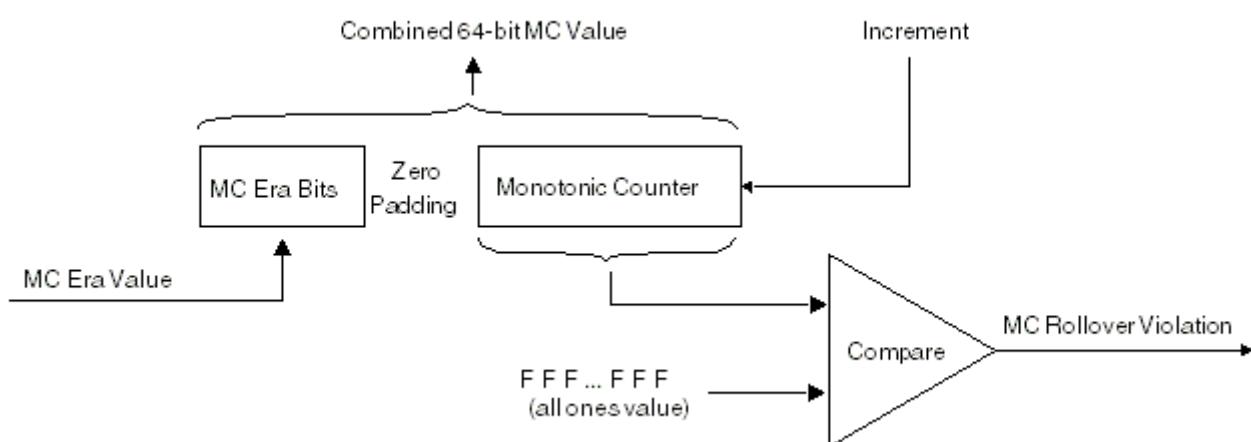


Figure 10-4. SNVS\_LP monotonic counter

Some security applications require a monotonic counter (MC) that cannot be returned to any previous value during the product's lifetime. For instance, the MC can be used to detect replay of a cryptographic blob by including the current monotonic counter value in the blob when it is encrypted, and checking this value against the current value in the MC register when the blob is decrypted. If more than one blob must be replay-protected, when any blob is to be updated the MC value would be incremented and all the blobs would be refreshed with the updated MC value. Alternatively, software monotonic counters could be maintained in a "monotonic counter blob", which would be replay-protected via the hardware MC. In this case any time that a blob is to be updated its software monotonic counter would be incremented, the MC would be incremented, and the monotonic counter blob would be refreshed with the updated value of the software monotonic counter and the updated MC value. If the application can tolerate a limited window for replay, the overhead could be reduced by only updating the monotonic counter blob once an hour, or perhaps once a day. Software could create even more elaborate anti-replay mechanisms using a tree of monotonic counter blobs, with the hardware MC at the root.

Because the MC cannot be allowed to repeat a value, it cannot set to a lower value than it currently holds. In the unlikely case that it reaches its maximum value, it does not rollover. Instead, a monotonic counter rollover indication is generated to the SNVS\_LP security event monitor. This generates a security violation to the SSM and an interrupt to the host processor.

The MON\_COUNTER fields of the MC register are implemented in flip flops within the LP section. If LP power is lost, the MON\_COUNTER value will be lost. To preserve monotonicity in this event, the most significant bits of MC (the MC\_ERA\_BITS field) are derived from fuses. This ensures that the MC\_ERA\_BITS value is preserved across LP section power failures. The next time that the chip powers up following an LP section power failure, the chip's boot firmware will note that the monotonic counter value is invalid and will blow another of the fuses that drive the MC\_ERA\_bits field. This will result in a larger value in the MC\_ERA MC field and since this field forms the most-significant bits of MC, this guarantees that the new value of MC is greater than any of its past values.

## 10.6 Configuring Master Key checking and control

SNVS can supply its Master Key to DCP, given the DCP\_KEY\_SEL and DCPKEY\_OCOTP\_OR\_KEYMUX bits in IOMUXC\_GPR registers are configured accordingly. When key selection changes for DCP, do a software reset of DCP by toggling the DCP\_CTRL[SFTRST] bit to make the new key effective. SNVS Soft or Hard Fail state will trigger DCP reset and lose its registered information.

Software configures SNVS via the LP Master Key Control Register's **MASTER\_KEY\_SEL** (Master Key Select) field so that the Master Key supplied to DCP comes from one of the following sources:

- One Time Programmable Master Key (OTPMK): This value is permanently burned into fuses. The 256-bit value includes an embedded 9-bit Hamming code so that hardware can verify the integrity of the key. This code is capable of detecting all single, double, and triple bit errors in the key value. The construction of the Hamming code is described in [Error Code for the OTPMK](#). The hardware checks for an all-zero value of the OTPMK. If the OTPMK Hamming code check fails or the OTPMK is not programmed at all (all 0s), the hardware will report a "bad key" error, which will prevent the chip from reaching the Trusted/Secure state.
- Zeroizable Master Key (ZMK): This value is stored in the ZMK registers of the low power (LP) section of the SNVS. The ZMK value is retained when the main SoC power is off because power is supplied to the SNVS LP section from a coin cell battery. The ZMK value is automatically erased in response to fatal security violations.

Software can write directly to the SNVS's ZMK registers. Once software has finished writing all of the ZMK registers, software sets the **ZMK\_Valid** bit. The value to be written into the ZMK can be determined by any appropriate method. For instance, a random value could be obtained from the chip's TRNG, or software could program the ZMK registers with a secret value shared among the OEM's devices. Unlike the OTPMK, the ZMK value does not include an embedded Hamming code. Instead, additional ECC protection bits are automatically generated by hardware and stored in the SNVS LP section.

- Combined Master Key (CMK): SNVS can be configured so that the Master Key is the bitwise XOR of the OTPMK registers and the ZMK registers. This bitwise XOR is called the CMK.

### 10.6.1 Error Code for the OTPMK

The Hamming code used for the 256-bit OTPMK has nine code bits. It can detect all 1, 2, and 3 bit errors in the codeword. It also detects most, but not all, errors of more than 3 bits. Therefore, the OTPMK actually contains 247 random bits.

Numbering the bits in the OTPMK from zero to 255, the code bits are bits 0, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, and 128. All remaining bits are data bits. Each of these code bits is the XOR of a subset of the bits in the entire code word.

To determine which bits are used to form each code bit, look at the binary representation of the bit position of each code bit (ignoring bit zero for the time being) in the following table.

**Table 10-6. Error codes**

Code bit	Binary representation
0	00000000
1	00000001
2	00000010
4	00000100
8	00001000
16	00010000
32	00100000
64	01000000
128	10000000

For code bit number 1, there is a single one in its binary representation. This code bit is the XOR of all bit positions that also have a one in this same point in their binary representation (i.e., all odd bit positions). The same is true for the other code bits, excepting code bit 0. For example, code bit 2 is the XOR of bits 3, 6, 7, 10, 11, 14, 15,..., 254, 255, and code bit 128 is the XOR of all bits from 129 through 255 inclusive. After all of the other code bits have been calculated, code bit zero is simply the XOR of all of the other bits, including the code bits.

Another way of looking at this is to ask which code bits does a data bit affect. If we look at the binary representation of the bit position of a data bit, the 1s represent the code bits that this data bit affects. For example, data bit 99 (01100011) is XORed into code bits 1, 2, 32, 64, and bit 0 (the overall parity bit).

## 10.6.2 Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key

The ZMK is programmed after or during initialization of the SNVS\_LP. The ZMK can be provisioned either by software or by hardware. After the ZMK has been provisioned, the value is retained even when power is off in the most of the chip. The SNVS's LP section (SNVS\_LP) includes the following registers for storing and locking the Zeroizable Master Key (ZMK).

Register	Overview
SNVS_LP Zeroizable Master Key Registers	Eight 32-bit registers store a 256-bit value called the Zeroizable Master Key (ZMK). The ZMK provides essentially the same function as the OTPMK from the Security Fuse Processor, except that the ZMK value can be zeroized if a security violation is detected. Upon detection of a security violation both the ZMK and the OTPMK are rendered unavailable during the

*Table continues on the next page...*

Register	Overview
	current boot cycle, but in addition the ZMK is zeroized, which renders the ZMK value unavailable upon all subsequent boot cycles.
SNVS_LP Lock Register	This register controls read and write access to all other SNVS_LP registers. Once a bit in the SNVS_LP Lock Register is set, it cannot be cleared without a device reset.
SNVS_LP Master Key Control Register	SNVS_LP Master Key Control determines whether the ZMK, the OTPMK, or the XOR of the two, will be used by the DCP. This register also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• controls the programming mode for the ZMK (software, or hardware via DCP's Random Number Generator)</li> <li>• stores the ZMK's Error Correcting Code</li> <li>• implements a valid bit that indicates that the ZMK has been provisioned</li> </ul>
SNVS_LP Status Register	Provides status information about the SNVS Low Power section's security state, including hardware security violations that are directly detected within the SNVS_LP. The ZMK cannot be provisioned if the SNVS_LP is in a Fail state.

To provision ZMK by software do the following:

- Verify that SNVS\_LPMKCR [ZMK\_HWP] is not set
- Verify that the ZMK registers are not locked for reads and writes. Verify that SNVS\_HPLR [ZMK\_WSL], [ZMK\_RSL] or SNVS\_LPLR [ZMK\_WHL], [ZMK\_WHL] are not set.
- Write key value to the ZMK registers
- Verify that the intended key value is written
  - Set SNVS\_LPMKCR [ZMK\_VAL] to indicate the ZMK is ready to be used by the DCP.
  - (Optional but recommended) Set SNVS\_LPMKCR [ZMK\_ECC\_EN] to enable ZMK error correction code verification. Software can verify that the correct nine-bit codeword is generated by reading ZMK\_ECC\_VALUE field
- (Optional but recommended) Block software read accesses to the ZMK registers and ZMK\_ECC\_VALUE field by setting SNVS\_HPLR [ZMK\_RSL] and SNVS\_LPLR [ZMK\_RHL]
- (Optional but recommended) Block software write accesses to the ZMK registers by setting SNVS\_HPLR [ZMK\_WSL] and SNVS\_LPLR [ZMK\_WHL]
- Set SNVS\_HPCOMR [MKS\_EN] and SNVS\_LPMKCR [MASTER\_KEY\_SEL] to select combination of OTPMK and ZMK to be provided to the DCP
- (Optional but recommended) Block software write accesses to the MASTER\_KEY\_SEL field by setting MKS lock bit
- (Optional but recommended) Block software write accesses to SNVS\_LPMKCR [MASTER\_KEY\_SEL] by setting SNVS\_HPLR [MKS\_SL].
- Verify that the ZMK registers are not locked for writes. Check that SNVS\_HPLR [ZMK\_WSL], or SNVS\_LPLR [ZMK\_WHL] are not set
- Set SNVS\_LPMKCR [ZMK\_HWP]
- Set SNVS\_HPCOMR [PROG\_ZMK]

- Poll for SNVS\_LPMKCR [ZMK\_VAL] bit to be set. This bit is set by hardware at the end of the ZMK programming cycle
- (Optional but recommended) Set SNVS\_LPMKCR [ZMK\_ECC\_EN] to enable ZMK error correction code verification by hardware. Note that the ZMK Registers and ZMK\_ECC\_VALUE field cannot be read by software in the hardware programming mode, meaning hardware ZMK\_ECC checking is the only way to determine if the ZMK is corrupted.
- (Optional but recommended) Block hardware programming option of the ZMK Registers by setting SNVS\_LPLR [ZMK\_WHL]
- Set SNVS\_HPCOMR [MKS\_EN] and SNVS\_LPMKCR [MASTER\_KEY\_SEL] to select combination of OTPMK and ZMK to be provided to the DCP
- (Optional but recommended) Block software write accesses to SNVS\_LPMKCR [MASTER\_KEY\_SEL] by setting SNVS\_HPLR [MKS\_SL].

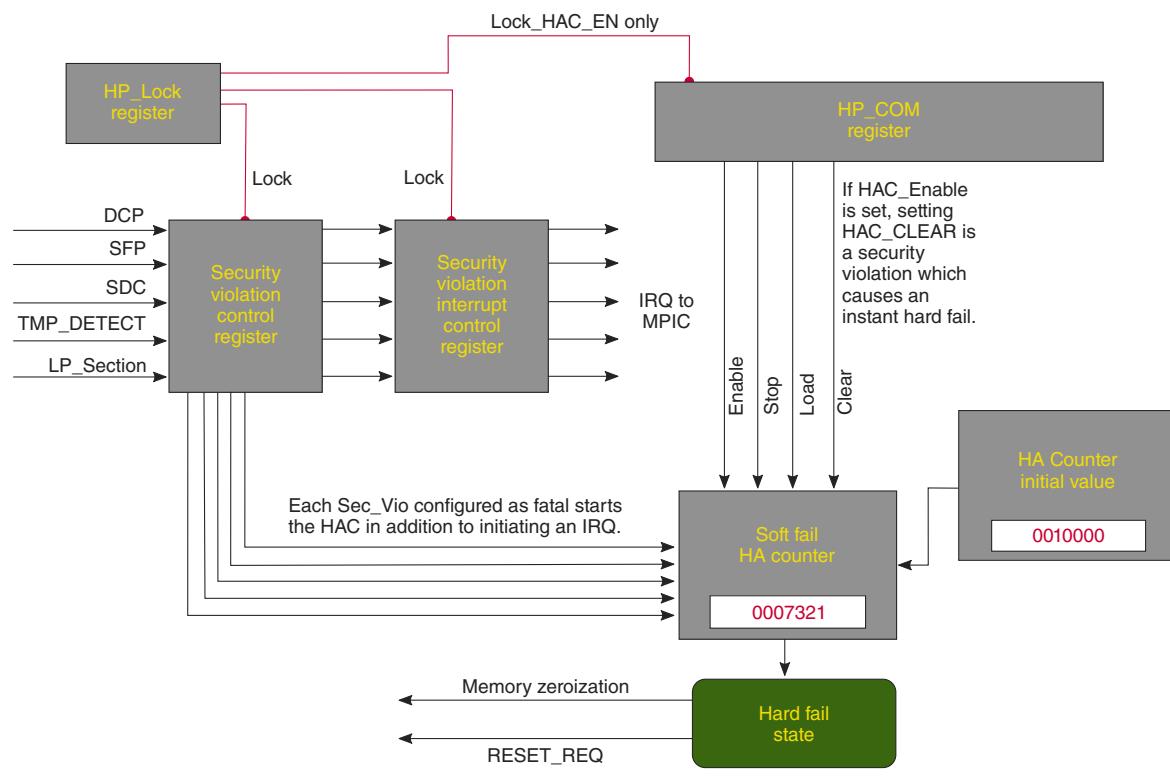
## 10.7 Reset and Initialization of SNVS

SNVS is implemented in two sections (HP and LP) that both must be initialized by software. If the SNVS\_LP is powered by an uninterrupted power source that is separate from main SoC power, then SNVS can operate in either of two modes, depending upon whether the main SoC power is on or off. During main SoC power-down SNVS\_HP is powered-down, but SNVS\_LP is powered from the backup power supply and is electrically isolated from the rest of the chip. In this mode SNVS\_LP keeps its registers' values but the LP registers cannot be read or written. During main SoC power-up the isolation of SNVS\_LP is disabled and both SNVS\_HP and SNVS\_LP are powered from the main SoC power. Both LP and HP registers can be read and written (locks and privilege modes permitting). Signals between the SNVS\_HP and SNVS\_LP sections are enabled and all SNVS functions are operational.

Since the HP and LP sections reside in different power domains, the POR for the two sections can occur at different times. If the SNVS\_LP section remains powered by an uninterrupted power source when the main SoC power is off, SNVS\_LP is initialized rarely, typically once when the device is first powered on and again whenever the battery is replaced. During main SoC power-up the isolation of SNVS\_LP is disabled and both SNVS\_HP and SNVS\_LP are powered from the main SoC power. Signals between the SNVS\_HP and SNVS\_LP sections are enabled and all SNVS functions are operational. The SNVS\_HP section is powered from the main SoC power, so it must be initialized after the device is powered on. If the SNVS\_LP section is powered from the main SoC power rather than from an uninterrupted power source, the SNVS\_LP section must also be initialized at SoC POR.

- Initializing the LP section

- The following steps should be completed to properly initialize the SNVS LP section (required only on LP POR, i.e. when the battery is replaced):
  - Software should write the proper initialization value (41736166h) into the [LP Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register](#) and clear the low-voltage event record in the [LP status register](#). See [Digital Low-Voltage Detector \(LVD\)](#) for more details.
  - If the SRTC will be used, set the [Secure Real Time Clock](#).
  - If the [ZMK](#) will be used, provision the ZMK (see [Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key](#)
  - If the [Monotonic Counter](#) will be used, burn an additional Monotonic Counter Era bit in the fuse bank and reset the Monotonic Counter.
- Initializing the HP section
  - The following steps should be completed to properly initialize the SNVS HP section (required on HP POR, i.e. SoC POR):
    - Perform normal or secure boot to put the SNVS into a functional state (Non-secure, Trusted, Secure) (see [HP Command Register](#), SSM\_ST bitfield).
    - Program SNVS general functions/configurations (see [HP Control Register](#)).
    - Enable security violations and interrupts in the [HP Security Violation Control Register](#) and the [HP Security Interrupt Control Register](#).
    - Select Master Key (OTPMK, ZMK or XOR of the two. Default is OTPMK.)
    - Set lock bits. The ms bit of the [HP Lock Register](#) should be set before starting any functional operation. Setting this bit prevents further changes to the Master Key selection.



27

Figure 10-5. Relationship Between the Registers

### 10.7.1 Checklist for Initialization of the SNVS HP

At SNVS HP POR, software must perform initialization actions in the SNVS HP section as indicated in the table below.

Initialization action <b>(Some of these actions are performed in the boot firmware or software.)</b>	Comments	See section
Configure fatal/nonfatal security violations	At HP POR all security violations default to disabled or nonfatal.	<a href="#">Configuring SNVS's response to a security event</a> <a href="#">SNVS_HP Security Violation Control Register (HPSVCR)</a>
Configure the High Assurance Counter	Can be skipped if HAC is not used. Defaults to HAC disabled at HP POR.	<a href="#">High Assurance Counter</a> <a href="#">SNVS_HP High Assurance Counter IV Register (PHACIVR)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_HP High Assurance Counter Register (PHACR)</a>

Table continues on the next page...

Initialization action  <b>(Some of these actions are performed in the boot firmware or software.)</b>	Comments	See section
		HAC_STOP, HAC_CLEAR, HAC_LOAD, and HAC_EN in <a href="#">SNVS_HP Command Register (HPCOMR)</a> HAC_L in <a href="#">SNVS_HP Lock Register (HPLR)</a>
Configure the SNVS interrupt policy	By default security violation interrupts are disabled at HP POR.	<a href="#">SNVS interrupts, alarms, and security violations</a> <a href="#">SNVS_HP Security Interrupt Control Register (HPSICR)</a>
Advance the Security State Machine	If software detects a security violation, force a transition to Soft Fail state, else cause a transition to Trusted state (and then to Secure state, if desired).	<a href="#">Security state machine</a> <a href="#">SW_LPSV, SW_FSV, SW_SV, SSM_SFNS_DIS, SSM_ST_DIS and SSM_ST in SNVS_HP Command Register (HPCOMR)</a>
Select Master Key input to DCP	If ZMK is not used, select OTPMK (default), else select ZMK or CMK.	<a href="#">Configuring Master Key checking and control</a> <a href="#">MASTER_KEY_SEL in SNVS_LP Master Key Control Register (LPMKCR)</a>

## 10.7.2 Checklist for Initialization of the SNVS LP

At SNVS LP POR, software must perform initialization actions in the SNVS LP section as indicated in the table below. If the SNVS LP section is powered from the same power source as SNVS HP section, LP POR will occur at the same time as HP POR.

Initialization action  <b>(Some of these actions are performed in the boot firmware or software.)</b>	Comments	See section
Load the Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register	Software should load the register with the value 4173_6166h and then clear the digital low-voltage detector status bit in the LP Status Register.	<a href="#">Digital Low-Voltage Detector (LVD)</a>
Burn additional MC_ERA fuse and initialize Monotonic Counter	Can be skipped if Monotonic Counter is unused. Should be skipped if SNVS LP is unpowered when main chip power is off.	<a href="#">Using the Monotonic Counter (MC)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Secure Monotonic Counter MSB Register (LPSMCMR)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Secure Monotonic Counter LSB Register (LPSMCLR)</a> <a href="#">MC_SL in SNVS_HP Lock Register (HPLR)</a>

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Initialization action  <b>(Some of these actions are performed in the boot firmware or software.)</b>	Comments	See section
		MC_HL in <a href="#">SNVS_LP Lock Register (LPLR)</a> MC_ENV in <a href="#">SNVS_LP Control Register (LPCR)</a>
Initialize Secure Real Time Counter	Can be skipped if Secure Real Time Counter is unused. Should be skipped if SNVS LP is unpowered when main chip power is off.	<a href="#">SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter (SRTC)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter MSB Register (LPSRTCMR)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter LSB Register (LPSRTCLR)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Time Alarm Register (LPTAR)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Time Alarm Register (LPTAR)</a> LPCALB_VAL, LPCALB_EN, SRTC_INV_EN, LPTA_EN, SRTC_ENV in <a href="#">SNVS_LP Control Register (LPCR)</a>
Program the Zeroizable Master Key	Can be skipped if Zeroizable Master Key is unused. Should be skipped if SNVS LP is unpowered when main chip power is off.	Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key <a href="#">SNVS_LP Zeroizable Master Key Register (LPZMKR0 - LPZMKR7)</a> <a href="#">SNVS_LP Master Key Control Register (LPMKCR)</a> ZMK_RSL and ZMK_WSL in <a href="#">SNVS_HP Lock Register (HPLR)</a> PROG_ZMK in <a href="#">SNVS_HP Command Register (HPCOMR)</a> ZMK_ZERO in <a href="#">SNVS_HP Status Register (HPSR)</a> ZMK_ECC_FAIL and ZMK_SYNDROME in <a href="#">SNVS_HP Security Violation Status Register (HPSVSR)</a>

## 10.8 SNVS register descriptions

This section contains detailed register descriptions for the SNVS registers. Each description includes a standard register diagram and register table. The register table provides detailed descriptions of the register bit and field functions, in bit order.

SNVS registers consist of two types:

- Privileged read/write accessible
- Non-privileged read/write accessible

Privileged read/write accessible registers can only be accessed for read/write by privileged software. Unauthorized write accesses are ignored, and unauthorized read accesses return zero. Non-privileged software can access privileged access registers when the non-privileged software access enable bit is set in the SNVS\_HP Command Register.

In addition, all privileged access registers (except HPSVSR and LPSR) can be written to only if the system security monitor is in one of the three functional states:

- Non-Secure
- Trusted
- Secure

Certain fields in the SNVS\_HP Command Register can be written in non-functional system security monitor states (init, check, soft fail, and hard fail) as follows:

- SW\_LPSV, SSM\_ST, SW\_SV, and SW\_FSV can be written in check or soft fail state.
- The HAC\_STOP bit can only be set in soft fail state but can be cleared in either soft fail or a functional state.
- HAC\_LOAD, HAC\_CLEAR bits and HPSVSR, LPSR Registers can be accessed in soft fail or a functional state.

The system security monitor state does not restrict read access to SNVS registers.

Non-privileged read/write accessible registers are read/write accessible by any software.

The LP register values are set only on LP POR and are unaffected by System (HP) POR. The HP registers are set only on System POR and are unaffected by LP POR.

The following table shows the SNVS main memory map.

### 10.8.1 SNVS memory map

SNVS base address: 400D\_4000h

Offset (hex)	Register	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value (hex)
0	SNVS_HP Lock Register (HPLR)	32	RW	0000_0000
4	SNVS_HP Command Register (HPCOMR)	32	RW	0000_0000
8	SNVS_HP Control Register (HPCR)	32	RW	0000_0000
C	SNVS_HP Security Interrupt Control Register (HPSICR)	32	RW	0000_0000

*Table continues on the next page...*

## SNVS register descriptions

Offset (hex)	Register	Width (In bits)	Access	Reset value (hex)
10	SNVS_HP Security Violation Control Register (HPSVCR)	32	RW	0000_0000
14	SNVS_HP Status Register (HPSR)	32	W1C	8000_B000
18	SNVS_HP Security Violation Status Register (HPSVSR)	32	W1C	8000_0000
1C	SNVS_HP High Assurance Counter IV Register (PHACIVR)	32	RW	0000_0000
20	SNVS_HP High Assurance Counter Register (PHACCR)	32	RO	0000_0000
24	SNVS_HP Real Time Counter MSB Register (HPRTCMR)	32	RW	0000_0000
28	SNVS_HP Real Time Counter LSB Register (HPRTCLR)	32	RW	0000_0000
2C	SNVS_HP Time Alarm MSB Register (HPTAMR)	32	RW	0000_0000
30	SNVS_HP Time Alarm LSB Register (HPTALR)	32	RW	0000_0000
34	SNVS_LP Lock Register (LPLR)	32	RW	0000_0000
38	SNVS_LP Control Register (LPCR)	32	RW	0000_0020
3C	SNVS_LP Master Key Control Register (LPMKCR)	32	RW	0000_0000
40	SNVS_LP Security Violation Control Register (LPSVCR)	32	RW	0000_0000
48	SNVS_LP Security Events Configuration Register (LPSECR)	32	RW	0000_0000
4C	SNVS_LP Status Register (LPSR)	32	RW	0000_0008
50	SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter MSB Register (LPSRTCMR)	32	RW	0000_0000
54	SNVS_LP Secure Real Time Counter LSB Register (LPSRTCLR)	32	RW	0000_0000
58	SNVS_LP Time Alarm Register (LPTAR)	32	RW	0000_0000
5C	SNVS_LP Secure Monotonic Counter MSB Register (LPSMCMR)	32	RW	0000_0000
60	SNVS_LP Secure Monotonic Counter LSB Register (LPSMCLR)	32	RW	0000_0000
64	SNVS_LP Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register (LPLVDR)	32	RW	0000_0000
68	SNVS_LP General Purpose Register 0 (legacy alias) (LPGPR0_legacy_alias)	32	RW	0000_0000
6C - 88	SNVS_LP Zeroizable Master Key Register (LPZMKR0 - LPZMKR7)	32	RW	0000_0000
90 - 9C	SNVS_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 3 (LPGPRO_alias - LPGPR3_alias)	32	RW	0000_0000
100 - 11C	SNVS_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 7 (LPGPRO - LPGPR7)	32	RW	0000_0000
BF8	SNVS_HP Version ID Register 1 (HPVIDR1)	32	RO	003E_0104
BFC	SNVS_HP Version ID Register 2 (HPVIDR2)	32	RO	0600_0000

### 10.8.2 SNVS\_HP Lock Register (HPLR)

The SNVS\_HP Lock Register contains lock bits for the SNVS registers. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.2.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPLR	0h

### 10.8.2.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved			Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved					HAC_L	HPSICR_L	HPSVCR_L
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved						MKS_SL	LPSECR_S_L	Reserved	LPSVCR_S_L	GPR_S_L	MC_SL	LPCALB_SL	SRTC_S_L	ZMK_RSL	ZMK_WSL
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 10.8.2.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-29	Reserved
—	
28	Reserved
—	
27	Reserved
—	
26	Reserved
—	
25	Reserved
—	
24	Reserved
—	
23-19	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
—	
18 HAC_L	<p>High Assurance Counter Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to HPHACIVR, HPHACR, and HAC_EN bit of HPCOMR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
17 HPSICR_L	<p>HP Security Interrupt Control Register Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the HPSICR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
16 HPSVCR_L	<p>HP Security Violation Control Register Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the HPSVCR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
15-10 —	Reserved
9 MKS_SL	<p>Master Key Select Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the MASTER_KEY_SEL field of the LPMKCR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
8 LPSECR_SL	<p>LP Security Events Configuration Register Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the LPSECR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
7 —	Reserved
6 LPSVCR_SL	<p>LP Security Violation Control Register Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the LPSVCR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
5 GPR_SL	<p>General Purpose Register Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the GPR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
4 MC_SL	<p>Monotonic Counter Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes (increments) to the MC Registers and MC_ENV bit. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access (increment) is allowed 1 - Write access (increment) is not allowed</p>

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
3 LPCALB_SL	<p>LP Calibration Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the LP Calibration Value (LPCALB_VAL) and LP Calibration Enable (LPCALB_EN). Once set, this bit can only be reset by system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
2 SRTC_SL	<p>Secure Real Time Counter Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes to the SRTC Registers, SRTC_ENV, and SRTC_INV_EN bits. Once set, this bit can only be reset by system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>
1 ZMK_RSL	<p>Zeroizable Master Key Read Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any software reads to the ZMK Registers and ZMK_ECC_VALUE field of the LPMKCR. In ZMK hardware programming mode (ZMK_HWP is set), the ZMK and ZMK_ECC_VALUE cannot be read by software. Regardless of the bit setting, hardware can use the ZMK value when ZMK is selected. Once set, this bit can only be reset by system reset.</p> <p>0 - Read access is allowed (only in software Programming mode) 1 - Read access is not allowed</p>
0 ZMK_WSL	<p>Zeroizable Master Key Write Soft Lock</p> <p>When set, prevents any writes (software and hardware) to the ZMK registers and the ZMK_HWP, ZMK_VAL, and ZMK_ECC_EN fields of the LPMKCR. Once set, this bit can only be cleared by system reset.</p> <p>0 - Write access is allowed 1 - Write access is not allowed</p>

### 10.8.3 SNVS\_HP Command Register (HPCOMR)

The SNVS\_HP Command Register contains the command, configuration, and control bits for the SNVS block. Some fields of this register can be written to in check and soft fail states in addition to the standard write access in functional states. This is a privileged write register.

#### 10.8.3.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPCOMR	4h

### 10.8.3.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	NPSWA_EN	Reserved												HAC_STOP	HAC_CLEAR	HAC_LOAD	HAC_EN
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved		MKS_EN	PROG_ZMK	Reserved	SW_LPS_V	SW_FS_V	SW_S_V	Reserved			LP_SWR_DI_S	LP_SW_R	Reserved	SSM_SFNS_DI_S	SSM_ST_DI_S	SSM_SS_T
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 10.8.3.3 Fields

Field	Description
31 NPSWA_EN	Non-Privileged Software Access Enable When set, allows non-privileged software to access all SNVS registers, including those that are privileged software read/write access only. 0 Only privileged software can access privileged registers 1 Any software can access privileged registers
30-20 —	Reserved
19 HAC_STOP	High Assurance Counter Stop This bit can be set only when SSM is in soft fail state. When set, it stops the high assurance counter and prevents transition to the hard fail state. This bit can be cleared in a functional or soft fail state. If the bit is cleared in the soft fail state, the high assurance counter counts down from the place where it was stopped. 0 HAC counter can count down 1 HAC counter is stopped
18 HAC_CLEAR	High Assurance Counter Clear When set, it clears the High Assurance Counter Register. It can be cleared in a functional or soft fail state. If the HAC counter is cleared in the soft fail state, the SSM transitions to the hard fail state if high assurance counter is enabled (HAC_EN is set). This self-clearing bit is always read as zero. 0 - No Action 1 - Clear the HAC

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
17 HAC_LOAD	<p>High Assurance Counter Load</p> <p>When set, it loads the High Assurance Counter Register with the value of the High Assurance Counter Load Register. It can be done in a functional or soft fail state. This self-clearing bit is always read as zero.</p> <p>0 - No Action</p> <p>1 - Load the HAC</p>
16 HAC_EN	<p>High Assurance Counter Enable</p> <p>This bit controls the SSM transition from the soft fail to the hard fail state. When this bit is set and software fails to stop the HAC before it expires, the SSM transitions to the hard fail state. This bit cannot be changed once HAC_L bit is set.</p> <p>0 - High Assurance Counter is disabled</p> <p>1 - High Assurance Counter is enabled</p>
15-14 —	Reserved
13 MKS_EN	<p>Master Key Select Enable</p> <p>When not set, the one time programmable (OTP) master key is selected by default. When set, the master key is selected according to the setting of the master key select field (MASTER_KEY_SEL) of LPMKCR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.</p> <p>0 - OTP master key is selected as an SNVS master key</p> <p>1 - SNVS master key is selected according to the setting of the MASTER_KEY_SEL field of LPMKCR</p>
12 PROG_ZMK	<p>Program Zeroizable Master Key</p> <p>This bit activates ZMK hardware programming mechanism. This mechanism is activated only if the ZMK is configured to the hardware programming mode and ZMK is not locked for writes. This self-clearing bit is always read as zero.</p> <p>0 - No Action</p> <p>1 - Activate hardware key programming mechanism</p>
11 —	Reserved
10 SW_LPSV	<p>LP Software Security Violation</p> <p>When set, SNVS_LP treats this bit as a security violation. The LP secure data is zeroized or invalidated according to the configuration. This security violation may result in a system security monitor transition if the LP Security Violation is enabled in the SNVS_HP Security Violation Control Register.</p>
9 SW_FSV	<p>Software Fatal Security Violation</p> <p>When set, the system security monitor treats this bit as a fatal security violation. This security violation has no effect on the LP section. This command results only in the following transitions of the SSM:</p> <p>Check State -&gt; Soft Fail</p> <p>Non-Secure State -&gt; Soft Fail</p> <p>Trusted State -&gt; Soft Fail</p> <p>Secure State -&gt; Soft Fail</p>
8 SW_SV	<p>Software Security Violation</p> <p>When set, the system security monitor treats this bit as a non-fatal security violation. This security violation has no effect on the LP section. This command results only in the following transitions of the SSM:</p> <p>Check -&gt; Non-Secure</p>

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
	Trusted -> Soft Fail Secure -> Soft Fail
7-6 —	Reserved
5 LP_SWR_DIS	LP Software Reset Disable  When set, disables the LP software reset. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the system reset.  0 - LP software reset is enabled 1 - LP software reset is disabled
4 LP_SWR	LP Software Reset  When set to 1, most registers in the SNVS_LP section are reset, but the following registers are <i>not</i> reset by an LP software reset: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Monotonic Counter</li><li>• Secure Real Time Counter</li><li>• Time Alarm Register</li></ul> This bit cannot be set when the LP_SWR_DIS bit is set. This self-clearing bit is always read as zero.  0 - No Action 1 - Reset LP section
3 —	Reserved
2 SSM_SFNS_DIS	SSM Soft Fail to Non-Secure State Transition Disable  When set, it disables the SSM transition from soft fail to non-secure state. Once set after the reset this bit cannot be changed  0 - Soft Fail to Non-Secure State transition is enabled 1 - Soft Fail to Non-Secure State transition is disabled
1 SSM_ST_DIS	SSM Secure to Trusted State Transition Disable  When set, disables the SSM transition from secure to trusted state. Once set after the reset, this bit cannot be changed.  0 - Secure to Trusted State transition is enabled 1 - Secure to Trusted State transition is disabled
0 SSM_ST	SSM State Transition  Transition state of the system security monitor. This self-clearing bit is always read as zero. This command results only in the following transitions of the SSM:  Check State → Non-Secure (when Non-Secure Boot and not in Fab Configuration ) Check State --> Trusted (when Secure Boot or in Fab Configuration ) Trusted State --> Secure Secure State --> Trusted (if not disabled by SSM_ST_DIS bit) Soft Fail --> Non-Secure (if not disabled by SSM_SFNS_DIS bit)

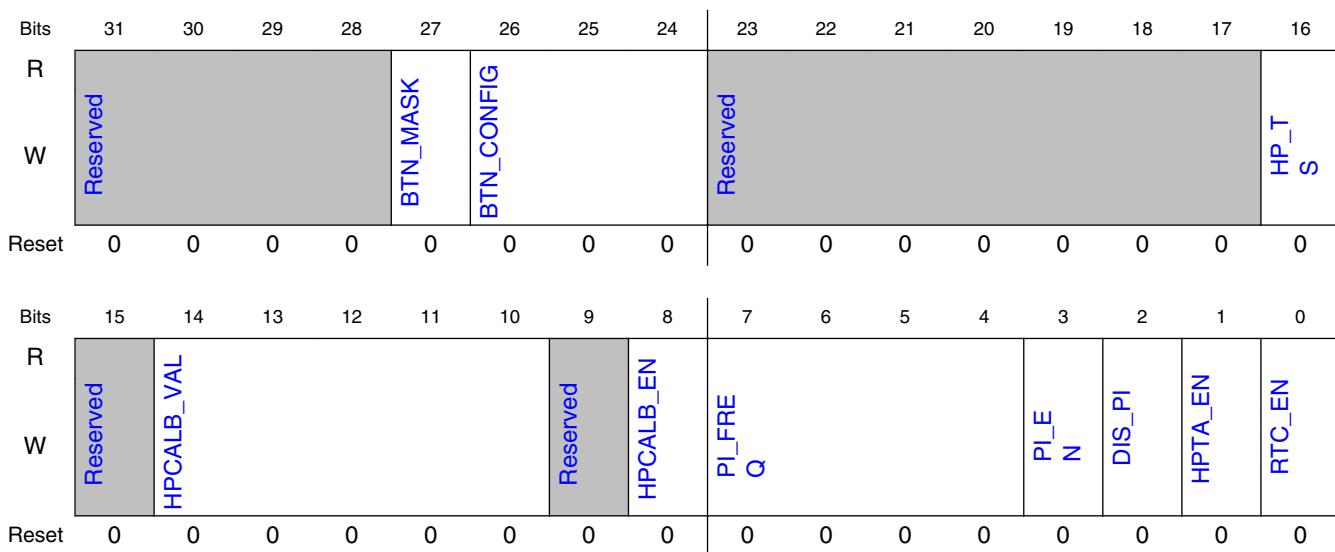
## 10.8.4 SNVS\_HP Control Register (HPCR)

The SNVS\_HP Control Register contains various control bits of the HP section of SNVS. This is *not* a privileged write register.

### 10.8.4.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPCR	8h

### 10.8.4.2 Diagram



### 10.8.4.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-28	Reserved
—	
27	Button interrupt mask. This bit is used to mask the button (BTN) interrupt request. 0: Interrupt disabled
BTN_MASK	

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
	1: Interrupt enabled
26-24 BTN_CONFIG	<p>Button Configuration.</p> <p>This field is used to configure which feature of the button (BTN) input signal constitutes "active".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>000: Button signal is active high</li> <li>001: Button signal is active low</li> <li>010: Button signal is active on the falling edge</li> <li>011: Button signal is active on the rising edge</li> <li>100: Button signal is active on any edge</li> <li>All other patterns are Reserved</li> </ul>
23-17 —	Reserved
16 HP_TS	<p>HP Time Synchronize. HP RTC should be disabled when synchronizing counter value.</p> <p>When set, this updates the HP Real Time Counter with the LP Real Time Counter value. This self-clearing bit is always read as zero.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 - No Action</li> <li>1 - Synchronize the HP Time Counter to the LP Time Counter</li> </ul>
15 —	Reserved
14-10 HPCALB_VAL	<p>HP Calibration Value</p> <p>Defines signed calibration value for the HP Real Time Counter. This field can be programmed only when RTC Calibration is disabled (HPCALB_EN is not set). This is a 5-bit 2's complement value, hence the allowable calibration values are in the range from -16 to +15 counts per 32768 ticks of the counter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>00000 - +0 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>00001 - +1 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>00010 - +2 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>01111 - +15 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>10000 - -16 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>10001 - -15 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>11110 - -2 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> <li>11111 - -1 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter</li> </ul>
9 —	Reserved
8 HPCALB_EN	<p>HP Real Time Counter Calibration Enabled</p> <p>Indicates that the time calibration mechanism is enabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 - HP Timer calibration disabled</li> <li>1 - HP Timer calibration enabled</li> </ul>
7-4 PI_FREQ	<p>Periodic Interrupt Frequency</p> <p>Defines frequency of the periodic interrupt. The interrupt is generated when a zero-to-one or one-to-zero transition occurs on the selected bit of the HP Real Time Counter and Real Time Counter and Periodic Interrupt are both enabled (RTC_EN and PI_EN are set). It is recommended to program this field when Periodic Interrupt is disabled (PI_EN is not set). The possible frequencies are:</p>

*Table continues on the next page...*

Field	Description
	0000 - bit 0 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0001 - bit 1 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0010 - bit 2 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0011 - bit 3 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0100 - bit 4 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0101 - bit 5 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0110 - bit 6 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 0111 - bit 7 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1000 - bit 8 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1001 - bit 9 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1010 - bit 10 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1011 - bit 11 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1100 - bit 12 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1101 - bit 13 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1110 - bit 14 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt 1111 - bit 15 of the HPRTCLR is selected as a source of the periodic interrupt
3 PI_EN	HP Periodic Interrupt Enable The periodic interrupt can be generated only if the HP Real Time Counter is enabled. 0 - HP Periodic Interrupt is disabled 1 - HP Periodic Interrupt is enabled
2 DIS_PI	Disable periodic interrupt in the functional interrupt 0 - Periodic interrupt will trigger a functional interrupt 1 - Disable periodic interrupt in the function interrupt
1 HPTA_EN	HP Time Alarm Enable When set, the time alarm interrupt is generated if the value in the HP Time Alarm Registers is equal to the value of the HP Real Time Counter. 0 - HP Time Alarm Interrupt is disabled 1 - HP Time Alarm Interrupt is enabled
0 RTC_EN	HP Real Time Counter Enable. This bit syncs with the 32KHz clock. It won't update with the bus clock. 0 - RTC is disabled 1 - RTC is enabled

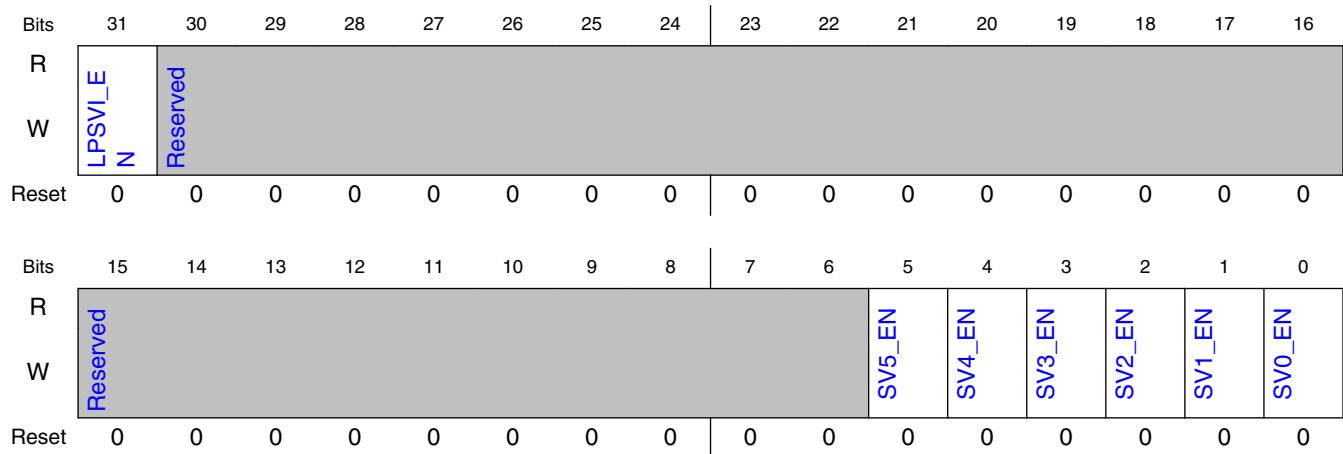
## 10.8.5 SNVS\_HP Security Interrupt Control Register (HPSICR)

The HP Security Interrupt Control Register defines the SNVS security interrupt generation policy. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.5.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPSICR	Ch

### 10.8.5.2 Diagram



### 10.8.5.3 Fields

Field	Description
31 LPSVI_EN	LP Security Violation Interrupt Enable This bit enables generating of the security interrupt to the host processor upon security violation signal from the LP section. 0 - LP Security Violation Interrupt is Disabled 1 - LP Security Violation Interrupt is Enabled
30-6 —	Reserved
5 SV5_EN	Security Violation 5 Interrupt Enable Setting this bit to 1 enables generation of the security interrupt to the host processor upon detection of the Security Violation 5 security violation. 0 - Security Violation 5 Interrupt is Disabled 1 - Security Violation 5 Interrupt is Enabled
4 SV4_EN	Security Violation 4 Interrupt Enable

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
	Setting this bit to 1 enables generation of the security interrupt to the host processor upon detection of the Security Violation 4 security violation. 0 - Security Violation 4 Interrupt is Disabled 1 - Security Violation 4 Interrupt is Enabled
3 SV3_EN	Security Violation 3 Interrupt Enable Setting this bit to 1 enables generation of the security interrupt to the host processor upon detection of the Security Violation 3 security violation. 0 - Security Violation 3 Interrupt is Disabled 1 - Security Violation 3 Interrupt is Enabled
2 SV2_EN	Security Violation 2 Interrupt Enable Setting this bit to 1 enables generation of the security interrupt to the host processor upon detection of the Security Violation 2 security violation. 0 - Security Violation 2 Interrupt is Disabled 1 - Security Violation 2 Interrupt is Enabled
1 SV1_EN	Security Violation 1 Interrupt Enable Setting this bit to 1 enables generation of the security interrupt to the host processor upon detection of the Security Violation 1 security violation. 0 - Security Violation 1 Interrupt is Disabled 1 - Security Violation 1 Interrupt is Enabled
0 SV0_EN	Security Violation 0 Interrupt Enable Setting this bit to 1 enables generation of the security interrupt to the host processor upon detection of the Security Violation 0 security violation. 0 - Security Violation 0 Interrupt is Disabled 1 - Security Violation 0 Interrupt is Enabled

## 10.8.6 SNVS\_HP Security Violation Control Register (HPSVCR)

The HP Security Violation Control Register defines types for each security violation input. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.6.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPSVCR	10h

## 10.8.6.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	LPSV_CFG																
W			Reserved														
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved									SV5_CFG			SV4_CFG	SV3_CFG	SV2_CFG	SV1_CFG	SV0_CFG
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 10.8.6.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-30 LPSV_CFG	LP Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the LP security violation source.  00 - LP security violation is disabled 01 - LP security violation is a non-fatal violation 1x - LP security violation is a fatal violation
29-7 —	Reserved
6-5 SV5_CFG	Security Violation 5 Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the Security Violation 5 Security Violation Input. This setting instructs the SSM how to respond upon detection of the Security Violation 5 security violation.  00 - Security Violation 5 is disabled 01 - Security Violation 5 is a non-fatal violation 1x - Security Violation 5 is a fatal violation
4 SV4_CFG	Security Violation 4 Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the Security Violation 4 Security Violation Input. This setting instructs the SSM how to respond upon detection of the Security Violation 4 security violation.  0 - Security Violation 4 is a non-fatal violation 1 - Security Violation 4 is a fatal violation
3 SV3_CFG	Security Violation 3 Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the Security Violation 3 Security Violation Input. This setting instructs the SSM how to respond upon detection of the Security Violation 3 security violation.  0 - Security Violation 3 is a non-fatal violation

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
	1 - Security Violation 3 is a fatal violation
2 SV2_CFG	Security Violation 2 Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the Security Violation 2 Security Violation Input. This setting instructs the SSM how to respond upon detection of the Security Violation 2 security violation.  0 - Security Violation 2 is a non-fatal violation 1 - Security Violation 2 is a fatal violation
1 SV1_CFG	Security Violation 1 Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the Security Violation 1 Security Violation Input. This setting instructs the SSM how to respond upon detection of the Security Violation 1 security violation.  0 - Security Violation 1 is a non-fatal violation 1 - Security Violation 1 is a fatal violation
0 SV0_CFG	Security Violation 0 Security Violation Configuration  This field configures the Security Violation 0 Security Violation Input. This setting instructs the SSM how to respond upon detection of the Security Violation 0 security violation.  0 - Security Violation 0 is a non-fatal violation 1 - Security Violation 0 is a fatal violation

## 10.8.7 SNVS\_HP Status Register (HPSR)

The HP Status Register reflects the internal state of the SNVS. This is *not* a privileged write register.

### 10.8.7.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPSR	14h

## 10.8.7.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	ZMK_ZERO	Reserved			OTPMK_ZERO	Reserved		OTPMK_SYNDROME								
W																
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SYS_SECURE_BOOST	SYS_SECURITY_CF			SSM_STAT_E				BI	BTN	Reserved	LPDIS	Reserved	PI		HPTA
W									W1C	0	0	0	0	0	W1C	W1C
Reset	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 10.8.7.3 Fields

Field	Description
31 ZMK_ZERO	Zeroizable Master Key is Equal to Zero. When set, this bit triggers "bad key" violation if the ZMK is selected for use. This bit will reset to 1 on LP Section POR. If the LP section is powered by an uninterrupted power source, once the ZMK has been programmed with a nonzero value this bit will reset to 0 on HP Section PORs.  0 - The ZMK is not zero. 1 - The ZMK is zero.
30-28 —	Reserved
27 OTPMK_ZERO	One Time Programmable Master Key is Equal to Zero. When set, this bit always triggers "bad key" violation.  OTPMK_ZERO will normally reset to 0. This will reset to 1 only if the OTPMK has not been programmed in the fuse bank.  0 - The OTPMK is not zero. 1 - The OTPMK is zero.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
26-25 —	Reserved
24-16 OTPMK_SYNDROME	<p>One Time Programmable Master Key Syndrome</p> <p>In the case of a single-bit error, the eight lower bits of this value indicate the bit number of error location. For example, syndrome word 10010110 indicates that key bit 150 (lsb=0) has an error.</p> <p>The ninth bit of the syndrome word checks parity of the whole key value. This bit is 1 when an odd number of errors has occurred and it is 0 when the number of errors is even. For example, if one of the eight bits indicates a failure and the ninth bit is zero then the number of errors in the one time programmable master key is at least 2 and it cannot be corrected. When one of the syndrome bits is set, the bad key violation is always generated.</p> <p>OTPMK_SYNDROME will normally reset to 0x000. This will reset to nonzero only if the OTPMK has an error in one or more bits.</p>
15 SYS_SECURE_BOOT	<p>System Secure Boot</p> <p>If SYS_SECURE_BOOT is 1, the chip boots from internal ROM. In a chip in the field, SYS_SECURE_BOOT will normally reset to 1. It will reset to 0 only in a test chip.</p>
14-12 SYS_SECURIT_Y_CFG	<p>System Security Configuration</p> <p>This field reflects the three security configuration inputs to SNVS. These inputs are used in conjunction with the sys_secure_boot input, which is visible as the SYS_SECURE_BOOT bit.</p> <p>000 - Fab Configuration - the default configuration of newly fabricated chips</p> <p>001 - Open Configuration - the configuration after NXP-programmable fuses have been blown</p> <p>011 - Closed Configuration - the configuration after OEM-programmable fuses have been blown</p> <p>111 - Field Return Configuration - the configuration of chips that are returned to NXP for analysis</p>
11-8 SSM_STATE	<p>System Security Monitor State</p> <p>This field contains the encoded state of the SSM's state machine. The encoding of the possible states are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0000 - Init</li> <li>0001 - Hard Fail</li> <li>0011 - Soft Fail</li> <li>1000 - Init Intermediate (transition state between Init and Check - SSM stays in this state only one clock cycle)</li> <li>1001 - Check</li> <li>1011 - Non-Secure</li> <li>1101 - Trusted</li> <li>1111 - Secure</li> </ul>
7 BI	Button Interrupt Signal ipi_snvs_btn_int_b was asserted.
6 BTN	Button Value of the BTN input. This is the external button used for PMIC control. 0: BTN not pressed 1: BTN pressed
5 —	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
4	Low Power Disable
LPDIS	If 1, the low power section has been disabled by means of an input signal to SNVS.
3-2 —	Reserved
1	Periodic Interrupt
PI	Indicates that periodic interrupt has occurred since this bit was last cleared. 0 - No periodic interrupt occurred. 1 - A periodic interrupt occurred.
0	HP Time Alarm
HPTA	Indicates that the HP Time Alarm has occurred since this bit was last cleared. 0 - No time alarm interrupt occurred. 1 - A time alarm interrupt occurred.

## 10.8.8 SNVS\_HP Security Violation Status Register (HPSVSR)

The HP Security Violation Status Register reflects the HP domain security violation records. Write a 1 to Security Violation 5-0 to clear the corresponding security violation detection flag. Note that this does not automatically clear the security violation signal that is connected to the input, so the security violation may immediately be detected again. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.8.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPSVSR	18h

### 10.8.8.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	LP_SEC_VIO	Reserved				ZMK_ECC_FAIL	Reserved		ZMK_SYNDROME								
W					W1C												
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SW_LPS_V	SW_FS_V	SW_S_V	Reserved				SV5		SV4		SV3		SV2		SV1	
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	W1C	0	W1C	0	W1C	0	W1C	0	W1C	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 10.8.8.3 Fields

Field	Description
31 LP_SEC_VIO	LP Security Violation A security violation was detected in the SNVS low power section. This bit will reset to 1 on LP Section POR because the Digital Low-Voltage Detector will indicate that an LP section low-voltage event has occurred. If the LP section is powered by an uninterrupted power source, LP Security Violation will normally reset to 0 if no LP POR has occurred since the Digital Low-Voltage Detector was written. If a POR occurred in the LP section, at HP POR the boot ROM firmware will normally detect this and will then re-initialize the LP section and reset LP Security Violation to 0.
30-28 —	Reserved
27 ZMK_ECC_FAIL	Zeroizable Master Key Error Correcting Code Check Failure When set, this bit triggers a bad key violation to the SSM and a security violation to the SNVS_LP section, which clears security sensitive data. Writing a one to this bit clears the record of this failure and also clears this register's ZMK_SYNDROME field. 0 - ZMK ECC Failure was not detected. 1 - ZMK ECC Failure was detected.
26-25 —	Reserved
24-16	Zeroizable Master Key Syndrome

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
ZMK_SYNDROME	The ZMK syndrome indicates the single-bit error location and parity for the ZMK register. It operates similar to the OTPMK syndrome. This value is set and locked when a ZMK ECC failure is detected. It is cleared by writing one into ZMK_ECC_FAIL bit.
15 SW_LPSV	LP Software Security Violation This bit is a read-only copy of the SW_LPSV bit in the HP Command Register.
14 SW_FSV	Software Fatal Security Violation This bit is a read-only copy of the SW_FSV bit in the HP Command Register.
13 SW_SV	Software Security Violation This bit is a read-only copy of the SW_SV bit in the HP Command Register.
12-6 —	Reserved
5 SV5	Security Violation 5 security violation was detected. 0 - No Security Violation 5 security violation was detected. 1 - Security Violation 5 security violation was detected.
4 SV4	Security Violation 4 security violation was detected. 0 - No Security Violation 4 security violation was detected. 1 - Security Violation 4 security violation was detected.
3 SV3	Security Violation 3 security violation was detected. 0 - No Security Violation 3 security violation was detected. 1 - Security Violation 3 security violation was detected.
2 SV2	Security Violation 2 security violation was detected. 0 - No Security Violation 2 security violation was detected. 1 - Security Violation 2 security violation was detected.
1 SV1	Security Violation 1 security violation was detected. 0 - No Security Violation 1 security violation was detected. 1 - Security Violation 1 security violation was detected.
0 SV0	Security Violation 0 security violation was detected. 0 - No Security Violation 0 security violation was detected. 1 - Security Violation 0 security violation was detected.

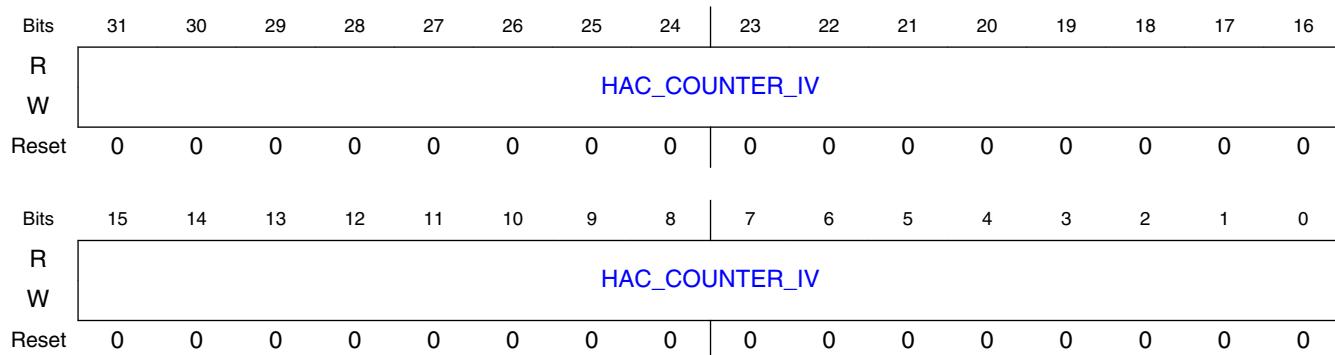
### 10.8.9 SNVS\_HP High Assurance Counter IV Register (HPA\_CIVR)

The SNVS\_HP High Assurance Counter IV Register contains the initial value for the high assurance counter. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.9.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPHACIVR	1Ch

### 10.8.9.2 Diagram



### 10.8.9.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	High Assurance Counter Initial Value
HAC_COUNTE R_IV	This register is used to set the starting count value to the high assurance counter. This register cannot be programmed when HAC_L bit is set.

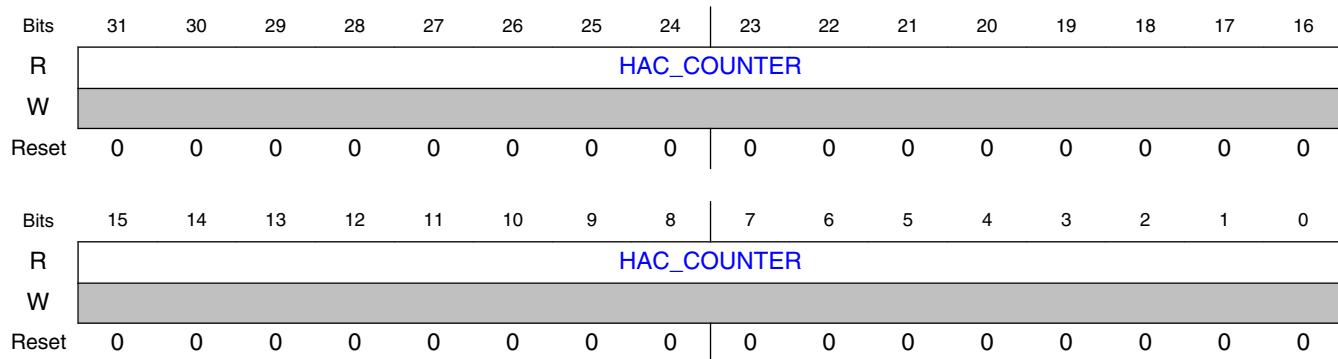
## 10.8.10 SNVS\_HP High Assurance Counter Register (HPHACR)

The SNVS\_HP High Assurance Counter Register contains the value of the high assurance counter. The high assurance counter is a delay introduced before the system security monitor transitions from soft fail to hard fail state if this transition is enabled. This is a non-privileged read-only register.

### 10.8.10.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPHACR	20h

### 10.8.10.2 Diagram



### 10.8.10.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0 HAC_COUNTE R	<p>High Assurance Counter</p> <p>When the HAC_EN bit is set and the SSM is in the soft fail state, this counter starts to count down with the system clock. When the counter reaches zero, the SSM transitions to the Hard Fail State.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When HAC_STOP bit is set, the HAC Counter is stopped.</li> <li>When HAC_CLEAR bit is set, the HAC Counter is cleared.</li> <li>When HAC_LOAD bit is set, the HAC Counter is loaded with the value of the HPHACIVR.</li> </ul>

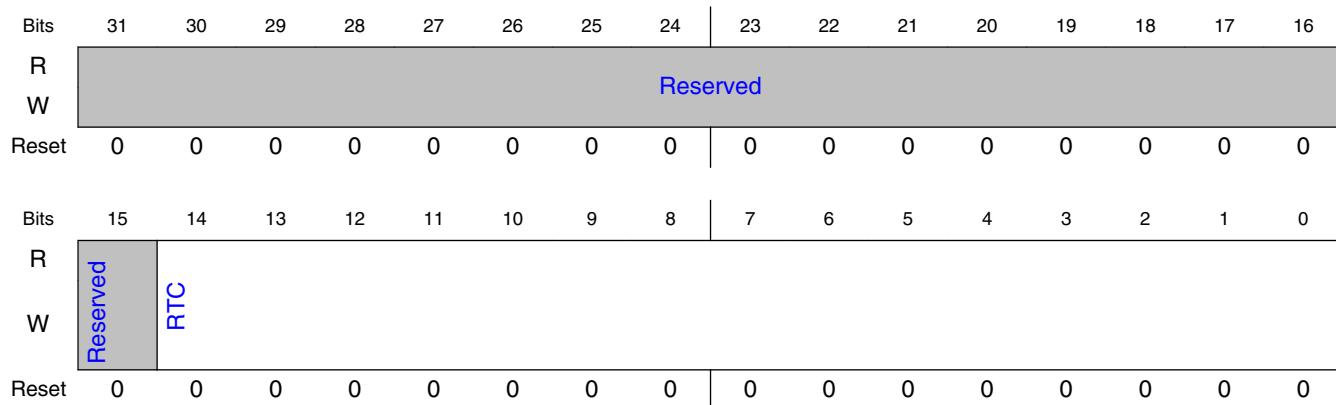
### 10.8.11 SNVS\_HP Real Time Counter MSB Register (HPRTCMR)

The SNVS\_HP Real Time Counter MSB register contains the 15 most-significant bits of the HP Real Time Counter. This is *not* a privileged write register.

### 10.8.11.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPRTCMR	24h

### 10.8.11.2 Diagram



### 10.8.11.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-15	Reserved
—	
14-0	HP Real Time Counter
RTC	The most-significant 15 bits of the RTC. This register can be programmed only when RTC is not active (RTC_EN bit is not set).

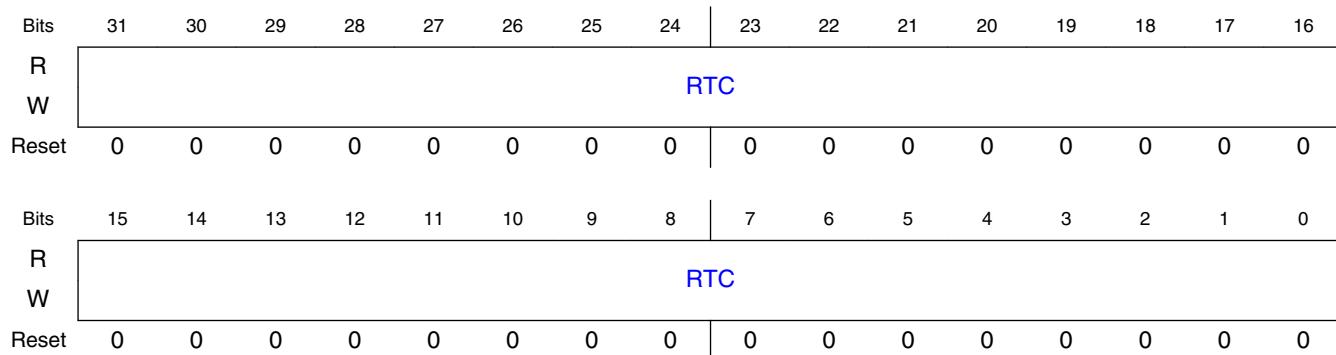
## 10.8.12 SNVS\_HP Real Time Counter LSB Register (HPRTCLR)

The SNVS\_HP Real Time Counter LSB register contains the 32 least-significant bits of the HP real time counter. This is *not* a privileged write register.

### 10.8.12.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPRTCCLR	28h

### 10.8.12.2 Diagram



### 10.8.12.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	HP Real Time Counter
RTC	least-significant 32 bits. This register can be programmed only when RTC is not active (RTC_EN bit is not set).

## 10.8.13 SNVS\_HP Time Alarm MSB Register (HPTAMR)

The SNVS\_HP Time Alarm MSB register contains the most-significant bits of the SNVS\_HP Time Alarm value. This is *not* a privileged write register.

### 10.8.13.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPTAMR	2Ch

### 10.8.13.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									Reserved							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 10.8.13.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-15	Reserved
14-0 HPTA_MS	HP Time Alarm, most-significant 15 bits. This register can be programmed only when HP time alarm is disabled (HPTA_EN bit is not set).

## 10.8.14 SNVS\_HP Time Alarm LSB Register (HPTALR)

The SNVS\_HP Time Alarm LSB register contains the 32 least-significant bits of the SNVS\_HP Time Alarm value. This is *not* a privileged write register.

### 10.8.14.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPTALR	30h

## 10.8.14.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	HPTA_LS																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	HPTA_LS																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 10.8.14.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	HP Time Alarm, 32 least-significant bits.
HPTA_LS	This register can be programmed only when HP time alarm is disabled (HPTA_EN bit is not set).

## 10.8.15 SNVS\_LP Lock Register (LPLR)

The SNVS\_LP Lock Register contains lock bits for the SNVS\_LP registers. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.15.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPLR	34h

## 10.8.15.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								R	Reserved							
W									W								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								MKS_HL	LPSECR_HL		GPR_H_L	MC_HL	LPCALB_HL	SRTC_H_L	ZMK_RHL	ZMK_WHL
W									W	Reserved		0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 10.8.15.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-29	Reserved
—	
28	Reserved
—	
27	Reserved
—	
26	Reserved
—	
25	Reserved
—	
24	Reserved
—	
23-10	Reserved
—	
9	Master Key Select Hard Lock
MKS_HL	When set, prevents any writes to the MASTER_KEY_SEL field of the LP Master Key Control Register. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.
8	LP Security Events Configuration Register Hard Lock
LPSECR_HL	When set, prevents any writes to the LPSECR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR.

Table continues on the next page...

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
	0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.
7 —	Reserved
6 LPSVCR_HL	LP Security Violation Control Register Hard Lock When set, prevents any writes to the LPSVCR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.
5 GPR_HL	General Purpose Register Hard Lock When set, prevents any writes to the GPR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.
4 MC_HL	Monotonic Counter Hard Lock When set, prevents any writes (increments) to the MC Registers and MC_ENV bit. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access (increment) is allowed. 1 - Write access (increment) is not allowed.
3 LPCALB_HL	LP Calibration Hard Lock When set, prevents any writes to the LP Calibration Value (LPCALB_VAL) and LP Calibration Enable (LPCALB_EN). Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.
2 SRTC_HL	Secure Real Time Counter Hard Lock When set, prevents any writes to the SRTC registers, SRTC_ENV, and SRTC_INV_EN bits. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.
1 ZMK_RHL	Zeroizable Master Key Read Hard Lock When set, prevents any software reads to the ZMK registers and ZMK_ECC_VALUE field of the LPMKCR. In ZMK hardware programming mode (ZMK_HWP is set), software cannot read the ZMK or ZMK_ECC_VALUE. Regardless of the setting of this bit, hardware can use the ZMK value when ZMK is selected. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Read access is allowed (only in software programming mode). 1 - Read access is not allowed.
0 ZMK_WHL	Zeroizable Master Key Write Hard Lock When set, prevents any writes (software and hardware) to the ZMK registers and ZMK_HWP, ZMK_VAL, and ZMK_ECC_EN fields of the LPMKCR. Once set, this bit can only be reset by the LP POR. 0 - Write access is allowed. 1 - Write access is not allowed.

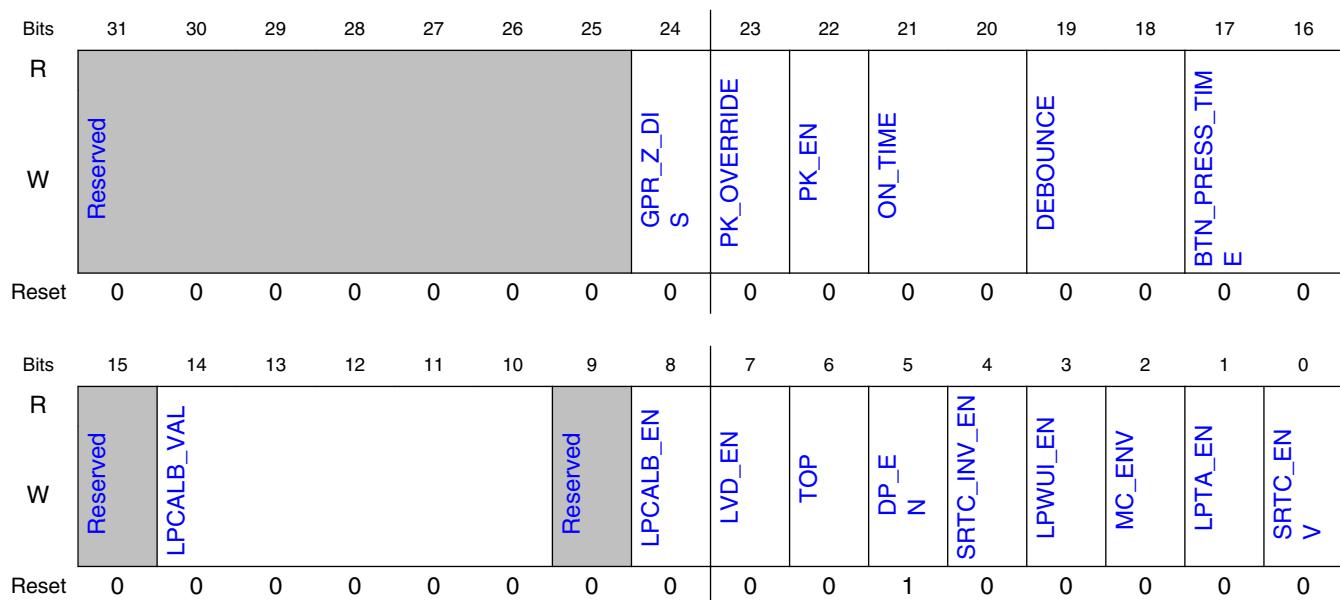
## 10.8.16 SNVS\_LP Control Register (LPCR)

The SNVS\_LP Control Register contains various control bits of the LP section of SNVS. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.16.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPCR	38h

### 10.8.16.2 Diagram



### 10.8.16.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-25	Reserved
—	
24	General Purpose Registers Zeroization Disable. 1 = Disable zeroization of the GPR registers when a security event occurs.
GPR_Z_DIS	

*Table continues on the next page...*

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
	0 = Zeroize the GPR registers when a security event occurs. (Default)
23 PK_OVERRIDE	PMIC On Request Override  The value written to PK_OVERRIDE will be asserted on output signal snvs_lp_pk_override. That signal is used to override the IOMUX control for the PMIC I/O pad.
22 PK_EN	PMIC On Request Enable  The value written to PK_EN will be asserted on output signal snvs_lp_pk_en. That signal is used to turn off the pullup/pulldown circuitry in the PMIC I/O pad.
21-20 ON_TIME	The ON_TIME field is used to configure the period of time after BTN is asserted before pmic_en_b is asserted to turn on the SoC power.  00: 500msec off->on transition time 01: 50msec off->on transition time 10: 100msec off->on transition time 11: 0msec off->on transition time
19-18 DEBOUNCE	This field configures the amount of debounce time for the BTN input signal.  00: 50msec debounce 01: 100msec debounce 10: 500msec debounce 11: 0msec debounce
17-16 BTN_PRESS_TIME	This field configures the button press time out values for the PMIC Logic.  00 : 5 secs 01 : 10 secs 10 : 15 secs 11 : long press disabled (pmic_en_b will not be asserted regardless of how long BTN is asserted)
15 —	Reserved
14-10 LPCALB_VAL	LP Calibration Value  Defines signed calibration value for SRTC. This field can be programmed only when SRTC calibration is disabled and not locked, i.e. when LPCALB_EN, LPCALB_SL, and LPCALB_HL bits are not set. This is a 5-bit 2's complement value. Hence, the allowable calibration values are in the range from -16 to +15 counts per 32768 ticks of the counter clock  00000 - +0 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 00001 - +1 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 00010 - +2 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 01111 - +15 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 10000 - -16 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 10001 - -15 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 11110 - -2 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock 11111 - -1 counts per each 32768 ticks of the counter clock
9 —	Reserved
8	LP Calibration Enable

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
LPCALB_EN	<p>When set, enables the SRTC calibration mechanism. This bit cannot be changed once LPCALB_SL or LPCALB_HL bit is set.</p> <p>0 - SRTC Time calibration is disabled.</p> <p>1 - SRTC Time calibration is enabled.</p>
7 LVD_EN	<p>Digital Low-Voltage Event Enable</p> <p>By default the detection of a low-voltage event does not cause the pmic_en_b signal to be asserted. Setting the Digital Low-Voltage Event Enable bit to 1 enables the low-voltage event for the PMIC.</p> <p>0 - disabled</p> <p>1 - enabled</p>
6 TOP	<p>Turn off System Power</p> <p>Asserting this bit causes a signal to be sent to the Power Management IC to turn off the system power. This bit will clear once power is off. This bit is only valid when the Dumb PMIC is enabled.</p> <p>0 - Leave system power on.</p> <p>1 - Turn off system power.</p>
5 DP_EN	<p>Dumb PMIC Enabled</p> <p>When set, software can control the system power. When cleared, the system requires a Smart PMIC to automatically turn power off.</p> <p>0 - Smart PMIC enabled.</p> <p>1 - Dumb PMIC enabled.</p>
4 SRTC_INV_EN	<p>If this bit is 1, in the case of a security violation the SRTC stops counting and the SRTC is invalidated (SRTC_ENV bit is cleared). This is intended to allow software to read the time at which the security violation occurred. This field cannot be changed once SRTC_SL or SRTC_HL bit is set. Software security violations stop the SRTC and are unaffected by this field.</p> <p>0 - SRTC stays valid in the case of security violation (other than a software violation (HPSVSR[SW_LPSV] = 1 or HPCOMR[SW_LPSV] = 1)).</p> <p>1 - SRTC is invalidated in the case of security violation.</p>
3 LPWUI_EN	<p>LP Wake-Up Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This interrupt line should be connected to the external pin and is intended to inform the external chip about an SNVS_LP event (MC rollover, SRTC rollover, or time alarm). This wake-up signal can be asserted only when the chip (HP section) is powered down, and the LP section is isolated.</p> <p>0 LP wake-up interrupt is disabled.</p> <p>1 LP wake-up interrupt is enabled.</p>
2 MC_ENV	<p>Monotonic Counter Enabled and Valid</p> <p>When set, the MC can be incremented (by write transaction to the LPSMCMR or LPSMCLR). Once MC_SL or MC_HL bit is set this bit can be changed only by LP POR.</p> <p>0 - MC is disabled or invalid.</p> <p>1 - MC is enabled and valid.</p>
1 LPTA_EN	<p>LP Time Alarm Enable</p> <p>When set, the SNVS functional interrupt is asserted if the LP Time Alarm Register is equal to the 32 MSBs of the secure real time counter.</p> <p>0 - LP time alarm interrupt is disabled.</p> <p>1 - LP time alarm interrupt is enabled.</p>
0	Secure Real Time Counter Enabled and Valid

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
SRTC_ENV	When set, the SRTC becomes operational. This bit cannot be changed once SRTC_SL or SRTC_HL bit is set. 0 - SRTC is disabled or invalid. 1 - SRTC is enabled and valid.

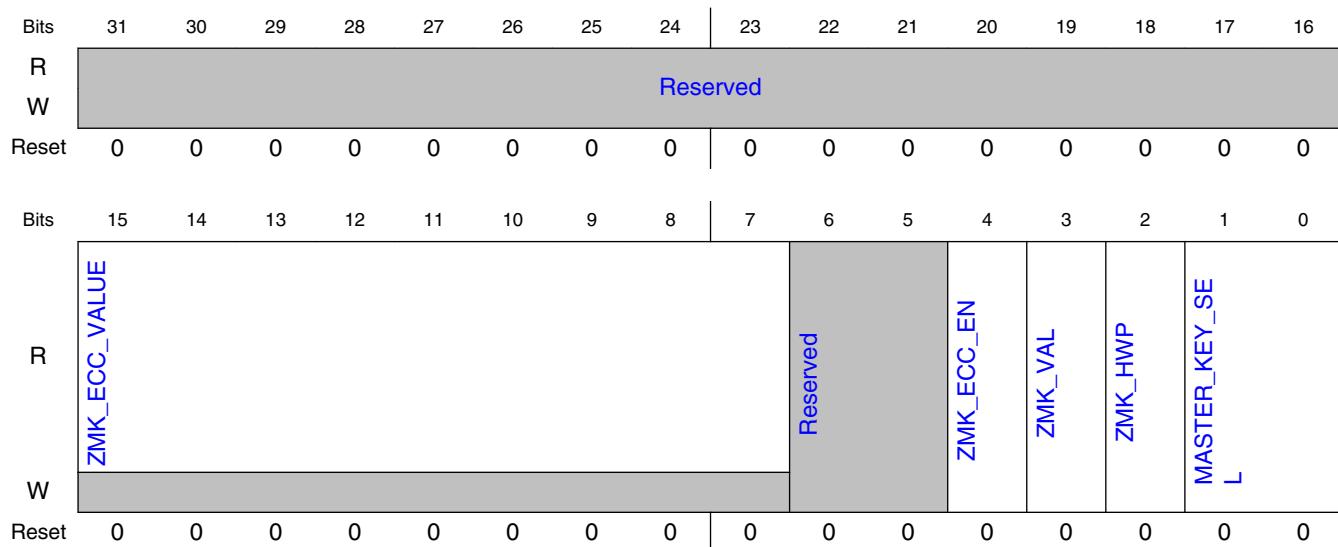
## 10.8.17 SNVS\_LP Master Key Control Register (LPMKCR)

The SNVS\_LP Master Key Control Register contains the master keys configuration. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.17.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPMKCR	3Ch

### 10.8.17.2 Diagram



### 10.8.17.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-16 —	Reserved
15-7 ZMK_ECC_VAL UE	<p>Zeroizable Master Key Error Correcting Code Value</p> <p>This field is automatically calculated and set when one is written into ZMK_ECC_EN bit of this register. This field cannot be programmed by software. It keeps the ECC value of the Zeroizable Master Key, which allows checking that ZMK has not been corrupted/changed over time.</p> <p>Note that this ZMK ECC code is equivalent to the ECC bits encoded into the OTPMK value but for the ZMK, the ECC value is kept separate from the ZMK value. Read restrictions similar to the ZMK Registers are applied to this field (see <a href="#">Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key</a> ).</p>
6-5 —	Reserved
4 ZMK_ECC_EN	<p>Zeroizable Master Key Error Correcting Code Check Enable</p> <p>Writing one to this field automatically calculates and sets the ZMK ECC value in the ZMK_ECC_VALUE field of this register. When both ZMK value is valid (ZMK_VAL is set) and ZMK ECC check is enabled (ZMK_ECC_EN is set), the ZMK value is continuously checked for the valid ECC word. If the ZMK ECC word calculated every clock cycle does not match the one recorded in this register, the ZMK ECC Check Fail Violation is generated. This bit cannot be programmed when ZMK_WSL or ZMK_WHL bit is set.</p> <p>0 - ZMK ECC check is disabled. 1 - ZMK ECC check is enabled.</p>
3 ZMK_VAL	<p>Zeroizable Master Key Valid</p> <p>When set, the ZMK value can be selected by the master key control block for use by cryptographic modules. In hardware programming mode, hardware sets this bit when the ZMK provisioning is complete. In software programming mode, software should set this bit. This bit cannot be programmed when ZMK_WSL or ZMK_WHL bit is set.</p> <p>0 - ZMK is not valid. 1 - ZMK is valid.</p>
2 ZMK_HWP	<p>Zeroizable Master Key hardware Programming mode</p> <p>When set, only the hardware key programming mechanism can set the ZMK and software cannot read it. When not set, the ZMK can be programmed only by software. See <a href="#">Provisioning the Zeroizable Master Key</a> for details. This bit cannot be programmed when ZMK_WSL or ZMK_WHL bit is set.</p> <p>0 - ZMK is in the software programming mode. 1 - ZMK is in the hardware programming mode.</p>
1-0 MASTER_KEY_SEL	<p>Master Key Select</p> <p>These bits select the SNVS Master Key output when Master Key Select bits are enabled by MKS_EN bit in the HPCOMR. When MKS_EN bit is not set, the one time programmable master key is selected by default. This field cannot be programmed when the MKS_SL or the hard lock bit is set.</p> <p>0x - Select one time programmable master key. 10 - Select zeroizable master key when MKS_EN bit is set . 11 - Select combined master key when MKS_EN bit is set .</p>

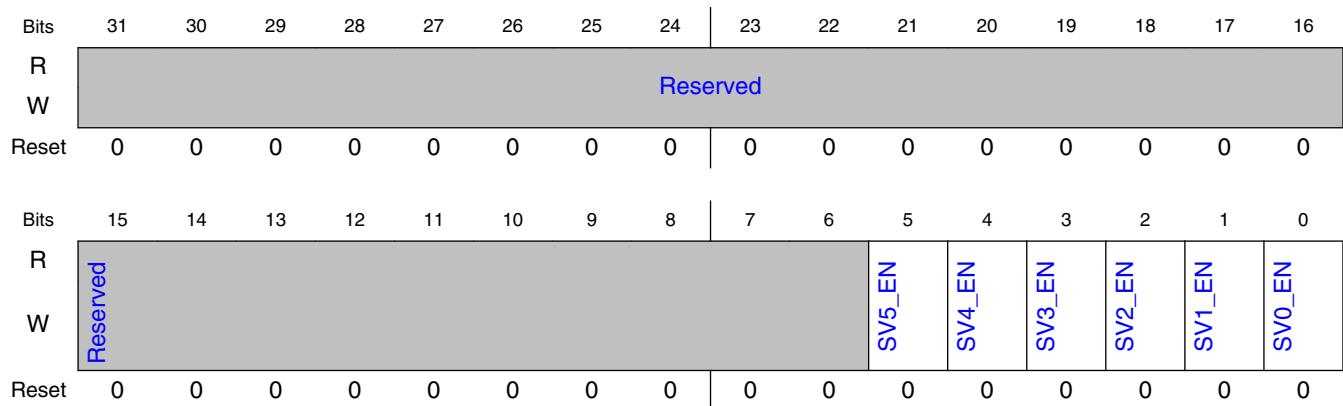
## 10.8.18 SNVS\_LP Security Violation Control Register (LPSVCR)

The LP Security Violation Control Register configures security violation inputs. This register cannot be programmed when the LPSVCR Lock bit is set. Note that configurations of the security violation inputs in the HP section (HPSVCR) and LP section (LPSVCR Register) are independent and have different functionality. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.18.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSVCR	40h

### 10.8.18.2 Diagram



### 10.8.18.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-6	Reserved
—	
5	Security Violation 5 Enable
SV5_EN	

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
	This bit enables Security Violation 5 Input. When set, a Security Violation 5 causes an LP security violation, which clears LP sensitive data. 0 - Security Violation 5 is disabled in the LP domain. 1 - Security Violation 5 is enabled in the LP domain.
4 SV4_EN	Security Violation 4 Enable This bit enables Security Violation 4 Input. When set, a Security Violation 4 causes an LP security violation, which clears LP sensitive data. 0 - Security Violation 4 is disabled in the LP domain. 1 - Security Violation 4 is enabled in the LP domain.
3 SV3_EN	Security Violation 3 Enable This bit enables Security Violation 3 Input. When set, a Security Violation 3 causes an LP security violation, which clears LP sensitive data. 0 - Security Violation 3 is disabled in the LP domain. 1 - Security Violation 3 is enabled in the LP domain.
2 SV2_EN	Security Violation 2 Enable This bit enables Security Violation 2 Input. When set, a Security Violation 2 causes an LP security violation, which clears LP sensitive data. 0 - Security Violation 2 is disabled in the LP domain. 1 - Security Violation 2 is enabled in the LP domain.
1 SV1_EN	Security Violation 1 Enable This bit enables Security Violation 1 Input. When set, a Security Violation 1 causes an LP security violation, which clears LP sensitive data. 0 - Security Violation 1 is disabled in the LP domain. 1 - Security Violation 1 is enabled in the LP domain.
0 SV0_EN	Security Violation 0 Enable This bit enables Security Violation 0 Input. When set, a Security Violation 0 causes an LP security violation, which clears LP sensitive data. 0 - Security Violation 0 is disabled in the LP domain. 1 - Security Violation 0 is enabled in the LP domain.

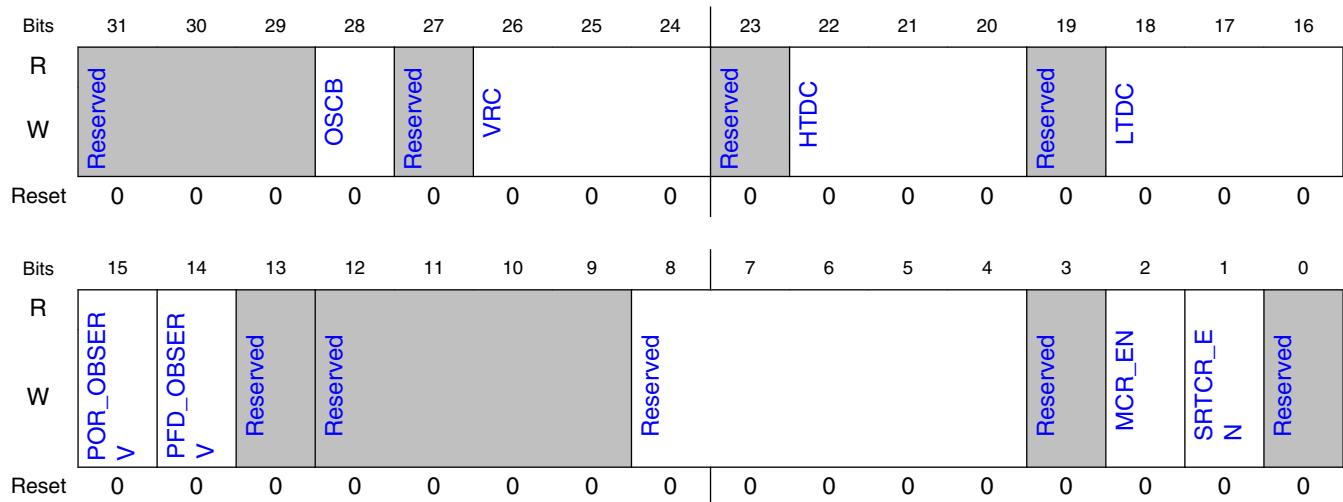
## 10.8.19 SNVS\_LP Security Events Configuration Register (LPSE CR)

The SNVS\_LP Security Events Configuration Register is used to configure security event detection in the LP section. This register cannot be programmed when LPSECR is locked for write. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.19.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSECR	48h

### 10.8.19.2 Diagram



### 10.8.19.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-29 —	Reserved
28 OSCB	Oscillator Bypass When OSCB=1 the osc_bypass signal is asserted. That signal asks SoC logic external to SNVS to bypass the SoC's normal SRTC clock source and drive the SRTC clock from an alternate source. 0 - Normal SRTC clock oscillator not bypassed. 1 - Normal SRTC clock oscillator bypassed. Alternate clock can drive the SRTC clock source.
27 —	Reserved
26-24 VRC	Voltage Reference Configuration These configuration bits are wired as an output of the module.
23 —	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
22-20 HTDC	High Temperature Detect Configuration These configuration bits are wired as an output of the module.
19 —	Reserved
18-16 LTDC	Low Temp Detect Configuration These configuration bits are wired as an output of the module.
15 POR_OBSERV	Power On Reset (POR) Observability Flop The asynchronous reset input of this flop is connected directly to the output of the POR analog circuitry (external to the SNVS). This flop can be used to detect brown-out voltage of the POR circuitry.
14 PFD_OBSERV	System Power Fail Detector (PFD) Observability Flop The asynchronous reset input of this flop is connected directly to the inverted output of the PFD analog circuitry (external to the SNVS block). This flop can be used to detect brown-out voltage of the PFD circuitry.
13 —	Reserved
12-9 —	Reserved
8-4 —	Reserved
3 —	Reserved
2 MCR_EN	MC Rollover Enable When set, an MC Rollover event generates an LP security violation. 0 - MC rollover is disabled. 1 - MC rollover is enabled.
1 SRTC_R_EN	SRTC Rollover Enable When set, an SRTC rollover event generates an LP security violation. 0 - SRTC rollover is disabled. 1 - SRTC rollover is enabled.
0 —	Reserved

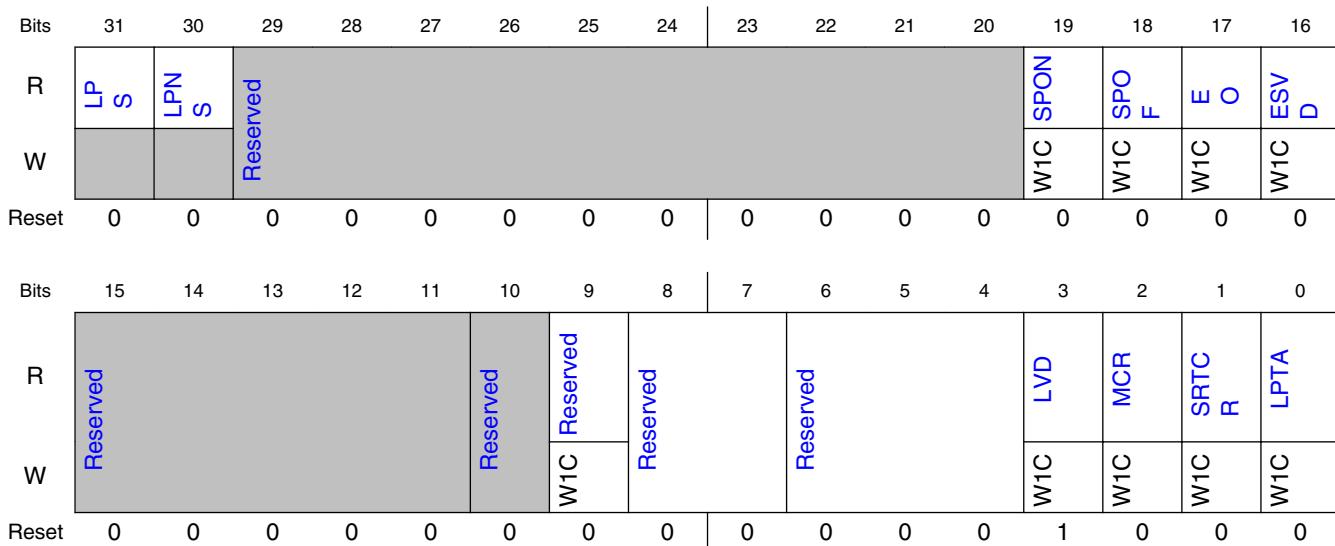
## 10.8.20 SNVS\_LP Status Register (LPSR)

The SNVS\_LP Status Register reflects the internal state and behavior of the SNVS\_LP. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.20.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSR	4Ch

### 10.8.20.2 Diagram



### 10.8.20.3 Fields

Field	Description
31 LPS	<p>LP Section is Secured</p> <p>Indicates that the LP section is provisioned/programmed in the secure or trusted state. The first write to the LP registers in secure or trusted state sets this bit. This bit can never be set together with the LPNS bit. When set the SNVS_LP section cannot be programmed and ZMK cannot be read in the non-secure state of the SSM.</p> <p>0 - LP section was not programmed in secure or trusted state. 1 - LP section was programmed in secure or trusted state.</p>
30 LPNS	<p>LP Section is Non-Secured</p> <p>Indicates that LP section was provisioned/programmed in the non-secure state. The first successful write to the LP Registers in non-secure state sets this bit. This bit can never be set together with the LPS bit. When set, the entire SNVS_LP section (all LP registers) are cleared upon an SSM transition from check to trusted state.</p> <p>0 - LP section was not programmed in the non-secure state. 1 - LP section was programmed in the non-secure state.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Description
29-20 —	Reserved
19 SPON	<p><b>Set Power On</b></p> <p>The SPON bit is set when the set_pwr_on_irq interrupt is triggered, which happens when the power button is pressed longer than the configured debounce time. Writing to the SPON bit will clear the set_pwr_ofn_irq interrupt.</p> <p>0 - Set Power On Interrupt was not detected. 1 - Set Power On Interrupt was detected.</p>
18 SPOF	<p><b>Set Power Off</b></p> <p>The SPO bit is set when the power button is pressed longer than the configured debounce time. Writing to the SPO bit will clear the set_pwr_off_irq interrupt.</p> <p>0 - Set Power Off was not detected. 1 - Set Power Off was detected.</p>
17 EO	<p><b>Emergency Off</b></p> <p>This bit is set when a power off is requested.</p> <p>0 - Emergency off was not detected. 1 - Emergency off was detected.</p>
16 ESVD	<p><b>External Security Violation Detected</b></p> <p>Indicates that a security violation is detected on one of the HP security violation ports. The record of the port on which the violation has occurred can be found in the HP Security Violation Status Register.</p> <p>0 - No external security violation. 1 - External security violation is detected.</p>
15-11 —	Reserved
10 —	Reserved
9 —	Reserved
8-7 —	Reserved
6-4 —	Reserved
3 LVD	<p><b>Digital Low Voltage Event Detected</b></p> <p>0 - No low voltage event detected. 1 - Low voltage event is detected.</p>
2 MCR	<p><b>Monotonic Counter Rollover</b></p> <p>0 - MC has not reached its maximum value. 1 - MC has reached its maximum value.</p>
1 SRTCR	<p><b>Secure Real Time Counter Rollover</b></p> <p>0 - SRTC has not reached its maximum value.</p>

*Table continues on the next page...*

## SNVS register descriptions

Field	Description
	1 - SRTC has reached its maximum value.
0	LP Time Alarm
LPTA	0 - No time alarm interrupt occurred. 1 - A time alarm interrupt occurred.

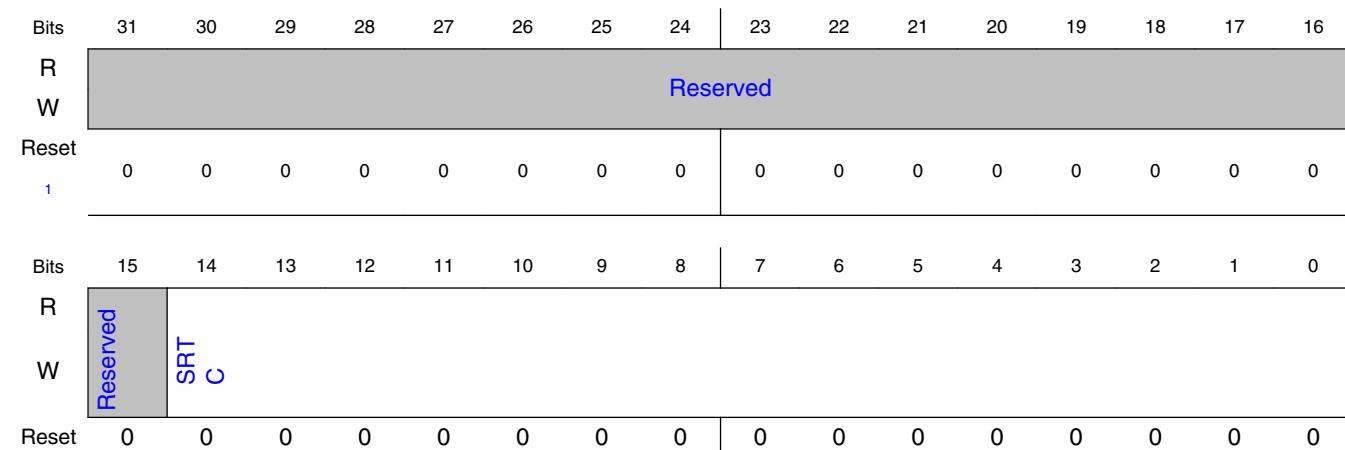
## 10.8.21 SNVS\_LP Secure Real Time Counter MSB Register (LPSRTCMR)

The SNVS\_LP Secure Real Time Counter MSB register contains the 15 most-significant bits of the LP Secure Real Time Counter. This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.21.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSRTCMR	50h

### 10.8.21.2 Diagram



1. This register is reset at LP POR, but it is not reset by an LP software reset (i.e. writing a 1 to LP\_SWR in HPCOMR).

### 10.8.21.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-15 —	Reserved
14-0 SRTC	LP Secure Real Time Counter The most-significant 15 bits of the SRTC. This register can be programmed only when SRTC is not active and not locked, meaning the SRTC_ENV, SRTC_SL, and SRTC_HL bits are not set.

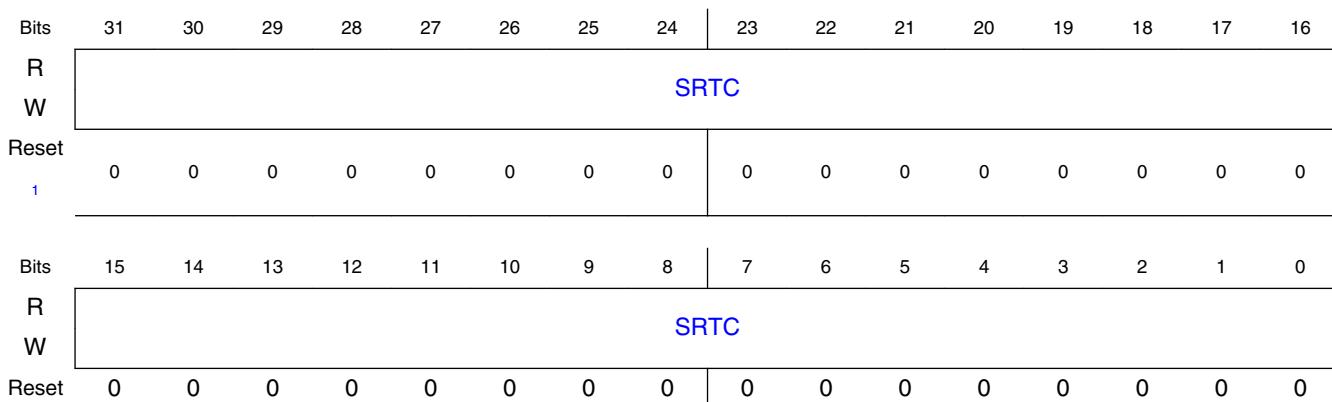
### 10.8.22 SNVS\_LP Secure Real Time Counter LSB Register (LPSRTCLR)

The SNVS\_LP Secure Real Time Counter LSB register contains the 32 least-significant bits of the secure real time counter. This is a privileged write register.

#### 10.8.22.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSRTCLR	54h

#### 10.8.22.2 Diagram



1. This register is reset at LP POR, but it is not reset by an LP software reset (i.e. writing a 1 to LP\_SWR in HPCOMR).

### 10.8.22.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	LP Secure Real Time Counter least-significant 32 bits
SRTC	This register can be programmed only when SRTC is not active and not locked, meaning the SRTC_ENV, SRTC_SL, and SRTC_HL bits are not set.

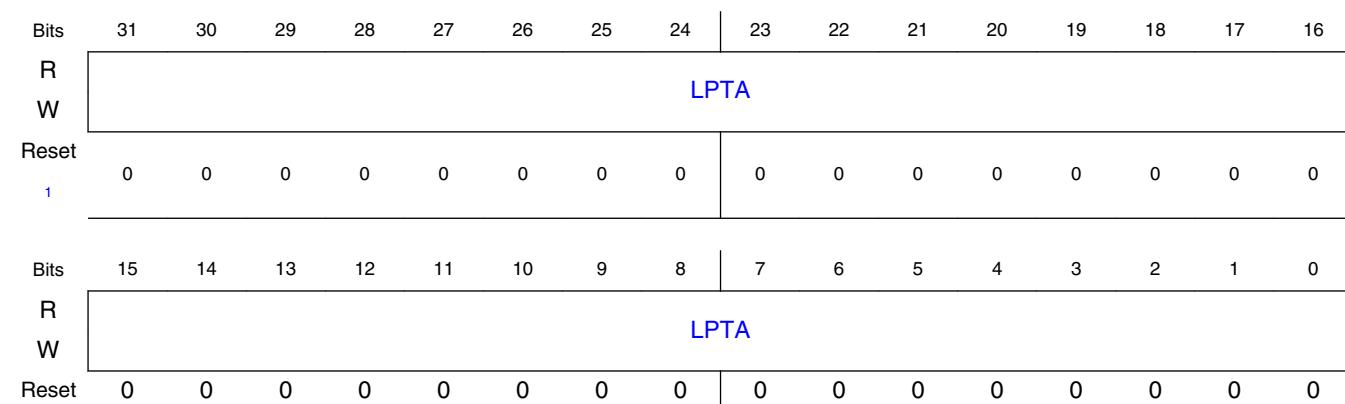
### 10.8.23 SNVS\_LP Time Alarm Register (LPTAR)

The SNVS\_LP Time Alarm register contains the 32-bit LP Time Alarm value. This is a privileged write register.

#### 10.8.23.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPTAR	58h

#### 10.8.23.2 Diagram



1. This register is reset at LP POR, but it is not reset by an LP software reset (i.e. writing a 1 to LP\_SWR in HPCOMR).

### 10.8.23.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	LP Time Alarm
LPTA	This register can be programmed only when the LP time alarm is disabled (LPTA_EN bit is not set).

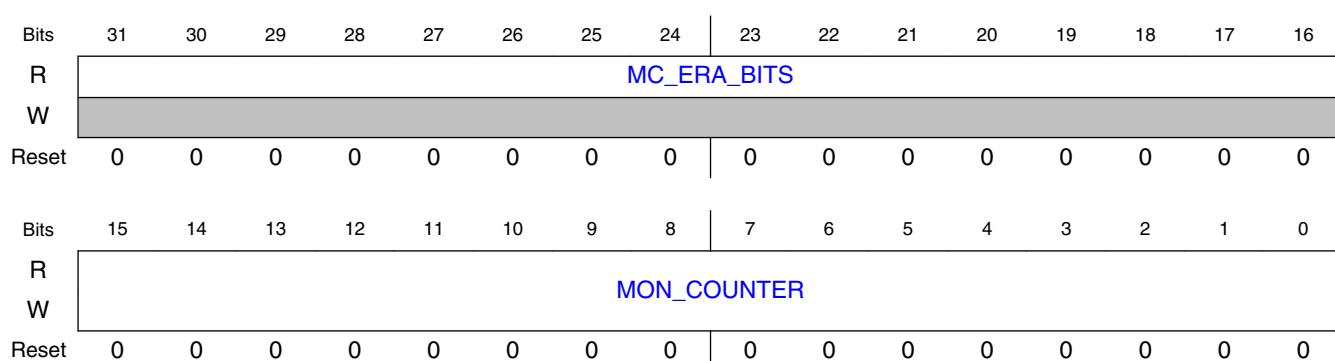
## 10.8.24 SNVS\_LP Secure Monotonic Counter MSB Register (LPSMCMR)

The SNVS\_LP Secure Monotonic Counter MSB Register contains the monotonic counter era bits and the most-significant 16 bits of the monotonic counter. The monotonic counter is incremented by one if there is a write command to the LPSMCMR or LPSMCLR register. This is a non-privileged read-only register.

### 10.8.24.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSMCMR	5Ch

### 10.8.24.2 Diagram



### 10.8.24.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-16 MC_ERA_BITS	<p>Monotonic Counter Era Bits</p> <p>These bits are inputs to the module and typically connect to fuses. When the Monotonic Counter is in use (i.e. enabled and valid and powered by an uninterrupted power source), and the boot software detects that the Monotonic Counter most-significant 16 Bits and Monotonic Counter LSB Register have been reset (MC_ENV=0), the boot software can take action to ensure that the value in the monotonic counter remains monotonic (i.e. never decreasing). The action is to blow an additional MC_ERA_BITS fuse. Since the MC_ERA_BITS field forms the most-significant field of the monotonic counter, blowing an additional fuse guarantees that the new monotonic counter value is higher than any previous value.</p>
15-0 MON_COUNTE R	<p>Monotonic Counter most-significant 16 Bits</p> <p><b>Note that writing to this register does not change the value of this field to the value that was written.</b></p> <p><b>The 48-bit monotonic counter value (consisting of LPSMCMR[MON_COUNTER] prepended to LPSMCLR[MON_COUNTER]) is incremented by one when:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A write transaction to the LPSMCMR or LPSMCLR register is detected.</li> <li>• The MC_ENV bit is set.</li> <li>• MC_SL and MC_HL bits are not set.</li> </ul> <p>This value can be reset only by LP POR.</p>

### 10.8.25 SNVS\_LP Secure Monotonic Counter LSB Register (LPSMCLR)

The SNVS\_LP Secure Monotonic Counter LSB Register contains the 32 least-significant bits of the monotonic counter. The MC is incremented by one if there is a write command to the LPSMCMR or LPSMCLR register. This is a non-privileged read-only register.

#### 10.8.25.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPSMCLR	60h

### 10.8.25.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R									MON_COUNTER								
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R									MON_COUNTER								
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 10.8.25.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0 MON_COUNTE R	<p>Monotonic Counter bits</p> <p><b>Note that writing to this register does not change the value of this field to the value that was written.</b></p> <p>The 48-bit monotonic counter value (consisting of LPSMCMR[MON_COUNTER] prepended to LPSMCLR[MON_COUNTER]) is incremented by one when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A write transaction to the LPSMCMR or LPSMCLR register is detected.</li> <li>• The MC_ENV bit is set.</li> <li>• MC_SL and MC_HL bits are not set.</li> </ul> <p>This value can be reset only by LP POR.</p>

## 10.8.26 SNVS\_LP Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register (LPLV DR)

The SNVS\_LP Digital Low-Voltage Detector Register is a 32-bit read/write register that is used for storing the low-voltage detector value, as described in [Digital Low-Voltage Detector \(LVD\)](#). This is a privileged write register.

### 10.8.26.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPLVDR	64h

## 10.8.26.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	LVD																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	LVD																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 10.8.26.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	Low-Voltage Detector Value
LVD	

## 10.8.27 SNVS\_LP General Purpose Register 0 (legacy alias) (LPGPR0\_legacy\_alias)

See register [SNVS\\_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 7 \(LPGPR0 - LPGPR7\)](#).

### 10.8.27.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPGPR0_legacy_alias	68h

## 10.8.27.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24		23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	GPR																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	GPR																
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## 10.8.27.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	General Purpose Register
GPR	When GPR_SL or GPR_HL bit is set, the register cannot be programmed.

## 10.8.28 SNVS\_LP Zeroizable Master Key Register (LPZMKR0 - LPZMKR7)

The SNVS\_LP Zeroizable Master Key Registers contain the 256-bit zeroizable master key value. This is a privileged write register. These registers are programmable as follows:

- When ZMK write lock bit is set, they cannot be programmed.
- When ZMK\_HWP is not set, they are in software programming mode and can be programmed only by software.
- When ZMK\_HWP is set, they are in hardware programming mode and can be programmed only by hardware.

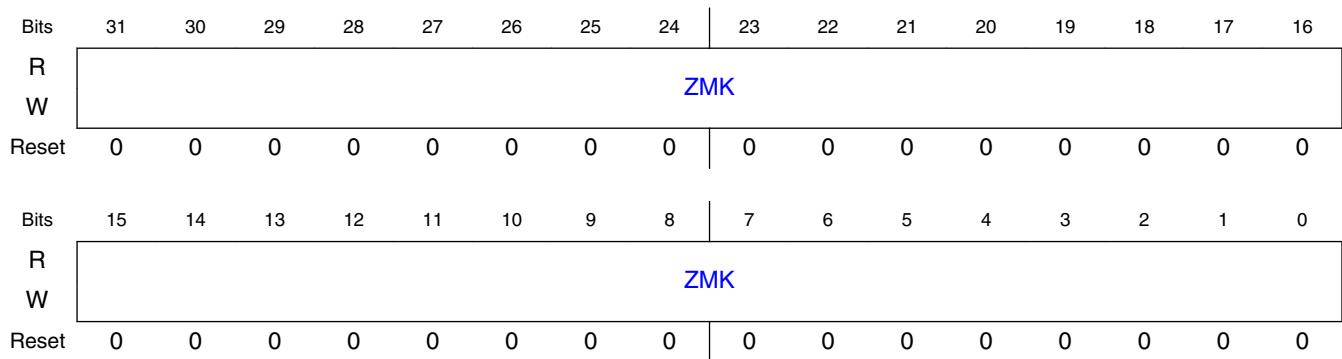
These registers cannot be read by software when the ZMK\_HWP or ZMK read lock bit is set.

### 10.8.28.1 Offset

For  $a = 0$  to 7:

Register	Offset
LPZMKRa	6Ch + ( $a \times 4h$ )

### 10.8.28.2 Diagram



### 10.8.28.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	Zeroizable Master Key
ZMK	Each of these registers contains 32 bits of the 256-bit ZMK value. The least-significant byte is at offset 6Ch.

## 10.8.29 SNVS\_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 3 (LPGPR0\_aalias - LPGPR3\_alias)

See register [SNVS\\_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 7 \(LPGPR0 - LPGPR7\)](#).

### 10.8.29.1 Offset

Register	Offset
LPGPR0_alias	90h
LPGPR1_alias	94h
LPGPR2_alias	98h
LPGPR3_alias	9Ch

### 10.8.29.2 Diagram



### 10.8.29.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	General Purpose Register
GPR	When GPR_SL or GPR_HL bit is set, the register cannot be programmed.

## 10.8.30 SNVS\_LP General Purpose Registers 0 .. 7 (LPGPR0 - LPGPR7)

The SNVS\_LP General Purpose Register is a 256-bit read/write register located in SNVS\_LP, which can be used by any application for retaining data during an SoC power-down mode. This is a privileged read/write register. The full GPR register is accessed as 8 32-bit registers located in successive word addresses starting at offset 100h. For backward compatibility with earlier versions of SNVS, LPGPR0..LPGPR3 are aliased at

## SNVS register descriptions

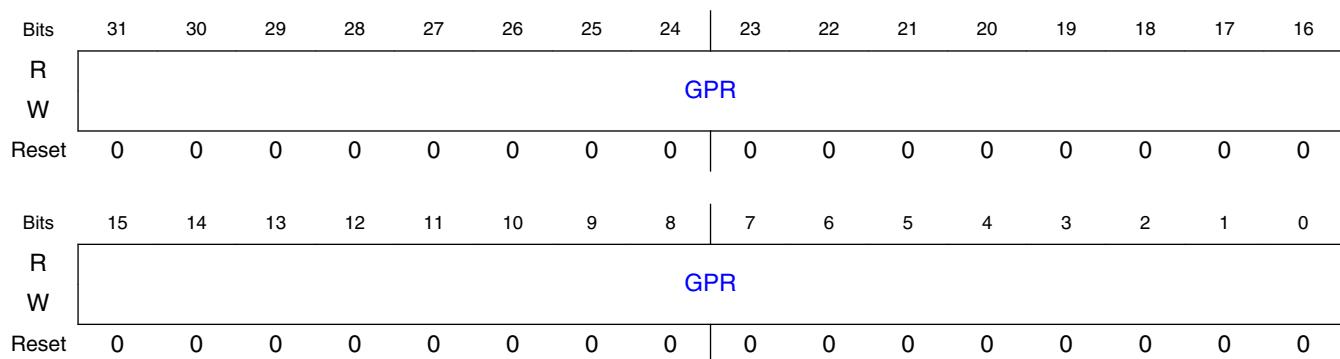
the earlier offset of 90h and LPGPR0 is also aliased at its original offset of 68h. New software should access the GPR register at the preferred offset of 100h. The GPR will be automatically zeroized when an enabled security event occurs, unless GPR zeroization is disabled via the GPR\_Z\_DIS bit in the LP Control Register.

### 10.8.30.1 Offset

For  $a = 0$  to 7:

Register	Offset
LPGPRA <sub>a</sub>	100h + ( $a \times 4h$ )

### 10.8.30.2 Diagram



### 10.8.30.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-0	General Purpose Register
GPR	When GPR_SL or GPR_HL bit is set, the register cannot be programmed.

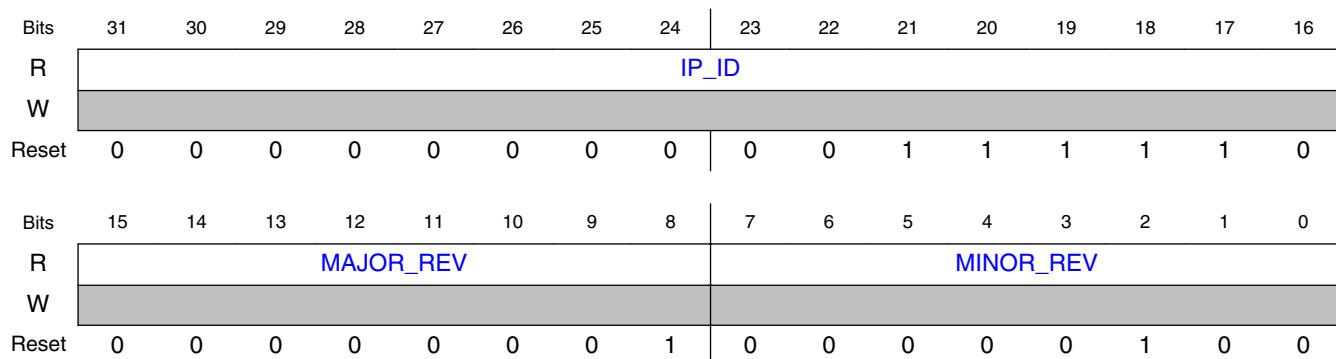
## 10.8.31 SNVS\_HP Version ID Register 1 (HPVIDR1)

The SNVS\_HP Version ID Register 1 is a non-privileged read-only register that contains the current version of the SNVS. The version consists of a module ID, a major version number, and a minor version number.

### 10.8.31.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPVIDR1	BF8h

### 10.8.31.2 Diagram



### 10.8.31.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-16 IP_ID	SNVS block ID
15-8 MAJOR_REV	SNVS block major version number
7-0 MINOR_REV	SNVS block minor version number

### 10.8.32 SNVS\_HP Version ID Register 2 (HPVIDR2)

## SNVS register descriptions

The SNVS\_HP Version ID Register 2 is a non-privileged read-only register that indicates the current version of the SNVS. Version ID register 2 consists of the following fields: integration options, ECO revision, and configuration options.

### 10.8.32.1 Offset

Register	Offset
HPVIDR2	BFCh

### 10.8.32.2 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### 10.8.32.3 Fields

Field	Description
31-24 IP_ERA	IP Era 00h - Era 1 or 2 03h - Era 3 04h - Era 4 05h - Era 5 06h - Era 6
23-16 INTG_OPT	SNVS Integration Options
15-8 ECO_REV	SNVS ECO Revision
7-0 CONFIG_OPT	SNVS Configuration Options

# Chapter 11

## System JTAG Controller (SJC)

### 11.1 Chip-specific SJC information

#### NOTE

In this chip, trace and debug are controlled together, therefore KTE fuse bit needs be burned too when setting JTAG security modes by fuse. Also, refer to [AN12419](#) for more usage information about SJC.

### 11.2 Overview

The System JTAG Controller (SJC) provides debug and test control with the maximum security.

The test access port (TAP) is designed to support features compatible with the IEEE Standard 1149.1 v2001 (JTAG).

#### 11.2.1 Features

The System JTAG Controller (SJC) provides the following capabilities:

- JTAG IEEE1149.1 mandatory instructions, see [EXTEST Instruction](#), [SAMPLE/ PRELOAD Instruction](#) , and [BYPASS Instruction](#) .
- JTAG IEEE1149.1 optional instructions, see [SJC ID\\_CODE Instruction \(SJC IDCODE\)](#) , and [HIGHZ Instruction](#).
- JTAG IEEE P1149.1 (standard JTAG) interface to off-chip test and development equipment including an SJC-only mode for true IEEE 1149.1 compliance, used primarily for board-level implementation of boundary scan.

- IEEE P1149.6 (JTAG) mandatory instructions, see [EXTEST\\_PULSE instruction](#) and [EXTEST\\_TRAIN instruction](#). These two instructions enable edge-detecting behavior on the signal path containing AC pins.
- Debug-related control and status, such as putting selected cores into reset and/or debug mode and the ability to monitor individual core status signals via JTAG.
- ExtraDebug logic (see [ENABLE\\_ExtraDebug Instruction](#) ).
- Core compliant modes to support standalone core debuggers (see [Modes of Operation](#)).

## 11.2.2 Modes of Operation

The SJC modes are controlled through the MOD input port.

The MOD port (typically connected to pad of the same name) selects between two possible topologies of TAP connections, as seen at SoC level:

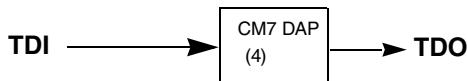
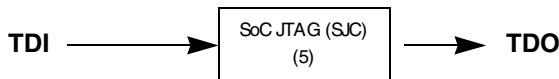
- Negating it (this should be the default state) selects CM7 DAP.
- Asserting it only selects the SJC TAP to be connected in the TDI-TDO chain.

IEEE1149.1 standard features are enabled by configuring the SJC input pin: MOD. Refer to the following table for MOD settings details:

**Table 11-1. SJC Modes**

MOD	Name	Description
0	CM7 DAP	For common SW debug (High speed and production)
1	SJC only	IEEE 1149.1 JTAG compliant mode

The following figure shows the SJC mode selection flow. The numbers shown in parenthesis below each block name indicates the TAP's IR length.

**MOD = 0****MOD = 1**

(number in brackets lists IR length of given TAP)

**Figure 11-1. SJC Mode Selection using MOD Pin Sampling**

## 11.3 External Signals

The table found here describes the external signals of SJC.

**Table 11-2. SJC External Signals**

Signal	Description	Pad	Mode	Direction
JTAG_DE_B	SoC debug request/acknowledge pin. The DE_IN_B pin is used to propagate an external debug request event to the core(s). This functionality must be enabled first, by set of DE_to_ARM bit in SJC's DCR register. It is SoC implementation dependent, whether this pin can also be used to reflect the debug acknowledge event back from the cores (in the case where an Open-Drain scheme is used externally).	GPIO_EMC_01	ALT7	IO
JTAG_MOD	SJC mode selection. This pin is sampled at TRST reset to determine two possible modes for the TAP connection configuration.	GPIO_AD_B0_08	ALT0	I
JTAG_TCK	Test Clock (TCK). This is used to synchronize the test logic and includes an internal pull-up resistor	GPIO_AD_B0_07	ALT0	I
JTAG_TDI	Test Data Input (TDI). Serial test instruction and data are received through the test data input (TDI) pin. TDI is sampled on the rising edge of TCK and includes an internal pullup resistor	GPIO_AD_B0_09	ALT0	I

*Table continues on the next page...*

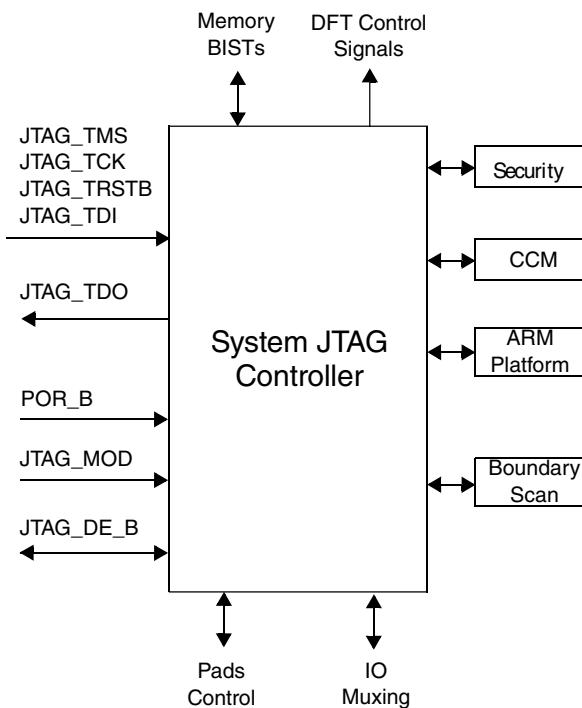
**Table 11-2. SJC External Signals  
(continued)**

Signal	Description	Pad	Mode	Direction
JTAG_TDO	Test Data Output (TDO). The serial output for test instructions and data. TDO is tri-statable and is actively driven in the shift-IR and shift-DR controller states. TDO changes on the falling edge of TCK	GPIO_AD_B0_10	ALT0	O
JTAG_TMS	Test Mode Select (TMS). This is used to sequence the test controller's state machine. TMS is sampled on the rising edge of TCK and includes an internal pullup resistor	GPIO_AD_B0_06	ALT0	I
JTAG_TRSTB	Test Reset (TRST). This is used to asynchronously initialize the test controller. The TRST pin has an internal pullup resistor	GPIO_AD_B0_11	ALT0	I

### 11.3.1 External Signal Overview

The SJC provides test and debug control with a minimum number of contacts.

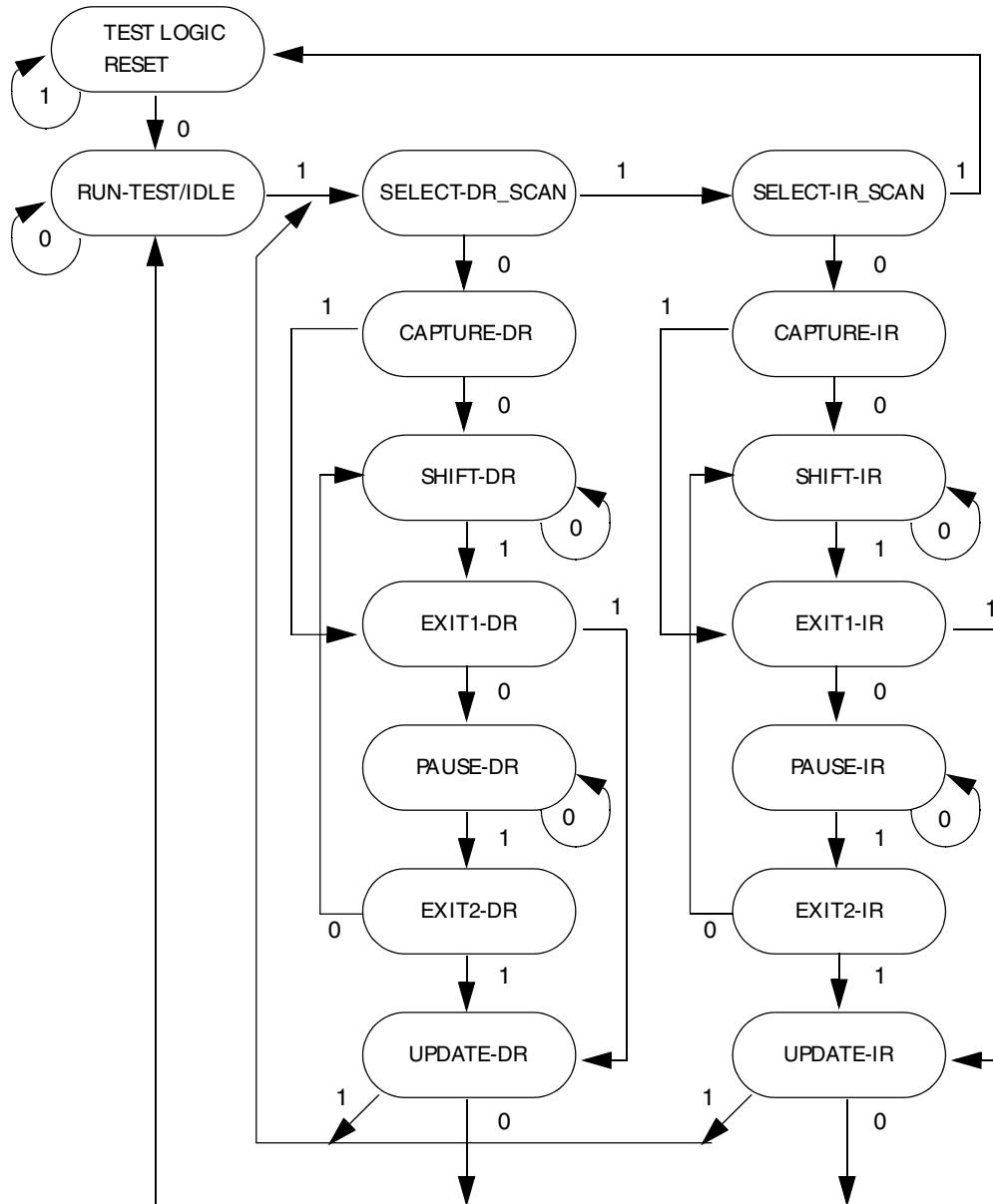
The figure below shows SJC connections to external contacts and other chip blocks.

**Figure 11-2. SJC Connections**

### 11.3.2 TAP Controller

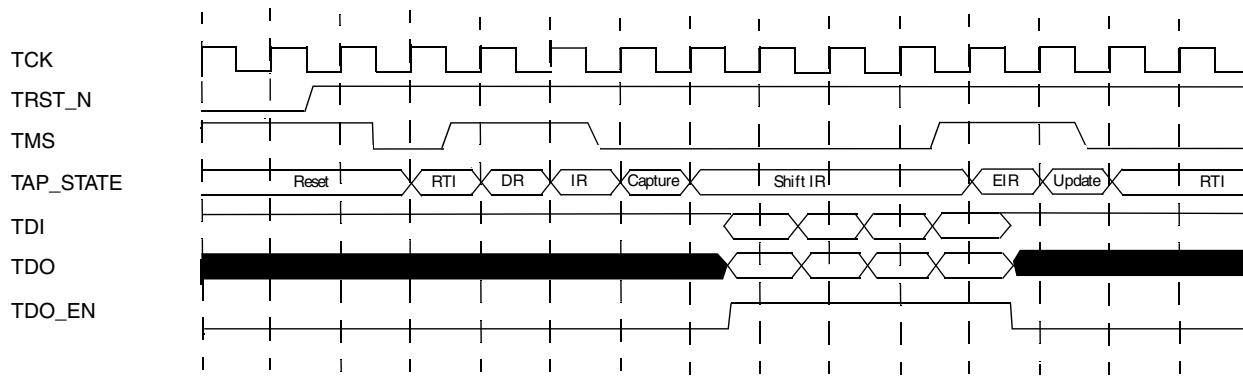
The TAP controller is responsible for interpreting the sequence of logical values on the TMS signal. It is a synchronous state machine that controls the operation of the JTAG logic. The value shown adjacent to each arc represents the value of the TMS signal sampled on the rising edge of TCK signal. For a description of the TAP controller states, refer to the appropriate IEEE 1149.1 document.

The state machine is shown in the following figure.

**Figure 11-3. TAP Controller State Machine**

The change of the JTAG state machine occurs on the rising edge of TCK. TMS and TDI change on the falling edge of TCK. TDO also changes on the falling edge of TCK following entry into the Shift\_DR or Shift\_IR states (TDO\_EN is the enable of the tristate buffer driving the TDO output).

The figure below shows the timings of the SJC signals.



**Figure 11-4. SJC Signals Timing Diagram**

### 11.3.3 Accessing ExtraDebug Registers

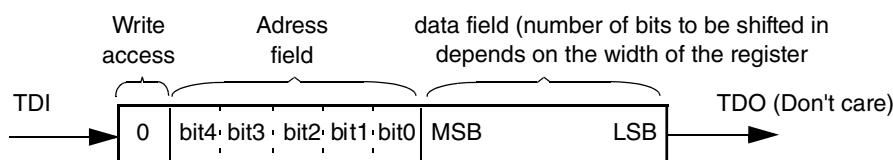
Accessed through the Select-DR-Scan path, the ExtraDebug shift register consists of 38 bits (maximum) comprising a 32-bit data field (max length, see extra debug register description), a 5 bit address field and read/write bit.

The write actually takes place when the JTAG TAP controller enters the Update-DR state. On a read, the data field is ignored (the user should shift only 5 times to enter Read=1 and the address), the read takes place on the next path through DR at the Capture-DR state, the data is shifted-out during the Shift-DR state.

On the second path for a read access, simultaneous write access is not supported: command converter software shifts in zeros so the TAP decodes a write to the CSR (read-only register) which does not have any effect on the circuit.

The number of shift depends on the width of the accessed register as explained in the following diagrams.

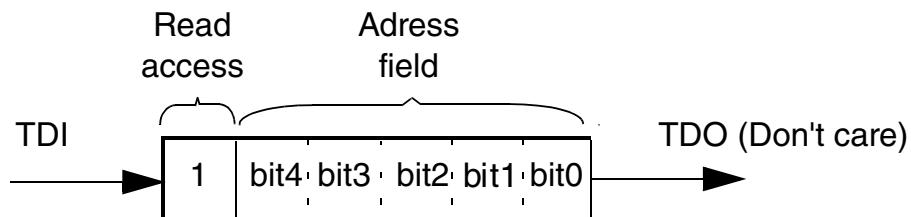
First a write access (one path through Select-DR-Scan):



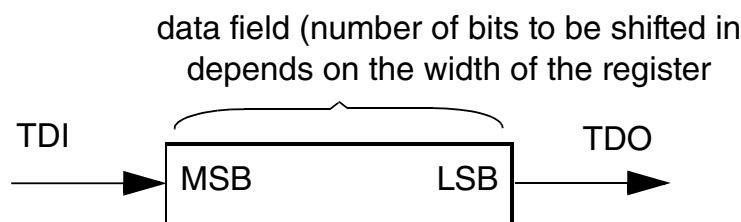
**Figure 11-5. TDI/TDO on write access**

Then a read access (requires two paths through Jtag DR Scan path):

### *First path*

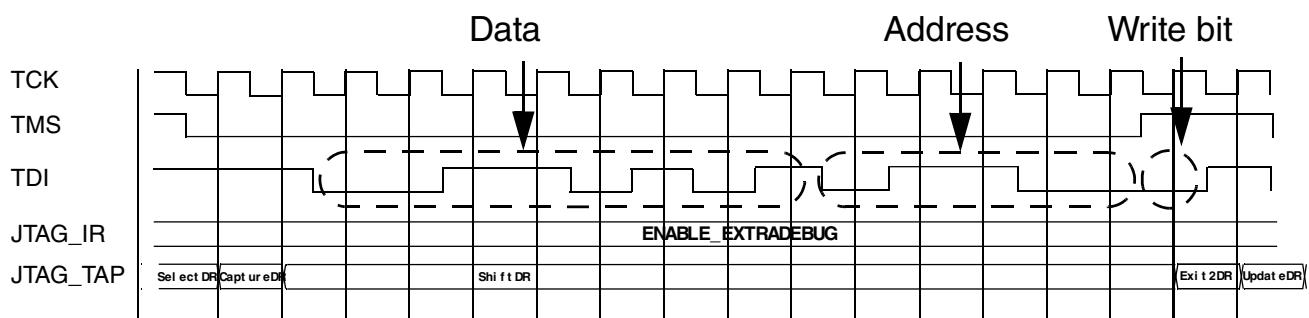


### *Second path*



**Figure 11-6. TDI/TDO on Read Access**

For example, write value 0b1010\_1100 to Debug Control Register (address = 0b00110).



**Figure 11-7. Example: Write Access to DCR**

The SJC registers have different levels of security (Refer to [JTAG Security Modes](#) ):

- Secured- accessible only in mode 2 (supposed correct response entered), mode 3 and mode 4.
- Unsecured- accessible in all modes

The level of security of each register is indicated in its name or description, in "Programmable Registers" section.

A single DE\_B pin is dedicated for debug request input/output in bidirectional open drain functionality (including an internal pull-up device).

Bit 6 in DCR register serves as mask bit, controlling the propagation of external debug request to ARM Platform.

The bit0 defines the propagation enable of IR debug request to recipient .

For security reasons, bits for output and input propagation control are at their negated values after reset. A user cannot put the core in debug mode through DE\_B without any Jtag access.

The configuration after reset prevents propagation of debug requests / acknowledges to or from the core.

## 11.4 Boundary Scan Register (BSR)

The Boundary Scan Register (BSR) in the JTAG implementation contains bits for all device signal and clock pins and associated control signals.

All SoC bidirectional pins have a single register bit in the boundary scan register for pin data, and are controlled by an associated control bit in the boundary scan register.

## 11.5 SoC JTAG Instruction Register (SJIR)

The SoC JTAG Instruction register is provided in the following table. The SoC JTAG Instruction register is 5 bits wide.

**Table 11-3. SoC JTAG Instruction Register (SJIR)**

Code					SJC IR
B4	B3	B2	B1	B0	
0	0	0	0	0	IDCODE
0	0	0	0	1	SAMPLE/PRELOAD
0	0	0	1	0	EXTTEST
0	0	0	1	1	HI-Z
0	0	1	0	0	ENABLE_ExtraDebug
0	0	1	0	1	ENTER_DEBUG (secured)
0	0	1	1	0	Reserved
0	0	1	1	1	Reserved
0	1	0	0	0	EXTTEST_PULSE

*Table continues on the next page...*

**Table 11-3. SoC JTAG Instruction Register (SJIR)  
(continued)**

Code					SJC IR
B4	B3	B2	B1	B0	
0	1	0	0	1	EXTTEST_TRAIN
0	1	0	1	0	Reserved
0	1	0	1	1	Reserved
0	1	1	0	0	Security Output challenge
0	1	1	0	1	Security Enter response
-					Reserved
1	1	1	1	1	BYPASS

The instruction register is reset to 0b00000 in the test-logic-reset controller state which is equivalent to the IDCODE instruction.

During the capture-IR controller state, the parallel inputs to the instruction register are loaded with the code 01 in the least significant bits as required by the standard; the most significant bits are loaded with the values 00, leading to a capture value of 0b000001.

### 11.5.1 SJC ID\_CODE Instruction (SJC IDCODE )

Selects the ID register, and the system logic controls the I/O pins. This instruction is provided as a public instruction to allow the manufacturer, part number and version of a component to be determined through the TAP.

The table below shows the ID register configuration.

**Table 11-4. ID Configuration Register (IDCODE)**

IDCODE				ID Configuration Register															
	BIT 31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	BIT 16			
	Version Information[3:0]				Part Number (Bits 27-16)														
TYPE	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r			
RESET	0	0	0	0	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x			
Note:																			
	BIT 15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	BIT 0			
	Part Number (Bits 15-12)				Manufacturer Identity												1		
TYPE	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r	r			
RESET	x	x	x	x	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1			
Note:																			

**Table 11-5. SJC ID Configuration Register Description (SJC IDCODE)**

Field	Description
31-28 Version Information	IC/SoC Version information number. Initial value: '0000' This number is subject to changes, for new IC/SoC (System On A Chip) revision releases.
27-12 Part Number	Customer Part Number The 16-bit Part Number value is unique for every NXP SoC / IC. See System Debug chapter for exact register value for a specific SoC.
11-1 Manufacturer Identity	Manufacturer Identity NXP Manufacturer Identity code. Bits [11:1] - 00000001110
0	Tied to logic 1.

One application of the ID register is to distinguish the manufacturer(s) of components on a board when multiple sourcing is used. As more components emerge which conform to the IEEE 1149.1 standard, it is desirable to allow for a system diagnostic controller unit to blindly interrogate a board design to determine the type of each component in each location. This information is also available for factory process monitoring and for failure mode analysis of assembled boards.

Once the IDCODE instruction is decoded, it selects the ID register which is a 32 Bit data register. Because the bypass register loads a logic 0 at the start of a scan cycle, whereas the ID register loads a logic 1 into its least significant bit, examination of the first bit of data shifted out of a component during a test data scan sequence immediate following exit from Test-Logic-Reset controller state shows whether such a register is included in the design. When the IDCODE instruction is selected, the operation of the test logic has no effect on the operation of the on-chip system logic as required by the IEEE 1149.1 standard.

## 11.5.2 SAMPLE/PRELOAD Instruction

Selects the boundary scan register and the system logic controls the I/O pins.

The SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction provides two separate functions:

- First, it provides a means to obtain a snapshot of system data and control signals. The snapshot occurs on the rising edge of TCK in the capture-DR controller state. The data can be observed by shifting it transparently through the boundary scan register.
- The second function of SAMPLE/PRELOAD is to initialize the boundary scan register output cells prior to selection of EXTEST. This initialization ensures that known data appears on the outputs when entering the EXTEST instruction.

**NOTE**

Because there is no internal synchronization between the JTAG clock (TCK) and the system clock (CLK), the user must provide some form of external synchronization to achieve meaningful results.

For more details on the function and use of SAMPLE/PRELOAD, refer to the appropriate IEEE 1149.1 document.

### **11.5.3 EXTEST Instruction**

Selects the boundary scan register, and the 1149.1 test logic has control of the I/O pins.

By using the TAP controller, the register is capable of:

- Scanning user-defined values into the output buffers,
- Capturing values presented to input pins
- Controlling the direction of bidirectional pins,
- Controlling the output drive of tri-statable output pins.

For more details on the function and use of EXTEST, refer to the appropriate IEEE 1149.1 document.

The EXTEST instruction also asserts internal reset for the cores (through CCM, refer to [Figure 1](#)) to force a predictable internal state while performing external boundary scan operations.

### **11.5.4 HIGHZ Instruction**

All output drivers, including the two-state drivers, are turned off (that is, high impedance). The instruction selects the bypass register.

In this mode, all internal pullup resistors on all the pins (except for the TMS, TDI, TCK, TRSTB pins) are disabled. This disabling functionality is not built into SJC, but should be implemented by some logic in the SOC/IO Pads.

For more details on the function and use of HIGHZ, refer to the IEEE 1149.1 document.

The HIGHZ instruction also asserts internal reset for the cores (through CCM, refer to [Figure 1](#)) to force a predictable internal state while performing external boundary scan operations.

### **11.5.5 BYPASS Instruction**

Selects the single Bit bypass register and the system logic controls the I/O pins.

This creates a shift-register path from TDI to the bypass register and, finally, to TDO, circumventing the boundary scan register. This instruction is used to enhance test efficiency when a component other than the SoC Core based device becomes the device under test.

When the bypass register is selected by the current instruction, the shift-register stage is set to a logic zero on the rising edge of TCK in the capture-DR controller state. Therefore, the first bit to be shifted out after selecting the bypass register is always a logic zero.

For more details on the function and use of BYPASS, refer to the appropriate IEEE 1149.1 document.

### **11.5.6 ENABLE\_ExtraDebug Instruction**

The TDI and TDO pins are connected directly to the ExtraDebug registers, the SJC TAP controller remaining connected to TDI and TMS.

The ExtraDebug shift register consists of 38 bits (maximum) comprising a 32-bits data field (maximum length, see [Accessing ExtraDebug Registers](#),), a 5 bits address field and read/write bit. On a register read, the data field does not need to be filled in. The particular ExtraDebug register connected between TDI and TDO at a given time is selected by the ExtraDebug controller depending on the ExtraDebug Address being currently decoded. All communication with the ExtraDebug controller is done through the Select-DR-Scan path of the JTAG TAP Controller.

### **11.5.7 ENTER\_DEBUG instruction**

The ENTER\_DEBUG instruction is used to generate a debug request event to the ARM Core Platform .

The TDI and TDO are connected to the Instruction Register (IR). After the acknowledgment of the Debug Mode is received (can be checked by reading the Core Status Register part of the ExtraDebug logic), the user can perform system debug functions on the cores.

**NOTE**

The ENTER\_DEBUG event issue to the cores, can be masked, by bits in DCR register.

**NOTE**

It is user's responsibility to shift-in another IR value (like IDCODE) before trying to bring the cores out of debug mode, as the debug request signals to the cores remains asserted as long as ENTER\_DEBUG IR is in place.

**NOTE**

The user need to check that cores are in debug mode (watching debug acknowledge signal) before leaving ENTER\_DEBUG instruction, otherwise debug request might not take affect.

## 11.5.8 EXTEST\_PULSE instruction

The EXTEST\_PULSE instruction implements test behaviors for AC pins and simultaneously behaves identically to IEEE Std 1149.1 EXTEST for DC pins.

## 11.5.9 EXTEST\_TRAIN instruction

The EXTEST\_TRAIN instruction implements test behaviors for AC pins and simultaneously behaves identically to IEEE Std 1149.1 EXTEST for DC pins.

## 11.6 Security

JTAG manipulation is one of the known hackers' ways of executing unauthorized program code, getting control over the OS and run code in privileged modes.

The SJC provides a debug access to several H/W blocks including the ARM processor and the system bus. This allows for program control and manipulation as well as visibility into system peripherals and memory. The ETM interface allows bus

transactions to be traced. Together these tools provide the hacker all the access needed to completely comprise the system. Means must be provided to block any malicious JTAG access.

The SJC provides a way of regulating the JTAG access.

The following are the different JTAG security modes:

- **Mode #1: No Debug**-Maximum Security. All security sensitive JTAG features are permanently blocked.
- **Mode #2: Secure JTAG**-High security. JTAG use is regulated by secret key based authentication mechanism.
- **Mode #3: JTAG Enabled**-Low security. JTAG always enabled.

The JTAG security modes are configured using eFuses which can be burned after packaging by applying electrical signals. The fuse burning is irreversible process, once a fuse is burned (eFuse or laser fuse) it is impossible to change the fuse back to the un-burned state.

## 11.6.1 JTAG Security Modes

JTAG can be in one of JTAG security modes which is selected by setting the SJC eFuse configuration. The physical location of the fuses is not in the SJC.

### 11.6.1.1 Mode 1: No Debug - Maximum Security

No Debug JTAG security mode provides the highest security level.

In this mode, all JTAG features are disabled except for:

- ScanBoundary Scan
- MBIST, all modes except for debug modes which enable controlled memory contents output
- PLL BIST
- BIST monitor mode, allowing routing to external pins BIST pass/fail/Invoke information
- PLL bypass- Bypass Arm or/and USB PLL.
- Visibility of the following status bits: power mode - normal, standby, stop, shutdown, and so on

These features do not reduce the security level of the product, and they allow to perform important tests and board connectivity checks.

### 11.6.1.2 Mode 2: Secure JTAG - High Security

The Secure JTAG mode limits the JTAG access by using challenge/response based authentication mechanism. Any access to JTAG port is being checked. Only authorized debug devices (that is, devices having the right response) can access the JTAG, unauthorized JTAG access attempts are denied.

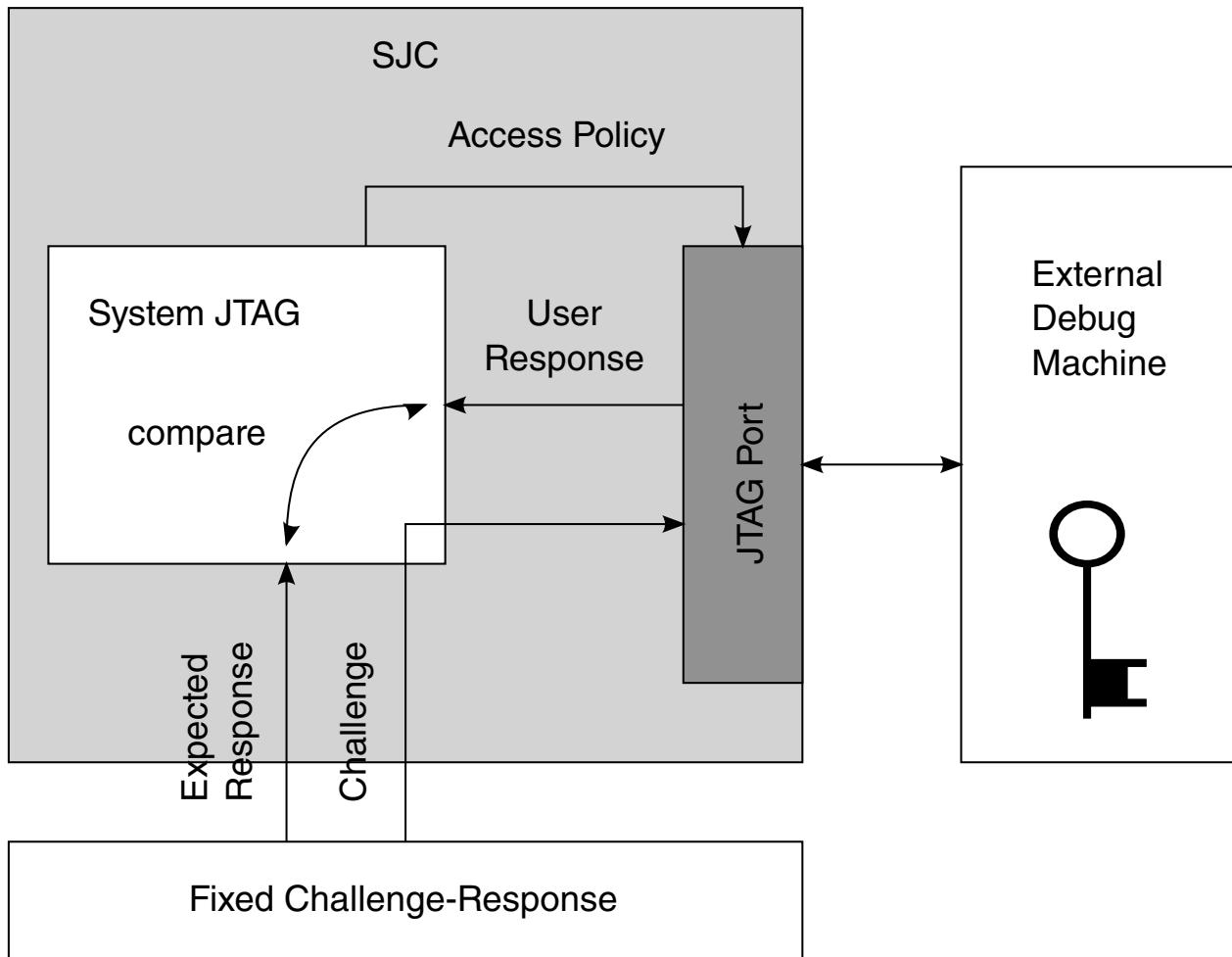
The intent of this mode is to allow return field testing. When a secured JTAG device is being returned for debugging, this mode allows authorized re-activation of the JTAG.

#### 11.6.1.2.1 Challenge/Response Mechanism in System JTAG Mode

When SJC is in Sysytem JTAG mode the authentication process is as follows:

1. Shift Output Challenge instruction to IR.
2. Passing through Capture-DR state of the SJC and by performing Shift-DR operations Challenge code can be accessed from TDO.
3. Shift Enter Response instruction to IR. By performing Shift-DR, operations enter Response code value through TDI. As Update-DR state is entered, Response code is compared with the correct one.

In Fixed challenge-response pair mode, each part has its individual challenge - response pair which is determined at manufacturing time, and does not change later on. The SJC compares the user's response to the expected response.



**Figure 11-8. Mode #2 - Secure JTAG with Fixed Challenge-response Pair**

### 11.6.1.3 Mode 3: JTAG Enabled - Low Security

In the JTAG Enabled JTAG security mode, all JTAG features are enabled.

## 11.6.2 Software Enabled JTAG

To increase the flexibility of the SJC, an option to enable the JTAG via software is added and is available only in Secure JTAG mode. By writing '1' to HAB\_JDE (HAB JTAG DEBUG ENABLE) bit in the eFuse controller module, the JTAG is opened, regardless of its security mode. It is the responsibility of software to assert or negate this bit.

Additionally, a corresponding lock bit is available (in the eFuse control module) to ensure that only trusted software is able to set the JDE bit. When the LOCK bit is set, no future change of JDE is possible, until the next POR (power-on-reset) cycle.

The platform initialization software should set the LOCK bit for JDE bit before transferring control to the application code.

The S/W JTAG enable allows JTAG enabling without activating the challenge-Response mechanism (which requires JTAG access tool enhancement or special H/W). The JTAG S/W enable does not allow debug in case of boot or memory fault as it requires reset before entering debug.

This feature can be permanently blocked by burning the dedicated eFuse.

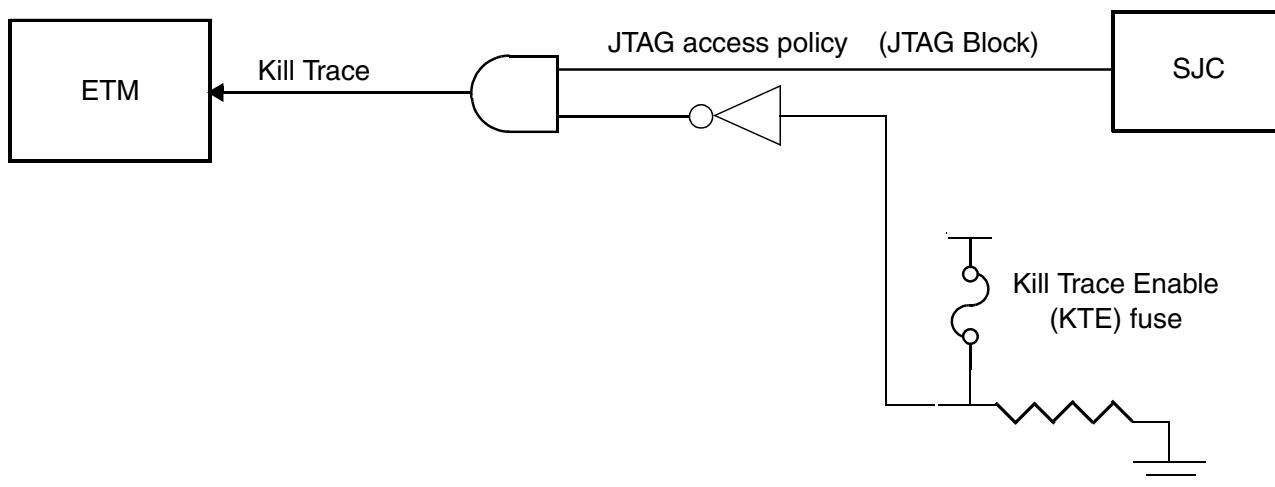
**NOTE**

The S/W enabled JTAG feature reduces the overall security level of the system as it relies on S/W protections. If this feature is not required, it is strongly recommended to burn the JTAG\_HEO eFuse which disables this feature.

### 11.6.3 Kill Trace

The kill trace signal disables any output of the ETM block. The ETM can be accessed either via JTAG port and/or by direct software code. Blocking the JTAG port also yields assertion of the kill trace signal. This resulted in blocking of trace port. The intention of this action is to block any attempt to break into the system via software manipulation of the debug modules. The kill trace, when active, prevents trace output even in case where it can be activated via chip pin.

The kill trace feature needs to be activated by burning a dedicated eFuse. If the fuse is left intact, kill trace is never activated as seen in [Figure 11-9](#).

**Figure 11-9. Kill Trace eFuse**

The kill trace is asserted when "kill trace enable" fuse is burned and "ipt\_secur\_block" signal in SJC is asserted, which happens when at least one of the following is true:

- Mode #2 (Secure JTAG) and no code has been entered
- Mode #2 (Secure JTAG) with burned Bypass and Re-enable fuses
- Mode #2 (Secure JTAG) with incorrect response entered
- Mode #1 (No debug)
- TRST\_B signal is active
- POR has not ever been asserted

## 11.6.4 SJC Disable Fuse

In addition to the different JTAG security modes that are implemented internally in the System JTAG Controller (SJC), there is an option to disable the SJC functionality by eFuse configuration. This creates additional JTAG mode that is, JTAG Disabled with highest level of JTAG protection. In this mode all JTAG features are disabled.

Specifically, the following debug features are disabled in addition to the features that were already disabled in No Debug JTAG mode:

- Memory BIST
- Boundary scan register (SJC\_BSR)
- Non-Secure JTAG control registers (PLL configuration, Deterministic Reset, PLL bypass)
- Non-Secure JTAG status registers (Core status)
- Chip Identification Code (IDCODE)

## 11.7 Functional Description

This section provides a complete functional description of the block.

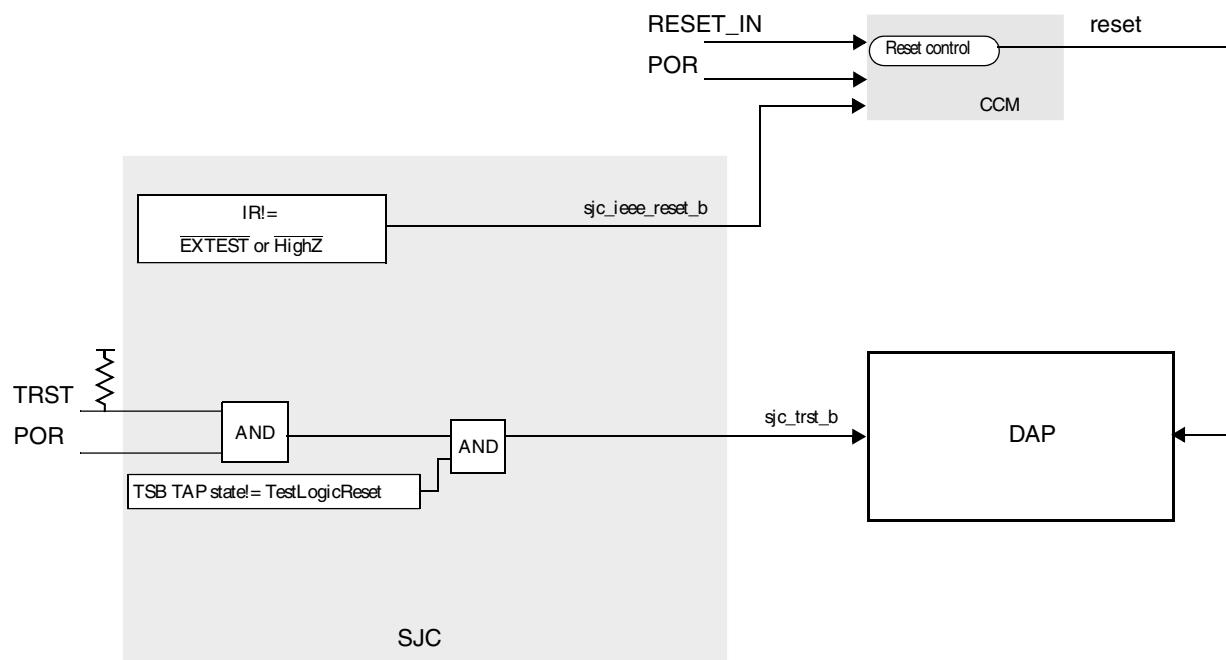
### 11.7.1 Static Core Debug

The SJC JTAG TAP controller is fully compatible with the IEEE 1149.1a-2001 Standard Test Access Port and Boundary Scan Architecture specifications.

The Arm platform has an integrated JTAG interface and a TAP controller to manage its own ICE. Also it can access an embedded trace ETM interface, see Arm core and ETM Technical reference guide for more information.

### 11.7.2 Reset Mechanism

The following figure shows the SJC reset logic



**Figure 11-10. SJC Reset Logic**

**NOTE**

- Asserting TRSTB in any scan mode resets the TCR loosing the testmode configuration and selects default TAP.
- SJC generates an IEEE reset signal to the CCM when in one of the IEEE modes HIGHZ or EXTEST. This signal generates a system reset to the cores until exit from one of these modes.

## 11.8 Initialization/Application Information

The control afforded by the output enable signals using the boundary scan register and the EXTEST instruction requires a compatible circuit-board test environment to avoid device-destructive configurations. The user must avoid situations in which the SJC output drivers are enabled into actively driven networks.

There are two constraints related to the JTAG interface:

- Ensure that the JTAG test logic is kept transparent to the system logic by forcing TAP into the Test-Logic-Reset controller state. During power-up, SJC's internal TRSTB is asserted as IC's POR\_B is asserted which forces the TAP controller into this state. After that, if TMS either remains unconnected or is connected to VCC, then the TAP controller cannot leave the Test-Logic-Reset state, regardless of the state of TCK.
- DE\_B is an IO pin with pullup and care must be taken of the direction when driving this signal.

## 11.9 SJC Memory Map/Register Definition

In addition to the standard accessible JTAG registers (per IEEE1149.1 standard) listed in [SJC Instruction Register \(SJIR\)](#), the chip contains the following registers accessed using the ExtraDebug mechanism, controlled via "ENABLE\_ExtraDebug" IR instruction.

**NOTE**

SJC registers are only accessible by JTAG interface. They are not memory mapped to processor address space, so the absolute addresses provided by default in the SJC memory map are not valid.

This section assumes the JTAG controller is accessed in standalone mode .

## SJC Memory Map/Register Definition

See "System Debug" chapter for more details about the general purpose register descriptions that are unique to this chip.

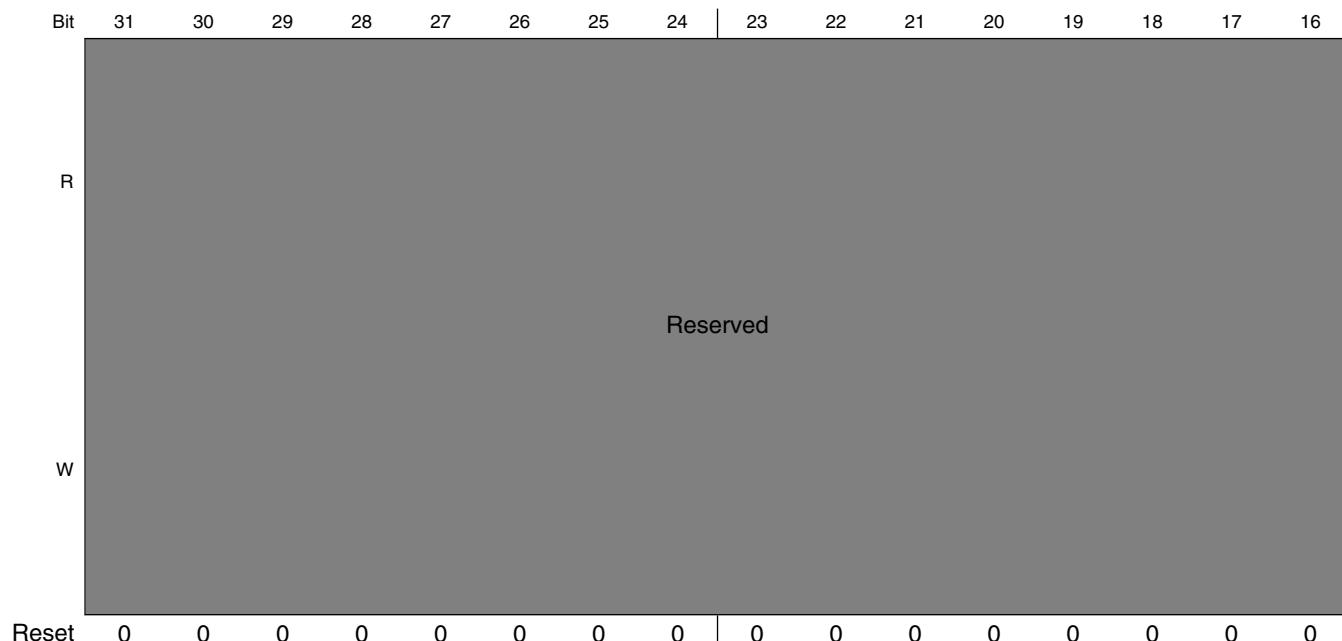
### SJC memory map

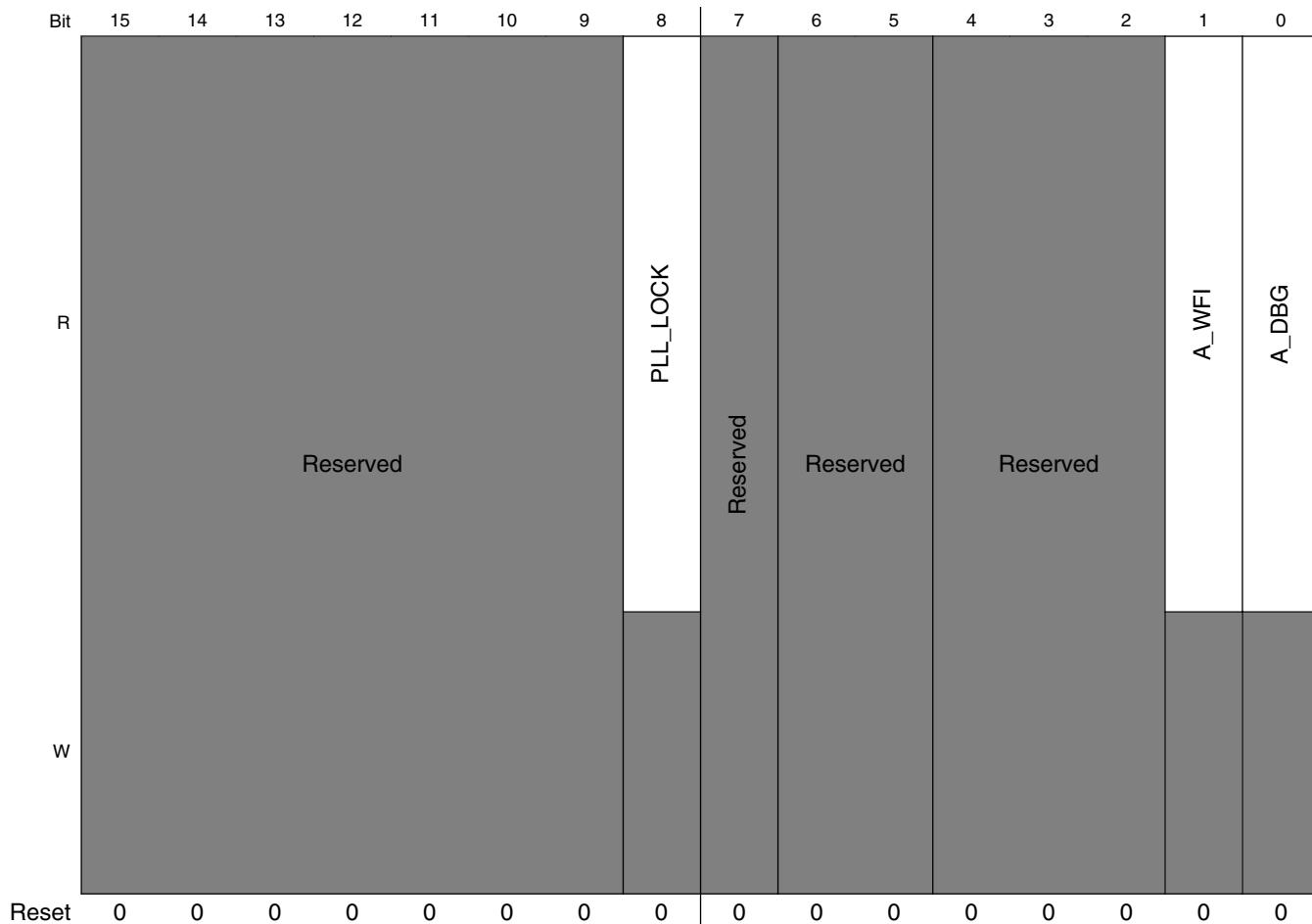
Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400E_4000	General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 1 (SJC_GPUSR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">11.9.1/533</a>
400E_4001	General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 2 (SJC_GPUSR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">11.9.2/535</a>
400E_4002	General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 3 (SJC_GPUSR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">11.9.3/536</a>
400E_4003	General Purpose Secured Status Register (SJC_GPSSR)	32	R	0000_0000h	<a href="#">11.9.4/536</a>
400E_4004	Debug Control Register (SJC_DCR)	32	R/W	1F9E_0000h	<a href="#">11.9.5/537</a>
400E_4005	Security Status Register (SJC_SSR)	32	R	<a href="#">See section</a>	<a href="#">11.9.6/539</a>
400E_4007	General Purpose Clocks Control Register (SJC_GPCCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	<a href="#">11.9.7/542</a>

### 11.9.1 General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 1 (SJC\_GPUSR1)

The General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 1 is a read only register used to check the status of the different Cores and of the PLL. The rest of its bits are for general purpose use.

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 0h offset = 400E\_4000h

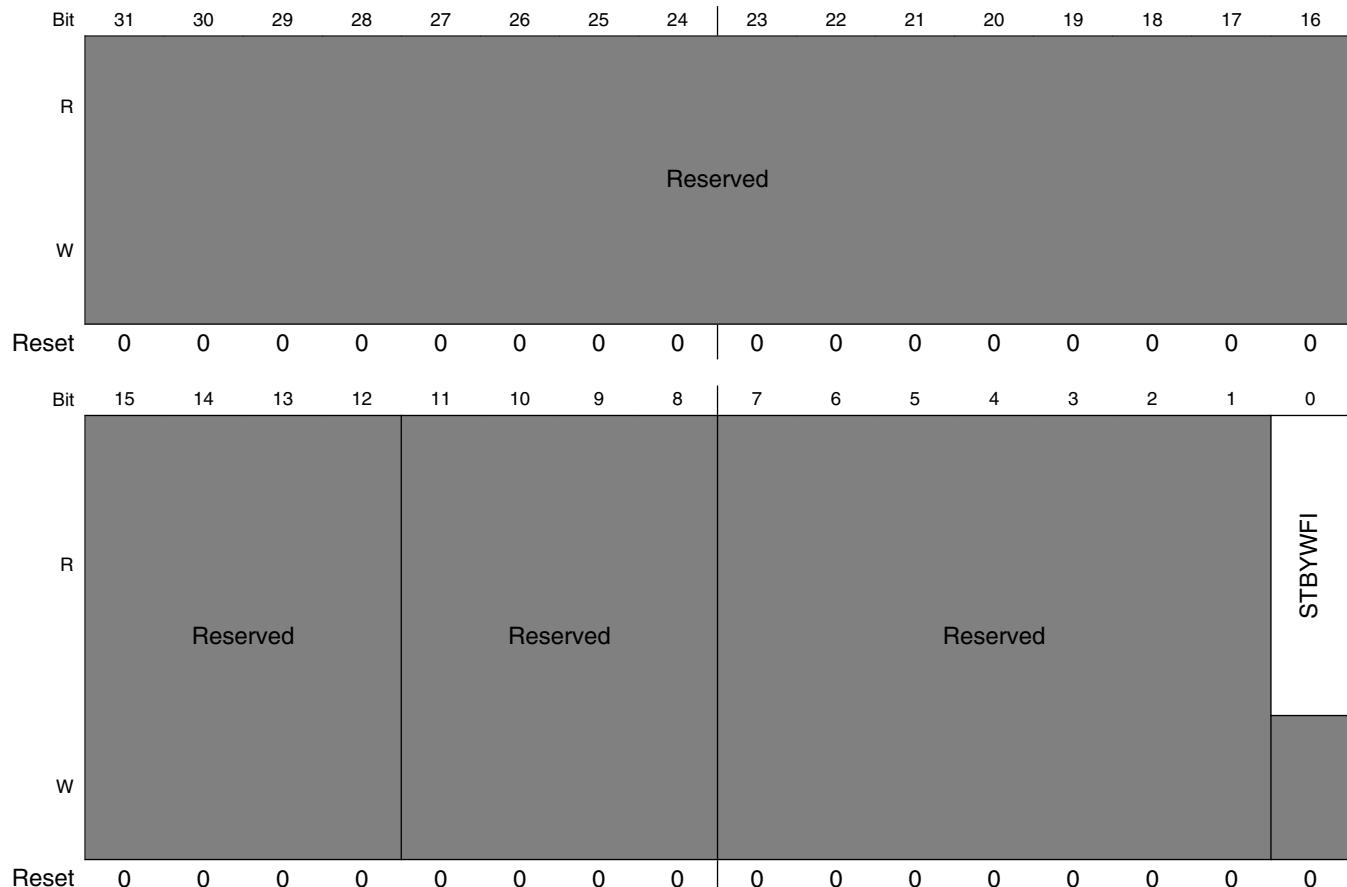


**SJC\_GPUSR1 field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–9 -	This field is reserved. Reserved.
8 PLL_LOCK	PLL_LOCK A Combined PLL-Lock flag indicator, for all the PLL's.
7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
6–5 -	This field is reserved. Reserved.
4–2 -	This field is reserved. Reserved.
1 A_WFI	ARM core wait-for interrupt bit Bit 1 is the ARM core standbywfi (stand by wait-for interrupt). When this bit is HIGH, ARM core is in wait for interrupt mode.
0 A_DBG	ARM core debug status bit Bit 0 is the ARM core DBGACK (debug acknowledge) DBGACK can be overwritten in the ARM core DCR to force a particular DBGACK value. Consequently interpretation of the DBGACK value is highly dependent on the debug sequence. When this bit is HIGH, ARM core is in debug.

## 11.9.2 General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 2 (SJC\_GPUSR2)

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 1h offset = 400E\_4001h



### SJC\_GPUSR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–12 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
11–8 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
7–1 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
0 STBYWFI	STBYWFI These bits provide status of "Standby Wait-For-Interrupt" state of ARM core.

### 11.9.3 General Purpose Unsecured Status Register 3 (SJC\_GPUSR3)

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 2h offset = 400E\_4002h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

#### SJC\_GPUSR3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30	This field is reserved.
-	Reserved
2	SYS_WAIT
	System In wait Indication on System in wait mode (from CCM).
1	IPG_STOP
	IPG_STOP CCM's "ipg_stop" signal indication
0	IPG_WAIT
	IPG_WAIT CCM's "ipg_wait" signal indication

### 11.9.4 General Purpose Secured Status Register (SJC\_GPSSR)

The General Purpose Secured Status Register is a read-only register used to check the status of the different critical information in the SoC. This register cannot be accessed in secure modes.

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 3h offset = 400E\_4003h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

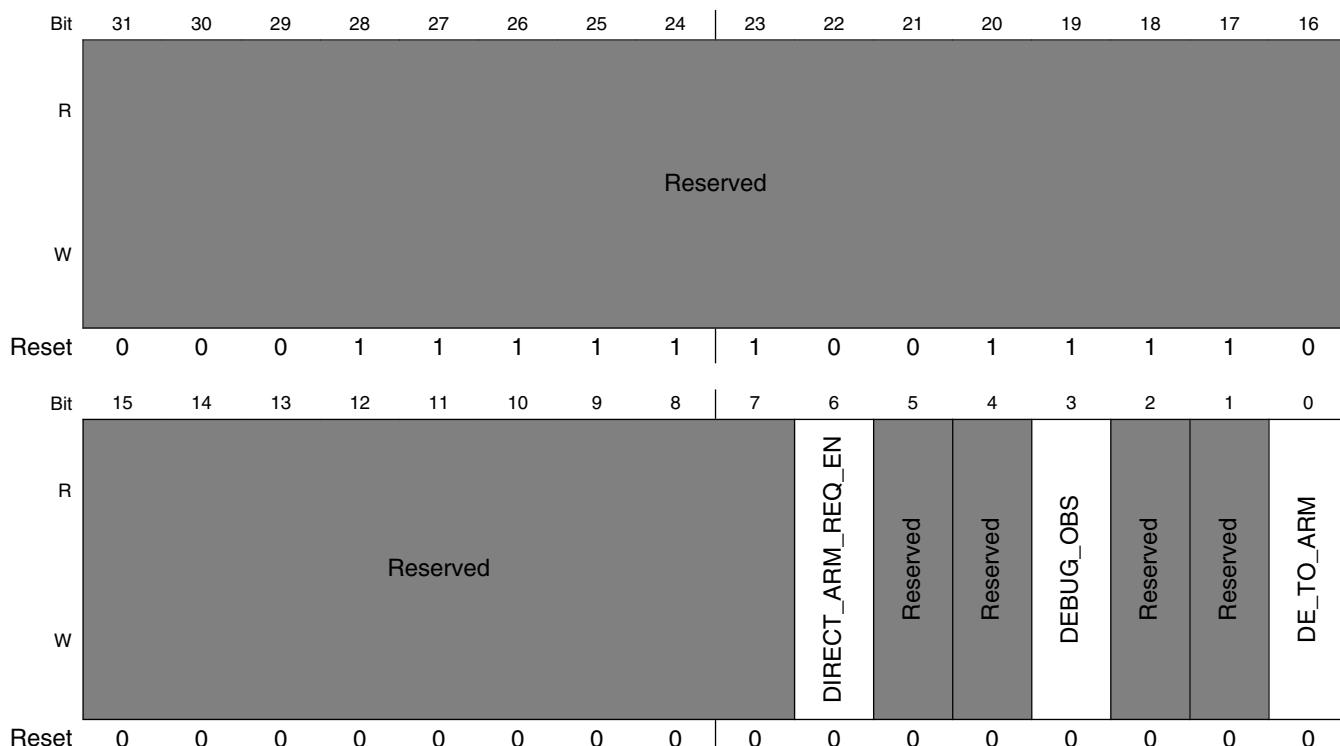
**SJC\_GPSSR field descriptions**

Field	Description
GPSSR	General Purpose Secured Status Register Register is used for testing and debug.

**11.9.5 Debug Control Register (SJC\_DCR)**

This register is used to control propagation of debug request from DE\_B pad to the cores and debug signals from internal logic to the DE\_B pad.

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 4h offset = 400E\_4004h

**SJC\_DCR field descriptions**

Field	Description
31–7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
6 DIRECT_ARM_REQ_EN	Pass Debug Enable event from DE_B pin to ARM platform debug request signal(s). This bit controls the propagation of debug request DE_B to the Arm platform. 0 Disable propagation of system debug to (DE_B pin) to Arm platform. 1 Enable propagation of system debug to (DE_B pin) to Arm platform.

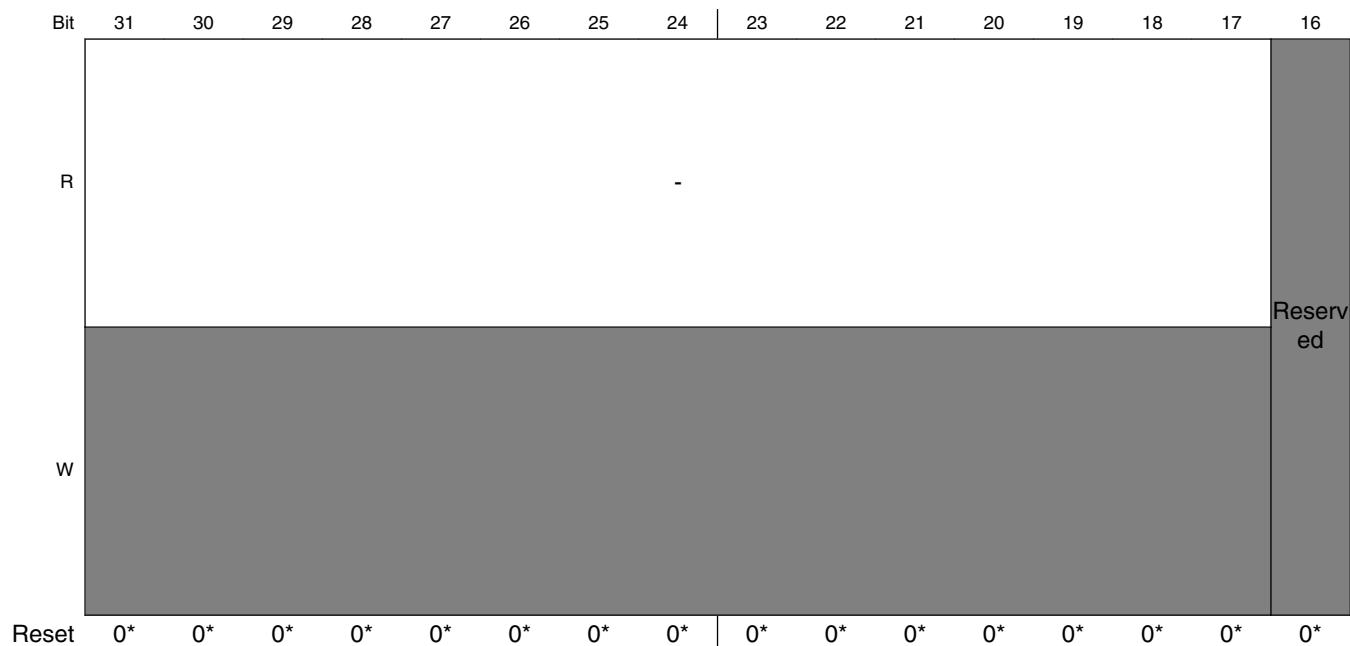
*Table continues on the next page...*

**SJC\_DCR field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
5 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
4 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
3 DEBUG_OBS	Debug observability  This bit controls the propagation of the "system debug" input to SJC (driven by the ECT logic), to the DE_B pad.  (This logic can be used to pass debug acknowledge event from ECT out to the PAD, for example).  The SJC's "system_debug" input is tied to logic HIGH value, therefore, set of "debug_obs" bit, will result in unconditional assertion of DE_B pad.  0 Disable propagation of system debug to DE_B pin 1 Unconditional assertion of pad DE_B
2 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
1 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
0 DE_TO_ARM	ARM platform debug request input propagation  This bit controls the propagation of debug request to ARM platform ("dbgreq"), when the JTAG state machine is put in "ENTER_DEBUG" IR instruction.  0 Disable propagation of debug request to ARM platform 1 Enable propagation of debug request to ARM platform

## 11.9.6 Security Status Register (SJC\_SSR)

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 5h offset = 400E\_4005h



## SJC Memory Map/Register Definition

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	BOOTIND	Reserved	RSSTAT	SJM	FT	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	SWE	SWF	KTA	KTF
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	1*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

\* Notes:

- The SJM reset value, reflects the JTAG security state, as defined by status of JTAG\_SMODE[1:0] fuses. See the [SJM](#) bitfield description for details on valid values.

## SJC\_SSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–17 -	Reserved.
16–15 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
14 BOOTIND	Boot Indication Inverted Internal Boot indication, i.e inverse of SRC: "src_int_boot" signal
13 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
12–11 RSSTAT	Response status Response status bits  00 Response wasn't entered 01 Response was entered but not verified

Table continues on the next page...

**SJC\_SSR field descriptions (continued)**

Field	Description
	10 Response was entered and is incorrect 11 Response is correct
10–9 SJM	SJC Secure mode Secure JTAG mode, as set by external fuses. 00 No debug (#1) 01 Secure JTAG (#2) 10 Reserved 11 JTAG enabled (#3)
8 FT	Fuse type Fuse type bit - eFuse or laser fuse 0 eFuse technology 1 Laser fuse technology
7 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
6 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
5 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
4 -	This field is reserved. Reserved
3 SWE	SW enable SW JTAG enable status 1 enabled 0 disabled
2 SWF	Software JTAG enable fuse Status of the no SW disable JTAG fuse 0 (intact) - SW enable possible 1 (intact) - no SW enable possible
1 KTA	Kill Trace is active 1 active 0 not active
0 KTF	Kill Trace Enable fuse value 0 (intact) - kill trace is never active 1 (burned) - kill trace functionality enabled

## 11.9.7 General Purpose Clocks Control Register (SJC\_GPCCR)

Address: 400E\_4000h base + 7h offset = 400E\_4007h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	SYS_RESET_REQ								-							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R								-								
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### SJC\_GPCCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 SYS_RESET_REQ	Set to force a system reset. The system remains held in reset until this bit is cleared.
30–2 -	Reserved
-	Reserved

# Appendix A

## Revision History

The following table provides a revision history for this document.

**Table A-1. Revision History**

Rev. No.	Date	Substantial Changes
0	02/2020	Initial public release.



**How to Reach Us:**

**Home Page:**

[nxp.com](http://nxp.com)

**Web Support:**

[nxp.com/support](http://nxp.com/support)

Information in this document is provided solely to enable system and software implementers to use NXP products. There are no express or implied copyright licenses granted hereunder to design or fabricate any integrated circuits based on the information in this document. NXP reserves the right to make changes without further notice to any products herein.

NXP makes no warranty, representation, or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does NXP assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation consequential or incidental damages. "Typical" parameters that may be provided in NXP data sheets and/or specifications can and do vary in different applications, and actual performance may vary over time. All operating parameters, including "typicals," must be validated for each customer application by customer's technical experts. NXP does not convey any license under its patent rights nor the rights of others. NXP sells products pursuant to standard terms and conditions of sale, which can be found at the following address: [nxp.com/SalesTermsandConditions](http://nxp.com/SalesTermsandConditions).

While NXP has implemented advanced security features, all products may be subject to unidentified vulnerabilities. Customers are responsible for the design and operation of their applications and products to reduce the effect of these vulnerabilities on customer's applications and products, and NXP accepts no liability for any vulnerability that is discovered. Customers should implement appropriate design and operating safeguards to minimize the risks associated with their applications and products.

NXP, the NXP logo, NXP SECURE CONNECTIONS FOR A SMARTER WORLD, COOLFLUX, EMBRACE, GREENCHIP, HITAG, I2C BUS,ICODE, JCOP, LIFE VIBES, MIFARE, MIFARE CLASSIC, MIFARE DESFire, MIFARE PLUS, MIFARE FLEX, MANTIS, MIFARE ULTRALIGHT, MIFARE4MOBILE, MIGLO, NTAG, ROADLINK, SMARTLX, SMARTMX, STARPLUG, TOPFET, TRENCHMOS, UCODE, Freescale, the Freescale logo, AltiVec, C-5, CodeTEST, CodeWarrior, ColdFire, ColdFire+, C-Ware, the Energy Efficient Solutions logo, Kinetis, Layerscape, MagniV, mobileGT, PEG, PowerQUICC, Processor Expert, QorIQ, QorIQ Qonverge, Ready Play, SafeAssure, the SafeAssure logo, StarCore, Symphony, VortiQa, Vybrid, Airfast, BeeKit, BeeStack, CoreNet, Flexis, MXC, Platform in a Package, QUICC Engine, SMARTMOS, Tower, TurboLink, UMEMS, eIQ, Immersiv3D, EdgeLock, and EdgeScale are trademarks of NXP B.V. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners. AMBA, Arm, Arm7, Arm7TDMI, Arm9, Arm11, Artisan, big.LITTLE, Cordio, CoreLink, CoreSight, Cortex, DesignStart, DynamIQ, Jazelle, Keil, Mali, Mbed, Mbed Enabled, NEON, POP, RealView, SecurCore, Socrates, Thumb, TrustZone, ULINK, ULINK2, ULINK-ME, ULINK-PLUS, ULINKpro, µVision, Versatile are trademarks or registered trademarks of Arm Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the US and/or elsewhere. The related technology may be protected by any or all of patents, copyrights, designs and trade secrets. All rights reserved. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. The Power Architecture and Power.org word marks and the Power and Power.org logos and related marks are trademarks and service marks licensed by Power.org.

© 2020 NXP B.V.

Document Number IMXRT106XSRM  
Revision 0, 02/2020

